UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
3 1761 00095449 5

THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

HENRY FROWDE, M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD



LONDON, EDINBURGH, AND NEW YORK



THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

TRANSLATED

BY VARIOUS ORIENTAL SCHOLARS

AND EDITED BY

F. MAX MÜLLER

VOL. XLIV

47785
27/3/00

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1900

[*All rights reserved*]

Oxford

PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

BY HORACE HART, M.A.

PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

THE

ŚATAPATHA-BRÂHMAṆA

ACCORDING TO THE TEXT OF THE

MÂDHYANDINA SCHOOL

TRANSLATED BY

JULIUS EGGELING

PART V

BOOKS XI, XII, XIII, AND XIV

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1900

[*All rights reserved*]

BL
1135
B7S3
1882
pt.5

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/satapathabrhma05eggeuoft

CONTENTS.

PAGE

INTRODUCTION xiii

ELEVENTH KÂNDA.

The Full and New-Moon Sacrifice (Supplementary Remarks).

Time of Sacrifice 1

Additional oblations to Indra Vimṛidh and Aditi . 5

Expiatory oblations (to Agni, Indra, Vishṇu) at New Moon 7

Birth of Prajâpati from golden egg 12

He creates Gods (Agni, Indra, Soma, Parameshṭhin) and Asuras 15

Sacrifice representing universe and man . . . 18

Brahman (n.), the origin and immortal element, of gods and universe 27

Sacrifice, the Year 38

The Agnihotra (esoteric doctrines) 40

The Brahmakârin 48

Uddâlaka Âruṇi and Svaidâyana 50

Śaulvâyana and Ayasthûṇa 61

The Mitravindâ Sacrifice 62

Śrî dismembered 62

Purûravas and Urvaśî 68

The Seasonal Sacrifices (Kâturmâsya) 74

Saukeya Prâkînayogya and Uddâlaka Âruṇi on the Agnihotra 79

The Upanayana, or Initiation of the Brâhmaṇical Student . 86

The Sâvitrî formula 87

The Śatâtirâtra Sattra 91

The Morning-Litany (prâtaranuvâka) of the Atirâtra 92

The Svâdhyâya, or Daily Study of the Veda . . . 95

The three Vedas, or triple science 102

The Adâbhya Cup of Soma 105
Varuṇa and his son Bhṛigu (on future states of existence) 108
Ganaka of Videha on the Agnihotra 112
Yâgñavalkya and Śâkalya (on the gods and the supreme deity) 115
The Animal Sacrifice, of two kinds 118
The Sacrificial stake (yûpa) 123
The Victim and its deity 127
The King of the Kesin and his Samrâg-cow . . 131

TWELFTH KÂṆDA.

The Sacrificial Session (Sattra) 135
Man, the Year 144
The Tâpaśkita Sattra 171
Expiatory Ceremonies of the Agnihotra . . . 178
The going out of one of the fires 187
The death of the Agnihotrin 197
The burying of the dead body 200
Expiatory Oblations of Soma-sacrifice 205
The Sautrâmaṇî 213
Namuki slain by Indra 216, 222
Preparation of the Surâ-liquor 223
Oblations of milk and Surâ 231
Oblations to the Fathers 234
The Âśvina, Sârasvata, and Aindra cups . . . 245
Indra assisted and healed by the Aśvins and Sarasvatî 223, 249
Consecration of Sacrificer 249
Cakes to Indra, Savitṛi, and Varuṇa . . 247, 260
The Avabhṛitha, or purificatory bath . . . 264
Kâkra Sthapati performs Sautrâmaṇî for Dushṭarîtu Paumsâyana 269

THIRTEENTH KÂṆDA.

The Aśvamedha, or Horse-sacrifice 274
Fettering and sprinkling of Horse 276
Stokîyâ oblations 280

Prakrama oblations 282
Three cake-offerings to Savitri 284
Dhriti oblations 285
Lute-playing by Brâhmaṇa and Râganya . . 285
Dîkshâ, or Initiation 289
Vaiśvadeva oblations 289
Audgrabhaṇa oblations 291
First Soma-day (Agnishṭoma) 295
Annahomas (food oblations) 296
Second Soma-day (Ukthya) 298
Fettering of victims 298
Bahishpavamâna-stotra 304
Setting free of the wild victims 307
Sacrificer drives with Horse to pond of water and back 311
Horse anointed and adorned by Sacrificer's wives . 312
Brahmodya of Hotri and Brahman 314
Sprinkling of Horse by Adhvaryu (and Sacrificer) . 316
Killing of Horse on cloths and plate of gold . . 320
Wives led up to circumambulate and fan the Horse . 322
Mahishî addresses the Horse 323
Priests' colloquy with wives 324
The Knife-paths made with needles 326
The two Mahiman Cups of Soma 327
The Chanting of the Katushṭoma 329
Araṇye-nûkya oblations 336
Svishṭakṛit oblations of blood 337
Oblations to the Deaths 340
Aśvastomîyâ oblations 341
Dvipadâ oblations 342
Expiatory Offerings 345
Right time for performing the Aśvamedha . . 347
Preliminary Ceremonies:—the mess of rice . . . 348
Sacrificer and wives pass the night in the sacrificial hall 349
Offering to Agni Pathikṛit—the mouth of the Sacrifice 350
Offering to Pûshan 352
Leading up of the Horse, assisted by its noble keepers . 353
Three Sâvitra offerings (performed daily for a year) . 355
Brâhman lute-player sings three gâthâs . . . 356
Horse and keepers sent to range the quarters . . 359

PAGE

The Pâriplava Âkhyâna, or revolving legend . 361–370
Prakrama and Dhṛiti oblations 363
Râganya lute-player sings three gâthâs . . . 364
Diksha, or Initiation (at end of year) 371
Sutyâ-days 372
The set of twenty-one sacrificial stakes . . . 373
The chanting of Gotama's Ka*t*ush*t*oma . . . 375
The Sastras and Stotras of the Central (Ekavi*m*sa) day 377
The animal sacrifices of that day 382
The Adhrigu litany 385
The Mahishî and the Horse 386
Colloquy of priests, chamberlain and women . . 386
Brahmodya of priests 388
The first Mahiman Cup of Soma 391
The offering of the omenta (vapâ) 392
The second Mahiman Cup of Soma . . . 394
The Stotras of the third (Atirâtra) day . . . 395
Various Arrangements of the Asvamedha Chants . . 396
Offering of barren cows 402
Animal sacrifices performed in following year . . 402
The Purushamedha, or Human Sacrifice . . . 403
Animal sacrifices 404
The (symbolical) human victims 407
Purusha-Nârâya*n*a litany (Purusha-sûkta) . . . 410
Traidhâtavî offering 412
Uttara-Nârâya*n*a litany 412
Enumeration of the human victims 413
The Sarvamedha, or All-Sacrifice 417
The ten Sutyâ-days thereof 418
Funeral Ceremonies 421
Burial-ground (*s*masâna) 421
Locality of the tomb 424
Form and size of the tomb 428
Preparation (sweeping, ploughing, sowing) of the site 429
Depositing of charred bones 433
Arranging of bones limb by limb 434
Body completed by bricks, like bird-shaped altar . 435
Height of sepulchral mound 435
Driving in of pins marking site of mound . . 436

PAGE
Furrows, dug south and north, filled with (milk and) water 437
Passing the northern ones on three stones thrown in by each 437
Purification by Apâmârga plants and bath . . 438
Home-going, and offering to Agni Âyushmat on house-fire 439
Depositing of clod midway between grave and village 440

FOURTEENTH KÂ*N*DA.

The Pravargya 441
Sacrificial session performed by the gods at Kurukshetra 441
Vish*n*u excels and becomes overweening . . . 442
Bowstring, gnawed by ants, cuts off his head . . 442
The names 'Gharma, Pravargya, Mahâvîra, Samrâ*g*' explained 442
Vish*n*u's body divided between the gods . . . 443
Dadhya*ñk* Âtharva*n*a warned by Indra not to teach the sweet doctrine 444
His head cut off by Indra, and restored by the Aśvins 445
Rule of abstinence observed when teaching the Pravargya 446
Collecting materials for making the Mahâvîra pot . 447
Pra*g*âpati, as the boar Emûsha, raises the Earth . 451
The making of the Mahâvîra vessels in shed . . 453
The fumigating and baking of the vessels . . 456
Depositing of vessels and implements in front of Gârhapatya 458
The Hotṛi's recitation 459
Sprinkling of pot with lustral water 460
The Mahâvîra's (imperial) Throne-seat south of Âhavanîya 461
The pot anointed with ghee 462
The pot set down on mound upon burning reed-sheaths 463
The Sacrificer invoking blessings upon the earth . 464
Pieces of Vikaṅkata wood laid round, and a gold plant upon the pot 466

PAGE

Fanning of the fire with three pieces of antelope-skin till aglow 467
Revering of the heated pot with the Avakâśa verses . 469
Offering of the first Rauhiṇa cake 472
Samrâg-cow tied and milked 474
The pot lifted from the fire and placed on the tray . 476
Cooling of pot with goat's milk; and pouring in of cow's milk 477
Oblations made by (muttering) the (twelve) wind-names 478
Pouring of spilt milk and ghee from tray into pot . 481
Oblation to Aśvins 482
Anumantraṇa to the rising milk 484
Mahâvîra pot placed on mound 485
Offering of the steeped Vikaṅkata chips (to Pûshan, &c.) 486
Pouring of remaining milk from pot into tray . . 488
Offering of the second Rauhiṇa cake 489
Sacrificer drinks the remaining Gharma 489
Cleansing, and performance of Upasad 490
Rules for priests as to how and for whom to perform the Pravargya 490
Pravargyotsâdana, or 'setting out' of the implements 493
Kindling of bundles of faggots, and offering thereon . 494
Procession led by Prastotṛi singing a Sâman . . 496
Arrangement of apparatus in form of human body . 498
Singing of Vârshâhara-sâman and departure . . 501
Mode of performance at continued Soma-sacrifices . 502
Dakshiṇâs, or sacrificial fees 503
Expiatory ceremonies in case of breaking of pot . 504
Laudation of Pravargya 507

INDEX TO PARTS III, IV, AND V (VOLS. XLI, XLIII, AND XLIV) 511

Additions and Corrections 591

Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East . . . 593

INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume completes the theoretic exposition of the sacrificial ceremonial, and thus brings us to the end of our task. The remaining six chapters of the last book of the Brâhmaṇa form the so-called Bṛihad-âraṇyaka, or great forest-treatise, which, as one of the ten primitive Upanishads, is included in Professor F. Max Müller's translation of those old theosophic treatises, published in the present series. The portion of the work contained in this volume forms practically a continuation of the first five kâṇḍas, the intervening five books being devoted to the consideration of the Agnikâyana, or construction of the sacred brick-altar, which had come to be recognised as an important preliminary to the Soma-sacrifice. The circumstances which seem to have led to this somewhat peculiar distribution of the different sections of the work have been explained in the introduction to the first volume of the translation. As was there shown, the inclusion of the Agnikâyana in the sacrificial system of the Vâgasaneyins, or theologians of the White Yagus, appears to have resulted in a definite settlement of the sacrificial texts of the ordinary ritual, as contained in the first eighteen adhyâyas of the Vâgasaneyi-saṃhitâ, as well as of the dogmatic explanation of that ritual as given in the first nine kâṇḍas of the Śatapatha-brâhmaṇa. Considerable portions of the remaining sections of both works may have been, and very likely were, already in existence at the time of that settlement, but, being excluded from the regular ceremonial, they were naturally more liable to subsequent modifications and additions than

those earlier sections which remained in constant use. Whilst the tenth kâṇḍa, included in the preceding volume of the translation, consisted of speculations on the sacred fire-altar, as representing Purusha-Pragâpati and the divine body of the Sacrificer—whence that book is called the Agnirahasya, or mystery of the fire-altar—the present volume contains the supplementary sections connected with the sacrificial ceremonial proper.

The eleventh and twelfth kâṇḍas are mainly taken up with additional remarks and directions on most of the sacrifices treated of in the first four kâṇḍas, especially with expiatory ceremonies and oblations in cases of mishaps or mistakes occurring during the performance, or with esoteric speculations regarding the significance and mystic effect of certain rites. In this way the eleventh book deals with the New and Full-moon sacrifices; the Seasonal offerings (XI, 5, 2), the Agnihotra (XI, 5, 3; 6, 2), the Soma-sacrifice (XI, 5, 5; 9), and the Animal-sacrifice (XI, 7, 2–8, 4); whilst the twelfth kâṇḍa treats of the 'Gavâm ayanam'—or most common sacrificial session lasting for a year, thus offering a convenient subject for dilating upon the nature of Pragâpati, as the Year, or Father Time;—of additional expiatory rites for Soma-sacrifices (XII, 6), and of the Sautrâmaṇi, consisting of oblations of milk and spirituous liquor, supposed to obviate or remove the unpleasant effects of any excess in the consumption of Soma-juice (XII, 7–9). Though supplementary notes and speculations on such ceremonial topics cannot but be of a somewhat desultory and heterogeneous character, they nevertheless offer welcome opportunities for the introduction of much valuable and interesting matter. It is here that we find the famous myth of Purûravas and Urvasi (XI, 5, 1); and that of Bhṛigu, the son of Varuṇa, vividly illustrating the notions prevalent at the time regarding retribution after death (XI, 6, 1); as also the important cosmogonic legend of the golden egg from which Pragâpati is born at the beginning of the evolution of the universe (XI, 1, 6). Of considerable interest also are the chapters treating of the way in which

the dead body of the pious performer of the Agnihotra, or daily milk-offering, is to be dealt with (XII, 5, 1–2); of the initiation and the duties of the Brâhmaṇical student (XI, 3, 3; 5, 4); and, last not least, of the study of the Vedas (XI, 5, 6–7) and their subsidiary texts amongst which we meet, for the first time, with the Atharvâṅgiras as a special collection of texts recommended for systematic study.

With the commencement of the thirteenth kâṇḍa, we enter once more upon a regular exposition of a series of great sacrifices like those discussed in the early books; the first and most important of them being the Aśvamedha, or Horse-sacrifice. Like the Râgasûya, or inauguration of a king, the Aśvamedha is not a mere sacrifice or series of offerings, but it is rather a great state function in which the religious and sacrificial element is closely and deftly interwoven with a varied programme of secular ceremonies. But whilst the Râgasûya was a state ceremonial to which any petty ruler might fairly think himself entitled, the Aśvamedha, on the contrary, involved an assertion of power and a display of political authority such as only a monarch of undisputed supremacy could have ventured upon without courting humiliation[1]; and its celebration must therefore have been an event of comparatively rare occurrence. Perhaps, indeed, it is owing to this exceptional character of the Aśvamedha rather than to the later origin of its ritual and dogmatic treatment that this ceremony was separated from the Râgasûya which one would naturally have expected it to succeed. It is worthy of remark, in this respect, that, in Kâtyâyana's Anukramaṇî to the Vâgasaneyi-saṃhitâ, the term 'khila,' or supplement, is not applied to the Aśvamedha section[2] (Adhy. XXII-XXV), while the subsequent sections are distinctly characterised as such. As a matter of fact, however, the Aśvamedha has

[1] Cf. Taitt. Br. III, 8, 9, 4.—parâ vâ esha sicyate yo 'balo 'śvamedhena yagate:—'Verily, poured away (dislodged) is he who, being weak, performs the Aśvamedha;' Âp. Śr. XX, 1, 1, 'a king ruling the whole land (sârvabhauma) may perform the Aśvamedha;—also one not ruling the whole land.'

[2] Cf. Weber, History of Indian Literature, p. 107; Max Müller, History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 358.

received a very unequal treatment in the different rituals. Of the two recensions of the Brâhmaṇa of the *Ṛ*ig-veda priests, the Aitareya-brâhmaṇa takes no account whatever of the Horse-sacrifice, whilst its last two books (VII, VIII)—generally regarded as a later supplement, though probably already attached to the work in Pâṇini's time—are mainly taken up with the discussion of the Râgasûya. The Kaushitaki-brâhmaṇa, on the other hand, passes over both ceremonies, their explanation being only supplied by the Sâṅkhâyana-sûtra, along with that of some other sacrifices, in two of its chapters (15 and 16), composed in Brâhmaṇa style, and said to be extracted from the Mahâ-Kaushitaki-brâhmaṇa[1]. In the principal Brâhmaṇa of the Sâman priests, the Pañ*ḥ*aviṃśa-brâhmaṇa, the Aśvamedha, as a trirâtra, or triduum, is dealt with in its proper place (XXI, 4), among the Ahînas, or several days' performances. As regards the Black Yagus, both the Kâṭ*ḥ*aka and the Maitrâyaṇi Saṃhitâ give merely the mantras of the Aśvamedha[2], to which they assign pretty much the same place in the ritual as is done in the White Yagus. In the Taittirîya-saṃhitâ, on the other hand, the mantras are scattered piecemeal over the last four kâṇḍas: whilst, with the exception of a short introductory vidhi-passage, likewise given in the Saṃhitâ (V, 3, 12), the whole of the exegetic matter connected with this ceremony is contained, in a continuous form, in the Taittirîya-brâhmaṇa (VIII and IX). Lastly, in the Vaitâna-sûtra of the Atharva-veda—doubtless a comparatively late work, though probably older than the Gopatha-

[1] Besides the two chapters referred to, nothing more than quotations are known of this work. Possibly, however, the difference between it and the Kaushîtaki-brâhmaṇa consisted merely of such supplements which would class by very many of the same character as the last two pañ*ḥ*ikâs of the Aitareya-brâhmaṇa, except that they never became so generally recognised.

[2] Though this circumstance seems to favour the supposition of the more recent ritualistic treatment of the Aśvamedha, it may not be out of place to notice that, in the Maitrâyaṇi Saṃhitâ, the Aśvamedha section is followed by several Brâhmaṇa sections; amongst them that of the Râgasûya which is not found in the Kâṭ*ḥ*aka at all. Śat. Br. XIII, 3, 3, 6, calls the Aśvamedha an 'utsannayâga'; but it is not quite clear what is meant thereby, seeing that the same term is applied to the *Ṛ*âturmâsyâni, or Seasonal offerings (II, 5, 2, 48).

brâhmaṇa [1]—the Asvamedha is treated immediately after the Râgasûya, and followed by the Purushamedha and Sarvamedha; these four ceremonies being characterised at the end as the Kshatriya's sacrifices [2] (medha).

With regard to the earliest phase of Vedic religion, there is no direct evidence to show that the horse-sacrifice was already at that time a recognised institution. Two hymns of the *Rig*-veda (I, 162; 163), it is true, relate to that sacrifice [3], but they evidently belong to the latest productions [4] of that collection, though still sufficiently far removed from the time of the oldest of the ritual works just referred to. Seeing, however, that animal sacrifices generally are not alluded to in the *Rik*saṃhitâ [5], whilst there is every reason to believe that they were commonly practised from remote antiquity, this absence of earlier positive evidence regarding the horse-sacrifice cannot be taken as proving the later origin of that institution. As will be seen further on, there are sufficient indications to show that even human sacrifices were at one time practised amongst the Aryans of India, as they were amongst their

[1] See Professor M. Bloomfield's paper on 'The Position of the Gopatha-brâhmaṇa in Vedic Literature,' Journ. Am. Or. Soc., vol. xix.

[2] Cf. Mahâbh. XIV, 48, where these four sacrifices are specially recommended by Vyâsa to Yudhishṭhira as worthy of being performed by him as King.

[3] Possibly also, the hymn *Rig*-veda I, 164 (Ath.-v. IX, 9, 10)—on which see P. Deussen, Allg. Geschichte der Philosophie, I, 1, p. 105 seq.—may have been placed after the two Asvamedha hymns to supply topics for the priests' colloquy (brahmodya) at the Asvamedha. Cf. XIII, 2, 6, 9 seqq.; 5, 2, 11 seqq. The fact that the Asvamedha is not treated of in the Aitareya-brâhmaṇa cannot, of course, be taken to prove the later origin of the hymns referred to, though it might, no doubt, fairly be used as an argument in favour of assuming that those parts of the Asvamedha ceremonial in which the Hotṛi takes a prominent part were probably not introduced till a later time.

[4] Haug, Ait. Br. I, introd., p. 12 seqq., argues against the assumption of a comparatively late origin of the hymn I, 162; but his argument meets with serious lexical and other difficulties.

[5] We may leave out of account here one or two vague allusions, such as X, 155, 5 'these have led around the cow (or bull) and have carried around the fire; with the gods they have gained for themselves glory: who dares to attack them?' The question also as to whether the so-called Âpri-hymns, used at the fore-offerings of the animal sacrifice, were from the very beginning composed for this purpose, cannot be discussed here.

European kinsmen. The fundamental idea which underlay this practice doubtless was the notion that man, as the highest attainable living being, could not but be the most acceptable gift that could be offered to the gods, and, at the same time, the most appropriate substitute for the human Sacrificer himself. For the same reason no doubt only domesticated animals were considered suitable for sacrifice: and amongst these the horse was naturally looked upon as ranking next to man (Sat. Br. VI, 2, 1, 2), although considerations of practical expediency and even of social distinction might prevent its use for ordinary sacrificial purposes.

In the speculations of the Brâhmaṇas, a deep mystic significance is attached to the Horse-sacrifice. In the last two chapters of the 'Mystery of the Fire-altar' (Sat. Br. X, 6, 4, 1; 4), the Aśvamedha—i. e. the sacrificial horse itself—is coupled with the Arka, the mysterious name of the sacred fire, as the representative of Agni-Prâgâpati, the Sun. The horse-sacrifice is called the bull (XIII, 1, 2, 2), and the king (XIII, 2, 2, 1), of sacrifices, just as the horse itself is the highest and most perfect of animals[1] (XIII, 3, 3, 1; Taitt. Br. III, 8, 7; 8, 9, 1); the horse selected for sacrifice, in particular, being said to be worth a thousand cows (XIII, 4, 2, 1). The connection of the sacrificial horse with 'the lord of creatures' is, of course, fully accounted for by the theory of the identity of the sacrifice generally with Purusha-Prâgâpati, discussed in the introduction to part iv of this translation. The sacrificial horse accordingly belongs to Prâgâpati, or rather is of Prâgâpati's nature (prâgâpatya); nay, as the Taitt. Br. (III, 9, 17, 4) puts it, it is a form of Prâgâpati himself (prâgâpate rûpam aśvaḥ), and is, of all animals, the one most conformable (anurûpatamaḥ) to Prâgâpati. Hence also, in the cosmogonic account at the commencement of the Agnikâyana section (VI, 1, 1, 11), the horse is represented as having originated, immediately after the Brahman (sacred lore) and Agni, directly from the

[1] 'They [the Massagetæ] worship the sun only of all the gods, and sacrifice horses to him; and the reason for this custom is that they think it right to offer the swiftest of all animals to the swiftest of all the gods.' Herod. I, 216.

egg produced by Pragâpati from the cosmic waters; whilst, according to other accounts (VII, 5, 2, 6; XIII, 3, 1, 1), the horse originated from Pragâpati's eye. But, since the offering also represents the offerer himself, or rather his divine self awaiting him in the other world (XI, 1, 8, 6; 2, 2, 6), the sacrificial horse is also identified with the Sacrificer (yagamâno vâ asvaḥ, Taitt. Br. III, 9, 17, 4) who thereby obtains the fellowship of the Lord of creatures and a place in his world (ib. III, 9, 20, 2).

Besides Pragâpati, there is, however, another deity who lays claim to the possession of the sacred steed; for the horse is Varuṇa's sacrificial animal (Sat. Br. V, 3, 1, 5; VI, 2, 1, 5; Taitt. Br. III, 9, 16, 1); nay, Varuṇa is even the lord of all one-hoofed cattle (Vâg. S. XIV, 30; Sat. Br. VIII, 4, 3, 13). This connection of the horse with Varuṇa seems natural enough, seeing that this god, as the king of heaven and the upholder of the law, is the divine representative of the earthly king; whence the Râgasûya, or coronation-ceremony, is called Varuṇa's consecration (Sat. Br. V, 4, 3, 21; cf. II, 2, 3, 1). For this reason the barley also is sacred to Varuṇa[1] (XIII, 3, 8, 5); and accordingly, during the same ceremony, the king offers a barley-mash to Varuṇa, in the house of his Sûta, or charioteer and herald; a horse being the sacrificial fee for this offering (V, 3, 1, 5). In the Vedic hymns, this association of the god Varuṇa with the noble quadruped finds a ready, if rather commonplace, explanation in a common natural phenomenon. Varuṇa's horse is none other than the fiery racer who pursues his diurnal course across the all-encompassing arch of heaven, the sphere of Varuṇa[2], the all-ruler. It is in the

[1] Dr. Hillebrandt, 'Varuṇa und Mitra,' p. 65, is inclined to refer this connection to Varuṇa's character as the god of waters and the rains, as favouring the crops and fertility generally.

[2] Whilst it may be a matter of opinion whether, with Professor Brugmann (Grundr. II, p. 154), we have to take the original form of this name to be 'vorvanos,' or whether the 'u' of the Sanskrit word is merely due to the dulling influence of the preceding r (cf. taruṇa, dhâruṇa, karuṇa), the etymological identity of 'varuṇas' and *οὐρανός* is now probably questioned by few scholars. The ethical attributes of this mythological conception seem to

form of the horse that the Sun is thus hailed in the hymn Rig-v. I, 163, recited by the Hotṛi on the second Somaday of the Aśvamedha, after the horse has been led up to the sacrificial stake, and to the slaughtering-place! .—1. 'When, first born (just born), thou didst neigh, springing from the sea, or from the upper region, the falcon's wings and the deer's feet—praiseworthy greatness was innate in thee, O steed!' . . . 4. 'Three fastenings', they say, are deep in the sky, three in the waters, three within the sea; and like unto Varuṇa, O steed, dost thou appear to me, whom they say, thy highest birth-place is.' And since, as in these verses, the upper regions commonly present themselves to the eye of the Vedic singer under the semblance of a heavenly sea, Varuṇa also comes to be looked upon as the divine representative of the waters; whilst the horse, for the same reason, is supposed to have sprung from the waters. Of any connection of the sacrificial horse with Prajâpati, on the other hand, as of the Prajâpati theory of the sacrifice generally, there is nowhere, in the Brâhmaṇa-period, the slightest trace to be found in the earlier hymns. Indeed, if we have any right to assume that the horse-sacrifice was known and practised in the earlier times, it can scarcely be doubted that King Varuṇa must have been the deity to whom the victim was chiefly consecrated.

The close and natural relations between the sun and the heavenly fluid find their fullest expression in the divine dual Mitra and Varuṇa. Though, judged by the number of

---

[illegible] a sufficiently intelligible explanation without resorting to [illegible] solutions is scarcely to be found. Indeed Dr. Hillebrandt's 'Varuṇa und Mitra' gives a most complete and satisfactory account of this figure of the Indian pantheon in all its relations.

[illegible] Ait. Br. VIII, 1, 1, 21, 14.

[illegible] This is probably [illegible] [illegible] of ruling, [illegible] and willing. . . Perhaps also the three expressions are merely words as an exuberant exemplum of the real [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] though possibly these different words in the upper region may be intended. Professor Ludwig, on the other hand, takes' [illegible] in the sense of 'three forms,' and Professor Hillebrandt, l. c., in that of 'three relations of [illegible] Beziehungen.'

hymns addressed to them, singly or jointly, this pair of deities occupies a somewhat subordinate position in the Vedic pantheon, there is reason to believe that it formed a more prominent feature of a phase of belief lying beyond the period reflected in the hymns of the *Ṛig*-veda. Judging from the peculiar character of these deities, one might indeed be inclined to claim for the people that formed religious conceptions such as these a long period of peaceful dwelling and normal intellectual growth. If such was the case, the occupation of the land of the seven rivers and the gradual eastward drift certainly proved a turning-point in the development of this Aryan people. But, in any case, the decided change of climate[1], and the close contact with aboriginal tribes of inferior culture, could hardly fail, along with the changed conditions of life, to influence considerably the character of the people, and to modify their religious notions and intellectual tendencies. As, in their struggles against hostile tribes, the people would naturally look to leaders of deed and daring rather than to mild and just rulers, so the violent war of elements, periodically convulsing the heavens in these regions, after long and anxious seasons of heat and drought, and striking awe and terror into the minds of men, might seem to them to call for a heavenly champion of a different stamp than the even-headed and even-tempered Varuṇa.—it would need a divine leader of dauntless, and even ferocious, spirit to fight the worshipper's battle against his earthly and unearthly foes. Such a champion the Vedic Aryans indeed created for themselves in the person of Indra, the divine representative, as it were, of their warlike kings, and the favourite subject of their song. And side by side with him, and sharing with him the highest honours—nay, even taking precedence of him—we find the divine priest, Agni, the deified fire of sacrifice, as representing the all-pervading, all-supporting

[1] Whilst the climate of Baluchistan is regulated, as in Europe, by the succession of four seasons, the climate of the districts east of the Indus, as of India generally, shows the characteristic threefold division of rainy, cool, and hot seasons (S. Pottinger, Beloochistan, p. 319 seqq.).

light of heaven; just as we found Mitra, the sun, by the side of Varuṇa, the god of the all-encompassing heaven. Not as if Agni and Indra had ever entirely superseded Mitra and Varuṇa. On the contrary, all these gods continue to share, in a greater or less degree, the affections of the Vedic singers; and as regards Varuṇa and Indra in particular, their relations are well expressed by Vasishṭha when he says (*Ṛig*-v. VII, 82, 2; 5), that the one (Varuṇa) is 'samrâg' (universal ruler, overlord); and the other (Indra) 'svarâg' (self-ruler, independent lord);—and that, ever since the time when these two, by their power, created all the beings in the world, Mitra serves Varuṇa in peace, whilst the mighty (Indra) goes forth with the Maruts in quest of glory. Even in the sacrificial ritual, Mitra and Varuṇa continue to play an important part, seeing that one of the priests—the Maitrâvaruṇa—is named after them, that they receive various oblations, and that at the end of every Soma-sacrifice at least one sterile cow is offered to them, apparently as an expiatory victim, for shortcomings in the sacrifice[1], thus accentuating once more the ethical character of these deities. It is thus not to be wondered at that, whilst Agni and Indra are most commonly referred to in the Brâhmaṇas as the divine representatives of the Brahman and Kshatra, or the spiritual and the political powers—the high priest and king—respectively, the very same is the case as regards Mitra and Varuṇa[2]; and the Maruts, representing the common people, are accordingly associated with Varuṇa,

[1] Taitt. S. VI, 6, 7, 4, explains this offering as symbolically smoothing down the sacrifice torn up by recited verses and chanted hymns, even as a field, torn up by the plough, is levelled by a roller 'matya,' taken however by Sây. in the sense of 'cow-dung'). The *Sat.* Br. does not allude to the expiatory character of the offering, but there can be no doubt that it is of an essentially piacular significance. It need scarcely be mentioned that the 'avabhṛitha,' or lustral bath, at the end of Soma- and other sacrifices, is distinctly explained (II, 5, 2, 46; IV, 4, 5, 10) as intended to clear the Sacrificer of all guilt for which he is liable to Varuṇa. Cf. Taitt. Br. III, 9, 15, 'At the lustral bath he offers the last oblation with "To Gumbaka hail!" for Gumbaka is Varuṇa: he thus finally frees himself from Varuṇa by offering.'

[2] See, for instance, *Sat.* Br. IV, 1, 4, 2; V, 3, 2, 4; IX, 4, 2, 16; Maitr. S. IV, 5, 8; Taitt. Br. III, 1, 2, 7 (kshatrasya râṣṭrâ Varuṇo 'dhirâgaḥ).

as their king or ruler (*Sat. Br.* II, 5, 2, 34), just as they are with Indra (II, 5, 2, 27). One might thus expect that Indra would claim the same special connection[1] with the sacrificial horse as that which is conceded to Varuṇa. The reason why this is not the case probably is that, in the Brâhmaṇa period, the notion of the horse having, like the sun, originated from the cosmic waters had become as firmly established as was the traditional connection—nay, even identity[2]—of Varuṇa with the element of water generally.

As regards Varuṇa's and Pragâpati's joint connection with the sacrificial horse, the Taitt. S. (II, 3, 12, 1) records the following legend which may perhaps have some bearing on this point:—Pragâpatir Varuṇâyâśvam anayat, sa svâṃ devatâm ârkhat, sa pary adîryata, sa etaṃ vâruṇaṃ katushkapâlam apaśyat, taṃ nir avapat, tato vai sa varuṇapâśâd amuchyata, Varuṇo vâ etaṃ gṛihṇâti yo 'śvaṃ pratigṛihṇâti, yâvato 'śvân pratigṛihṇîyât tâvato vâruṇâñ katushkapâlân nir vaped, Varuṇam eva svena bhâgadheyenopa dhâvati, sa evainaṃ varuṇapâśân muñchati:—'Pragâpati led up the horse to Varuṇa: he (thereby) impaired his own godhead, and became racked all over with dropsy. He beheld that four-kapâla (cake) sacred to Varuṇa, and offered it, and thereupon was freed from Varuṇa's noose; for Varuṇa seizes him who takes (receives) a horse,—as many horses as one takes so many four-kapâla (cakes) one ought to offer to Varuṇa: one (thereby) hastens up to Varuṇa with his (V.'s) own share, and he (V.) frees him from Varuṇa's noose.'

The interpretation of this legend presents, however, some difficulties. Dr. Hillebrandt, 'Varuṇa und Mitra' (p. 64), translates the first sentence by—'Pragâpati führte dem

[1] Since all the gods are concerned in the Aśvamedha—whence the horse is called 'vaiśvadeva'—Indra would of course have a general interest in it. Indra is also associated with the horse in so far as he is said to have first mounted it, *Ṛig*-veda I, 163, 2, 9. Indra's two bays (harî) of course belong to a different conception.

[2] Âpo vai Varuṇaḥ, Maitr. S. IV, 8, 5.

Varuṇa das Ross fort[1]' 'Pragâpati led the horse away from Varuṇa': this would undoubtedly make better sense, but, unfortunately, the construction of 'nî' with the dative in this sense would involve a decided solecism. Sâyaṇa, on the other hand, takes it in the same sense as we have done, and he explains that it is just by giving away the horse whose deity he himself is that Pragâpati forfeits his godhead[2]. He feels, however, afterwards constrained to assign to 'pratigṛihṇâti' the causal force of 'he causes it to be taken, he gives it away,' which is clearly impossible. But whatever the correct interpretation of the opening clause may be, it seems at all events clear that the sacrificial horse is represented in the legend as undergoing a change of ownership from the one deity to the other.

When one compares the ceremonial of the Aśvamedha, as expounded in the Brâhmaṇa, with the ritual indications contained in the two hymns already referred to, one is struck by the very marked contrast between the two. For whilst, on the central day of the Aśvamedha alone, the ritual requires the immolation of not less than 349 victims bound to twenty-one stakes (p. 311, n. 1)—not counting two sets of eleven Savanîya victims (p. 383, n. 3) subsequently added thereto—the hymns (I, 162, 2–4; 163, 12) seem only to mention two victims, viz. the horse itself, and a he-goat. This latter animal which is to precede the horse when led to the sacrificial ground (and stake), and to

[1] This, no doubt, might possibly be taken to mean 'Pragâpati led away the horse for Varuṇa,' but Dr. Hillebrandt could hardly have meant it in this sense, since his argument apparently is that the horse (like Varuṇa himself) represents the aqueous element, and that thus, by taking to himself the horse, Pragâpati incurs dropsy. The exact point which interests us here, viz. the relation between Pragâpati and Varuṇa as regards the sacrificial horse, lies outside Dr. Hillebrandt's inquiry.

[2] In Dr. Hillebrandt's interpretation, it is also not quite easy to see in what way Pragâpati, by carrying off Varuṇa's horse, impaired—'griff an,' attacked, assailed—his own godhead. One might possibly refer 'svâm' to the horse, but this would make the construction rather harsh. The verb 'nî' here would seem to refer to the leading up of the sacrificial horse to the offering-ground, either for being set free for a year's roaming, or for sacrifice, for both of which acts the verb 'ud-â-nî'—i. e. to lead up the horse from the water where it was washed—is used (Sat. Br. XIII, 4. 2. 1; 5, 1, 16).

be slaughtered first in order to carry the welcome news of the sacrifice to the gods, is in one place referred to as Pûshan's share, and in another as going forward to the dear seat of Indra and Pûshan[1]. Sâṅkhâyana (Srautas. XVI, 3, 27 30), however, takes these statements of the Ṛishi to refer to two different he-goats, both of which he includes amongst the victims tied to the horse's limbs, viz. one, sacred to Pûshan, tied to the forehead, and another, sacred to Indra and Pûshan, fastened to the navel, of the horse[2]. The corresponding 'paryaṅgya' victims recognised by the Maitrâyaṇî Saṃhitâ (III, 13) and the White Yagus (Vâg. S. XXIV, 1), on the other hand, are a black-necked he-goat for Agni, tied to the forehead, and a black or grey (syáma) one, bound to the navel, and consecrated by the one authority to Pûshan, and by the other to Soma and Pûshan. But, curiously enough, the Taittirîya school (Taitt. Br. III, 8, 23; Âp. Sr. XX, 13, 12) recognises not only Sâṅkhâyana's two victims, but also the one for Agni; whilst in regard to the other victims also it differs considerably from the other schools of the Yagur-veda. Seeing, then, that there is so little agreement on these points even amongst different branches of the same Veda, one can hardly escape the inference that, in this respect at least, there was no continuity of ritual practice since the time of those two hymns. As regards the other points therein alluded to, the he-goat and horse are referred to

[1] *Ṛig*-veda S. I, 162, 2. 'When, held by the mouth (by the bridle), they lead round the offering of the (horse) covered with rich trappings, the all-coloured he-goat goes bleating in front right eastwards to the dear seat of Indra and Pûshan. 3. This he-goat, fit for all the gods, is led in front of the swift horse as Pûshan's share; like (?) the welcome cake, Tvash*ṭri* promotes it, along with the steed, to great glory. 4. When thrice the men duly lead around the horse meet for offering along the way to the gods, then the he-goat walks first, announcing the sacrifice to the gods. . . . 16. The cloth which they spread (for the horse to lie upon) and the upper cloth and the gold, the halter, the steed, the shackle—these they bring up as acceptable to the gods.'—I, 163, 12. 'Forth came the swift steed to the slaughter, musing with reverent mind; his mate, the he-goat, is led in front; and behind go the wise singers.'

[2] According to the Taittirîyas, this second he-goat is tied to the cord surrounding the horse's limbs somewhere above the neck of the horse.

as being led round thrice in accordance with the sacred ordinance. Now, this ceremony is quite foreign to the later practice in animal sacrifices. Sâyaṇa accordingly takes it to refer to the rite of 'paryagnikaraṇa,' or carrying fire round the victims[1]; but the text of the passage evidently does not admit of such an interpretation; and, besides, in *Ṛig*-v. X, 155, 5, the sacrificial cow is apparently referred to as first being led round, and then fire being carried round it. It is therefore more probable that the victims were in the first place made to circumambulate the fire, or the fire and stake combined.

Further, the allusion to the paśu-puroḍâśas, or cakes offered in connection with the victims, as well as to the two cloths and the piece of gold placed on the ground, as they are in the later practice, for the dead horse to lie upon, might seem to suggest that even then this sacrifice was not performed in quite so simple a manner, but somewhat more in accordance with the later ceremonial than the scanty allusions in the hymns might lead one to suppose. At all events, however, we shall probably not be far wrong in assuming that, from the very beginning, the performance of the horse-sacrifice must have had connected with it a certain amount of ceremonial of a purely secular and popular character. Even at the time of the fully developed ritual this was almost certainly the case to a larger extent than would appear from the exposition of it given in the Bráhmaṇas and Sûtras which, indeed, are mainly concerned with the religious side of the ceremonial. For this reason considerable interest attaches to the description of the horse-sacrifice given in the Âśvamedhika-parvan of the Mahábhárata in which much greater stress is laid on the popular and chivalrous aspect of this religious observance. Though this epic account manifestly emanates from a much later period[2], it seems, upon the whole, to present the

[1] See p. 307, note 5.

[2] It has even been supposed to be merely a condensed version of a comparatively modern work ascribed to Gaimini, the Aśvamedha-parvan of the Gaimini-Bhárata.

traditional features of this royal ceremony, embellished no doubt by all the exercise of that poetic fancy to which the occasion so readily lends itself.

On the completion of the great war between the Pâṇḍava and Kaurava princes, Yudhishṭhira, having re-ascended the throne of his fathers, resolves on performing the horse-sacrifice, as calculated to cleanse him of all guilt[1] incurred by the slaughter of his Kaurava kinsmen. Having been initiated on the day of the Kaitra full-moon (beginning of spring), 'the king, clad in a linen (? silk) garment and the skin of a black antelope, bearing a staff in his hand, and wearing a gold wreath, and a round gold plate[2] round his neck, shone like a second Pragâpati at the holy cult.' The chosen steed[3], of black and white colour like the black buck, is then led up, and is set free by the sage Vyâsa himself; and that model of knightly perfection, Arguna, the king's second brother, is appointed to guard the priceless victim during its year's roaming. He accordingly starts after it on his chariot yoked with white steeds, attended by a picked body-guard[4], amidst the rejoicings and fervent blessings of all Hastinâpura—men, women, and children. Thus followed by its martial escort, the noble steed roams at will over the lands

[1] Vyâsa remarks to Yudhishṭhira (XIV, 2071), 'For the Asvamedha, O king of kings, cleanses away all ill-deeds: by performing it thou wilt without doubt become free from sin.' Cf. Sat. Br. XIII, 3, 1, 1, 'Thereby the gods redeem all sin, yea, even the slaying of a Brahman they thereby redeem; and he who performs the Asvamedha redeems all sin, he redeems even the slaying of a Brahman.' As a rule, however, greater stress is laid in the Brâhmaṇa on the efficacy of the ceremonial in ensuring supreme sway to the king, and security of life and property to his subjects.

[2] The 'rukma' is borne by the Agnikit, or builder of a fire-altar, which is required for the Asvamedha; cf. VI, 7, 1, 1.

[3] It is carefully selected by charioteers and priests, Mahâbh. XIV, 2087.

[4] Whilst, according to the Brâhmaṇa (XIII, 4, 2, 5), the body of 'keepers' is to consist of 100 royal princes clad in armour, 100 noblemen armed with swords, 100 sons of heralds and headmen bearing quivers and arrows, and 100 sons of attendants and charioteers bearing staves; the epic gives no details, except that it states that 'a disciple of Yâgñavalkya, skilled in sacrificial rites, and well-versed in the Veda, went along with the son of Pṛithâ to perform the propitiatory rites,' and that 'many Brahmaṇas conversant with the Veda, and many Kshatriyas followed him at the king's behest.'

over which sovereign sway is claimed by the Pâṇḍava king—to wit, the whole of India from sea to sea—first pressing eastwards towards the sea, then turning southwards along the eastern shore as far as the extreme point of the peninsula, and finally northwards again, on its homeward way, along the western coast. Time after time the determined attempts to impede its progress, or even to capture and retain it as a precious trophy and token of national independence, are successfully repelled by the dauntless son of Pṛithâ; but, mindful of his brother's injunctions, he spares the lives of the kiñgs and princes who oppose him, and, having obtained their submission, he invites them to attend the sacrifice of the horse at Hastinâpura. On the other hand, not to take up the challenge implied in the progress of the horse was considered a sign of weakness or cowardice. Thus the king of Maṇipura is censured severely by Arguna for receiving him meekly, accompanied only by Brâhmans and with presents to offer to the intruder, being told that he had lamentably fallen away from the status of a Kshatriya, and acted the part of a woman. At length tidings of the approach of the horse reach the king, and forthwith preparations are made for getting ready the sacrificial ground, and to provide accommodation, on a right royal scale, for the numerous guests expected to witness the ceremonial. Specimens of all available species of animals are brought together to serve as victims[1] along with the sacred horse; and dialecticians,

[1] That is, real or symbolic, only the domesticated animals being offered, whilst the wild ones are set free after the ceremony of 'paryagnikaraṇa.' Amongst these animals the poet curiously enough also mentions (XIV, 2542) 'vṛiddhastriyaḥ,' which Pratapa Chandra Rây translates by 'old women.' This is of course impossible; if it is not a wrong reading, it has doubtless to be taken in the sense of 'old female (kine),' probably the (21) barren cows offered at the end of the Aśvamedha to Mitra-Varuṇa, the Viśve Devâḥ, and Bṛihaspati (XIII, 5, 4, 25) being intended. In its enumeration of the victims, the Taitt. Saṃhitâ (V, 6, 21) indeed mentions 'vairâgî purushi,' taken by the commentator to mean 'two human females consecrated to Virâg.' If it be for this or a similar purpose that the 'vṛiddha-striyaḥ' were intended, we may refer to Taitt. Br. III, 9, 8, where it is distinctly stated that 'the man' and the wild animals are to be released as soon as the 'paryagnikaraṇam' has been performed on them. But no 'man' being mentioned amongst the victims, Sayaṇa

eager to vanquish one another, foregather to discuss the nature and origin of things. At last Arguna arrives, and, having met with an enthusiastic welcome, he 'takes repose like a seafaring man who has reached the shore after crossing the ocean.' Then commences the performance of the sacrifice, the general outline of which, as sketched in the epic [1], fairly corresponds to the ordinary ceremonial: the chief points of difference being the form and material of the altar, which is described as three-cornered, like the heavenly bird Garu*d*a, and as being composed of a 'trunk,' measuring eighteen cubits, and made, like the wings, of gold bricks,—the structure thus shining like the altar of Daksha Pragâpati. The sacrifice over, a great public festival ensues for which 'mountains of food and sweetmeats, rivers of spirituous and other beverages, and lakes of ghee' are provided, and the feasting goes on through day and night till every one has had his fill.—a festival, indeed, of which the poet remarks people continued to talk to his day.

From the fanciful narrative of Arguna's martial exploits whilst following his precious charge, one could not of course venture to draw any conclusion as to the kind of adventures the sacred horse might have met with, at the time of the Brâhma*n*a, during the period of its roaming at large. As a rule, however, the closely-watched animal would probably not range very far from the place where the sacrifice was to be performed; and though its body of guardians were not permitted at any time to force it to retrace its steps, they could have had little difficulty in keeping it within a certain range of grazing. Indeed, on the occasion of King Da*s*aratha's A*s*vamedha [2], described in the first canto of the Râmâya*n*a, no mention whatever is made of

takes the 'purusham' here to refer to the 'vairâgî purushî' mentioned in the Sa*m*hitâ. Perhaps, however, this passage has rather a wider sense, referring to human victims generally at any sacrifice.

[1] Draupadî's A*s*va-upasa*m*ve*s*anam is referred to, but no further particulars are mentioned.

[2] The king's object, in performing the sacrifice, was to obtain the birth of a son. Cf. *S*at. Br. XIII, 1, 9, 9, 'for from of old a hero was born to him who had performed the (A*s*vamedha) sacrifice.'

anything having happened to the horse during its time of grace. The expedient mentioned in the Brâhmaṇa (XIII, 4, 2, 5) that a hundred worn-out horses should be sent along with the horse to keep it company would doubtless, as a rule, prove a sufficient check; but seeing that neither the Taitt. Brâhmaṇa nor Śâṅkhâyana alludes to this expedient, it is probably meant as a practical suggestion rather than as a positive injunction. That the horse intended for sacrifice was by no means always safe from violent assaults [1] is clear from the directions given in the Brâhmaṇas as to what should be done in the event of foes getting possession of it [2]. Even more pointed, in this respect, are the stanzas quoted in our Brâhmaṇa (XIII, 5, 4, 21. 22),—'Satânika Sâtrâgita seized a sacrificial horse in the neighbourhood, the sacrifice of the Kâśis, even as Bharata (seized that) of the Satvats. The mighty Satânika having seized, in the neighbourhood, Dhṛitarâshṭra's white sacrificial horse, whilst roaming at will in its tenth month [3], the son of Satrâgita performed the Govinata (form of) sacrifice.' As a rule, however, the fortunes of the roaming horse would doubtless depend largely on personal circumstances. Whilst a strong ruler who had already made his power felt amongst his neighbours would probably run little risk of having his consecrated victim kidnapped even though it were to stray beyond its master's boundaries, a prince of greater pretensions than resources might find it very difficult to secure the safety of his horse even if it kept well within the territory over which he ruled. In any case, however, the capture of the noble beast would doubtless

[1] Whilst cattle-lifting generally, such as formed the object of the invasion of the land of the Matsyas by the Trigartas (as related in the Virâṭa-parvan), was probably a practice pretty prevalent from ancient times, the stealing of the sacrificial horse would offer an additional temptation, from the political point of view, on account of the exceptional character of the animal as the symbol of its master's claim to paramountcy.

[2] Sat. Br. XIII, 1, 6, 3; Taitt. Br. III, 8, 9, 4.

[3] One might feel inclined to take this specification of that month as implying the existence, at the poet's time, of the practice of confining the horse in a pen or shed (made of Asvattha palings) during the last two months, mentioned Taitt. Br. III, 8, 12, 2.

cause not a little bad blood, and might lead to complications and struggles not less serious than those occasioned by Vasishṭha's cow, or, in Irish legend, by the brown bull of Queen Medb (Mab) of Connaught.

Whilst the epic account of the Aśvamedha thus presents an instructive, though extravagant, illustration of possible occurrences during the preliminary period of the sacrifice, some items of the ceremonial on which further information might have been acceptable are altogether ignored in it. Two of these at least one might have expected to find mentioned there, seeing that they are of special interest to Kshatriyas, viz. the practice of a Brâhmaṇa and a Kshatriya lute-player singing [1], morning and night, stanzas composed by themselves in honour of the king; and the so-called 'revolving legend' (XIII, 4, 3, 1 seqq.) related by the Hotṛi, in a ten days' cycle all the year round. It is especially in regard to this latter point that the statements of the ritualistic works might with advantage have been supplemented. During the ten days' cycle a different god, or some mythic personage, is assumed, on each successive day, to be king, having some special class of beings assigned to him as his subjects, and a certain body of texts as his Veda from which a section is then recited. But from the particulars given it even remains uncertain whether any legend connected with the respective deity was actually related; whilst regarding the form and nature of some of the specified texts—such as the sarpavidyâ (snake-science), devaganavidyâ (demonology), mâyâ (or asuravidyâ, magic art)—we really know next to nothing. Nay, even regarding the Itihâsas and Purâṇas, likewise figuring as distinct texts, additional knowledge would by no means be unwelcome. And though regarding some of the divinities referred to the Hotṛi might easily have made up some kind of short tale, others would have required some

[1] See XIII, 1, 5, 1 seqq.; 4, 2, 8 seqq.; Taitt. Br. III, 9, 14. In connection with the 'revolving legend,' the conductors of bands of lute-players seem to have sung additional stanzas in which the royal Sacrificer was associated with pious kings of old; see XIII, 4, 3, 3.

exercise of ingenuity, unless he had at his disposal materials other than those accessible to us. As a rule, however, legends of this kind would seem to have been of the simplest possible description, as may be gathered from the particulars regarding the 'Nârâśaṁsâni,' or recitals in praise of (pious) men, which, according to Śâṅkhâyana (XVI, 11), take the place of the 'revolving legend' in the ten days' cycle of the Purushamedha. The Hotṛi's recitals on that occasion consist simply of certain verses, or hymns, of the *Ṛig*-veda, generally celebrating the liberality shown by some patron to his priest, preceded by a brief statement merely consisting, it would seem, of a prose paraphrase of the respective verses recited thereafter. This latter set of recitations and legends thus consists entirely of matter taken from, or based on, the *Ṛig*-veda, which is indeed the proper source for the Hotṛi priest to resort to for his utterings. The recitations required for the Aśvamedha, on the other hand, consist of matter drawn not even from the three older Vedas alone, but also from the Atharvans and Aṅgiras whose names combined usually make up the old designation of the hymns and spells of the Atharva-veda, whilst they are here taken separately as if still representing two different collections of texts;—nay, the materials, as we have seen, are even drawn from other, probably still later, sources[1]. This circumstance, added to the fact that the texts of the Black Yagus make no mention of this item of the ceremonial[2], might well make one suspect its comparatively late introduction into the Aśvamedha ritual: though even this would not, of course, make it any the less strange that no allusion should be made, in the epic account, to this by no means the least interesting feature of the performance. One must, however, bear in mind that the poet's mind was evidently more intent on telling about the wonderful deeds

[1] It is hardly likely that some of the texts mentioned (devaganavidyâ, sarpavidyâ, &c.) refer merely to portions of the Vedic texts.

[2] The singing of stanzas in honour of the king, by a Brâhmaṇa and a Kshatriya, with the accompaniment of lutes, on the other hand, does form part of the Taittiriya ritual. Taitt. Br. III, 9, 14.

of the semi-divine bowman in foreign lands than on recording the regularly recurring rites performed, in the meantime, at home in the presence of the royal sacrificer himself. Even in cases where the horse was kept within a convenient distance from the sacrificial compound all the year round, its warders, themselves partly of royal blood, could hardly have had an opportunity of attending the performance of these rites; though the popular character of some of these rites, as well as certain expressions used in connection with the 'revolving legend,' would lead one to suppose that they were meant to be witnessed by at least representatives of the various classes of the population.

The ritual arrangements of the Purushamedha, or human sacrifice, of which the Brâhmaṇa treats next, seem to have been developed out of those of the Aśvamedha. Its first three Soma-days are essentially the same as the three days of the horse-sacrifice, except as regards the difference of victims on the second day. To these the authorities of the White Yagur-veda—and apparently also those of the Black Yagus[1]—add two more days, whilst the Śâṅkhâyana-sûtra[2], on the other hand, recognises but one additional day. Like the Vaitâna-sûtra, Śâṅkhâyana also differs from the other authorities in giving an entirely different character to the central feature of this performance, inasmuch as he makes it a real human sacrifice instead of a merely symbolic one. A peculiar interest thus attaches to this difference of theory, seeing that it involves the question as to how far down the practice of human sacrifices can be traced in India[3]. That such sacrifices were prac-

[1] Whilst the three Saṃhitâs contain no section relating to the Purushamedha, the Taittiriya-brâhmaṇa (III, 4) enumerates the 'symbolic' human victims in much the same way as does the Vâgasaneyi-saṃhitâ (see the present vol. p. 413 seqq.); and the Âpastamba-sûtra makes the performance similar to what it is in the White Yagus texts. The Vaitâna-sûtra of the Atharva-veda also makes it a five days' performance.

[2] Like the chapter on the Aśvamedha, that on the Purushamedha is stated to be taken from the Mahâ-Kaushîtaki-brâhmaṇa.

[3] On this question see especially A. Weber, Zeitsch. d. D. M. G. 18, p. 262 ff., repr. in Indische Streifen, II, p. 54 ff.

tised in early times is clearly shown by unmistakable traces of them in the ritualistic works; but in this respect India only shares a once almost universal custom. The question, then, which chiefly interests us here is whether or not this practice was still kept up at the time with which we are here concerned. Now, as regards the texts of the Yagur-veda—that is, the text-books of the sacrificial priest κατ' ἐξοχήν—it seems pretty clear that they no longer recognise the sacrifice of human beings; and the same may be said of the remaining ritualistic literature with the exception of the two works above referred to with regard to this particular sacrifice. The points bearing on this question, being very few in number, may be briefly reviewed here.

First as regards the story of Śunaḥśepa which is recited at the Râgasûya sacrifice[1], and has been several times treated before[2]. King Hariśćandra, being childless, prays to Varuṇa to grant him a son, vowing to sacrifice him to the god. A son is born to him, and is called Rohita; but, in spite of the god's repeated demands, the fulfilment of the vow is constantly deferred; till at last the youth, having been invested in armour, is told of the fate awaiting him. He, however, refuses to be sacrificed, and escapes to the forest. The king thereupon is seized with dropsy; and the son, hearing of this, hastens homeward to save his father. On the way he is met by Indra who urges him to wander, and he accordingly does so for a year. The same is repeated five different times. In the sixth year, the prince, while wandering in the forest, comes across a starving Brâhman, Agigarta, who lives there with his wife and three sons, and who consents to sell him one of his sons for a hundred cows to serve him as a ransom to Varuṇa. The Brâhman wishing to keep his eldest son, whilst the mother refuses to part with the youngest, the choice falls upon

[1] See part iii, p. 95.

[2] Cf. Max Müller, History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 108 ff.; M. Haug, Aitareya-brâhmaṇa, II, p. 460 ff.; R. Roth, Weber's Ind. Stud. I, 475 ff.; II, 112 ff.

the second boy, called *Sunaḥsepa*. Rohita now returns to his father who, having been told of the transaction, then proposes to *Varuṇa* to offer the Brâhman youth in lieu of his son; and the god, deeming a Brâhman better than a Kshatriya, consents to the exchange, and orders the king to perform the Râgasûya sacrifice, and to make the youth the chief victim on the Abhishe*ka*niya, or day of consecration. Four renowned *Ṛ*shis officiate as offering-priests: but when the human sacrifice is to be consummated, no one will undertake to bind the victim. The boy's own father, Agigarta, then volunteers to do so for another hundred cows; and subsequently he even undertakes to slay his son for a similar reward. But when the poor lad sees his own father coming towards him, whetting his knife, and becomes aware that he is really to be slain, 'as if he were not a man,' he bethinks himself of calling upon the gods for help; and by them he is successively referred from one to another, till by uttering three verses in praise of Ushas, the Dawn, he is released from his fetters, whilst the king is freed from his malady. Subsequently one of the four priests, the royal sage Visvâmitra, receives *Sunaḥsepa* as his son, conferring upon him the name of Devarâta (Theodotos), and refuses to give him up to Agigarta; and when the latter calls on his son to return to him, and not to desert his ancestral race, he replies, 'What has never been found even amongst *Sûdras*, thou hast been seen with a knife in thy hand, and hast taken three hundred cows for me, O Aṅgiras!' And on his father avowing his guilt, and promising to make over the cattle to him, he again replies, 'He who has once done wrong will commit another sin; thou hast not abandoned the ways of a *Sûdra*: what thou hast done is irremediable'; and 'is irremediable,' echoes Visvâmitra, who then formally adopts him as his son.

This legend[1], so far from bearing witness to the existence

[1] The earliest reference to the myth or story of *Sunaḥsepa* is in *Ṛig*-veda I, 24, 11–13; V, 2, 7, where he is apparently alluded to as having been actually

of human sacrifices as a generally recognised practice, at the time when it originated, would rather seem to mark this particular case as an exceptional one. For, if it were not so, how comes it that the king's four high-priests—who, if any, must have been looked upon as thorough masters of the sacrificial science—should have refused to assist in the immolation of the human victim ordered by the deity, leaving it to be accomplished by the sullied hands of the wretched father? But there is another feature of the story which cannot but strike one as very peculiar. Why should the childless king pray for the birth of a son only to make a sacrifice of him? He has been told to do so by the holy sage Nârada: is one then to understand that the sage's advice, as well as Varuṇa's consent, is given merely to try the king's faith and truthfulness? If so, the case is similar to that of Abraham's sacrifice in the land of Moriah, only that the king's faith proves less intense and exalted—perhaps more humanly faint-hearted—than that of the Jewish patriarch. But the most striking feature of the legend doubtless is the part played in it by the unnatural father; and this feature seems indeed to impart to the tale something of the character of an allegorical representation of the contrast between a barbarous (and perhaps earlier) and a more civilised phase of life and moral feeling[1]. In this respect two points deserve to be noticed, viz. the coarseness of the synonymous names ('dog's tail') of the three sons of the Brâhman[2]; and the fact that the latter belongs to the Aṅgiras stock, a name intimately associated with super-

rescued from the stake, or from (three) stakes to which he was bound either for sacrifice, or, as Roth prefers, for torture.

[1] In the Sabhâparvan of the Mahâbhârata (II, 6275 seqq.), as was first pointed out by Lassen, Kṛishṇa accuses Jarâsandha, king of Magadha and Âedi, residing at Mathurâ, of having carried off numerous vanquished kings and princes to his city, and keeping them confined in his mountain stronghold with a view to afterwards sacrificing them (at his Râgasûya) to the lord of Umâ (Rudra); adding subsequently (v. 864) that 'the immolation of men was never seen at any time.'

[2] His own name 'Agigarta,' on the other hand, is taken by the St. Petersburg Dictionary to mean 'one who has nothing to swallow,' and would thus be merely descriptive of his condition of life.

stitious rites[1] on the one hand, and with the ritual of the fire-altar[2] on the other.

Now, it is exactly in connection with the building of the fire-altar that the clearest, and most unmistakable trace of an old practice of human sacrifices—or rather of the slaying of men for sacrificial purposes—occurs. In laying down the bottom layer of the altar, the pan which had been used by the Sacrificer for carrying about the sacred fire for a year is built into this layer, with heads of the five recognised sacrificial animals[3]—man, horse, ox, sheep, and goat—put therein, in order to impart stability to the altar (Sat. Br. VII, 5, 2, 1 seqq.). In a previous passage of the Brâhmaṇa[4] (I, 2, 3, 6 seq.) where the relative value of non-animal offering-materials and the five sacrificial animals is discussed, it was stated that, whilst the gods were making use of one after another of these animals, the sacrificial essence gradually passed from one to the other, thus rendering the previous one useless for sacrifice, until it finally passed into the earth whence it entered the rice and barley afterwards used for sacrificial dishes. The general purport of this passage would seem to be to indicate a gradual tendency towards substituting the lower for the higher animals, and ultimately vegetable for animal offerings; though, as a matter of fact, animals continued of

[1] Viz. in their connection with the Atharva-veda. In Mahâbh. V, 548-51 Aṅgiras praises Indra by means of 'Atharvavedamantraiḥ.' Cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 297.

[2] Both in making the fire-pan (ukhâ) and in laying down the bricks of the fire-altar, the expression 'aṅgirasvat' (as in the case of Aṅgiras) frequently occurs in the formulas; cf. VI, 1, 2, 28; 3, 1, 38 ff.; 4, 1, 1 ff.

[3] All that is said in the Brâhmaṇa regarding the headless bodies of the five victims is (VI, 2, 1, 7 seqq.) that Prâgâpati, having cut off the heads, and put them on (the altar, i. e. on himself), plunged four of the trunks into the water, and brought the sacrifice to a completion by (offering) the he-goat (not *a* he-goat, as translated), and that he subsequently gathered up the water and mud (clay) in which those corpses had lain, and used them for making bricks for the altar. The view that the other four bodies should likewise be offered is rejected by the author, who rather seems to suggest that they should be allowed to float away on the water.

[4] A very similar passage occurs in Ait. Br. VI, 8, on which cp. Max Müller, History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 420.

course to be commonly sacrificed in later times. Now as regards the heads of the five victims, the author subsequently (VI, 2, 1, 37 seqq.) makes some further remarks which go far to show that his previous statements referred only to the traditional practice which, however, was no longer in use in his own day, and had probably not been so for generations past. He mentions various expedients adopted by some priests with a view to keeping up at least some semblance of the old custom,—viz. either by procuring real heads from some source or other, or by using heads made of gold or clay; but they are summarily dismissed as profane and fraudulent counterfeits; and the author then remarks somewhat vaguely and diplomatically that 'one may slay those five victims as far as one may be able (or inclined) to do so, for Pragâpati was the first to slaughter them, and Śyâparṇa Sâyakâyana the last, and in the interval also people used to slaughter them; but at the present day people slaughter only (one of[1]) those two, the (he-goat) for Pragâpati, and the one for Vâyu;' after which he proceeds to explain in detail the practice then in ordinary use. Later on (VII, 5, 2, 1 seqq.), the Brâhmaṇa expounds in the usual way the formulas used in the traditional, and theoretically still available procedure, though in the actual performance perhaps only the formulas relating to the particular heads[2] used would be muttered.

While Yâgñavalkya thus, at least in theory, deals rather cautiously with this feature of the traditional custom, the theologians of the Black Yagus[3] take up a somewhat bolder position. Indeed it is evidently against this older school of ritualists that some of the censure of our Brâhmaṇa is directed. For though they too allow, as an alternative practice, the use of a complete set of five heads, they make

[1] This doubtless is what is meant (cf. Kâty. XVI, 1, 38); and 'atha' at the beginning of VI, 2, 2, 6 ought accordingly to have been taken in the rather unusual sense of 'or' (? 'or rather'), instead of 'then.' Cf. VI, 2, 2, 15.

[2] According to Âp. Śr. XVI, 17, 19–20, however, even if there is only one head (that of Vâyu's he-goat) all the formulas are to be pronounced over it.

[3] The Maitr. Saṃhitâ, however, does not seem to refer to this particular point in its Brâhmaṇa sections.

no mention of a man being killed for this purpose, but enjoin that a dead man's head is to be bought for twenty-one beans[1], which is then to be laid against an ant-hill with seven holes in order to again supply it with the seven 'vital airs of the head'; whereupon three stanzas relating to Yama are to be sung round about it to redeem it from the god of death. Besides the four animals, there is also to be a he-goat sacred to Pragâpati, the offering of which is to complete the animal sacrifice[2]. In this school also[3], the ordinary practice, however, is to kill only a he-goat for Vâyu Niyutvat, and to use its head for putting it in the pan placed in the bottom layer of the altar. As regards the *Rig*-veda ritual, the Kaushîtaki-brâhma*n*a, as Prof. Weber has pointed out, leaves a choice between a he-goat for Pragâpati and one for Vâyu; whilst the *Sâṅkhâyana*-sûtra, curiously enough, again adds the alternative course of using the set of five heads.

The same scholar has drawn attention to another rite in the sacrificial ceremonial which seems to him to show clear traces of human sacrifice. At the purificatory bath at the end of the *Asva*medha, the Sacrificer is to be purged of any guilt he may have committed against Varu*n*a by an oblation made to *Gum*baka (Varu*n*a) on the bald head of a man possessed of certain repulsive features, whilst standing in the water. To these particulars,—as given in the present work (XIII, 3. 6, 5), the Taitt. Brâhma*n*a (III, 9, 15), and Kâtyâyana's Sûtra (XX, 8, 16),—*Sâṅkhâyana* (XVI, 18)

[1] Or, according to Âpastamba, for seven beans; the head to be that of a Kshatriya or a Vai*s*ya killed either by an arrow-shot or by lightning, and apparently to be severed from the body at the time of purchase (which, as Professor Weber rightly remarks, is a merely symbolic one). As, however, the particulars given by Âpastamba are not mentioned in the older works, they may not unlikely have been introduced by him to meet some of the objections raised by the Vâ*g*asaneyins to whose views he generally pays some attention. Otherwise the transaction might seem rather suspicious.

[2] Taitt. S. V, 1, 83, indeed, seems to speak of the other four animals being set free after fire has been carried round, so that their sacrificial use would be merely symbolical. Whether in that case only the head of the one animal would be used, or the man's head along with it, seems doubtful.

[3] Cf. Taitt. S. V, 5.

again adds further particulars, viz. that the man is to be a Brâhmaṇa of the Âtreya family, bought (or hired) for a thousand cows, and that he is to enter the river till the water flows into his mouth. Now Prof. Weber is of opinion that this ceremony would be meaningless if the man were not actually drowned. I fail, however, to see the necessity of this assumption, seeing that even a purely symbolical interpretation of the ceremony will give it all the significance of the real act. That the Yagus texts contain nothing that could make one suspect that the man was actually drowned is beyond doubt: but even Sâṅkhâyana's statement that the water is to flow into his mouth is probably only meant to suggest the nearness and semblance of death by drowning. Otherwise the oblation could hardly have been performed in anything like a decent form. Besides, Sâṅkhâyana further states that, after the completion of the oblation, 'they drive him (the man) out, thinking that the guilt of the village-outcasts is (thereby) driven out[1].' Here the verb 'ni*h*-sidh' could hardly have been used if the man was to be driven farther into the water. What is meant is probably that the man was to be driven out from the water, and possibly also from the village, to live an anchorite's life in the forest.

If now we turn our attention to the Purushamedha, or 'human sacrifice' proper, we find that the Yagus texts, as far as they deal with this ceremony at all[2], treat it as

[1] The compound 'nirâshi*h*kâpâpmâna*h* (apagatâ*h*)' may possibly be meant in the sense that the evil deeds of the outcasts are driven out (prevented from troubling the peace of the village); Kâty. XX, 8, 17-18, however, states that when the Sacrificer has stepped out of the water, evil-doers enter to bathe in the water without having performed any other rites, and that they are then said to be 'purified by the Asvamedha.'

[2] Besides the description of the ceremony in the present work (XIII, 6, 1-2, 20), only the Taittiriya-brâhmaṇa III, 4 seems to refer to it, enumerating merely the would-be victims who, according to Âpastamba, as quoted by Sâyaṇa, are eventually set free. Professor Weber's suggestion that they may possibly at one time have been intended to be all of them slaughtered can hardly have been meant seriously. One might as well suppose that, at the Asvamedha, all the 'evil-doers' who, according to Kâtyâyana, are to bathe in the river, were meant to be drowned.

a purely symbolical performance. A large number of men and women, apparently intended to represent all classes of the community, are bound to eleven sacrificial posts, and after the necessary rites, concluding with the 'paryagni-karaṇa'—or the carrying of fire round the oblations—have been performed on them, they are one and all set free; the sacrifice then proceeding with the offering of the set of eleven animal victims. That the ceremony in this form, with its pedantically elaborate array of symbolic human victims, cannot possibly lay claim to any very great antiquity is self-evident; the only question is whether it has not come to take the place of some other form of human sacrifice. Now, after the foregoing statement of facts, it would be idle to deny that the existence, at one time, of a simple form of human sacrifice is not only quite possible, but is indeed highly probable: and it would be no more than might be expected, if such a practice should eventually have revolted the moral sense of the more refined classes of the community[1], just as it happened, little more than a hundred years ago, in the case of the scarcely less odious practice of the burning of witches in Christian lands.

The practice of human sacrifices seems, however, to receive evidence of a yet more direct and unmistakable kind than the facts hitherto mentioned, from the ceremonial of the Purushamedha, as set forth in the Sâṅkhâyana and Vaitâna Sûtras. If this evidence has been reserved here to the last, it is because there seems reason to believe that, in the form in which it is presented in those works, the sacrifice was never actually performed, and probably never meant to be performed, but that we have here to do with a mere theoretical scheme intended to complete the sacrificial system. The importance of the subject makes it, however, desirable that we should take a somewhat closer view of the procedure of the 'human sacrifice,' as laid down in those two Sûtras.

[1] When the practice became generally recognised that the Sacrificer (and priests) should eat a portion of the offered victim, this alone would, as Professor Weber suggests, have tended to make human sacrifices impracticable.

Śâṅkh. XVI. 10, 1. Pragâpati, having offered the Aśvamedha, beheld the Purushamedha: what he had not gained by the Aśvamedha, all that he gained by the Purushamedha[1]; and so does the sacrificer now, in performing the Purushamedha, gain thereby all that he had not gained by the Aśvamedha. 2, 3. The whole of the Aśvamedha ceremonial (is here performed): and an addition thereto. 4-8. First oblations to Agni Kâma (desire), A. Dâtṛi (the giver), and A. Pathikṛit (the path-maker) . . . 9. Having bought a Brâhmaṇa or a Kshatriya for a thousand (cows) and a hundred horses, he sets him free for a year to do as he pleases in everything except breaches of chastity. 10. And they guard him accordingly. 11. For a year there are (daily) oblations to Anumati (approval), Pathyâ Svasti (success on the way), and Aditi. 12. Those (three daily oblations) to Savitṛi[2] in the reverse order. 13. By way of revolving legends (the Hotṛi recites) Nârâśaṃsâni . . .—XVI. 11, 1–33 enumerate the Nârâśaṃsâni[3], together with the respective Vedic passages.—XVI, 12, 1–7. There are twenty-five stakes, each twenty-five cubits long . . .; and twenty-five Agnîshomîya victims. 8. Of the (three) Aśvamedha days the first and last (are here performed). 9–11. The second (day) is a pañkaviṃśa-stoma one . . . 12. The Man, a Gomṛiga, and a hornless (polled) he-goat—these are the Prâgâpatya[4] (victims). 13. A Bos Gaurus, a Gayal, an elk (śarabha), a camel, and a Mâyu Kimpurusha (? shrieking monkey) are the anustaraṇâḥ. 14-16. And the (other) victims in groups of twenty-five for the twenty-five seasonal deities . . . 17. Having made the adorned Man smell (kiss) the chanting-ground, (he addresses him) with the eleven verses (*Ṛig*-v. X, 15, 1–11) without 'om,'—'Up shall rise (the Fathers worthy of Soma), the lower, the

[1] The Aśvamedha section of the same work begins:—Pragâpati desired, 'May I gain all my desires, may I attain all attainments.' He beheld this three days' sacrificial performance, the Aśvamedha, and took it, and offered with it; and by offering with it he gained all his desires, and attained all attainments.

[2] See XIII, 4, 2, 6–17.

[3] See p. xxxii.

[4] See XIII, 2, 2, 2 seqq.

higher, and the middle ones.' 18. The Âpri verses are 'Agnir mṛityuḥ' . . . 20. They then spread a red cloth, woven of kuśa grass, for the Man to lie upon. 21. The Udgâtṛi approaches the suffocated Man with (the chant of) a Sâman to Yama (the god of death).—XVI, 13. 1. The Hotṛi with (the recitation of) the Purusha Nârâyaṇa (litany). 2. Then the officiating priests—Hotṛi, Brahman, Udgâtṛi, Adhvaryu—approach him each with two verses of the hymn (on Yama and the Fathers) *Ṛig*-v. X. 14, 'Revere thou with offering King Yama Vaivasvata, the gatherer of men, who hath walked over the wide distances tracing out the path for many.' 3–6. They then heal the Sacrificer (by reciting hymns X, 137; 161; 163; 186; 59; VII, 35). 7–18. Ceremonies analogous to those of the Asvamedha (cf. XIII, 5, 2, 1 seqq.), concluding with the Brahmavadya (brahmodya).—XVI, 14, 1–20. Details about chants, &c.: the fourth (and last) day of the Purushamedha to be performed like the fifth of the Pṛishṭhya-shaḍaha.

Vait. S. XXXVII, 10. The Purushamedha (is performed) like the Asvamedha . . . 12. There are offerings to Agni Kâma, Dâtṛi, and Pathikṛit. 13. He causes to be publicly proclaimed, 'Let all that is subject to the Sacrificer assemble together!' 14. The Sacrificer says, 'To whom shall I give a thousand (cows) and a hundred horses to be the property of his relatives? Through whom shall I gain my object?' 15. If a Brâhmaṇa or a Kshatriya comes forward, they say, 'The transaction is completed.' 16. If no one comes forward, let him conquer his nearest enemy, and perform the sacrifice with him. 17. To that (chosen man) he shall give that (price) for his relatives. 18. Let him make it be publicly known that, if any one's wife were to speak [1], he will seize that man's whole property, and kill herself, if she be not a Brâhmaṇa woman. 19. When, after being bathed and adorned, he (the man) is set free, he (the priest) recites the hymns A.V. XIX, 6; X, 2.—20. For a year (daily) offerings to Pathyâ Svasti, Aditi, and

[1] That is, as it would seem, with a view to dissuading her husband from offering himself as a victim.

Anumati. 21. At the end of the year an animal offering to Indra-Pûshan. 22. The third day is a Mahâvrata. 23. When (the man [1]) is bound to the post, he repeats the three verses, 'Up shall rise' . . .; and when he is unloosened, the utthâpani-verses. 24-26. When he is taken to the slaughtering-place (the priest repeats) the harimi-verses; when he is made to lie down, the two verses, 'Be thou soft for him, O Earth'; and when he has been suffocated, (he repeats) the Sahasrabâhu (or Purusha Nârâyaṇa) litany, and hymns to Yama and Sarasvatî — XXXVIII, 1–9 treat of the subsequent ceremonies, including the recitation, by the Brahman, of hymns with the view of healing the Sacrificer.

Now, even a slight consideration of the ritual of the Purushamedha, as sketched out in these two works, must, I think, convince us that this form of human sacrifice cannot possibly be recognised—any more than the one propounded in the Satapatha and Taittiriya Brâhmaṇas—as having formed part of the traditional sacrificial ceremonial; and that, in fact, it is nothing more than what Sâṅkhâyana appears to claim for it, viz. an adaptation, and that a comparatively modern adaptation, of the existing Asvamedha ritual. Indeed, it seems to me by no means unlikely that the two different schemes of the Purushamedha originated at about the same time, and that they were intended to fill up a gap in the sacrificial system which seemed to require for Man, as the chief sacrificial animal, a more definite and, so to speak, a more dignified place in the ceremonial than was up to that time accorded to him. The circumstance that the account of this sacrifice, as given in the Sâṅkhâyana-sûtra, presents some of the ordinary features of Brâhmaṇa diction, and that it is indeed actually assigned by the commentary to the Mahâ-Kaushîtaka, should not be allowed to weigh with us, since this is most likely done for the very purpose of securing for this scheme some sort of authoritative sanction of respectable

[1] Dr. Garbe, in his translation, makes this and the subsequent rules refer erroneously I think, to the animal victims of rule 21.

antiquity[1]. For seeing that the older ritualistic works know nothing of it, it seems sufficiently evident that this human sacrifice could not possibly have been *rite* performed in Sâṅkhâyana's time, since no proper priest—no genuine Adhvaryu and Udgâtri, at all events—could have been found to perform it. And, indeed, it can scarcely be without significance that the Atharva-sûtra is the only other work which recognises the ceremony: and that nearly all the hymns and verses used in connection with the immolation of the human victim are taken from the Atharvan and the tenth ma*ṇḍ*ala of the *Ṛ*k. Nay, the very fact that, in both Sûtra works, this sacrifice is represented as being undertaken, not for the great object of winning immortal life, but for the healing of the Sacrificer's bodily infirmities, might seem sufficient to stamp the ceremony as one partaking more of the nature of the superstitious rites of the Atharvan priests than of that of the great sacrifices of the traditional Śrauta ritual.

If thus we find it impossible to recognise the Purushamedha as a genuine member of the sacrificial system, this is still more the case as regards the Sarvamedha, or all-sacrifice, a ten days' performance which includes amongst its component parts, not only the Purushamedha, but also the Aśvamedha, the Vâgapeya, and the Viśvagit with all the Stomas and Pṛ*ṣ*h*ṭ*has,—it thus being the very ceremonial performance that might seem calculated to fitly crown the edifice of the sacrificial theory. As regards the ritualistic treatment of this sacrifice, the number of authorities dealing with it shows a further diminution from that of the Purushamedha. For whilst the Śatapatha-brâhma*ṇ*a agrees with the Śâṅkhâyana and Vaitâna Sûtras on the general features of its ritual—with the exception, of course, of the radical difference as to the character of the human sacrifice—the Taittiriya-brâhma*ṇ*a, which gave at least the list of the symbolic victims of the Purushamedha, is altogether silent on the Sarvamedha; this ceremony being,

[1] On this and other passages referred to the Mahâ-Kaushîtaka, cp. Professor Aufrecht's judicious remarks, Ait. Br., p. v.

however, dealt with in some of the Sûtra works connected with the Black Yagus.

The concluding chapter of the thirteenth kâṇḍa contains a valuable and interesting account of the preparation of the burial-place or sepulchral mound, and the interment of the charred bones previously preserved, in an urn or jar, for some indefinite period since the burning of the dead body. Of especial interest, in this account, is the statement that the bones, when committed to the grave, are to be arranged in accordance with their natural position, the spaces between them being then filled up with bricks in such a way as to present, as in the case of the fire-altar, a fancied resemblance to the shape of a bird. It is difficult to see what explanation could be offered for this feature of the obsequies, except a vague belief in some form of future resurrection.

The fourteenth kâṇḍa, up to the beginning of the Bṛihad-âraṇyaka, is entirely taken up with the exposition of the Pravargya, an important, though optional and subsidiary, ceremony performed on the Upasad-days of Soma-sacrifices. Whilst the central feature of this sacrificial performance consists of a ceremony of an apparently simple and unpretending character, viz. the preparation of a hot draught of milk and ghee, the Gharma, which the Sacrificer has to take, after oblations have been made thereof to various deities, the whole rite is treated with a considerable amount of mystic solemnity calculated to impart to it an air of unusual significance. A special importance is, however, attached to the rough clay pot, used for boiling the draught, and manufactured and baked in the course of the performance itself; it is called Mahâvîra, i. e. the great man or hero, and Samrâg, or sovereign lord, and is made the object of fervid adoration as though it were a veritable deity of well-nigh paramount power.

Although the history of this ceremony is somewhat obscure, the place assigned to it in the Soma-ritual would lead one to suppose that its introduction must have taken place at a time when the main procedure of the Soma-sacrifice had already been definitely settled. This con-

clusion is also borne out by the position taken up towards this ceremony by the authorities of the Black Yagur-veda. For whilst the Maitrâyaṇiyâ Saṃhitâ gives at least the formulas used for it, the Kâṭhaka, on the other hand, takes no notice whatever of it, and the Taittirîya school only deals with it in its Âraṇyaka. Nevertheless, this ceremony can boast of a respectable antiquity, seeing that it is treated of at some length in the Brâhmaṇas of the *Ṛig*—viz. Ait. Br. I, 18–22; Kaush. Br. VIII, 3–7; and this circumstance alone might almost seem to justify the inference that it was in that very school of ritualists that this item of the sacrificial ceremonial was first elaborated. It is very doubtful, however, whether such an inference would find any support in the dogmatic explanation of the ceremony offered by some of the theologians of the *Ṛig*-veda. At the end of the Pravargya section, in a passage which has a somewhat disconnected appearance, and seems hardly in consonance with previous dogmatic explanations, the Aitareya-brâhmaṇa makes the secret import of the ceremony to be that of a mystic union of the gods resulting in the generation of a new, divine body for the Sacrificer. This explanation, having been previously adopted by Haug and Garbe, was recorded without question in a note to part ii (p. 104) of this translation. Further consideration of this matter has, however, convinced me that the theory referred to fails altogether to account for the origin of the ceremony, as well as for important points in its performance which find a ready explanation in the theory applied to it by the present work, as well as by the Taittirîya-Âraṇyaka and the Kaushîtaki-brâhmaṇa. For seeing that the main object of sacrificial performances generally is the reconstruction of Pragâpati, the personified universe, and (the divine body of) the Sacrificer, it is difficult to see why, for this latter purpose, a new and special ceremony should have been thought necessary; and, besides, the rejected theory, if it is at all to account for the high honour rendered to the Mahâvîra pot, would almost involve the recognition of a form of Liṅga-worship which surely would require very much stronger evidence than the isolated and

(to my mind) somewhat suspicious passage on which this theory is based.

Now, as regards the rival theory underlying the exposition of the Pravargya, as given in the Satapatha-brâhmaṇa, it makes the Mahâvira pot a symbol of the sun, whilst the hot milk draught represents the divine flood of life and light with which the performer of the ceremony becomes imbued. These symbolic interpretations, whatever we may think of them otherwise, certainly adapt themselves admirably to the general sacrificial imagery. As the sun is the head of the universe—or, in figurative language, the head of Pragâpati, the world-man—so its earthly, and earthen, counterpart, the Mahâvira pot, is the head of Vishṇu, the sacrificial man, and the Sacrificer: and this ceremony is thus performed in order to complete the universe and sacrifice, as well as the divine body of the Sacrificer, by supplying them with their head, their crowning-piece, so to speak; and to imbue them with the divine essence of life and light. For this purpose the theory rather ingeniously avails itself of certain myths vaguely alluded to in the *Ṛig*-veda, according to which (X, 171, 2) Indra cut off the head of Makha (here identified with Vishṇu, the sacrifice and the sun-god); and (I, 116, 12; 117, 22; 119, 9) Dadhyaṅk, the son of Atharvan, was fitted by the Aśvins with a horse's head, and this hippocephalous creature then communicated to them the Madhu, or sweet thing,—that is, as would appear, the sweet doctrine of the Soma, the drink of immortality. This symbolism readily explains some points connected with the Pravargya ceremony, for which no obvious reason seems otherwise to suggest itself. For one thing, it accounts for the deep reverence shown to the Gharma vessel, which, in fact, is no other than the giver of light and life himself; whilst the optional character of the ceremony explains itself from the fact that the Soma-cup, of which the Sacrificer will subsequently partake, might of itself be expected to supply him with the blessings which he hopes to derive from the Pravargya. And, finally, it also becomes clear why the Pravargya must not form part of a man's first performance of a Soma-

sacrifice. For the Pravargya, as we have seen, is performed on the preliminary days of the Soma-sacrifice, before the pressing of the Soma has taken place; and it obviously is only after he has actually partaken of the Soma-drink, and has thereby potentially 'put on immortality,' that he can partake of the Gharma, and thus become imbued with the celestial light [1]. The dogmatical explanation of this ceremony thus puts, as it were, the finishing touch to that strange allegory by which the Indian theologians sought to make the sacrificial ceremonial a practical illustration of that unity of the All which speculation had been striving to compass since the days when the emptiness of the Vedic pantheon had dawned upon the thinking mind, and when critically inclined bards ventured to sing of the national god [2]: 'Not for a single day hast thou fought, nor hast thou any enemy, O Maghavan: illusion is what they say concerning thy battles; no foe hast thou fought either to-day or aforetime.'

As regards the optional and somewhat recondite character of the Pravargya ceremony, it is probably not without significance that the section dealing therewith is combined with the speculative Bṛihadâraṇyaka so as to make up with it the last book of the Bráhmaṇa,—the Âraṇyaka-kâṇḍa, or forest section. Such, at least, is the case in the Mâdhyandina text, where the Pravargya section occupies the first three adhyáyas of the last (fourteenth) book; whilst the Kâṇva text presents a slight difficulty in this respect. What passes generally as the seventeenth (and last) kâṇḍa of that version, consists of the Bṛihadâraṇyaka; whilst the sixteenth kâṇḍa begins with the section on funeral rites, corresponding to the last

[1] The Kaushitaki-brâhmaṇa (VIII, 3), on the other hand, seems to justify the prohibition on the ground that, prior to the first complete Soma-sacrifice, the body of the Sacrifice (and Sacrificer) is incomplete, and therefore not ready to receive its head, in the shape of the Pravargya. Hence also the same work allows the Pravargya to be performed at the first Soma-sacrifice of one who is thoroughly versed in the scriptures, since such a one is himself the body, or self, of the sacrifice.

[2] See XI, 1, 6, 10.

(eighth) adhyâya of kâṇḍa XIII of the Mâdhyandina recension, and is stated[1] to include also the Pravargya section (Madhy. XIV, 1–3). Now it is a strange fact that the six adhyâyas of the Bṛihadâraṇyaka (XIV, 4–9 in the Mâdhyandina text) are counted 3–8 in the Kâṇva text,—a circumstance which manifestly can only be explained by the Pravargya section being taken to form the first two adhyâyas of the last book of that version. This, indeed, is probably implied in the remark added to the description of a MS. of the Kâṇva text in the catalogue of the MSS. of the Sanskṛit College, Benares (p. 44), according to which 'Pravargyakâṇḍasya patrâṇi' are 'bhinnapramâṇâksharâṇi,' —that is, 'the leaves of the Pravargya section have a special pagination' (? i. e. they are numbered independently of the section on funeral rites preceding them).

And now my task is done, and I must take leave of this elaborate exposition of the sacrificial ordinances of Indian theology. For well-nigh a score of years the work has 'dragged its slow length along,' and during that time it has caused me—and, I doubt not, has caused some of my readers, too—not a few weary hours. In the early stages of the work, my old teacher, Professor Albrecht Weber, than whom no one is more deeply versed in the intricacies of the sacrificial ritual, wrote to me: 'You have undertaken a difficult, a most difficult task; and I can only hope that your courage and patience will not fail you before you are through with it.' And, indeed, I must confess that many a time I felt as if I should never be able to get through my task; and but for Professor Max Müller's timely exhortations and kindly encouragement, the work might perhaps never have been completed. 'I know,' he once wrote to me, 'you will thank me one day for having pressed you to go on with your work;' and now I do indeed thank him most sincerely and with all my heart for the kindness and patience he has shown me these many years. But, strange to say, now that the work is completed, I feel as if I could not do without working at it; and certainly, if

[1] Cf. A. Weber, Śatapatha brâhmaṇa, p. xi.

a second edition could ever have been required of a work of this kind, it would have found me ready once more to work my way through the bewildering maze of rites; and I know only too well that I should have to correct many a mistake, and could improve many an awkwardly expressed passage. In conclusion, a word of cordial thanks is due to the staff of the University Press, whose patience must often have been severely tried in the course of the printing of this work, and who, by the excellence of their presswork, and by their careful supervision, have materially lightened my task, and saved me much tedious and irksome labour.

J. EGGELING.

EDINBURGH, *December* 30, 1899.

SATAPATHA-BRÂHMAṆA.

ELEVENTH KÂṆḌA.

THE FULL AND NEW-MOON SACRIFICE.

First Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, Pragâpati, the Sacrifice, is the Year: the night of new moon is its gate, and the moon itself is the bolt of the gate.

2. And when one lays down the two fires at new moon[1],—even as one would enter a stronghold by the gate, when the gate is open, and would thence reach the world of heaven, so it is when one lays down the fires at new moon.

3. And if one lays down the fires under a (special) asterism[2],—just as if one tried to enter a stronghold, when the gate is closed, in some other way than through the gate, and failed to get inside the stronghold, so it is when one lays down the fires under an asterism: let him therefore not lay down the fires under an asterism.

4. On the same day on which that one (the moon) should not be seen either in the east or in the west,

[1] For the performance of the Agnyâdhâna, or setting up the sacrificial fires, see part i, p. 274 seqq.

[2] For the Nakshatras, or lunar mansions, under which the Agnyâdhâna may be performed, see II, 1, 2, 1 seqq., and especially II, 1, 2, 19, where the practice of regulating the time of the ceremony by the Nakshatras is discouraged.

let him fast, for it is then that he (the moon) comes to this world[1], and on that (day) he abides here (on the sacrificial ground).

5. And all the gods abide (here), all the spirits, all the deities, all the seasons, all the Stomas (hymn-forms), all the Pṛishṭhas[2], and all the metres.

6. And, verily, it is for all the gods, for all spirits, for all deities, for all seasons, for all Stomas, for all Pṛishṭhas, and for all metres that the fires of him are laid down who lays them down at new moon: he should therefore lay them down at new moon.

7. He may lay down the fires on the new moon which falls in the (month) Vaiśâkha, for that coincides with the Rohiṇî (asterism); for the Rohiṇî means the self, offspring and cattle[3]: he thus becomes established in a self, in offspring and cattle. But, indeed, the new moon is the form of the Agnyâdheya: let him therefore lay down the fires at new moon;—let him perform the preliminary ceremony[4] at full moon, and the initiation ceremony at new moon.

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now when they spread (and perform) the sacrifice, they kill it; and when they press out king Soma, they kill him; and when they 'quiet' and cut up the victim, they kill it,—it is by means of the mortar and pestle, and by the two mill-stones that they kill the Haviryagña (grain-offering).

[1] See I, 6, 4, 5.

[2] For the six Pṛishṭha-sâmans, see part iii, introd., p. xx seqq.

[3] See II, 1, 2, 6. 7.

[4] For the Anvârambhaṇîyâ-ishṭi, lit. 'taking-hold offering,' see part ii, p. 40, note 1.

2. And having killed the sacrifice, he pours it, as seed, into the fire as its womb, for, indeed, the fire is the womb of the sacrifice, from out of it it is produced: let him therefore perform those ten oblations[1] for which the Vashaṭ is uttered.

3. And, indeed, this sacrifice is the blowing (wind): he blows here, as it were, as a single one, but when he has entered into man, he is divided into ten parts;—with the vital airs thus distributed, it (the sacrifice) is born from out of its womb, the fire: this is that Virâg of ten syllables, this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

4. There may, however, be nine (oblations)[2];—he thus forms a defective (lesser, lower) Virâg with a view to production; for from the lesser[3], indeed, creatures are produced here: this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

5. But there may be one additional (oblation)[4],—that one remains over for Pragâpati: this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

6. And there may be two additional (oblations)[5],

---

[1] These ten oblations of the New and Full-moon sacrifice (as the model for Haviryagñas generally), as enumerated by Sâyaṇa, are (*a*) at full moon—five fore-offerings, two butter-portions, two cake-offerings to Agni, and Agni-Soma, and a low-voiced offering to Agni-Soma, (*b*) at new moon—five fore-offerings, two butter-portions, a cake to Agni, a low-voiced offering to Vishṇu, and an offering of (sweet and sour) milk, or Sânnâyya, to Indra.

[2] Viz. inasmuch as, according to Sâyaṇa, at the Full-moon sacrifice the offering to Agni-Soma only takes place in the case of one who is a Soma-offerer. I find, however, no authority for this.

[3] Or, from the lower part (nyûna); cf. II, 1, 1, 13; 5, 1, 20.

[4] That is, if the oblation to Agni Svishṭakṛit (part i, p. 199 seqq.) is taken into account.

[5] According to Sâyaṇa, the second additional offering is the oblation of clotted ghee to Vanaspati (the lord of the forest, or

—a productive pair consists of two: thus a productive pair is produced; this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

7. And there may be three additional ones[1],—a productive pair consists of two, and that which is produced is the third: this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

8. And there may be four additional ones[2],—as the one so the four. There are these three worlds: these worlds he thus gains by three (oblations); and Pragâpati, indeed, is the fourth beyond these worlds: by the fourth (oblation) he thus gains Pragâpati,—this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

9. That (sacrifice) which is defective in two (oblations)[3] is indeed defective, it is not a sacrifice; and that which is excessive in respect of five (oblations) is indeed excessive, it is not a sacrifice: this is that perfection as regards the ten, the twenty, thus up to a thousand[4].

10. Verily, they who perform the Full and New-moon sacrifice, run a race[5]. One ought to perform it during fifteen years;—in these fifteen years there are three hundred and sixty full moons and new

---

the tree, i. e. the sacrificial stake, or Soma) at the animal sacrifice. Cf. part ii, p. 208.

[1] These three oblations, according to Sâyaṇa, are the three after-offerings (to the Barhis, to Nârâśaṃsa, and to Agni), see part i, p. 230 seqq.

[2] Viz. either the Svish*ṭ*akṛ*ṭ* and the three after-offerings; or the four Patnîsaṃyâgas (to Soma, Tvash*ṭṛ*, the wives of the gods, and Agni Gṛ*h*apati), cf. part i, p. 256 seqq.

[3] That is, if it includes only eight oblations, see paragraph 4.

[4] That is, counting every ten (oblations) one Virâg, or metrical pâda of ten syllables.

[5] Viz. running along, as they do, with the revolutions of the moon and the sun.

moons; and there are in a year three hundred and sixty nights: it is the nights he thus gains.

11. He should then offer for another fifteen years: in these fifteen years there are three hundred and sixty full moons and new moons; and there are in a year three hundred and sixty days: it is the days he thus gains, and the year itself he thus gains.

12. Now, indeed, the gods were at first mortal; and only when they had gained the year they were immortal; for the year is everything, and the imperishable means everything: thereby then accrues to him imperishable merit, the imperishable world.

13. He who, knowing this, offers (the Full and New-moon sacrifice) for thirty years, becomes one of the race-runners, whence one ought to offer sacrifice for not less than thirty years. But if he be a performer of the Dâkshâyaṇa sacrifice[1], he need only offer for fifteen years, for therein that perfection is brought about, since he performs (every month) two Full-moon and two New-moon offerings, and thus that perfection is indeed brought about therein.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. When he has performed the Full-moon sacrifice, he prepares an additional (cake) for Indra Vimṛidh (the repeller of scorners), and offers it in accordance with the procedure of an ishṭi[2]; and when he has performed the New-moon sacrifice, he prepares an additional rice-pap for Aditi[3], and offers it in accordance with the procedure of an ishṭi.

[1] For this modification of the New and Full-moon sacrifice, see part i, p. 374 seqq.

[2] That is to say, after the model of the Full-moon sacrifice.

[3] See part i, p. 375, where read 'Aditi' for 'Âditye.'

2. And as to why, after performing the Full-moon sacrifice, he prepares (a cake) for Indra Vim*ri*dh, it is because Indra is the deity of the sacrifice; but the chief oblation of the Full-moon sacrifice belongs to Agni and Soma, and nothing is offered there with the formula 'To Indra (I offer) thee!' Hereby then that oblation comes to be shared by Indra, and so does the sacrifice come to be shared by Indra. And as to why (he offers) with 'To (Indra) Vim*ri*dh!' it is that by the Full-moon sacrifice he slays all scorners (m*ri*dh), all evil spirits.

3. And as to why, after performing the New-moon sacrifice, he prepares a pap for Aditi,—that moon doubtless is the same as King Soma, the food of the gods: when on that night he is not seen either in the east or in the west, the oblation becomes, as it were, uncertain and unfirm. Now Aditi is this earth, and she, indeed, is certain and firmly established: thereby, then, that oblation of his becomes certain and firmly established. Such, then, is the reason why he prepares additional oblations; now as to why he should not prepare them.

4. When, after performing the Full-moon sacrifice, he prepares an additional (cake) for Indra Vim*ri*dh, he does so in order that his sacrifice should become shared in by Indra, for every sacrifice belongs to Indra. But inasmuch as every sacrifice belongs to Indra, thereby that oblation of his, and that sacrifice, is already shared in by Indra.

5. And when, after performing the New-moon sacrifice, he prepares an additional pap for Aditi,—surely the New-moon sacrifice is itself an additional one; for by the Full-moon sacrifice Indra slew V*ri*tra, and for him who had slain V*ri*tra, the gods

then prepared that additional oblation, the New-moon sacrifice: why, then, should he prepare an oblation to be added to an additional offering? Let him, therefore, not prepare the additional oblations.

6. When, after performing the Full-moon sacrifice, he afterwards prepares another oblation; and when, after performing the New-moon sacrifice, he afterwards prepares another oblation, he rises and defies his malicious enemy; and, indeed, unassailed and undisturbed is the prosperity of him who at full moon performs the Full-moon sacrifice, and at new moon the New-moon sacrifice[1].

7. For by performing the Full-moon sacrifice at full moon, and the New-moon sacrifice at new moon, the gods forthwith dispelled evil, and were forthwith reproduced; and, verily, he who, knowing this, performs the Full-moon sacrifice at full moon, and the New-moon sacrifice at new moon, forthwith dispels evil, and is forthwith reproduced. If he offer an additional oblation, let him give a sacrificial fee (to the priests); for no oblation, they say, should be without a dakshiṇâ; and for the Full and New-moon sacrifices there is that dakshiṇâ, to wit, the Anvâhârya (mess of rice[2]). Thus much as to the additional oblations; now as to (the sun) rising over him.

FOURTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, some people enter upon the fast[3] when

[1] That is, he who performs these sacrifices without additional oblations:—atah paurṇamâsyâyâm amâvâsyâm ka darsapûrṇamâsayâgâv eva kartavyau, nânyat kiṃkid dhavir anunirvâpyam, Sây. Whilst favouring this view, the author, however, also admits the other as ensuring the same benefits.

[2] See part i, p. 49, note 1.

[3] As, for the Full-moon offering, the Sacrificer should enter on

they (still) see (the moon, on the fourteenth day of the half-month), thinking, 'To-morrow he will not rise,'—either on account of clouds or not having ascertained properly, they enter upon the fast, and (in the morning) he rises over him. Now if he (the moon) should rise on (the material for) the oblation being not yet taken out, then that approved (procedure is followed) and the same fasting-observance. The sour curds from last night's milking they use for coagulating the sacrificial food[1]; they let the calves join (their mothers), and drive them away again[2].

2. In the afternoon he drives them away with the parṇa-branch; and as there that approved oblation of the New-moon offering (is prepared) so here. But if he should not care to undergo (again) the fasting-observance, or if (the moon) were to rise over (the material for) the oblation already taken out, then let him do otherwise: having properly cleansed the rice-grains of the husks, he cooks the smaller ones as a cake on eight potsherds for Agni Dâtṛi (the Giver).

3. And the sour curds (from the milk) milked on the day before (he prepares) for Indra Pradâtṛi

---

the fast at the very time of full moon (I, 6, 3, 34), so, for the New-moon offering, he should do so at the time when the last sign of the moon has disappeared, cf. I, 6, 4, 14.

[1] Literally, they make it the means of coagulating the havis; that is to say, they put the sour-milk (of last night's milking) into the milk obtained from the milking of this, the second, day so as to produce the sour curds required on the next, or offering-day. See I, 6, 4, 6 seq.;—pûrvedyuḥ sâyaṁdugdhaṁ payo yad dadhy âtmanâ vidyate parasmin divase punaḥ karaṇiyasya sâyaṁdoharûpasya havisha âtañkanârthaṁ kuryuḥ, Sây.

[2] See I, 7, 1, 1 seq. The milk of the evening milking will be required for the sour curds and whey to be mixed with the sweet (boiled) milk of the following morning in the preparation of the Sânnâyya.

(the Bestower); and those (larger) rice-grains[1] he cooks in boiled fresh milk as a pap for Vishṇu Śipivishṭa (the Bald); for a pap it is whenever rice-grains are thrown (into milk or sour curds).

4. And as to this being so, it is because that moon is no other than King Soma, the food of the gods;—he (the Sacrificer) at that time sought to secure him[2], and missed him: Agni, the Giver, gives that (moon) to him, and Indra, the Bestower, bestows that one upon him; Indra and Agni give that (moon, Soma) as a sacrifice to him, and that sacrifice given by Indra and Agni he offers. And as to why (he offers) to Vishṇu, the Bald, it is because Vishṇu is the sacrifice; and as to why to the Bald[3] (śipivishṭa), —it is that his missing him whom he sought to secure is the bald part (? śipita) of the sacrifice, hence to the Bald one. And on this occasion he should give (to the priests) as much as he is able to give, for no oblation, they say, should be without a dakshiṇâ. And let him observe the fast just (on the day) when he (the moon) does not rise.

Fifth Brâhmaṇa.

1. He observes the fast thinking, 'To-day is the day of new moon[4];' and then that (moon) is seen in

[1] According to Kâty. Śrautas. XXV, 4, 40, the rice-grains are sorted in three different sizes; those of medium size being used for Agni Dâtṛi, the largest for Indra Pradâtṛi, and the smallest for Vishṇu Śipivishṭa.

[2] That is, at the time of new moon when Soma is supposed to stay on earth.

[3] The native dictionaries also assign the meaning 'affected by a skin-disease' to 'śipivishṭa.'

[4] Amâvâsyâ, lit. the night of their (the sun and moon's) staying together.

the west. But, indeed, he (the moon) is that heavenly dog: he watches the Sacrificer's cattle (to seize them), and that would not be good for cattle if amends were not made to them[1]; and through fear of that 'down-coming moon[2],' as they think him to be,—

2. They steal away into the shade. And therefore, indeed, people call that burning pain 'śvaluḳita' (dog's clutch);—and therefore they also call that one—

3. 'The hare in the moon[3].' Soma, the food of the gods, indeed, is the moon: at full moon they press him; and in the subsequent half of the month he enters the waters and plants; and, the cattle feeding on the water and the plants, he then during that night (of new moon) collects him from the cattle.

4. He keeps the fast thinking, 'To-day is the day of new moon;' and then that (moon) is seen in the west, and the Sacrificer departs from the path of sacrifice. As to this they say, 'What should one do when he has departed from the path of the sacrifice? Should he sacrifice, or should he not sacrifice?' He should certainly sacrifice, for there is no other way out of it: day after day that (moon) rises larger. Having performed offering after the manner of the New-moon sacrifice, he takes out material for an additional offering either on the same, or on the following day.

5. There are three chief oblations for this (offering),—(he prepares) a cake on eight potsherds for

[1] Aprâyaśkittikṛite (or -kṛitaḥ),—? in the case of (the owner) who did not make amends to, and quiet, them.

[2] Avakṛishṭo nikṛishṭaś ḳandramâ avaḳandramasaḥ, Sây.

[3] Sâyaṇa takes this to mean that for this reason the moon is called 'śaśâṅka,' 'he who is marked with a hare.'

Agni Pathikṛit (the path-maker), one on eleven potsherds for Indra Vṛitrahan (the slayer of Vṛitra), and a cake on twelve potsherds for Agni Vaiśvânara.

6. Now as to why he prepares (an oblation) for Agni Pathikṛit,—it is that Agni, being the maker of the path, leads the Sacrificer (back) to the path of sacrifice, from which he now departs.

7. And as to why to Indra Vṛitrahan,—Vṛitra is sin: with the help of Indra, the slayer of Vṛitra, he thus slays sin, Vṛitra, which ever keeps him from well-being, from virtue, and from the good work: this is why he (offers) to Indra Vṛitrahan.

8. And as to why he prepares a cake on twelve potsherds for Agni Vaiśvânara,—when Indra had slain Vṛitra, he burnt him completely by means of Agni Vaiśvânara, and thereby burnt all his (Vṛitra's) sin; and in like manner does that (Sacrificer) now, after slaying sin, Vṛitra, with the help of Indra Vṛitrahan, burn him, and all that sin of his, by means of Agni Vaiśvânara; and, verily, not the slightest sin remains in him who, knowing this, performs this offering.

9. For this (offering) there are seventeen kindling-verses. He offers to the deities in a low voice, and makes any (verses) he pleases his invitatory and offering-formulas. In like manner (those of) the two butter-portions and the two formulas of the Svishṭakṛit.

10. A bow with three arrows he gives as dakshiṇâ; for with the bow a dog is driven away: he thus drives away that (dog, the moon) when he gives a bow with three arrows as dakshiṇâ.

11. A staff he gives as dakshiṇâ; for with a staff

a dog is driven away: he thus drives away that (dog) when he gives a staff as dakshiṇâ. This, indeed, is the prescribed dakshiṇâ; but he may give anything else besides, of such other (objects meet for) dakshiṇâs as may be at his disposal. This, doubtless, is an offering relating to cattle: he may perform it even though (the moon) was not seen (at his New-moon sacrifice).

Sixth Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, in the beginning this (universe) was water, nothing but a sea of water. The waters desired, 'How can we be reproduced?' They toiled and performed fervid devotions[1], when they were becoming heated, a golden egg was produced. The year, indeed, was not then in existence: this golden egg floated about for as long as the space of a year.

2. In a year's time a man, this Pragâpati, was produced therefrom; and hence a woman, a cow, or a mare brings forth within the space of a year; for Pragâpati was born in a year. He broke open this golden egg. There was then, indeed, no resting-place: only this golden egg, bearing him, floated about for as long as the space of a year.

3. At the end of a year he tried to speak. He said 'bhûḥ': this (word) became this earth;—'bhuvaḥ': this became this air;—'svaḥ': this became yonder sky. Therefore a child tries to

[1] Or, they toiled and became heated (with fervid devotion). For this cosmological legend, see J. Muir, Original Sanskrit Texts, iv, p. 24.

speak at the end of a year, for at the end of a year Pragâpati tried to speak.

4. When he was first speaking Pragâpati spoke (words) of one syllable and of two syllables; whence a child, when first speaking, speaks (words) of one syllable and of two syllables.

5. These (three words consist of) five syllables: he made them to be the five seasons, and thus there are these five seasons. At the end of the (first) year, Pragâpati rose to stand on these worlds thus produced; whence a child tries to stand up at the end of a year, for at the end of a year Pragâpati stood up.

6. He was born with a life of a thousand years: even as one might see in the distance the opposite shore, so did he behold the opposite shore (the end) of his own life.

7. Desirous of offspring, he went on singing praises and toiling. He laid the power of reproduction into his own self. By (the breath of) his mouth he created the gods: the gods were created on entering the sky; and this is the godhead of the gods (deva) that they were created on entering the sky (div). Having created them, there was, as it were, daylight for him; and this also is the godhead of the gods that, after creating them, there was, as it were, daylight (divâ) for him.

8. And by the downward breathing he created the Asuras: they were created on entering this earth. Having created them there was, as it were, darkness for him.

9. He knew, 'Verily, I have created evil for myself since, after creating, there has come to be, as it were, darkness for me.' Even then he smote

them with evil, and owing to this it was that they were overcome; whence people say, 'Not true is that regarding (the fight between) the gods and Asuras which is related partly in the tale and partly in the legend; for it was even then that Pragâpati smote them with evil, and it was owing to this that they were overcome.'

10. Therefore it is with reference to this that the *Ri*shi has said, 'Not for a single day hast thou fought, nor hast thou any enemy, O Maghavan: illusion is what they say concerning thy battles; no foe hast thou fought either to-day or aforetime.'

11. Now what daylight, as it were, there was for him, on creating the gods, of that he made the day; and what darkness, as it were, there was for him, on creating the Asuras, of that he made the night: they are these two, day and night.

12. Pragâpati bethought himself, 'Everything (sarva), indeed, I have obtained by stealth (tsar) who have created these deities:' this became the 'sarvatsara,' for 'sarvatsara,' doubtless, is the same as 'sa*m*vatsara (year).' And, verily, whosoever thus knows 'sa*m*vatsara' to be the same as 'sarvatsara[1],' is not overcome by any evil which, by magic art, steals upon him (tsar); and whosoever thus knows 'sa*m*vatsara' to be the same as 'sarvatsara,' overcomes against whomsoever he practises magic art.

13. Pragâpati bethought himself, 'Verily, I have created here a counterpart of myself, to wit, the year;' whence they say, 'Pragâpati is the year;' for he created it to be a counterpart of himself:

[1] Or, whosoever knows the 'all-stealing' power of the year.

inasmuch as 'sa*m*vatsara (year),' as well as 'Pragâpati,' consists of four syllables, thereby it (the year) is a counterpart of him.

14. Now, these are the deities who were created out of Pragâpati,—Agni, Indra, Soma, and Paramesh*th*in Prâgâpatya.

15. They were born with a life of a thousand years: even as one would see in the distance the opposite shore, so did they behold the opposite shore of their own life.

16. They went on singing praises and toiling. Then Paramesh*th*in, son of Pragâpati, saw that sacrifice, the New and Full-moon offerings, and performed these offerings. Having performed them, he desired, 'Would I were everything here!' He became the waters, for the waters are everything here, inasmuch as they abide in the furthest place; for he who digs here on earth finds indeed water; and, in truth, it is from that furthest place, to wit, from yonder sky that he[1] rains, whence the name Paramesh*th*in (abiding in the furthest, highest place).

17. Paramesh*th*in spake unto his father Pragâpati, 'I have discovered a sacrifice which fulfils wishes: let me perform this for thee!'—'So be it!' he said. He accordingly performed it[2] for him. Having sacrificed, he (Pragâpati) desired, 'Would I were everything here!' He became the breath (vital air), for breath is everything here: Pragâpati is that breath which blows here (the wind); and whatsoever knows that it is thus he blows is his (Pragâpati's) eyesight; and whatsoever is endowed

[1] Viz. Parganya, the rain-god, according to Sâya*n*a.

[2] Viz. officiating as his, Pragâpati's, priest.

with breath is Pragâpati. And, verily, whosoever thus knows that eyesight of Pragâpati becomes, as it were, manifest.

18. Pragâpati spake unto his son Indra, 'Let me perform for thee this wish-fulfilling sacrifice which Parameshṭhin has just performed for me.'—'So be it!' he said. He accordingly performed it for him. Having sacrificed, he (Indra) desired, 'Would that I were everything here!' He became speech (vâk), for speech is everything here; whence they say, 'Indra is Vâk.'

19. Indra spake unto his brothers Agni and Soma, 'Let me perform for you this wish-fulfilling sacrifice which our father Pragâpati has just performed for me.'—'So be it!' they said. He accordingly performed it for them. Having sacrificed, those two desired, 'Would that we were everything here!' One of them became the eater of food, and the other became food: Agni became the eater of food, and Soma food; and the eater of food, and food, indeed, are everything here.

20. These five deities, then, performed that wish-fulfilling sacrifice; and for whatever wish they sacrificed, that wish of theirs was fulfilled; and, verily, for whatever wish one performs that sacrifice, that wish of his is fulfilled.

21. When they had sacrificed they beheld (discovered) the eastern quarter, and made it the eastern (front) quarter; as it now is that eastern (front) quarter: therefore creatures here move in a forward direction, for they (the gods) made that the front quarter. 'Let us improve it[1] from here!'

[1] Or, perhaps, raise it, bring it nearer. The St. Petersb. Dict.

they said, and made it to be strength. 'May we see[1] this strength!' they said; and it became yonder sky[2].

22. They then beheld the southern quarter, and made it the southern quarter; and it now is that southern (right, dakshiṇâ) quarter: whence the dakshiṇâ (cows) stand to the south (of the altar)[3], and are driven up from the south, for they made that the southern one (dakshiṇâ). 'Let us improve it from here!' they said, and made it to be space. 'May we see this space!' they said; and it became this air, for that (air) is space; for even as the resting-place here in this world is clearly the earth, so the resting-place there in yonder world is clearly this air; and because, whilst being here on earth, one does not see that space, therefore people say, 'That space (or, yonder world) is invisible.'

23. They then beheld the western quarter, and made it (to represent) hope,—wherefore it is only when[4], after going forwards (to the east), one

takes 'upa-kurute' here in the sense of 'to cherish (hegen, pflegen);' Professor Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 238, doubtfully in that of 'worship, revere (verehren);'—enâm prâkîm disam upetya itaḥ paraṃ kurvîmahi kâryântaraṃ sṛigemahi, Sây.

[1] The particle 'khalu' might perhaps be rendered by 'really,' or—'could we but see it,' 'were it but (really) visible to us.'

[2] That is, it was moved up to them.

[3] See IV, 3, 4, 14.

[4] It seems hardly possible to take 'yad—tena' here in the usual causal sense,—it is only because (or, inasmuch as) one obtains (one's object) after going forwards that one goes to the western quarter. What is implied, in any case, is that first some hope, or desire, is conceived the accomplishment of which is only brought about by a forward movement, or by action; and that success in attaining the object sought for is followed by the conception of fresh desires. For the same force of 'yad—tena' (when—then) see XI, 3, 3, 4–6.

obtains (his object) that he goes (back) to that (western) quarter; for they (the gods) made that (quarter to represent) hope. 'Let us improve it from here!' they said, and made it to be prosperity (or distinction). 'May we see this prosperity!' they said; and it became this earth, for this (earth) is indeed (the source of) prosperity; whence he who obtains most therefrom becomes the most prosperous.

24. They then beheld the northern quarter, and made it the waters. 'Let us improve it from here!' they said, and made it (to represent) the law, for the waters are the law: hence whenever the waters come (down) to this (terrestrial) world everything here comes to be in accordance with the law; but whenever there is drought, then the stronger seizes upon the weaker, for the waters are the law.

25. These then are eleven deities[1],—there are five fore-offerings, two butter-portions, the Svish*ṭa*-k*ṛi*t, and three after-offerings:—

26. These are eleven offerings,—it was, indeed, by these offerings that the gods gained these worlds, and these quarters; and in like manner does this (Sacrificer), by these offerings, gain these worlds, and these quarters.

27. And the four Patnîsa*m*yâgas are the four intermediate quarters; and, indeed, it was by the four Patnîsa*m*yâgas that the gods gained the intermediate quarters; and by means of them this (Sacrificer) now gains the intermediate quarters.

[1] Viz. the four quarters and the objects enumerated as represented by them.

28. And as to the Iḍâ,—thereby the gods gained food; and in like manner does this (Sacrificer) thereby gain food. This, then, is the completeness of the New and Full-moon sacrifices as regards the gods.

29. Now as to the body:—there are in man these five breathings, not including the eyes; they are the five fore-offerings, and the two butter-portions are the eyes.

30. The Svishṭakṛit is the same as this downward breathing; and because he offers that (oblation), as it were, apart from the other oblations[1], therefore all the breathings recoil from that breathing; and because for the Svishṭakṛit he cuts portions from all the sacrificial dishes, therefore everything that enters these (channels of the other) breathings meets in (the channel of) that breathing.

31. The three after-offerings are the three male organs[2]; and that which is the chief after-offering is, as it were, the chief organ. 'He should offer it without drawing breath[3],' they say, 'for thus it becomes unfailing for him.'

32. He may, however, draw breath once, for that (organ) has one joint; but if it were jointless, it

[1] See I, 7, 3, 21, where I would now translate, He offers apart (sideways), as it were, from the other oblations.—the oblation to Agni Svishṭakṛit being poured out on the north side of the fire, so as not to come in contact with the chief oblations and the butter-portions.

[2] That is, including the testicles.

[3] Or, rather,—at the third after-offering (viz. that to Agni Svishṭakṛit),—the Hotṛi should (according to some authorities) pronounce the offering-formula, which is considerably longer than those of the two other offerings, without making a pause; whilst others allow him to pause once.

either would only stand erect, or it would hang down; whilst now it both becomes erect and hangs down: he may therefore draw breath once.

33. The four Patnîsaṃyâǵas are the two arms (or front legs) and the two thighs—the support, in fact[1]; and the Iḍâ is this vital air (in the centre); and inasmuch as that (Iḍâ) is not offered in the fire, but remains as unburnt, therefore this (central) vital air is undivided.

34. The invitatory and offering-formulas are the bone, and the offering-material is the flesh. The invitatory and offering-formulas are (in) measured metre, whence the bones of a fat and a lean person are alike: but inasmuch as he takes now more, now less, offering-material, therefore the flesh of a fat person is fat, and the flesh of a lean person is lean. This sacrifice he performs to any deity he pleases and for whom there is a sacrificial dish.

35. Now, these are offerings from which nothing must be omitted; but were one to omit anything of them, it would be as if he were to break off some limb, or knock out some (channel of the) vital air. Other oblations, indeed, are either added to or omitted.

36. These, then, are sixteen offerings, for man consists of sixteen parts, and the sacrifice is the Man (Purusha): hence there are sixteen offerings.

Seventh Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now there, on the occasion of the entering on the fast, it is said[2], 'If he does not eat, he becomes

[1] Bâhudvayam ûrudvayaṃ ḳatvâraḥ patnîsaṃyâǵâḥ, atas te pratishṭhâtmakâḥ; ayam eva madhyamaḥ prâṇa iḍâ, Sây.

[2] See I. 1, 1, 9. 10.

consecrated to the Fathers[1]; and if he does eat he eats whilst passing over the gods;' and, in this respect, they lay down the rule, 'Let him therefore eat what grows in the forest.'

2. If he eats cultivated plants he eats the sacrificial essence of the offering-cake; and if he eats forest plants he eats the essence of the barhis[2]; and if he eats aught of trees he eats the essence of the fuel (for the sacrificial fire); and if he drinks milk he consumes the essence of the Sânnâyya[3]; and if he drinks water he consumes the essence of the lustral waters[4]; and if he eats nothing he becomes consecrated to the Fathers.

3. As to this they say, 'What course of procedure is there?' Well, let him, on those two nights (of full and new moon), himself offer the Agnihotra: inasmuch as, after offering, he takes food he does not become consecrated to the Fathers, for that (libation) is an offering; and inasmuch as he performs that offering in his own self he does not eat of those sacrificial essences.

4. Now all the nights concentrate themselves in these two nights: all the nights of the waxing moon concentrate in the night of full moon, and all the nights of the waning moon concentrate in the night of new moon; and, verily, for him who, knowing this, offers (the Agnihotra) himself on the day of

[1] That is, he would be liable to die, and join the departed ancestors.

[2] The layer of sacrificial grass spread on the Vedi, serving as a seat for the deities to whom offering is made.

[3] For this dish, prepared of sweet and sour milk, and offered at the New-moon sacrifice, see part i, p. 178, note 4.

[4] For the Pra*n*îtâ*h*, see I, 1, 1, 12.

the entrance on the fast, offering is always made by himself [1].

EIGHTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, the gods and the Asuras, both of them sprung from Pragâpati, once strove together. Then the Asuras, even through arrogance, thinking, 'Unto whom, forsooth, should we make offering?' went on offering into their own mouths. They came to naught, even through arrogance: wherefore let no one be arrogant, for verily arrogance is the cause of ruin [2].

2. But the gods went on offering unto one another. Pragâpati gave himself up to them, and the sacrifice became theirs; for, indeed, the sacrifice is the food of the gods.

3. Having given himself up to the gods, he created that counterpart of himself, to wit, the sacrifice: whence people say, 'The sacrifice is Pragâpati;' for he created it as a counterpart of himself.

4. By this (Full and New-moon) sacrifice he redeemed himself from the gods. Now when he (the Sacrificer) enters on the fast, he thereby gives himself up to the gods, even as Pragâpati thereby gave himself up to the gods. Let him therefore endeavour to pass that night (with his mind) completely restrained [3], in the same way as he would

[1] That is to say, even though on other nights the Agnihotra were performed for him by a priest, it would always count as being performed by himself.

[2] See V, 1, 1, 1. 2.

[3] Professor Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 350, takes this injunction, and apparently also the illustration, to refer to sexual intercourse. Cf. I, 1, 1, 11.

proceed with (material for) an oblation, for he becomes an oblation to the gods.

5. And when (on the following day) he performs the sacrifice, then he redeems himself by sacrifice from the gods, even as Pragâpati thereby redeemed himself: when he takes out the material for (the chief) sacrificial dish, he redeems the sacrifice by the material for the sacrificial dish; the sacrificial dish (he redeems) by the invitatory formula, the invitatory formula by the portion cut (from the sacrificial dish), the portion by the offering-formula, the offering-formula by the Vashaṭ-call, and the Vashaṭ-call by the oblation. His oblation itself is still unredeemed,—

6. And that sacrifice of his is like a tree with its top broken off. He redeems the oblation by the Anvâhârya (mess of rice) [1]; and because he thereby supplies (anv-â-harati) what is wanting in the sacrifice, therefore it is called Anvâhârya. Thus, then, that entire sacrifice of his comes to be redeemed; and that sacrifice becomes the Sacrificer's self in yonder world. And, verily, the Sacrificer who, knowing this, performs that (offering of) redemption comes into existence in yonder world with a complete body.

Second Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, man is born thrice, namely in this way:—first he is born from his mother and father; and when he to whom the sacrifice inclines performs offering he is born a second time; and when he dies, and they place him on the fire, and when he

[1] See part i, p. 49, note 1.

thereupon comes into existence again, he is born a third time;—wherefore they say, 'Man is born thrice.'

2. He (the Hotṛi) recites those eleven kindling-verses [1],—there are these ten vital airs in man, and the body in which these vital airs are established is the eleventh,—so great, indeed, is man: he thus causes him to be born complete. And what comes after the kindling-verses that is the foundation: thus, having caused him to be born, he establishes him.

3. There are nine utterances of impulsion (or quickening) [2],—there are these nine vital airs in man: he thereby causes him to be born a second time; and the (Adhvaryu's) call and (the Âgnîdhra's) response [3] are the foundation. And when there, on the occasion of the throwing [4] (of the grass-bunch

[1] See part i, p. 95 seqq.

[2] According to Sâyaṇa, this refers either to the formula by which the Adhvaryu calls on the Hotṛi to recite the kindling-verses, and which, he says, consists of nine syllables (samidhyamânâyânubrûhi); or to nine preliminary formulas (forming a nigada) pronounced by the Hotṛi before the performance of the fore-offerings, see I, 5, 2, 1 seqq. These latter formulas are probably those intended by the author; the former formula being the less likely to be referred to, as, in its above form of nine syllables, it is indeed allowed to be used optionally by the Âpastambasûtra, but not by the authorities of the white Yagus, who use the formula '(Hotar) Agnaye samidhyamânâyânubrûhi;' see Śat. Br. I, 3, 5, 2. 3.

[3] Viz. the two calls—'Om śrâvaya' and 'Astu śraushaṭ,' see part i, p. 132, note.

[4] The word 'sṛishṭi' usually means 'creation,' but in accordance with the primary meaning of the verb 'sṛig,' it apparently refers here (as Sâyaṇa seems to think) to the throwing of the anointed Prastara, as the representative of the Sacrificer, into the Âhavanîya fire, thus insuring for the Sacrificer his despatch to, and renewed life in, the heavenly world. With reference to

into the fire), birth is spoken of, he thereby causes him to be born a third time: on this occasion the Patnîsa*m*yâ*g*as [1] are the foundation.

4. For thrice, indeed, man is born, and it is just in this way that he causes him to be born thrice from the sacrifice. Of those eleven (kindling-verses) he recites thrice the first and last:—

5. This makes fifteen kindling-verses,—there are two libations of ghee (âghâra [2]), five fore-offerings, the I*d*â, three after-offerings, the Sûktavâka, and Samyorvâka [3]—that makes thirteen oblations. And when there, at the Patnîsa*m*yâgas, he takes up at the same time (the two spoons); and the Samish*t*a-yagus [4]:—

6. That makes fifteen oblations:—for these fifteen oblations those fifteen kindling-verses (serve, as it were, as) invitatory formulas; and for these invitatory formulas these (serve as) offering-formulas—whatever formula (is used) there (at those oblations) and what Nigada (is used at the invocation of the I*d*â [5]) that is of the form of offering-formulas. Thereby, then, those oblations of his come to be supplied with invitatory formulas through those kindling-verses; and through those oblations those invitatory formulas come to be supplied with both offering-formulas and oblations.

---

this throwing of the grass-bunch into the fire (I, 8, 3, 11 seq.; 9, 2, 19) some of the Sûtras use, indeed, the verb 'sṛ*g*,' cf. Hillebrand, Das Altindische Neu- und Vollmondsopfer, p. 146.

[1] See part i, p. 256 seqq.
[2] See part i, p. 124 seqq.
[3] Part i, p. 236 seqq.
[4] See I, 9, 2, 19; 25 seqq.
[5] See part i, p. 222 seqq.

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. He recites a gâyatrî invitatory formula[1]: the gâyatrî consisting of three feet, these worlds being three in number[2], it is these worlds the gods thereby established.

2. He offers with a trish*t*ubh (verse): the trish*t*ubh consisting of four feet, and cattle being four-footed, it is cattle the gods thereby established in these established worlds.

3. The Vasha*t*-call consists of two syllables (vausha*t*): man being two-footed, it is two-footed man they thereby established among the established cattle.

4. Two-footed man, then, is established here among cattle. In like manner this (Sacrificer) establishes thereby the worlds; and in the established worlds he establishes cattle, and among the established cattle he establishes himself: thus, indeed, is that man established among cattle, who, knowing this, offers sacrifice.

5. And when he offers, after the Vasha*t* has been uttered,—that Vasha*t*-call being yonder shining (sun), and he being the same as Death[3]—he thereby consecrates him (the Sacrificer) after death, and causes him to be born from out of it, and he is

[1] The anuvâkyâs recited prior to the principal oblations (pradhâna-havis) are in the gâyatrî metre; whilst the yâgyâs (referred to in the next paragraph), at the end of which the Vausha*t*! is uttered and the oblation poured into the fire, consist of trish*t*ubh verses; cf. I, 7, 2, 15.

[2] These inserted clauses with 'vai' supply the reason for what follows, not for what precedes, them.

[3] See X, 5, 1, 4.

delivered from that death. And the sacrifice, indeed, becomes his body: thus, having become the sacrifice, he is delivered from that death, and all his chief offerings are thereby delivered from that death[1].

6. And, verily, whatever offering he there performs, that offering becomes his body in yonder world; and when he who knows this departs this world then that offering, being behind him, calls out to him, 'Come hither, here I am, thy body;' and inasmuch as it calls out (invokes, âhvayati), it is called 'âhuti' (offering or invocation).

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Verily, in the beginning, this (universe) was the Brahman (neut.)[2]. It created the gods; and, having created the gods, it made them ascend these worlds: Agni this (terrestrial) world, Vâyu the air, and Sûrya the sky.

2. And the deities who are above these he made ascend the worlds which are above these; and, indeed, just as these (three) worlds and these (three) deities are manifest, so are those (higher) worlds and those (higher) deities manifest—(the worlds) which he made those deities ascend.

3. Then the Brahman itself went up to the sphere beyond. Having gone up to the sphere beyond, it considered, 'How can I descend again into these worlds?' It then descended again by means of these two—Form and Name. Whatever has a name,

[1] Viz. inasmuch as the oblation is made with the Vashaṭ.

[2] On this speculative myth, see John Muir, Orig. S. Texts, vol. v, pp. 387–89.

that is name; and that again which has no name, and which one knows by its form, 'This is (of a certain) form,' that is form: as far as there are Form and Name so far, indeed, extends this (universe).

4. These, indeed, are the two great forces of the Brahman; and, verily, he who knows these two great forces of the Brahman becomes himself a great force.

5. These, indeed, are the two great manifestations[1] of the Brahman; and, verily, he who knows these two great manifestations of the Brahman becomes himself a great manifestation. One of these two is the greater, namely Form; for whatever is Name, is indeed Form; and, verily, he who knows the greater of these two, becomes greater than he whom he wishes to surpass in greatness.

6. In the beginning, indeed, the gods were mortal, and only when they had become possessed[2] of the Brahman they were immortal. Now, when he makes the libation to Mind[3]—form being mind, inasmuch as it is by mind that one knows, 'This is form'—he thereby obtains Form; and when he makes the libation to Speech—name being speech, inasmuch as it is by speech that he seizes (mentions) the name—he thereby obtains Name;—as far as there are Form and Name, so far, indeed, extends this whole (universe): all this he obtains; and—the

[1] Or, phantasmagories, illusive representations.

[2] The use of 'âp' with the instrumental (brahmaṇâ âpuḥ) is peculiar,—brahmaṇâ vyâptâḥ, Sây.

[3] The two libations (âghâra) of ghee, forming the first oblations of an ishṭi, made on the newly kindled fire, are offered to Mind and Speech respectively; cf. part i, p. 124 seqq.

all being the imperishable—imperishable merit and the imperishable world thus accrue to him.

7. There, on the occasion of the offering to Agni[1], it has been told how the sacrifice then pleased the *Ri*shis, and how they performed it. Now, when the *Ri*shis were performing the sacrifice, the Gandharvas came nigh to them. They looked on, thinking, 'Here, surely, they have done too much, —here they have done too little.' And when their sacrifice was completed, they pointed it out to them, saying, 'Here, surely, ye have done too much,—here ye have done too little.'

8. Now, wherever they had done too much it was like a hill; and wherever they had done too little it was like a pit.

9. Now, when he pronounces the *S*amyos (all-hail and blessing), he touches (the earth[2]) with (Vâg. S. II, 19), 'O Sacrifice, homage be unto thee: mayest thou complete thy course up to the success of the sacrifice and up to mine own right offering!' Wherever (in the course of the sacrifice) he has committed any excess, he makes amends for it by doing homage; and wherever he has left anything defective, it ceases to be defective by his saying, 'up to.' In saying, 'Mayest thou complete thy course up to the success of the sacrifice,'—success being whatever in the sacrifice is neither defective nor excessive—he thereby makes amends for both of these (mistakes); and in saying, 'Mayest thou complete thy

[1] Sâya*n*a explains this by 'âdhânakara*ne*'; but the passage referred to occurs I, 6, 2, 3. 4, in connection with the first butter-portion (âgyabhâga), that of Agni.

[2] Or, perhaps, the altar; see I, 9, 1, 29.

course up to mine own right offering,'—right offering being whatever in the sacrifice is neither defective nor excessive—he thereby also makes amends for both of these (mistakes); and thus that sacrifice of his comes to be performed as one that is neither defective nor excessive by whosoever, knowing this, thus touches (the earth): let him therefore touch it just in this way. But, indeed, those Gandharvas were Yavamân (rich in barley), the winnowing-basket; Uddâlavân (rich in paspalum frumentaceum), husbandry; and Antarvân (the pregnant), grain [1].

Fourth Brâhmaṇa.

1. The full moon, doubtless, is the same as that burning (sun), for he, indeed, is full day by day; and the new moon (darśa) is the same as the moon, for he appears (darś), as it were.

2. But they also say inversely, 'The full moon is the same as the moon, for after the filling up of the latter there is the night of full moon;' and the new moon (darśa) is the same as that burning (sun), for the latter appears, as it were.

3. The full moon, indeed, is this (earth), for she is, as it were, full; and the new moon is yonder sky, for yonder sky appears (or, is seen), as it were.

4. The full moon, indeed, is the night, for this

[1] On these names, Sâyaṇa merely remarks,—te gandharvâḥ śûrpâdibhâvam âpannâ babhûvuḥ, yavamân ityâdyâs teshâṃ saṃgñâḥ.—Mahîdhara, on the other hand, on Vâg. S. II, 19, makes them to be five names, Yavamat, Śûrpa (n.), Uddâlavat, Kṛishi (f.), and Dhânântarvat. This is very improbable; the last name, especially, being accented on the first syllable, showing it to be two words.

night is, as it were, full; and the new moon is the day, for this day appears, as it were. This, then, is the theory regarding the full and new moon in respect of the gods.

5. Then as to the body. The full moon is the up-breathing, for it is by the up-breathing[1] that this man is, as it were, filled; and the new moon is the out (and in)-breathing[2], for this out-breathing appears, as it were: thus, the full and new moon are these two, the eater and the giver of food.

6. The out (and in)-breathing (the mouth) is the eater of food, for by means of the out (and in)-breathing this food is eaten; and the up-breathing is the giver of food, for by the up-breathing[3] this food is given to him.

7. The full moon is the mind, for full, as it were, is this mind; and the new moon is speech, for this speech appears, as it were. Thus these two are clearly the full and new moon, as regards the body; and inasmuch as on the day of fasting he eats the (food) suitable for eating on the vow, he thereby clearly gratifies these two in regard to the body; and on the morrow (he gratifies them) as gods by sacrifice.

8. As to this they say,—'Seeing that no offering-material is taken out "for the full moon," nor any offering-material "for the new moon," and seeing that he does not say, "Recite the invitatory formula for the full moon," nor "Recite the invitatory for-

[1] The udâna is explained by Sâyaṇa as the breath passing (up into the head, and) through the nose.

[2] The prâṇa is the breath of the mouth.

[3] That is, by (the vital air of) the head (hence of the eyes, ears, &c.).

mula for the new moon;" nor "Recite the offering-formula for the full moon," nor "Recite the offering-formula for the new moon," how, then, is offering made to this full and new moon?' Well, when he makes a libation of ghee to the Mind—the full moon being the Mind—he thereby makes offering to the full moon; and when he makes a libation of ghee to Speech—the new moon being Speech—he thereby makes offering to the new moon: and thus offering is made by him to the full and new moon.

9. Now, some prepare two messes of rice, one for Sarasvat on the full moon, and one for Sarasvatî on the new moon, saying, 'We thus clearly make offering to the full and new moon.' But let him not do this; for Sarasvat is the Mind, and Sarasvatî is Speech; and thus, in making libations of ghee to these two, offering is made by him to the full and new moon: let him therefore not prepare these two messes of rice.

10. As to this they say, 'Surely, he who performs the Full and New-moon offerings becomes a (mere) utterer of the Âgur[1]; for, when he has performed

[1] Or, one who has only had the Âgur-formulas uttered for him (by the priests). Âgur is the technical term of two formulas, viz. of the formula '(Agnim) yaga' (recite the offering-formula to Agni, or to whatever deity offering is made), by which the Adhvaryu calls on the Hotṛi to recite; and of the formula 'Ye yagâmahe (Agnim),' by which the Hotṛi introduces the yâgyâ, or offering-verse. At the Soma-sacrifice the former formula is modified to 'Hotâ yakshat,' uttered by the Maitrâvaruṇa priest. See Haug, Transl. of Ait. Br., p. 133, note.—In comparing these Âgur-formulas with the performances of the Full and New-moon offerings, the author thus seems to imply that, just as the utterance of these formulas is merely the preliminary to the oblation itself, so each fortnightly

the Full-moon offering, he knows that he will perform the New-moon offering; and when he has performed the New-moon offering, he knows that he will again perform the Full-moon offering; thus when he goes to the other world he goes thither as an utterer of the Âgur: how, then, does he become one who has not (merely) uttered the Âgur?' Well, when, on both occasions, he makes those two libations of ghee (to Mind and Speech), then his Full and New-moon offerings become complete; and he goes to the other world after his Full and New-moon offerings are completed, and thus becomes one who has not (merely) uttered the Âgur.

Fifth Brâhmaṇa.

1. And, verily, even on this occasion[1], they slaughter the sacrificial horse (Aśvamedha) as a sacrifice to the gods: of this (New and Full-moon sacrifice) they say, 'It is the original (normal) Aśvamedha;' and that (real Aśvamedha), indeed, is just the other (modified one); for, indeed, the Aśvamedha is the same as the moon.

performance is only the preliminary to the next performance; but that the Sacrificer never actually completes the sacrifice. Sâyaṇa, on the other hand, takes 'âgûrtin' to mean 'one who has formed a resolution (âgûrta, âguraṇam = saṃkalpa);' and native dictionaries, indeed, give 'âgur' as a synonym of 'pratigñâ' (promise, agreement; Zuruf, Zusage). But, even if this were the right meaning of the word, the general drift of the passage would remain the same, viz. that such a sacrificer would ultimately die as one who had merely promised or intended to offer sacrifice, without his having actually performed it, or brought it to a proper conclusion, and thus without reaping the ultimate benefit from it, viz. citizenship in the heavenly abodes.

[1] Viz. in performing the Full and New-moon sacrifice, for which all the benefits accruing from the Aśvamedha are here claimed.

2. As to this, they say, 'For each foot of the sacrificial horse they offer an oblation;'—when he performs the Agnihotra in the evening and morning, he offers two oblations in the evening, and two in the morning—that makes four oblations: thus—the horse being four-footed—an oblation is offered for each of its feet.

3. As to this, they say, 'On the starting off of the horse he performs an offering[1]; for the moon, doubtless, is the same as King Soma, the food of the gods: when, during that night (of new moon), he does not appear either in the east or in the west, then he comes to this world, and starts for this world[2].

4. Now, when he performs the New-moon sacrifice, he thereby performs the (same) offering (as) on the starting of that (horse), and when he performs the Full-moon sacrifice he slaughters the sacrificial horse itself, and, having slaughtered it, he presents it to the gods. The other (real) horse-sacrifice they indeed perform (only) a year after (the starting offering), but this month (of the Full and New-moon sacrifice), revolving, makes up a year[3]: thus the sacrificial horse comes to be slaughtered for him year after year.

[1] According to Âsv. X, 6, 2 seqq., having chosen the horse to be sacrificed, he performs two ish*i*s, to Agni Mûrdhanvat and Pûshan; whereupon he sets free the horse, and for a year performs three ish*i*s daily at the three pressings, viz. to Savit*ri* Satyaprasava, Prasavit*ri*, and Âsavit*ri*.

[2] Or, he disappears in this world; the same verb (vi-vṛ*t*) being used for the disappearance as for the starting off of the horse when set free.

[3] The syntactic construction of the last two sentences is that frequently alluded to before, viz. that of parenthetic causal clauses.

5. Verily, then, for him who, knowing this, offers both the Agnihotra and the Full and New-moon sacrifices, they slaughter the sacrificial horse month by month; and month by month the Asvamedha is offered for him, and his Agnihotra and Full and New-moon sacrifices come to pass into the Asvamedha.

Sixth Brâhmaṇa.

1. The Praṇitâ water, doubtless, is the head of the sacrifice[1]; and when he leads forward the Praṇitâ water, it is the head of the sacrifice he thereby forms, and he should know that it is that head of his own that is then being formed.

2. The fuel, indeed, is its breath (of the mouth), for it is by the breath that everything here is kindled (animated) that has breath and moves twinkling with its eyelids: let him know that it is he himself that is that fuel.

3. The kindling-verses, indeed, are its spine: let him therefore say (to the Hotṛi) regarding them, 'Recite for me, making them, as it were, continuous[2];' for continuous, as it were, is this spinal column. And the two libations of ghee are its mind and speech, Sarasvat and Sarasvatî[3]: let

[1] Yaǵña, the sacrifice, is here, as so often, to be understood as the abstract representation of the victim (here the horse), as well as of the Purusha,—i. e. Pragâpati, and the Sacrificer.

[2] The kindling-verses, being in the Gâyatrî metre, consist of three octosyllabic pâdas each. Whilst after each verse a kindling-stick (samidh) is thrown into the fire by the Adhvaryu, the Hotṛi does not make any pause in his recitation at this point, but he does so after the second pâda of each verse, thus connecting the last pâda with the first two pâdas of the next verse.

[3] See XI, 2, 5, 9.

him know that the two libations of ghee are his mind and speech, Sarasvat and Sarasvatî.

4. The five fore-offerings are these its five (outlets of the) vital airs in the head;—the first fore-offering is its mouth, the second the right nostril, the third the left nostril, the fourth the right ear, and the fifth the left ear. And inasmuch as at the fourth fore-offering he pours together (the ghee[1]), therefore this ear is, on the inner side, connected by a channel (with the other). The two butter-portions are the eyes: let him know that these are his own eyes.

5. And that cake which is offered to Agni is its right flank; and the low-voiced offering is its heart; and inasmuch as they perform this in a low voice, this heart is, as it were, in secret.

6. And that cake which is offered to Agni and Soma (at full moon), or Indra's Sânnâyya (at new moon), is its left flank; the Svish*ṭ*ak*ṛ*t is that part between its shoulders; and the (Brahman's) fore-portion[2] is the poison[3].

7. And when he cuts off the fore-portion,—even as there they cut out what was injured[4] in Pragâpati, so do they now thereby cut out what in this (body) is clogged and hardened, and affected by Varu*ṇ*a:

[1] See I, 5, 3, 16. [2] See I, 7, 4, 10 seqq.

[3] Instead of 'visham,' the MS. of Sâya*ṇ*a's commentary reads 'dvishan' (hater, enemy), which is explained as meaning '*s*atru-buddhi'; the 'cutting out' of the fore-portion being compared with the annihilation of enemies (*s*atrunirasanârtham),—all this is, however, manifestly fanciful. What is intended would seem to be the poison (real or figurative) caused by the enemies' (or Rudra's, or Varu*ṇ*a's) shafts, in accordance with the myth regarding Pragâpati and his daughter, I, 7, 4, 1 seqq.

[4] Literally, what was pierced (by an arrow), cf. I, 7, 4, 3. 9.

let him know that, as there they cut out what was injured in Pragâpati, so they now cut out what in him is clogged and hardened and affected by Varuṇa.

8. The Iḍâ, indeed, is the belly: even as there, at (the invocation of) the Iḍâ[1] they cut off portions (and put them) together, so now food of all kinds is put together in the belly.

9. The three after-offerings are these its three downward breathings; and the Sûktavâka and Śamyorvâka its arms (or fore-feet); the four Patnisaṃyâgas the four supports—the two thighs and the two knee-bones; and the Samishṭayagus is the two (hind) feet.

10. These are twenty-one offerings;—two libations of ghee, five fore-offerings, two butter-portions, and Agni's cake: this makes ten; Agni and Soma's low-voiced offering, Agni and Soma's cake, the Agni Svishṭakṛit, the Iḍâ, three after-offerings, the Sûktavâka, the Śamyorvâka, further his seizing (the two spoons) at the same time there at the Patnisaṃyâgas[2], and (last) the Samishṭayagus.

11. These are twenty-one offerings,—there are twelve months and five seasons in a year; and three worlds—that makes twenty; and yonder burning (sun) is the twenty-first—that is the goal[3], that the resting-place: he thus reaches that goal, that resting-place.

12. Now, as to this Âruṇi said, 'Every half-month, indeed, I become a sharer of the same world with yonder sun: that is the perfection of the Full and New-moon sacrifices which I know.'

[1] See I, 8, 1, 12 seqq. [2] See I, 9, 2, 19.

[3] Saishâ sûryarûpaiva gatiḥ gantavyabhûmiḥ; eshaiva pratishṭhâ kṛitsnaphalasyâśrayaḥ, Sây.

13. As to this they ask, 'Who is the better one, the self-offerer, or the god-offerer?' Let him say, 'The self-offerer;' for a self-offerer, doubtless, is he who knows, 'This my (new) body is formed by that (body of Yagña, the sacrifice), this my (new) body is procured[1] thereby.' And even as a snake frees itself from its skin, so does he free himself from his mortal body, from sin; and made up of the *Rik*, the Yagus, the Sâman, and of offerings, does he pass on to the heavenly world.

14. And a god-offerer, doubtless, is he who knows, 'I am now offering sacrifice to the gods, I am serving the gods,'—such a one is like an inferior who brings tribute to his superior, or like a man of the people who brings tribute to the king: verily, he does not win such a place (in heaven) as the other.

Seventh Brâhmaṇa.

1. The Sacrifice is the Year; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the year of him whoso knows that the sacrifice is the year; and all that is done in the year comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

2. The officiating priests are the seasons; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the seasons of him whoso knows that the officiating priests are the seasons; and all that is done in the seasons comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

3. The oblations are the months; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the months of him whoso knows that the oblations are the months;

[1] Upadhîyate upasthâpyate, Sây.

and all that is done in the months comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

4. The oblation-vessels are the half-months; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the half-months of him whoso knows that the oblation-vessels are the half-months; and all that is done in the half-months comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

5. The two attendants[1] are the day and night; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the day and night of him whoso knows that the two attendants are the day and night; and all that is done in the day and night comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

6. The first kindling-verse is this (earth), the second the fire, the third the wind, the fourth the air, the fifth the sky, the sixth the sun, the seventh the moon, the eighth the mind, the ninth speech, the tenth fervid devotion, and the eleventh the Brahman; for it is these that kindle all this (universe), and by them all this (universe) is kindled, whence they are called kindling-verses.

7. Thrice he recites the first (kindling-verse): by reciting it the first time he gains the eastern region, by the second time he gains the southern region, and by the third time he gains the upper region.

8. And thrice he recites the last (verse): by reciting it the first time he gains the western region, by the second time he gains the northern region, by the third time he gains this same (earth as a) resting-place;

[1] Sâya*ṇa* seems to take the two attendants (pariveshṭṛî, preparers or servers-up of food) to mean the pair of fire-tongs (dhṛishṭî):—ye pariveshaṇa-sâdhane dhṛishṭî tayor ahorâtrabuddhi*m* vidhatte.

and by those (kindling-verses) he thus gains these worlds, and these regions.

9. The first libation of ghee is the sacred law, and the second the truth; and, verily, he secures for himself law and truth, and whatsoever is to be gained by law and truth all that he now gains.

10. The first fore-offering is brilliance, the second honour, the third fame, the fourth holy lustre, the fifth food (prosperity).

11. After the first fore-offering let him utter (the anumantraṇa[1]), 'May I become brilliant;' after the second, 'May I become honoured;' after the third, 'May I become glorious;' after the fourth, 'May I become endowed with holy lustre;' after the fifth, 'May I become prosperous;'—and, verily, whosoever knows this becomes brilliant, and honoured, and glorious, and endowed with holy lustre, and prosperous.

12. Now, Śvetaketu Âruṇeya[2], who knew this, said once, 'To him who will thus know that glory of the fore-offerings, people will in days to come be flocking from all sides as if wishing to see some great serpent.'

13. The first butter-portion, doubtless, is the past, and the second the future: verily, he secures for himself both the past and the future; and whatever is to be gained by the past and the future, all that he now gains.

---

[1] Each of the offering-formulas of the Prayâgas has after it the anumantraṇa 'might is speech, might is energy, in me the in-breathing and off-breathing;' which, according to our paragraph (and Kâty. III, 3, 5), is to be supplemented by these special prayers.

[2] See X, 3, 4, 1, with note.

14. The cake offered to Agni is the Brahman (priesthood); and, verily, whosoever knows Agni's cake to be the priesthood secures for himself the priesthood; and whatever is to be gained by the priesthood all that he now gains.

15. The low-voiced offering is the Kshatra (nobility); and, verily, whosoever knows the low-voiced offering to be the nobility secures for himself the nobility; and whatever is to be gained by the nobility all that he now gains. And inasmuch as some perform the low-voiced offering, and others do not, therefore people speak (give information) to the noble both in a loud voice and in a low voice.

16. The second cake is the Vi*s* (people); and, verily, whosoever knows the second cake to be the people secures for himself the people; and whatever is to be gained by the people all that he gains. And inasmuch as Agni's cake and the low-voiced offering come first therefore the priesthood and nobility are established upon the people.

17. The Sânnâyya[1] is royal dignity; and, verily, whosoever knows the Sânnâyya to be royal dignity secures for himself royal dignity; and whatever is to be gained by royal dignity all that he gains. And inasmuch as some pour (sweet and sour milk) together[2], and others do not, therefore the royal dignity both (combines) together and (keeps) asunder[3].

18. The Svish*ṭ*ak*ṛ*t is fervid devotion; and, verily, whosoever knows the Svish*ṭ*ak*ṛ*t to be fervid devo-

[1] For this sacrificial dish of the New-moon sacrifice, prepared from fresh milk and sour curds, see part i, p. 178, note 4.

[2] That is, they prepare the Sânnâyya.

[3] That is to say, different kings either combine or keep separate from each other.

tion secures for himself fervid devotion; and whatever is to be gained by fervid devotion all that he now gains.

19. The fore-portion is the place (in heaven); and, verily, whosoever knows the fore-portion to be the place (in heaven) secures for himself the place (in heaven); and whatever is to be gained by the place (in heaven) all that he now gains; and, indeed, he does not by ever so little fall from his place, for it is by ever so little that in yonder world men fall from their place; and whosoever knows this does not fall from his place however much evil he may have done.

20. The Iḍâ is faith; and, verily, whosoever knows the Iḍâ to be faith secures for himself faith, and whatever is to be gained by faith all that he now gains.

21. The first after-offering is the thunderbolt, the second the hail-stone, the third the (heavenly) firebrand (meteor).

22. After the first after-offering let him utter (the anumantraṇa), 'O thunderbolt, smite N. N.!' (naming) him whom he hates; after the second, 'O hail-stone, smite N. N.!' after the third, 'O firebrand, smite N. N.!'

23. And if such a one dies suddenly, then, indeed, it is that after-offering, the thunderbolt, that smites him; and if he is, as it were, covered with outflowing (blood), then it is that after-offering, the hail-stone, that smites him; and if he is, as it were, covered with scorching, then it is that after-offering, the (heavenly) firebrand, that smites him.

24. Such is the bolt of the sacrifice: it was by that bolt, indeed, that the gods overcame the Asuras;

and in like manner does the Sacrificer who knows this overcome his wicked, spiteful enemy.

25. And if the sacrifice were to end with after-offerings, then it would end with the thunderbolt, the hail-stone, and the (heavenly) firebrand: therefore the sacrifice of the gods ends either with the Iḍâ or with the Samyos.

26. By the fore-offerings, indeed, the gods reached the world of heaven. The Asuras tried to get thither after them; and by the after-offerings they (the gods) drove them back: thus, when the after-offerings are performed, the Sacrificer drives back his wicked, spiteful enemy.

27. The fore-offerings, indeed, are the out-breathings[1], and the after-offerings the off-breathings: wherefore the fore-offerings are poured out in a forward direction[2], for that is the form of the out-breathing; and the after-offerings (are poured out) in a backward direction[3], for that is the form of the off-breathing. The after-offerings, indeed, are the Upasads[4] of the

[1] That is, the breath (out and in-breathing) of the mouth (prâṇa), in comparing which with the fore-offerings (prayâga) the stress is laid on the preposition 'pra.'

[2] According to Kâty. III, 2, 18 seqq., the five prayâga libations are to be made either on the part of the fire burning the brightest, or so that each subsequent libation is poured further east of the preceding one.

[3] According to Kâty. III, 5, 10, the three anuyâga libations are to be made on the forepart, the middle, and the back (western) part of a burning log respectively.

[4] For the three days' libations, called Upasadaḥ (homages or sieges), at the Soma-sacrifice, see part ii, p. 104 seqq. I do not quite understand the reference to the 'backward direction' (pratyag-apavargatvaṃ vopasad-dharmaḥ, Sây.) of the Upasads, unless it be that the libations are offered to Agni, Soma and Vishṇu, who are compared with the point, barb and socket (?) of an arrow

Full and New-moon sacrifices, whence they are performed in a backward direction after the manner of the Upasads.

28. The Sûktavâka is the completion; and, verily, whosoever knows the Sûktavâka to be the completion secures for himself the completion; and whatever is to be gained by the completion all that he now gains: he obtains the completion of his (full) lifetime.

29. The Śamyorvâka is the resting-place; and, verily, whosoever knows the Śamyuvâka to be the resting-place secures for himself a resting-place; and whatever is to be gained by a resting-place all that he now gains: he reaches a resting-place.

30. The gods fortified the Patnîsaṁyâgas by a mound from behind[1], and placed a couple thereon for the sake of procreation: thus when the Patnîsaṁyâgas are performed, he places a couple thereon for the sake of procreation; for, indeed, after the procreation of the gods offspring is produced, and offspring is produced by pair after pair (of men and beasts) for him who knows this.

31. The Samishṭayagus is food; and, verily, whosoever knows the Samishṭayagus to be food secures for himself food; and whatever is to be gained by food all that he now gains.

32. The Sacrificer is the Year; and the Seasons officiate for him. The Âgnîdhra is the Spring,

---

respectively (III, 4, 4, 14), or that in filling the spoons with ghee, the procedure is the reverse of that usually followed (III, 4, 4, 7. 8).

[1] The Patnîsaṁyâgas (by which offering is made to Soma, Tvashṭri, and Agni, along with the wives of the gods) are performed on the Gârhapatya fire, and hence at the back (western) part of the sacrificial ground where the Sacrificer's wife is seated. For the symbolical import of the rite see I, 9, 2, 5.

whence forest-fires take place in spring, for that is a form of Agni. The Adhvaryu is the Summer, for summer is, as it were, scorched; and the Adhvaryu comes forth (from the sacrificial ground) like something scorched[1]. The Udgâtṛi is the Rainy season; whence, when it rains hard, a sound as that of a chant is produced. The Brahman is the Autumn; whence, when the corn ripens, they say, 'The creatures are rich in growth (brahmaṇvat).' The Hotṛi is the Winter, whence in winter cattle waste away, having the Vashaṭ uttered over them. These, then, are the divinities that officiate for him; and even if Aishâvîrâḥ[2] were to officiate for him, let him think in his mind of those divinities, and those deities, indeed, officiate for him.

33. Now, as to that balance, the right (south) edge of the Vedi[3]. Whatever good deed man does that is inside the Vedi; and whatever evil deed he does that is outside the Vedi. Let him therefore sit down, touching the right edge of the Vedi; for, indeed, they place him on the balance in yonder world; and whichever of the two will rise[4] that he will follow, whether it be the good or the evil. And, verily, whosoever knows this, mounts the balance even in this world, and escapes being placed on the balance in yonder world; for his good deed rises, and not his evil deed.

[1] Viz. from his constant attendance on the sacrificial fires.

[2] According to Sâyaṇa, Eshavîra is the name of a Brâhmaṇical family held in general contempt. See Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 228.

[3] That is, the altar-ground covered with sacrificial grass, serving as a seat for the gods.

[4] Literally, will force down (the other). On this ordeal see E. Schlagintweit, Die Gottesurtheile der Indier, Nachträge; A. Weber, Ind. Streifen I, p. 21; II, p. 363.

THIRD ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

THE AGNIHOTRA.

1. Verily, the Agnihotrî cow is the speech of the Agnihotra, and her calf is its mind. Now these two, mind and speech, whilst being one and the same, are, as it were, distinct from each other: therefore they tie up the calf and its mother with one and the same rope; and the fire[1], indeed, is faith, and the ghee truth.

2. Now, as to this Ganaka of Videha once asked Yâgñavalkya, 'Knowest thou the Agnihotra, Yâgñavalkya?'—'I know it, O king,' he said. —'What is it?'—'Milk, indeed.'

3. 'If there were no milk, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With rice and barley.'—'If there were no rice and barley, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With what other herbs there are.'—'If there were no other herbs, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With what forest herbs there are.'—'If there were no forest herbs, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With fruit of trees.'—'If there were no fruit of trees, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With water.'—'If there were no water, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'

4. He spake, 'Then, indeed, there would be nothing whatsoever here, and yet there would be offered—the truth in faith.'—'Thou knowest the Agnihotra, Yâgñavalkya: I give thee a hundred cows,' said Ganaka.

5. Concerning this point there are also these

[1] That is, according to Sâyaṇa, the fire, or heat, produced by the rope. Instead of 'tega eva śraddhâ,' one would rather expect 'śraddhaiva tegaḥ.'

verses:—'Knowing what[1], does the offerer of the Agnihotra stay away from his house? how is his wisdom (manifested)[2]? how is he kept up by his fires[3]?'—whereby he means to say, 'How, then, is there no staying away from home on his part[4]?'

6. 'He who is the swiftest in the worlds[5], that wise one is found staying abroad: thus (is manifested) his wisdom, thus he is kept up by his fires;'—he thereby means the mind: it is owing to his mind that there is no staying away from home on his part.

7. 'When, having gone far away, he heedeth not there his duty, wherein is that offering of his offered; (and wherein) do they, at his house, perform the offering of the progress?'—that is to say,—'When, having gone far away, he there heeds not his duty, wherein does that offering of his come to be offered?'

8. 'He who waketh in the worlds and sustaineth all beings, in him that offering of his is offered, (and in him) do they, at his house, perform the offering

[1] That is, according to Sâyaṇa.—What form of Agnihotra does he recognise, when he goes to stay abroad?

[2] That is,—How does he show his knowledge of the sacred obligation that one ought to perform the Agnihotra regularly twice a day for life?

[3] That is to say, How is the continuity in the constant attendance to his sacred fires kept up by him?

[4] Literally, 'How is non-staying abroad (brought about)?' that is to say,—How, though having to stay abroad, does he ensure the spiritual benefits of remaining at home? or, as Sâyaṇa puts it, How is the fault of staying abroad, avoided?—asya pravasato yagamânasya anapaproshitam pravâsadoshâbhâva*h*.

[5] Or, among (or in) beings. Sâyaṇa supplies '*yagamâna*h' to '*yo gavish*thah.'

of the progress;'—he thereby means the breath; whence they say, 'The Agnihotra is breath.'

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, whosoever knows the six pairs in the Agnihotra, has offspring born to him by pair after pair, by all generations. The Sacrificer and his wife—this is one pair: through it his Agnihotra would be possessed of a wife,—'May I obtain this pair!' he thinks[1]. The calf and the Agnihotra-cow—this is another pair: through it his Agnihotra-cow would become possessed of a male calf,—'May I obtain this pair!' he thinks. The pot and the coals—this is another pair; the offering-spoon and the dipping-spoon—this is another pair; the Âhavanîya fire and the log—this is another pair; the libation and the Svâhâ-call—this is another pair: these, doubtless, are the six pairs in the Agnihotra; and he who thus knows them, has offspring born to him by pair after pair, by all generations.

Third Brâhmaṇa.

1. The Brahman delivered the creatures over to Death, the Brahmaćârin (religious student) alone it did not deliver over to him. He (Death) said, 'Let me have a share in this one also.'—'Only the night on which he shall not bring his[2] fire-wood,' said (the Brahman). On whatever night, therefore, the Brahmaćârin does not bring fire-wood, that

[1] Or, perhaps, it (the Agnihotra) thinks.

[2] Prof. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 260, doubtless rightly takes the middle form (âharâtai) here to imply 'for his own self,' i.e. for his own protection from death.

(night) he passes[1] cutting it off from his own life: therefore the Brahmaḱârin should bring fire-wood, lest he should pass (his nights) cutting off (as much) from his life.

2. He who enters on a Brahmaḱârin's life, indeed, enters on a long sacrificial session: the log he puts on the fire in entering thereon is the opening (offering), and that which (he puts on the fire) when he is about to bathe[2] is the concluding (offering); and what (logs) there are between these, are just his (logs) of the sacrificial session. When a Brâhmaṇa enters on a Brahmaḱârin's life—

3. He enters beings in four parts: with one fourth part (he enters) the fire, with another part death, with another part his religious teacher; and his fourth part remains in his own self.

4. Now, when he brings a log for the fire, he redeems that fourth part of his which is in the fire; and having cleansed[3] it, he takes it to his own self, and it enters him.

5. And when, having made himself poor, as it were, and become devoid of shame, he begs alms, then he redeems that part of his which is in death;

[1] Or, perhaps better,—that (night) he keeps cutting off from his life,—in which case the verb 'vas' would be construed with the gerund in much the same way as 'sthâ' commonly is. This construction would suit even better the second passage (without the object 'tâm') at the end of the paragraph. In any case we have to understand that, during every night passed with his teacher without his having brought fire-wood, he cuts off a night, or day, from (the latter end of) his life. Cf. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, pp. 260, 334, 405.

[2] That is, prior to his leaving the house of his teacher and returning to his own family.

[3] Saṁskṛitya = utkṛishṭaṁ kṛitvâ, Sâyaṇa.

and, having cleansed it, he takes it to himself, and it enters him.

6. And when he does the teacher's bidding, and when he does any work for the teacher, he redeems that part of his which is in the teacher; and, having cleansed it, he takes it to himself, and it enters him.

7. Let him not beg alms after he has bathed (at the end of his studentship), for by bathing he drives off beggary, and drives off hunger from his kinsmen and his deceased ancestors, 'Let him who knows this beg alms only from her in whom he has the greatest confidence[1],' they say, 'for that makes for heaven.' And should he find no other woman from whom alms could be begged, he may even beg from his own teacher's wife, and thereafter from his own mother[2]. The seventh (night) should not pass by for him without begging: him who knows this and practises this all the Vedas enter; for, verily, even as the fire shines when kindled, so does he, after bathing, shine, who, knowing this, lives a Brahma-*k*ârin's life.

Fourth Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now Uddâlaka Âru*ṇi*[3] was driving about[4], as a chosen (offering-priest), amongst the people of

[1] That is, from whom he is perfectly sure of getting something. Sâya*ṇa*, however, takes it in the sense of 'from whom he feels sure he will get most,'—Sa brahma*k*ârî yasyâ eva bhikshitâyâ*h* striya*h* sakâsâd bhûyish*th*am bahutaram annam labhyata iti *s*lâgheta tâ*m* bhikshetety âhu*h*, Sây.

[2] That is, after leaving his teacher's house and returning home.

[3] For another version of this legend see Gopatha-Brâhma*ṇa* I, 3, 6. See also Prof. Geldner's translation in Pischel and G.'s Vedische Studien II, p. 185.

[4] Prof. Geldner takes 'dhâvayâ*m* *k*akâra' in a causal sense

the northern country. By him a gold coin was offered; for in the time of our forefathers a prize used to be offered by chosen (priests) when driving about, for the sake of calling out the timid[1] to a disputation. Fear then seized the Brâhmaṇas of the northern people:—

2. 'This fellow is a Kurupañkâla Brahman, and son of a Brahman—let us take care lest he should deprive us of our domain: come, let us challenge him to a disputation on spiritual matters.' —'With whom for our champion?'—'With Svaidâyana.' Svaidâyana, to wit, was Saunaka.

3. They said, 'Svaidâyana, with thee as our champion we will fight this fellow.' He said, 'Well, then, stay ye here quietly: I will just make his acquaintance[2].' He went up to him, and when he had come up, he (Uddâlaka) greeted him saying,

'er verursachte einen Anflauf' (he caused people to crowd together, or to come to him in crowds). Sâyaṇa, however, takes it in the same sense as we have done,—ârtvigyâya vṛitaḥ sann udagdeśân gagâma. The Gopatha-Br., further on, has the remark 'sa vai gotamasya putra ûrdhvaṁ vṛito 'dhâvît' (!).

[1] It is by no means certain whether the interpretation of the paragraph as here adapted is the right one. Prof. Geldner takes it thus,—'He (Udd.) had taken a gold piece with him; for in times of old the chosen (priests) who caused a crowd to gather round them, used to take a single gold piece with them with a view to their proposing a riddle (or problem) whenever they were afraid.' The Gopatha-Br. has a different reading, which is likewise far from clear:—tasya ha nishka upâhito babhûva, upavâdâd bibhyato yo mâ brâhmaṇo 'nûkâna upavadishyati tasmâ etam pradâsyâmîti;—by him a gold coin was offered (? by him a gold plate had been put on, i.e. was worn round the neck) being afraid of obloquy (?): 'I shall give this to any learned Brâhman who will speak up against me,' thus (he thought).

[2] Or, I'll just find out what kind of man he is.

'Svaidâyana!'—'Halloo, son of Gautama!' replied the other, and straightway began to question him.

4. 'He alone, O son of Gautama, may drive about amongst people as chosen (offering-priest), who knows in the Full and New-moon sacrifices eight butter-portions (offered) previously, five portions of sacrificial food in the middle, six (portions) of Pragâpati, and eight butter-portions (offered) subsequently.

5. 'He alone, O son of Gautama, may drive about amongst people as chosen (priest), who knows from the Full and New-moon sacrifices[1] whereby it is that creatures here are born toothless, whereby they (the teeth) grow with them, whereby they decay with them, whereby they come to remain permanently with them; whereby, in the last stage of life, they all decay again with them; whereby the lower ones grow first, then the upper ones; whereby the lower ones are smaller, and the upper ones broader; whereby the incisors are larger, and whereby the molars are of equal size.

6. 'He alone, O son of Gautama, may drive about amongst people as chosen (priest), who knows from the Full and New-moon sacrifices, whereby creatures here are born with hair; whereby, for the second time, as it were, the hair of the beard and the arm-pits and other parts of the body[2] grow on them; whereby it is on the head that one first

[1] Literally, who knows that (element) in the Full and New-moon sacrifices whereby . . .

[2] The word 'durbhîrimâni' is of doubtful meaning, the etymology proposed by Sâyaṇa having little claim to being seriously considered. In the St. Petersb. Dict. the meaning 'bristly' is assigned to it, as applied to the hair of the beard.

becomes grey, and then, again, in the last stage of life, one becomes grey all over.

7. 'He alone, O son of Gautama, may drive about amongst people as chosen (priest), who knows from the Full and New-moon sacrifices whereby the seed of the boy is not productive, whereby in his middle age it is productive, and whereby again in his last stage of life it is not productive;—

8. 'And he who knows the golden, brilliant-winged Gâyatrî who bears the Sacrificer to the heavenly world.' Then he (Uddâlaka) gave up to him the gold coin, saying, 'Thou art learned, Svaidâyana; and, verily, gold is given unto him who knows gold;' and he (Svaidâyana), having concealed it[1], went away. They asked him, 'How did that son of Gautama behave?'

9. He said, 'Even as a Brahman, and the son of a Brahman: the head would fly off of whosoever should (dare to) challenge him to a disputation[2].' They then went away in all directions. He (Uddâlaka) then came back to him, with fire-wood

[1] Sâya*ṇa* takes 'upaguhya' in the sense of 'having embraced (him),' that being the meaning the verb has in classical Sanskrit; —ta*m* Svaidâyanam upaguhya âliṅgya Uddâlakas tasmât sthânân nis*k*akrâma nishkrântavân. The Gopatha-Br. has 'tad upayamya' (having taken it) instead. Svaidâyana evidently did not wish the other Brâhmans to know that he had had the better of the Kurupañ*k*âla.

[2] ? Or, to catechize him; Brahmâ svaya*m* vedâdya*h* brahmaputro brahmish*th*asya Gotamasya putra ity etad yathâvr*i*ttam eva, api tu ya*h* purusha enam Uddâlakam upavalheta pradhâna*m* sresh*th*ya*m* (? sresh*tha*m) kuryât—varha valha prâdhânya iti dhâtu*h*—asya purushasya mûrdhâ vipatet, alpag*ñ*ânasya âdhikyena viparyayagraha*ṇ*ât tannimitta-sira*h*patanam bhavatîty artha*h*, Sây.—Prof. Geldner translates,—'He must rack his brains (muss sich den Kopf zerbrechen) who wants to outdo him in questions (überfragen).'

in his hand[1], and said, 'I want to become thy pupil.'—'What wouldst thou study?'—'Even those questions which thou didst ask me—explain them to me!' He said, 'I will tell them to thee even without thy becoming my pupil.'

10. And he then spoke thus to him:—The two libations of ghee, the five fore-offerings, and, eighth, Agni's butter-portion—these are the eight butter-portions (offered) previously. Soma's butter-portion, being the first of the portions of sacrificial food—for Soma is sacrificial food,—Agni's cake, Agni-Soma's low-voiced offering, Agni-Soma's cake, and (the offering to) Agni Svish*ṭ*ak*ṛ*t—these are the five portions of sacrificial food in the middle.

11. The fore-portion, the I*ḍ*â, what he hands to the Agnîdh[2], the Brahman's portion, the Sacrificer's portion, and the Anvâhârya (mess of rice)—these are the six (portions) of Praǵâpati. The three after-offerings, the four Patnîsa*m*yâǵas, and, eighth, the Samish*ṭ*ayaǵus—these are the eight butter-portions (offered) subsequently.

12. And inasmuch as the fore-offerings are without invitatory formulas[3], therefore creatures are born here without teeth; and inasmuch as the chief oblations have invitatory formulas, therefore they (the teeth) grow in them; and inasmuch as the after-offerings are without invitatory formulas, therefore they (the teeth) decay in them; and inasmuch as the Patnîsa*m*yâǵas have invitatory formulas,

[1] That is, as a pupil (brahma*ḳ*ârin) would to his teacher.

[2] Viz. the 'sha*ḍ*avatta,' or share consisting of six 'cuttings,' for which see I, 8, 1, 41 with note.

[3] With these oblations there is no puro-nuvâkyâ, but only a yâǵyâ, or offering-formula.

therefore they (the teeth) come to remain permanently with them; and inasmuch as the Samish/a-yagus is without invitatory formula, therefore they all decay again in the last stage of life.

13. And inasmuch as, after uttering the invitatory formula, he offers with the offering-formula, therefore the lower (teeth) grow first, then the upper ones; and inasmuch as, after uttering a gâyatrî verse as invitatory formula, he offers with a trish/ubh verse [1], therefore the lower (teeth) are smaller, and the upper ones broader; and inasmuch as he pours out the two libations of ghee in a forward direction [2], therefore the incisors are larger; and inasmuch as the two sa*m*yâgyâs [3] are in the same metre, therefore the molars are of equal size.

14. And inasmuch as he spreads a cover of sacrificial grass (on the Vedi), therefore creatures here are born with hair: and inasmuch as he for the second time, as it were, spreads the Prastara-bunch [4], therefore, for the second time, as it were, the hair of the beard and the arm-pits, and other parts of the body grow; and inasmuch as at first he only throws the Prastara-bunch after (the oblations into the fire), therefore it is on the head that one first becomes grey; and inasmuch as he then throws after it all the sacrificial grass of the altar-ground, therefore,

[1] Whilst the gâyatrî verse consists of 3×8 syllables, the trish/ubh has 4×11 syllables.

[2] That is, pouring the second into the fire at a place immediately to the front, or eastward, of the first.

[3] That is, the invitatory and offering-formulas used for the oblation to Agni Svish/akr*i*t; see part i, p. 307, note 1.

[4] For this bunch taken from the sacrificial grass before it is spread on the altar-ground, and symbolically representing the Sacrificer, see I, 3, 3, 4 seqq.; and part i, p. 84, note 2.

in the last stage of life, one again becomes grey all over.

15. And inasmuch as the fore-offerings have ghee for their offering-material, a boy's seed is not productive, but is like water, for ghee is like water; and inasmuch as, in the middle of the sacrifice, they sacrifice with sour curds [1] and with cake, therefore it is productive in his middle stage of life, for thick-flowing, as it were, is (that havis), and thick-flowing, as it were, is seed; and inasmuch as the after-offerings have ghee for their offering-material, it again is not productive in his last stage of life, and is like water, for ghee, indeed, is like water.

16. The Vedi (altar-ground), doubtless, is the Gâyatrî: the eight butter-portions (offered) previously are her right wing, and the eight butter-portions (offered) subsequently are her left wing: that same golden, brilliant-winged Gâyatrî, indeed, bears the Sacrificer who knows this to the heavenly world.

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, then, as to the taking up of the two offering-spoons [2]. Now, in this respect, some people,

[1] That is, at the New-moon sacrifice, with the Sânnâyya, or mixture of sour curds with sweet boiled milk. The 'iti' after 'puroḍâsena' is taken by Sâyaṇa in the sense of 'ka'; and though this cannot be accepted, it is not very easy to see what force it can have here.

[2] At the time when the sacrificial food (havis) is to be placed on the Vedi, the two offering-spoons, *guhû* and *upabhṛit*, are filled with ghee, and then placed, the former on the Prastara-bunch (lying on the Vedi) with the bowl towards the east, and the latter north of it on the grass-cover of the Vedi; a third spoon, the dhruvâ, being again placed north of the *upabhṛit*. The first libation of ghee (âghâra) is made from the dipping-spoon (sruva); but when about

thinking themselves clever, take up the (*g*uhû) with the right, and the upabhṛ*t* with the left (hand); but let him not do so; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this Adhvaryu has made the Sacrificer's spiteful enemy equal to him, and able to cope with him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

2. Let him rather do it in this way;—having taken the *g*uhû with both hands, let him lay it down on the upabhṛ*t*; there is no question about this: it is good for (securing) cattle and life. Let him take them up without clinking them together,—were he to let them clink together, insecurity of property would befall the Sacrificer: let him, therefore, take them up without clinking them together.

3. Now as to the stepping past (the Vedi). By a thunderbolt, indeed, one Adhvaryu scatters the Sacrificer's cattle, and by a thunderbolt another drives them together for him. Now that Adhvaryu, doubtless, scatters the Sacrificer's cattle by a thunderbolt, who steps past with his right (foot)[1] when he is

to make the second libation, as also prior to each of the two butter-portions, to the first of the five fore-offerings, as well as before each of the chief offerings (when, however, portions of the respective sacrificial dishes are added to the ghee in the *g*uhû), the Adhvaryu takes up the two spoons in the manner mentioned, viz. holding them together with both hands so as to be parallel to each other, the bowl of the *g*uhû being just above that of the upabhṛ*t* without touching it. While thus holding them he goes forward to the Âhavanîya, and, after the other necessary rites, pours the oblation from the *g*uhû, over the spout of the upabhṛ*t*, into the fire. At the fourth fore-offering the ghee contained in the upabhṛ*t* is for the first time made use of, half of it being poured into the *g*uhû for the last two fore-offerings, whilst the remainder is used for the after-offerings.

[1] When the Adhvaryu betakes himself from his place behind the Vedi (on which the sacrificial material is laid out) to the Âhavanîya

about to call (on the Âgnîdhra) for the *Srausha*ṭ, and with his left (foot) when he has called for the *Srausha*ṭ; and that (other) one drives them together for him who steps past with his left (foot) when he is about to call for the *Srausha*ṭ, and with his right (foot) when he has called for the *Srausha*ṭ; for he does indeed drive them together for him.

4. Now as to the holding (of the spoons). In this respect, some people, thinking themselves clever, hold the two spoons whilst stretching forward both arms; but let him not do so, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this Sacrificer has made two spears of his arms: he will become a spear-holder,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass. But that (navel is the channel of the) central breathing: let him therefore hold (the spoon) by lowering them[1] to that (breathing).

5. Now as to calling for the *Srausha*ṭ[2]: there are six (modes of) calling for the *Srausha*ṭ,—the descending, the level, the ascending, the feeble, the outward-tending, and the inward-tending.

6. Now the descending mode, indeed, it is when he begins in a high tone and concludes in a low tone: whoever should wish that any one[3] should be poorer,

in order to perform an offering, he is to proceed in such a way as constantly to keep his left foot before the right one; whilst in returning to his place he keeps the right foot before the left. Of the two ways of procedure mentioned in the paragraph, the second way is thus the right one.

[1] Whilst the Adhvaryu is standing by the side of the Âhavanîya, ready to make the offering, he holds the spoons to his navel till the moment when he has to pour the oblation into the fire.

[2] The Adhvaryu's call is '*om srâvaya*' (make him hear!) whereupon the Âgnîdhra responds '*astu srausha*ṭ' (yea, may he hear!).

[3] Viz. any one for whom he (the Adhvaryu) performs a sacrifice,

let him begin for him in a high tone and conclude in a low tone; and he will thereby become poorer.

7. And the level one, indeed, it is when he concludes in the same tone in which he has begun: whoever should wish that any one should be neither more prosperous nor poorer, let him conclude for him in the same tone in which he has begun; and he will thereby become neither more prosperous nor poorer.

8. And the ascending one, indeed, it is when he begins in a low tone and concludes in a high tone: whoever should wish that any one should be more prosperous, let him begin for him in a low tone and conclude in a high tone; and he will thereby become more prosperous.

9. And the feeble one, indeed, it is when he calls for the Sraushaṭ in a thin, long-drawn, toneless way: if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this Adhvaryu has made the Sacrificer feeble, and submissive to his spiteful enemy,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

10. And the outward-tending (bahiḥ-sri) one, indeed, it is when he opens his lips wide and utters his call at a high, toneless pitch: tone being prosperity, he thereby puts prosperity (srî) outside (bahis) himself, and becomes hungry (poor).

11. And the inward-tending (antaḥ-sri) one, indeed, it is when he closes his lips, and utters his call at a loud, toneful pitch: tone being prosperity, he thereby puts prosperity (srî) inside (antaḥ) himself, and becomes an eater of food (rich).

---

in case he (the priest) thinks he has not been treated liberally enough by his patron, or for some other reason.

12. Having kept back (the tone) deep in the breast, as it were, let him (keep up the middle pitch of) the Bṛihat (sâman) in both (words 'om srâvaya'), and finally leave off at a high pitch; there is no question about this: it is good for (securing) cattle and life.

13. Now as to the oblation. In this respect, some people, thinking themselves clever, having turned down the spoon eastwards, and poured out the oblation, turn it round and place it over the upabhṛit. But let him not do this; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this Adhvaryu has made the Sacrificer dependent on, and submissive to, his spiteful enemy,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

14. And some, having turned down the spoon sideways, and poured out the oblation, turn it round and place it over the upabhṛit. But let him not do so; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this Advaryu has stopped the oblations by (following) the wrong way, he (the Sacrificer) will either be shattered, or become worm-eaten,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

15. Let him rather do it in this way:—having turned down the spoon eastwards, and poured out the oblation, let him carry it up in the same way and place it over the upabhṛit;—there is no question about this: it is good for (securing) cattle and life.

16. One Adhvaryu, indeed, burns the oblations, and another satisfies the oblations; and that Adhvaryu, assuredly, burns the oblations who, having offered ghee, offers portions (of sacrificial dishes): indeed, it is with reference to him that an invisible voice has said, 'Surely, this Adhvaryu burns the oblations.' And he, indeed, satisfies them who

having offered ghee, offers sacrificial portions, and finally again offers ghee thereon: such a one certainly satisfies them; and, these (oblations) having been satisfied, the gods fill gold cups (for him)[1].

17. Concerning this, Yâgñavalkya said[2], 'When, after making an underlayer (of ghee), and cutting portions (from the sacrificial dish), he bastes them (with ghee), then, indeed, he satisfies them; and, they being satisfied, the gods fill (for him) gold cups[3].' Now Saulvâyana was Adhvaryu to those who had Ayasthûṇa[4] for their Gṛihapati[5].

18. He said, 'Surely, this sacrificial session is supplied with lean cattle and scanty ghee; and yet this one, forsooth, thinks himself a Gṛihapati!'

19. He (Ayasthûṇa) said, 'Adhvaryu, thou hast insulted us; and there now are those two spoons which, for a whole year, thou hast not been able to take up (in the proper manner): if I were to instruct thee in (the use of) them, thou wouldst become multiplied in offspring and cattle, and wouldst lead (the Sacrificer) to heaven.'

20. He said, 'Let me become thy pupil.' He answered, 'Even now, indeed, art thou worthy (of being instructed), who hast been our Adhvaryu for a year: I will teach thee this even without thy

[1] Tâsâṁ saṁtṛiptânâm âhutînâṁ bhoktâro devâḥ prîtâḥ santo hiraṇmayân hiraṇyavikârâṁs kamasân yagamânâya dâtuṁ yena pûrayante, Sây.

[2] Cf. I, 7, 2, 7–10; and part i, p. 192, note 1, where the procedure is explained.

[3] One would expect an 'iti' here.

[4] According to Sâyaṇa, Ayasthûṇa is the name of a *Ṛishi*.

[5] Literally, 'house-lord' or householder—the title of the Sacrificer at sacrificial sessions.

becoming my pupil.' And so, indeed, he taught him that taking up of the two spoons as we have here explained it: hence one ought only to make one who knows this his Adhvaryu, and not one who does not know it.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

THE MITRAVINDÂ SACRIFICE.

1. Pragâpati was becoming heated (by fervid devotion), whilst creating living beings[1]. From him, worn out and heated, Śrî (Fortune and Beauty) came forth. She stood there resplendent, shining, and trembling[2]. The gods, beholding her thus resplendent, shining, and trembling, set their minds upon her.

2. They said to Pragâpati, 'Let us kill her and take (all) this from her.' He said, 'Surely, that Śrî is a woman, and people do not kill a woman, but rather take (anything) from her (leaving her) alive.'

3. Agni then took her food, Soma her royal power, Varuṇa her universal sovereignty, Mitra her noble rank, Indra her power, Bṛihaspati her holy lustre, Savitṛi her dominion, Pûshan her wealth, Sarasvati her prosperity, and Tvashṭṛi her beautiful forms.

4. She said to Pragâpati, 'Surely, they have taken (all) this from me!' He said, 'Do thou ask it back from them by sacrifice!'

[1] That is, gods, men, &c., Sây.

[2] Sâyaṇa apparently takes 'lelâyantî' in the sense of 'all-embracing' (from lîyate, to nestle against),—dîpyamânâ avayavaiḥ śobhamânâ bhrâgamânâ sarvaṁ gagat svategasâ prakâśayantî svakîyena tegaḥpuñgena sarvam âślishyantî atishṭhat sthitavatî.

5. She perceived this offering with ten sacrificial dishes—a cake on eight potsherds for Agni, a pap for Soma, a cake on ten potsherds for Varuṇa, a pap for Mitra, a cake on eleven potsherds for Indra, a pap for Bṛihaspati, a cake on twelve or eight potsherds for Savitṛi, a pap for Pûshan, a pap for Sarasvatî, and a cake on ten potsherds for Tvashṭṛi.

6. She invited them by means of this invitatory formula,—'May Agni, Soma, Varuṇa, Mitra, Indra, Bṛihaspati, and the thousandfold-bestowing Savitṛi,—May Pûshan, for our Sacrifices, unite us with cattle, Sarasvatî with favour, Tvashṭṛi with beautiful forms!' They accordingly made their appearance again.

7. By this offering-formula she then approached them in inverted order (beginning) from the last:—'May Tvashṭṛi grant me forms, and the bountiful Sarasvatî, and Pûshan good fortune, and may Savitṛi bestow gifts on me, and Indra power, and Mitra noble rank, and Varuṇa, and Soma and Agni!' They were ready to restore them to her.

8. She perceived these additional oblations:—'May Agni, the food-eater, the food-lord, bestow food upon me at this sacrifice, svâhâ!' Agni, taking the oblation, departed and restored her food to her.

9. 'May Soma, the king, the lord of kings, bestow royal power upon me at this sacrifice, svâhâ!' Soma, taking the oblation, departed and restored her royal power to her.

10. 'May Varuṇa, the universal sovereign, the lord of universal sovereigns, bestow universal sovereignty upon me at this sacrifice,

svâhâ!' Varu*ṇa*, taking the oblation, departed and restored her universal sovereignty to her.

11. 'May Mitra, the Kshatra (nobility), the lord of the Kshatra, bestow noble rank upon me at this sacrifice, svâhâ!' Mitra, taking the oblation, departed and restored her noble rank to her.

12. 'May Indra, the power, the lord of power, bestow power upon me at this sacrifice, svâhâ!' Indra, taking the oblation, departed and restored her power to her.

13. 'May B*ri*haspati, the Brahman (priesthood), the lord of the Brahman, bestow holy lustre upon me at this sacrifice, svâhâ!' B*ri*haspati, taking the oblation, departed and restored her holy lustre to her.

14. 'May Savit*ri*, the kingdom, the lord of the kingdom, bestow the kingdom upon me at this sacrifice, svâhâ!' Savit*ri*, taking the oblation, departed and restored her kingdom to her.

15. 'May Pûshan, wealth, the lord of wealth, bestow wealth upon me at this sacrifice, svâhâ!' Pûshan, taking the oblation, departed and restored her wealth to her.

16. 'May Sarasvatî, prosperity[1], the lord of prosperity, bestow prosperity upon me at this sacrifice, svâhâ!' Sarasvatî, taking the oblation, departed and restored her prosperity to her.

17. 'May Tvash*ṭri*, the fashioner of forms,

[1] I read 'push*ṭih*' instead of 'push*ṭim*.' Sâya*ṇa* takes it thus,—whatever prosperity Sarasvatî, the lord of prosperity, took from me, may he bestow that prosperity upon me!

the lord of forms, bestow cattle with form[1] upon me at this sacrifice, svâhâ!' Tvash*ṭri*, taking the oblation, departed and restored her cattle with (beautiful) form to her.

18. These, then, are ten deities, ten sacrificial dishes, ten offerings, ten presents to priests,—the Virâ*g* consists of decad after decad (of syllables), and the Virâ*g* (shining one) is *Sri* (beauty, prosperity): he thus establishes (the Sacrificer) in the Virâ*g*, in prosperity and food.

19. For this (sacrifice) there are fifteen kindling-verses[2]: he offers to the deities in a low voice[3]. There are five fore-offerings, three after-offerings, and one Samish*ṭa*yagus. The (formulas of the) two butter-portions contain the word 'affluence':—(*Rig*-veda S. I, 1, 3), 'Through Agni may he obtain wealth and affluence day by day, famous and abounding in heroes;'—(*Rig*-veda S. I, 91, 12), 'An increaser of the house, a remover of trouble, a procurer of wealth, an augmenter of affluence, a kind friend be thou unto us, O Soma!' The two formulas of the Svish*ṭa*kr*i*t contain the word 'thousand':—(*Rig*-veda S. III, 13, 7), 'Grant thou unto us wealth, a thousandfold, with offspring and affluence, and glorious manhood, O Agni, most excellent and never

[1] Sâya*ṇa* supplies 'visish*ṭâ*n,'—cattle endowed with form.

[2] That is, the ordinary number of sâmidhenîs at an ish*ṭi*, viz. eleven verses, the first and last of which are recited three times each. See part i, p. 102, note 1; p. 112, note 1.

[3] That is, the formulas—with the exception of the final 'om' of the invitatory formulas, and the introduction 'ye yagâmahe' and the final 'vausha*ṭ*' of the offering-formulas—are pronounced in a low voice.

failing!'—(*Ṛig*-veda S. III, 13, 6), 'Favour thou our prayer, as the best invoker of the gods for our hymns: blaze up auspiciously for us, wind-fanned, O Agni, the dispenser of a thousand bounties!'

20. Now, indeed, it was Gotama Râhûga*ṇa* who discovered this (sacrifice). It went away to *G*anaka of Videha, and he searched for it in the Brâhma*ṇa*s versed in the Aṅgas[1] (limbs of the Veda), and found it in Yâ*gñ*avalkya. He said, 'A thousand we give thee, O Yâ*gñ*avalkya, in whom we have found that Mitravindâ.' He finds (vind) Mitra, and his is the kingdom, he conquers recurring death[2] and gains all life, whosoever, knowing this, performs this sacrifice; or whosoever thus knows it.

FOURTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, as to the successful issue of the sacrificial food. Now, indeed, there are six doors to the Brahman[3],—to wit, fire, wind, the waters, the moon, lightning, and the sun.

2. He who offers with slightly burnt sacrificial food, enters through the fire-door[4] of the Brahman;

[1] That is, the Vedâṅgas, i.e. the limbs, or supplementary sciences, of the Veda.

[2] That is to say, his approaching death will deliver him once for all from mundane existence and its constantly repeated round of birth and death.

[3] That is, of the (impersonal) world-spirit.

[4] In the text the two words are not compounded, but stand in apposition to each other (with the fire as the door of B.), with, however, much the same force as a compound word. Cf. XII, 2, 1, 2 gâdham (eva) pratish*th*â (a foothold consisting of a ford), and ib. 9 gâdha-pratish*th*â, 'ford-foothold.'

and, by entering through the fire-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

3. And he who offers with sacrificial food that has fallen (on the ground) enters through the wind-door of the Brahman; and, by entering through the wind-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

4. And he who offers with uncooked sacrificial food, enters through the water-door of the Brahman; and, by entering through the water-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

5. And he who offers with slightly browned sacrificial food, enters through the moon-door of the Brahman, and, by entering through the moon-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

6. And he who offers with browned sacrificial food, enters through the lightning-door of the Brahman, and, by entering through the lightning-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

7. And he who offers with well-cooked sacrificial food, enters through the sun-door of the Brahman; and, by entering through the sun-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman. This, then, is the successful issue of the sacrificial food, and, verily, whosoever thus knows this to be the successful issue of the sacrificial food, by him offering is made with wholly successful sacrificial food.

8. Then, as to the successful issue of the sacrifice. Now, whatever part of the sacrifice is incomplete

(nyûna) that part of it is productive for him[1]; and what is redundant in it that is favourable to cattle; and what is broken (disconnected)[2] in it that makes for prosperity; and what is perfect in it that is conducive to heaven.

9. And if he think, 'There has been that which was incomplete in my sacrifice,' let him believe, 'That is productive for me: I shall have offspring produced (in men and cattle).'

10. And if he think, 'There has been that which was redundant in my sacrifice,' let him believe, 'That is favourable to cattle for me: I shall become possessed of cattle.'

11. And if he think, 'There has been that which was disconnected in my sacrifice,' let him believe, 'That makes for my prosperity: Prosperity, surrounded by splendour, fame and holy lustre, will accrue to me.'

12. And if he think, 'There has been that which was perfect in my sacrifice,' let him believe, 'That is conducive to heaven for me: I shall become one of those in the heavenly world.' This then is the successful issue of the sacrifice; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this to be the successful issue of the sacrifice, by him offering is made by a wholly successful sacrifice.

FIFTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. The nymph Urvaśî loved Purûravas[3], the son of Iḍâ. When she wedded him, she said,

[1] See XI, 1, 2, 4; tad asya yaggñasya pragananam pragotpattisâdhanam.

[2] Sâyaṇa's explanation of the term 'saṁkasuka' (? broken, affected with gaps) is not available owing to an omission in the MS. Ind. Off. 1071.

[3] King Purûravas, of the lunar race of kings, is considered the

'Thrice a day shalt thou embrace [1] me; but do not lie with me against my will [2], and let me not see thee naked, for such is the way to behave to us women.'

2. She then dwelt with him a long time, and was even with child of him, so long did she dwell with him. Then the Gandharvas [3] said to one another, 'For a long time, indeed, has this Urvaśî dwelt among men: devise ye some means how she may come back to us.' Now, a ewe with two lambs was tied to her couch: the Gandharvas then carried off one of the lambs.

3. 'Alas,' 'she cried, 'they are taking away my darling [4], as if I were where there is no hero and no man!' They carried off the second, and she spake in the selfsame manner.

4. He then thought within himself, 'How can that be (a place) without a hero and without a man where I am?' And naked, as he was, he sprang

son of Budha (the planet Mercury, and son of Soma). On this myth (based on the hymn *Rig*-veda S. X, 95) see Prof. Max Müller, Oxford Essays (1856), p. 61 seqq.; (reprinted in Chips from a German Workshop, II, p. 102 seqq.); A. Kuhn, Herabkunft des Feuers und des Göttertranks, p. 81 seqq. (2nd ed. p. 73 seqq.); Weber, Ind. Streifen I, p. 16 seqq.; K. F. Geldner, in Pischel and Geldner's Vedische Studien I, p. 244 seqq.; cf. H. Oldenberg, Religion des Veda, p. 253.

[1] Vaitasena da*nd*ena hatâd,—vaitaso da*ndaḥ* pu*m*vya*ñg*anasya nâma; ukta*m* hi Yâskena, *s*epo vaitasa iti pu*m*spra*g*ananasyeti (Nir. III, 21), Sây.

[2] Akâmâ*m* kâmarahitâ*m* suratâbhilâsharahitâ*m* *k*a mâ*m* mâ sma nipadyâsai nig*ṛ*hya mâ*m* prâpnuyâ*ḥ*, Sây.

[3] The Gandharvas are the natural companions and mates of the Apsaras, or nymphs.

[4] Literally, 'my son,'—madîya*m* putratvena svîkṛ*t*am ura*n*a-dvayam, Sây.

up after them: too long he deemed it that he should put on his garment. Then the Gandharvas produced a flash of lightning, and she beheld him naked even as by daylight. Then, indeed, she vanished: 'Here I am back,' he said, and lo! she had vanished [1]. Wailing with sorrow he wandered all over Kurukshetra. Now there is a lotus-lake there, called Anyata*h*plakshâ: He walked along its bank; and there nymphs were swimming about in the shape of swans [2].

5. And she (Urvasî), recognising him, said, 'This is the man with whom I have dwelt.' They then said, 'Let us appear to him!'—'So be it!' she replied; and they appeared to him [3].

6. He then recognised her and implored her (*Ri*g-veda X, 95, 1), 'Oh, my wife, stay thou, cruel in mind [4]: let us now exchange words! Untold, these secrets of ours will not bring us joy in days to

---

[1] Cf. C. Gaedicke, Der Accusativ im Veda (1880), p. 211. Previous translators had assigned the words 'punar emi' (I come back) to Urvasi; and in view of the corresponding passage in paragraph 13, the new interpretation is just a little doubtful.

[2] The text has 'âti,' some kind of water-bird—*g*ala*k*arapakshi-visesha*h*, Sây.—(probably Gr. *νῆσσα*; Lat. anas, anat-is; Anglo-S. æned, Germ. Ente).

[3] That is, they became visible, or rather recognisable to him by showing themselves in their real forms, -pakshirûpa*m* vihâya svakîyena rûpe*n*a prâdur babhûvu*h*, Sây.—In Kâlidâsa's plays, both Urvasî and Sakuntalâ become invisible by means of a magic veil (tiraskari*n*î, 'making invisible') with which has been compared the magic veil by which the swan-maidens change their form. A. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 197; A. Kuhn, Herabkunft, p. 91.

[4] Manasâ tish*th*a ghore,—possibly it may mean, 'O cruel one, be thou constant in (thy) mind;' or, as Kuhn takes it, 'pay attention, O cruel one.' Sâya*n*a, however, takes it as above.

come;'—'Stop, pray, let us speak together!' this is what he meant to say to her.

7. She replied (X, 95, 2), 'What concern have I with speaking to thee? I have passed away like the first of the dawns. Purûravas, go home again: I am like the wind, difficult to catch;'—'Thou didst not do what I had told thee; hard to catch I am for thee, go to thy home again!' this is what she meant to say.

8. He then said sorrowing (X, 95, 14), 'Then will thy friend [1] rush away [2] this day never to come back, to go to the farthest distance: then will he lie in Nirṛiti's [3] lap, or the fierce wolves will devour him;'—'Thy friend will either hang himself, or start forth; or the wolves, or dogs, will devour him!' this is what he meant to say.

9. She replied (X, 95, 15), 'Purûravas, do not die! do not rush away! let not the cruel wolves devour thee! Truly, there is no friendship with women, and theirs are the hearts of hyenas [4];'—

[1] This is a doubtful rendering (Max Müller; Gespiele, A. Weber) of 'sudeva,'—Göttergenoss (the companion of the gods), Kuhn; 'dem die Götter einst hold waren' (he who was formerly favoured by the gods), Grassmann; Sudeva, Ludwig.

[2] Or, will fall down (Max Müller, Weber); sich in's Verderben stürzen (will rush to his destruction), Kuhn;—forteilen (hasten away), Grassmann; verloren gehen (get lost), Ludwig; sich in den Abgrund stürzen, Geldner;—'mahâprasthânaṁ kuryât' (he will set out on the great journey, i. e. die), Sâyaṇa. The Brâhmaṇa seems to propose two different renderings,—to throw oneself down (hang oneself), or, to start forth.

[3] Nirṛiti is the goddess of decay or death.

[4] The meaning of 'sâlâvṛika,' also spelled 'sâlâvṛika' (? house-wolves), is doubtful; cf. H. Zimmer, Altindisches Leben, p. 8. Prof. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 413, makes the suggestion that 'wehrwolves' may be intended.

'Do not take this to heart! there is no friendship with women: return home!' this is what she meant to say.

10. (*Ṛig*-veda X, 95, 16), 'When changed in form, I walked among mortals, and passed the nights there during four autumns[1] I ate a little ghee, once a day, and even now I feel satisfied therewith[2].'—This discourse in fifteen verses has been handed down by the Bahv*ṛik*as[3]. Then her heart took pity on him[4].

11. She said, 'Come here the last night of the year from now[5]: then shalt thou lie with me for one night, and then this son of thine will have been born.' He came there on the last night of the year, and lo, there stood a golden palace[6]! They then

[1] The words 'râtrîḥ *s*aradas *k*atasraḥ' may also be taken in the sense of 'four nights of the autumn' (Max Müller, A. Kuhn). It needs hardly to be remarked that 'nights' means days and nights, and 'autumns' years.—Sâya*ṇ*a takes the passage in the sense of 'four delightful (râtrîḥ ramayitrîḥ) autumns or years.'

[2] Literally, I walk (or go on, keep) being satisfied therewith. Prof. Geldner, however, takes it in an ironical sense, 'das Bischen liegt mir jetzt noch schwer im Magen' ('even now I have quite enough of that little').

[3] That is, the theologians of the *Ṛig*-veda. As Prof. Weber points out, the hymn referred to, in the received version, consists not of fifteen but of eighteen verses, three of which would therefore seem to be of later origin (though they might, of course, belong to a different recension from that referred to by the Brâhma*ṇ*a).

[4] Or, according to Prof. Geldner, 'Then he touched her heart (excited her pity).'

[5] Literally, the yearliest night, i. e. the 360th night, the last night of a year from now, or, this night next year: it is the night that completes the year, just as 'the fifth' completes the number 'five,'—sa*ṃ*vatsaratamîṃ sa*ṃ*vatsarapûra*ṇ*îm antimâṃ râtrim, Sây. Cf. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 195.

[6] Hira*ṇ*yavimitâni hira*ṇ*yanirmitâni saudhâni, Sây.

said to him only this (word)[1], 'Enter!' and then they bade her go to him.

12. She then said, 'To-morrow morning the Gandharvas will grant thee a boon, and thou must make thy choice.' He said, 'Choose thou for me!'—She replied, 'Say, Let me be one of yourselves!' In the morning the Gandharvas granted him a boon; and he said, 'Let me be one of yourselves!'

13. They said, 'Surely, there is not among men that holy form of fire by sacrificing wherewith one would become one of ourselves.' They put fire into a pan, and gave it to him saying, 'By sacrificing therewith thou shalt become one of ourselves.' He took it (the fire) and his boy, and went on his way home. He then deposited the fire in the forest, and went to the village with the boy alone. [He came back and thought] 'Here I am back;' and lo! it had disappeared[2]: what had been the fire was an Aśvattha tree (ficus religiosa), and what had been the pan was a Śamî tree (mimosa suma). He then returned to the Gandharvas.

14. They said, 'Cook for a whole year a mess of rice sufficient for four persons; and taking each time three logs from this Aśvattha tree, anoint them with ghee, and put them on the fire with

[1] Thus also A. Kuhn, and Sâyaṇa, tato hainam ekam ûṭ́ur etat, prapadyasveti,—enam Purûravasaṃ tatratyâ ganâ idam ekam ûṭ́uḥ. Sây.—The word 'ekam' might also be taken along with 'enam' (Max Müller, Weber, Geldner),—'they said this to him alone' (? they bade him enter alone without his attendants).

[2] See above, paragraph 4 and note 1 on p. 70. According to the other interpretation we should have to translate:—He then deposited the fire in the forest, and went to the village with the boy alone, thinking, 'I (shall) come back.' [He came back] and lo! it had disappeared.

verses containing the words "log" and "ghee": the fire which shall result therefrom will be that very fire (which is required).'

15. They said, 'But that is recondite (esoteric), as it were. Make thyself rather an upper araṇi[1] of Aśvattha wood, and a lower araṇi of Śamî wood: the fire which shall result therefrom will be that very fire.'

16. They said, 'But that also is, as it were, recondite. Make thyself rather an upper araṇi of Aśvattha wood, and a lower araṇi of Aśvattha wood: the fire which shall result therefrom will be that very fire.'

17. He then made himself an upper araṇi of Aśvattha wood, and a lower araṇi of Aśvattha wood; and the fire which resulted therefrom was that very fire: by offering therewith he became one of the Gandharvas. Let him therefore make himself an upper and a lower araṇi of Aśvattha wood, and the fire which results therefrom will be that very fire: by offering therewith he becomes one of the Gandharvas.

Second Brâhmaṇa.

The Seasonal Sacrifices (*K*âturmâsya).

1. By means of the Seasonal sacrifices, Pragâpati fashioned for himself a body. The sacrificial food for the Vaiśvadeva[2] sacrifice he made to be this

[1] That is, a churning-stick used for producing fire; see part i, p. 275; p. 294, note 3.

[2] The Vaiśvadeva, or first of the four seasonal sacrifices, requires the following oblations:—1. a cake on eight potsherds to Agni; 2. a pap to Soma; 3. a cake on twelve or eight potsherds to

right arm of his; the oblation to Agni thereof this thumb; that to Soma this (fore-finger); and that to Savitṛi this (middle finger).

2. That cake (to Savitṛi), doubtless, is the largest, and hence this (middle finger) is the largest of these (fingers). That (oblation) to Sarasvatî is this (third) finger; and that to Pûshan this (little finger). And that (oblation) to the Maruts is this joint above the hand (the wrist); and that to the Visve Devâḥ is this (elbow[1]); and that to Heaven and Earth is this arm: this (oblation) is indistinct[2], whence that limb also is indistinct[3].

3. The Varuṇapraghâsa[4] offerings are this right leg,—the five oblations which this has in common (with the other Seasonal offerings) are these five toes; and the oblation to Indra and Agni is the knuckles: this (oblation) belongs to two deities

---

Savitṛi; 4. a pap to Sarasvatî; 5. a pap to Pûshan—these first five oblations recur at all seasonal offerings;—6. a cake on seven potsherds to the Maruts; 7. a dish of clotted curds to the Visve Devâḥ; 8. a cake on one potsherd to Heaven and Earth.

[1] It would rather seem that what is intended here by 'saṁdhi' is not the joints themselves, but the limbs (in the anatomical sense) between the articulations. Similarly in 'trishandhi' in parag. 7.

[2] That is to say, it is a low-voiced offering, the two formulas, with the exception of the final Om and Vaushaṭ, being pronounced in a low voice. All cakes on one potsherd are (except those to Varuṇa) of this description; Kâty. Śr. IV, 5, 3; Âśv. Śr. II, 15, 5; cf. Śat. Br. II, 4, 3, 8.

[3] That is, not clearly defined; the word 'dos,' which is more usually restricted to the fore-arm, being also used for the whole arm, and even the upper arm.

[4] The Varuṇapraghâsâḥ, or second seasonal sacrifice, has the following oblations:—1–5. the common oblations; 6. a cake on twelve potsherds to Indra and Agni; 7. 8. two dishes of clotted curds for Varuṇa and the Maruts respectively; 9. a cake on one potsherd for Ka (Pragâpati).

whence there are these two knuckles. That (oblation) to Varuṇa is this (shank); that to the Maruts this (thigh); and that (cake) to Ka is this back-bone: this (oblation) is indistinct, whence that (back-bone) is indistinct.

4. The offering to (Agni) Anîkavat (of the Sâkamedhâḥ[1]), doubtless, is his (Pragâpati's) mouth, for the mouth is the extreme end (anîka) of the vital airs; the Sâṁtapanîyâ (pap) is the chest, for by the chest one is, as it were, confined[2] (saṁ-tap); the Gṛihamedhîyâ (pap) is the belly—to serve as a foundation, for the belly is a foundation; the Kraiḍina oblation is the male organ, for it is therewith that (man) sports (krîḍ), as it were; and the offering to Aditi[3] is this downward breathing.

5. The Great Oblation, indeed, is this left leg,—the five oblations which it has in common (with the other Seasonal offerings) are these five toes; and the oblation to Indra and Agni is the knuckles: this (oblation) belongs to two deities whence there are

[1] The Sâkamedhâḥ, or third seasonal sacrifice, consists of the following oblations:—1. a cake on eight potsherds to Agni Anîkavat; 2. 3. paps to the Marutaḥ Sâṁtapanâḥ and Marutaḥ Gṛihamedhinaḥ; 4. a cake on seven potsherds to the Marutaḥ Kṛîḍinaḥ; 5. a pap to Aditi. Then follows the Great Oblation consisting of 6–10, the five common oblations; 11. a cake on twelve potsherds to Indra and Agni; 12. a pap to Mahendra; and 13. a cake on one potsherd to Viśvakarman. Then follows the Pitṛiyagña.

[2] Or, according to Sâyaṇa, one gets oppressed or heated on account of the close proximity of the heart and the digestive fire,—urasâ hṛidaya-sambandhâg gaṭharasannivesâk ka saṁtâpana-vishayatvam.

[3] This offering of a cake to Aditi, mentioned in Kâty. Śr. V, 7, 2, is not referred to in the Brâhmaṇa's account of the Sâkamedhâḥ, see II, 5, 3, 20.

these two knuckles. The (oblation) to Mahendra is this (shank); that to Visvakarman this (thigh): this (oblation) is indistinct, whence this (thigh) also is indistinct.

6. The *S*unâsîrîya[1], doubtless, is this left arm,—the five oblations which it has in common (with the other Seasonal offerings) are these five fingers; the *S*unâsîrîya is that joint of his above the hand; that (oblation) to Vâyu is this (elbow); that to Sûrya this arm: this (oblation) is indistinct, whence this (limb) also is indistinct.

7. Now these Seasonal offerings are tripartite and furnished with two joints[2], whence these limbs of man are tripartite and furnished with two joints. Two of these four (sacrifices) have each three indistinct (low-voiced) oblations; and two of them have two each[3].

8. At all four of them they churn out the fire,

[1] The *S*unâsîrîya, or last Seasonal offering, consists of—1–5. the common oblations; 6. the *S*unâsîrîya cake on twelve potsherds; 7. a milk oblation to Vâyu; 8. a cake on one potsherd to Sûrya.

[2] The Seasonal offerings are performed so as to leave an interval of four months between them; the fourth falling exactly a year after the first; hence the whole performance consists, as it were, of three periods of four months each, with two joints between them;—corresponding to the formation of the arms and legs.

[3] Of the five oblations common to the four sacrifices, one—viz. the cake to Savitri—is a low-voiced offering (Kâty. *S*r. IV, 5, 5; Âsv. *S*r. II, 15, 7), as are also the one-kapâla cakes of which there is one in each sacrifice. According to Sâyaṇa the first and last Seasonal sacrifices have only these two Upâṃsuyâgas, whilst the second and third have each one additional low-voiced oblation, but he does not specify them. This is, however, a mistake, as Kâtyâyana, *S*r. IV, 5, 6. 7, states distinctly, that the two additional low-voiced oblations are the Vaisvadevî payasyâ in the first, and the oblation to Vâyu in the last, *K*âturmâsya.

whence (the draught animal) pulls with all four limbs. At two of them they lead (the fire) forward[1], whence it (the animal) walks on two (feet at a time)[2]. Thus, then, Pragâpati fashioned for himself a body by means of the Seasonal sacrifices; and in like manner does the Sacrificer who knows this fashion for himself a (divine) body by means of the Seasonal sacrifices.

9. As to this they say, 'The Vaiśvadeva oblation (should have) all (its formulas) in the Gâyatrî, the Varuṇapraghâsâḥ all in the Trishṭubh, the Great Oblation all in the Gagatî, and the Śunâsîrîya all in the Anushṭubh metre, so as to yield a Katushṭoma[3].' But let him not do this, for inasmuch as (his formulas) amount to these (metres) even thereby that wish is obtained.

10. Now, indeed, (the formulas of) these Seasonal offerings amount to three hundred and sixty-two Bṛihatî verses[4]: he thereby obtains both the year[5]

[1] According to Sâyaṇa this refers to the first and last Seasonal sacrifices, inasmuch as there is no uttaravedi required for these, and hence only the simple leading forward of the fire to the Âhavanîya hearth; whilst the commentary on Kâty. V, 4, 6, on the contrary, refers it just to the other two, because a double leading forth takes place there.

[2] Or, as Sâyaṇa takes it, man walks on two feet.

[3] The Katushṭoma, properly speaking, is the technical term for such an arrangement of the Stotras of a Soma-sacrifice by which they are chanted on stomas, or hymn-forms, increasing successively by four verses. Two such arrangements (of four and six different stomas respectively) are mentioned, one for an Agnishṭoma sacrifice, and the other for a Shoḍaśin. See note on XIII, 3, 1, 4.

[4] These 362 Bṛihatî verses (of 36 syllables each) would amount to 13,032 syllables; and, verses of the four metres referred to amounting together to 148 syllables, this amount is contained in the former 88 times, leaving only eight over; so slight a discrepancy being considered of no account in such calculations.

[5] That is, a year of 360 days; and if, as is done by Sâyaṇa (in

and the Mahâvrata[1]; and thus, indeed, this Sacrificer also has a twofold[2] foundation, and he thus makes the Sacrificer reach the heavenly world, and establishes him therein.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Śaukeya Prâkînayogya came to Uddâlaka Âruṇi for a disputation on spiritual matters[3], thinking, 'I desire to know the Agnihotra.'

2. He said, 'Gautama, what like is thy Agnihotra cow? what like the calf? what like the cow joined by the calf? what like their meeting? what like (the milk) when being milked? what like when it has been milked? what like when brought (from the stable)? what like when put on the fire? what like when the light is thrown on it[4]; what like when water is poured thereto? what like when being taken off (the fire)? what like when taken off? what like when

accordance with the calculations in Book X), the year is identified with the fire-altar, a mahâvedi containing 360 Yagushmatî bricks.

[1] Sâyaṇa reminds us that the Mahâvrata-sâman consists of five parts in five different stomas (Trivṛit, &c., see part iv, p. 282, note 4), the verses of which, added up (9, 15, 17, 25, 21), make 87, which amount is apparently, in a rough way, to be taken as identical with that of 88 obtained in note 4 of last page.

[2] Viz. inasmuch as the total amount of Bṛihatîs (362) exceeds by two the number of days in the year.

[3] Sâyaṇa takes 'brahmodyam agnihotram' together, in the sense 'the sacred truth' regarding (or, in the form of) the Agnihotra,—agnihotravishayaṃ brahmodyaṃ brahmatattvasya rûpaṃ pratipâdyate yena tad vividishâmi tadvishayaṃ vedanekkhâṃ karishyâmîtyâdinâbhiprâyeṇâgataḥ. Unless 'brahmodyam' could be taken as an adjective, I do not see how it is possible to adopt Sâyaṇa's interpretation.

[4] For letting the light of a burning straw fall on the milk to see whether it is done, see II, 3, 1, 16.

being ladled out[1]? what like when ladled out? what like when lifted up (to be taken to the Âhavanîya)? what like when being taken there? what like when held down[2]?

3. 'What like is the log thou puttest on? what like the first libation? why didst thou put it down (on the Vedi[3])? why didst thou look away (towards the Gârhapatya[4])? what like is the second libation?

4. 'Why, having offered, dost thou shake it (the spoon)? why, having cleansed the spoon all round (the spout), didst thou wipe it on the grass-bunch? why, having cleansed it a second time all over, didst thou place thy hand on the south (part of the Vedi)? why didst thou eat (of the milk) the first time, and why the second time? why, on creeping away (from the Vedi), didst thou drink (water)? why, having poured water into the spoon, didst thou sprinkle therewith? why didst thou sprinkle it away a second time, and why a third time in that (northerly) direction? why didst thou pour down water behind the Âhavanîya? why didst thou bring (the offering) to a close? If thou hast offered the Agnihotra knowing this, then it has indeed been offered by thee;

[1] Viz. by the dipping-spoon (sruva) into the ladle (agnihotra-havanî), see II, 3, 1, 17.

[2] Whilst taking the oblation to the Âhavanîya, he holds the spoon level with his mouth, except when he is in a line between the two fires, when for a moment he lowers the spoon so as to be level with his navel.

[3] This refers to the putting down of the spoon containing the milk on the grass-bunch prior to the second libation; cf. II, 3, 1, 17. One might also translate, 'what is that (or does it mean) that thou didst put it down?'

[4] Thus Sâya*ṇa*,—apaikshish*ṭhâḥ* gârhapatasyaiksha*ṇa*m k*ri*tavân asi.

but if (thou hast offered it) not knowing this, then it has not been offered by thee.'

5. He (Uddâlaka) said, 'My Agnihotra cow is Idâ, Manu's daughter[1]; my calf is of Vâyu's nature; the (cow) joined by the calf is in conjunction therewith[2]; their meeting is the Virâg; (the milk) when being milked belongs to the Aśvins, and when it has been milked, to the Viśve Devâḥ; when brought (from the stable) it belongs to Vâyu; when put on (the fire), to Agni; when the light is thrown on it, it belongs to Indra and Agni; when water is poured thereto it belongs to Varuṇa; when being taken off (the fire), to Vâyu; when it has been taken off, to Heaven and Earth; when being ladled out, to the Aśvins; when it has been ladled out, to the Viśve Devâḥ; when lifted up, to Mahâdeva; when being taken (to the Âhavanîya), to Vâyu; when held down, to Vishṇu.

6. 'And the log I put on (the fire) is the resting-place of the libations; and as to the first libation, I therewith gratified the gods; and when I laid down (the spoon with the milk), that belongs to Bṛihaspati; and when I looked away, then I joined together this and yonder world; and as to the second libation, I thereby settled myself in the heavenly world.

7. 'And when, having offered, I shake (the spoon), that belongs to Vâyu; and when, having cleansed the spoon all round (the spout), I wiped it on the grass-bunch, then I gratified the herbs and trees;

[1] See the legend, I, 8, 1, 1 seqq.

[2] That is, according to Sâyaṇa, 'the sky allied with Vâyu, the wind,'—vâyunâ saṁsṛishṭâ dyauḥ.

and when, having cleansed it a second time all over, I placed my hand on the south (part of the altar-ground), then I gratified the Fathers[1]; and when I ate (of the milk) the first time, then I gratified myself; and when (I ate) a second time, then I gratified my offspring; and when, having crept away (from the altar-ground), I drank (water), then I gratified the cattle; and when, having poured water into the spoon, I sprinkled therewith, then I gratified the snake-deities; and when (I sprinkled) a second time, then (I gratified) the Gandharvas and Apsaras; and when, a third time, I sprinkled it away in that (northerly) direction, then I opened the gate of heaven; and when I poured down water behind the altar, then I bestowed rain on this world; and when I brought (the sacrifice) to a close, then I filled up whatever there is deficient in the earth.'—'This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common[2],' said (*Saukeya*).

8. *Saukeya*, thus instructed, said, 'I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.'—'Ask then, Prâkînayogya!' he replied. He (*Saukeya*) said, 'If, at the time when thy fires are taken out, and the sacrificial vessels brought down, thou wert going to offer, and the offering-fire were then to go out, dost thou know what danger there is in that case for him who offers?' 'I know,' he replied; 'before long the eldest son would die in the case of him who would

[1] The departed ancestors are supposed to reside in the southern region.

[2] He bhagavann Uddâlaka bhavatoktam etat sava (? saha) nâv âvayoḥ saha sahitam samânam ekarûpam iti *Saukeyo* ha bhuktavân (? hy uktavân) anyaprasnam darsayitam prastauti, *Saukeyo* gñapta iti, Sây.

not know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'The breath of the mouth has entered the upward breathing—such (is the knowledge); and I should make the offering in the Gârhapatya fire—that would be the atonement, and I should not be committing that sin.'—'This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common,' said (*Sauk*eya).

9. *Sauk*eya, thus instructed, said, 'I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.'—'Ask then, Prâk*î*-nayogya!' he replied. He said, 'If, at that very time, the Gârhapatya fire were to go out, dost thou know what danger there is in that case for him who offers?'—'I know it,' he replied; 'before long the master of the house[1] would die in the case of him who would not know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'The upward breathing has entered the breath of the mouth—this (is the knowledge); and I would make the offering on the Âhavanîya—this would be the atonement, and I should not be committing that sin.'—'This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common,' said (*Sauk*eya).

10. *Sauk*eya, thus instructed, said, 'I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.'—'Ask then, Prâk*î*-nayogya!' he replied. He said, 'If, at that very time, the Anvâhâryapa*k*ana fire were to go out, dost thou know what danger there is in that case for him who offers?'—'I know it,' he replied; 'before long all the cattle would die in the case of him who would

[1] That is, the Sacrificer himself.

not know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'The through-breathing has entered the upward breathing—this (is the knowledge); and I would make the offering on the Gârhapatya fire—this is the atonement; and I should not be committing that sin.'—'This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common,' said (*Saukeya*).

11. *Saukeya*, thus instructed, said, 'I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.'—'Ask, then, Prâkînayogya!' he replied. He said, 'If, at that very time, all the fires were to go out, dost thou know what danger there is in that case for him who offers?'—'I know it,' he replied; 'before long the family would be without heirs in the case of him who would not know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'Having, without delay, churned out fire, and taken out an offering-fire in whatever direction the wind might be blowing, I would perform an offering to Vâyu (the wind): I would then know that my Agnihotra would be successful, belonging as it would to all deities; for all beings, indeed, pass over into the wind, and from out of the wind they are again produced[1]. This would be the atonement, and I should not be committing that sin.'—'This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common,' said (*Saukeya*).

12. *Saukeya*, thus instructed, said, 'I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.'—'Ask then, Prâkî-

[1] At the time of dissolution (layakâle) they pass into the wind; and at the time of creation (*sṛishṭi*kâle) they are again created, Sây.

nayogya!' he replied. He said, 'If at that very time all the fires were to go out, when there should be no wind blowing, dost thou know what danger there would be for him who offers?'—'I know it,' he replied; 'unpleasant things, indeed, he would see in this world, and unpleasant things in yonder world, were he not to know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'Having, without delay, churned out fire, and taken out an offering-fire towards the east, and sat down behind it, I myself would drink (the Agnihotra milk): I should then know that my Agnihotra would be successful, belonging as it would to all deities, for all beings, indeed, pass into the Brâhmaṇa[1], and from the Brâhmaṇa they are again produced. That would be the atonement; and I should not be committing that sin.'—'And, verily, I did not know this,' said (*Saukeya*).

13. *Saukeya*, thus instructed, said, 'Here are logs for fuel: I will become thy pupil, reverend sir.' He replied, 'If thou hadst not spoken thus, thy head would have flown off[2]: come, enter as my pupil!'—'So be it,' he said. He then initiated him, and taught him that pain-conquering utterance, Truth: therefore let man speak naught but truth[3].

---

[1] Viz. as the representative of the Brahman, or world-spirit.

[2] Yadaivaṃ nâvakshyaḥ yadaivam agñânaṃ nâvishkaroshi te mûrdhâ vyapatishyat, mûrdhâ(va)patanaṃ svagñânaprakaṭanenâtrabhavataḥ parihṛtam iti, Sây. — Prof. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 366, takes 'vi-pat' in the sense of—(thy head would have) flown asunder, or burst; which is indeed possible; cf. XI, 4, 1, 9.

[3] Cf. F. Max Müller, 'India, what can it teach us?' p. 65 seqq.

FOURTH BRÂHMAṆA.

THE UPANAYANA, OR INITIATION OF THE BRÂHMAṆICAL STUDENT[1].

1. He says, 'I have come for Brahmakarya[2]:' he thereby reports himself to the Brahman. He says, 'Let me be a Brahmakârin (student):' he thereby makes himself over to the Brahman. He (the teacher) then says, 'What (ka) is thy name?'—now Ka is Pragâpati: he thus initiates him after making him one belonging to Pragâpati.

2. He then takes his (right) hand with, 'Indra's disciple thou art; Agni is thy teacher, I am thy teacher, O N. N.!'—now these are two most high and most powerful deities: it is to these two most high and most powerful deities he commits him; and thus his disciple suffers no harm of any kind, nor does he who knows this[3].

3. He then commits him to the beings:—'To Pragâpati I commit thee, to the god Savitri I commit thee;'—now these are two most high and most important deities: it is to these two most high and most important deities he commits him; and thus his disciple suffers no harm of any kind, nor does he who knows this.

---

[1] With this chapter compare Pâraskara Gṛihyasûtra II, 2, 17 seqq.; Âsvalâyana Gṛihyasûtra I, 20 seqq.; Sâṅkhâyana Gṛihyasûtra II, 1 seqq.

[2] That is, for religious (theological) studentship: 'I have come to be a student.'—Sâyaṇa takes the aorist 'âgâm' in an optative sense 'may I enter (or obtain),'—brahmakârino bhâvo brahmakaryam tad âgâm prâpnuyâm.

[3] Vidusho 'py etat phalam âha, na sa iti, evam uktârtham yo veda gânâti so 'py ârtim na prâpnotîty arthaḥ, Sây.

4. 'To the waters, to the plants I commit thee,'—he thus commits him to the waters and plants.—'To Heaven and Earth I commit thee,'—he thus commits him to these two, heaven and earth, within which all this universe is contained.—'To all beings I commit thee for security from injury,'—he thus commits him to all beings for security from injury; and thus his disciple suffers no harm of any kind, nor does he who knows this.

5. 'Thou art a Brahmaḱârin,' he says, and thus commits him to the Brahman;—'sip water!'—water, doubtless, means ambrosia: 'sip ambrosia' is thus what he tells him;—'do thy work!'—work, doubtless, means vigour: 'exert vigour' is thus what he tells him;—'put on fuel!'—'enkindle thy mind with fire, with holy lustre!' is what he thereby tells him;—'do not sleep[1]!'—'do not die' is what he thereby says to him;—'sip water!'—water means ambrosia: 'sip ambrosia' is what he thus tells him. He thus encloses him on both sides with ambrosia (the drink of immortality), and thus the Brahmaḱârin suffers no harm of any kind, nor does he who knows this.

6. He then recites to him (teaches him) the Sâvitrî[2];—formerly, indeed, they taught this (verse) at the end of a year[3], thinking, 'Children, indeed, are

[1] 'Do not sleep in the daytime!' Pâr., Âśv.

[2] For this verse, also called the Gâyatrî (*Ṛig*-veda S. III, 62, 10), see II, 3, 4, 39.

[3] Sâyaṇa takes this in the sense of 'some only teach this (formula) a year after (or, after the first year),'—purâ pûrvasminn upanayanâd ûrdhvabhâvini saṃvatsarakâle ʻtîte sati tâṃ etâṃ gâyatrîm anvâhuḥ, keḱid âḱâryâ upadiśanti.

born after being fashioned for a year[1]: thus we lay speech (voice) into this one as soon as he has been born.'

7. Or after six months, thinking, 'There are six seasons in the year, and children are born after being fashioned for a year: we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

8. Or after twenty-four days, thinking, 'There are twenty-four half-months in the year, and children are born when fashioned for a year: we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

9. Or after twelve days, thinking, 'There are twelve months in the year, and children are born when fashioned for a year: we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

10. Or after six days, thinking, 'There are six seasons in the year, and children are born when fashioned for a year: we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

11. Or after three days, thinking, 'There are three seasons in the year, and children are born when fashioned for a year: we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

12. Concerning this they also sing the verse,—'By laying his right hand on (the pupil), the teacher becomes pregnant (with him): in the third (night) he is born as a Brâhmaṇa with the Sâvitrî[2].' Let him,

[1] Literally, made equal, or corresponding, to a year,—Saṃvatsarâtmanâ kâlena samyakparikkhinnâḥ khalu garbhâ vyaktâvayavâḥ santaḥ pragâyante utpadyante; ata upanayanânantaram âkâryasamîpe garbhavad avakkhinnas taduktaniyamanât saṃvatsarakâla eva punar gâyate, Sây.

[2] Âkâryo mâṇavakam upanîya samîpavartinâ tena garbhî bhavati garbhavân bhavati, kiṃ kṛitvâ, âtmîyaṃ dakshiṇaṃ hastaṃ śishya-

however, teach a Brâhmaṇa (the Sâvitrî) at once, for the Brâhmaṇa belongs to Agni, and Agni is born at once[1]: therefore, he should teach the Brâhmaṇa at once.

13. Now some teach an Anushṭubh Sâvitrî, saying, 'The Anushṭubh is speech: we thus lay speech into him.' But let him not do so; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this (student) has taken away his (the teacher's) speech: he will become dumb;' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass: let him therefore teach him that Gâyatrî Sâvitrî.

14. And some recite it to him while he (the student) is standing or sitting on (the teacher's) right side; but let him not do this; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this (teacher) has born this (student) sideways, he will become averse to him;' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass: let him therefore recite it in a forward (easterly) direction to (the student) looking at him towards the west.

15. He (first) recites it by pâdas[2]: there being three breathings, the out-breathing, the up-breathing and the through-breathing; it is these he thus lays into him;—then by half-verses: there being these

mastaka âdhâya nikshipya; sa garbharûpo mâṇavakas tṛitîyasyâṃ râtrau vyatîtâyâṃ gâyate âkâryâd utpadyate, gâtas ka âkâryeṇopadishṭayâ sâvitryâ sahita san brâhmaṇo bhavati sâvitrîrûpaṃ ka brahmâdhîta iti brâhmaṇa iti vyutpattiḥ, brâhmaṇagâtitvam asya sampannam ity arthaḥ, Sây.

[1] Viz. immediately on the 'churning-sticks' being set in motion.

[2] The Gâyatrî (Sâvitrî) consists of three octosyllabic pâdas, forming two half-verses of two and one pâda respectively; whilst an Anushṭubh (Sâvitrî) would consist of four octosyllabic pâdas, two of which make a half-verse.

two (principal) breathings, the out-breathing and the up-breathing [1], it is the out-breathing and the up-breathing he thus lays into him;—then the whole (verse): there being this one vital air (in man), he thus lays the whole vital air into the whole of him.

16. As to this they say, 'When one has admitted a Brâhmaṇa to a term of studentship, he should not carry on sexual intercourse, lest he should generate this Brâhmaṇa from shed seed; for, indeed, he who enters on a term of studentship becomes an embryo.'

17. And concerning this they also say, 'He may nevertheless do so, if he chooses; for these creatures are of two kinds, divine and human,—these human creatures are born from the womb, and the divine creatures, being the metres (verses of scripture), are born from the mouth: it is therefrom he (the teacher) produces him, and therefore he may do so (have intercourse) if he chooses.'

18. And they also say, 'He who is a Brahmaḱârin should not eat honey, lest he should reach the end of food, for honey, doubtless, is the utmost (supreme) essence of plants.' But Śvetaketu Âruṇeya, when eating honey, whilst he was a student, said, 'This honey, in truth, is the remainder (essential part) of the triple science (the Vedas), and he, indeed, who has such a remainder, is an essence.' And, indeed, if a Brahmaḱârin, knowing this, eats honey, it is just as if he were to utter either a *Ri*k-verse, or Yagus-formula, or a Sâman-tune: let him therefore eat freely of it.

[1] That is, the breath of the mouth, and that of the nostrils.

FIFTH BRÂHMAṆA.

THE SATÂTIRÂTRAM, OR SACRIFICIAL SESSION OF A HUNDRED ATIRÂTRA-SACRIFICES.

1. Now, when the gods were passing upwards to the world of heaven, the Asuras enveloped them in darkness. They spake, 'Verily, by nothing else save a sacrificial session is there any way of dispelling this (darkness): well, then, let us perform a sacrificial session!'

2. They entered upon a sacrificial session of a hundred Agnishṭoma (days), and dispelled the darkness as far as one may see whilst sitting; and in like manner did they, by (a session of) a hundred Ukthya (days), dispel the darkness as far as one may see whilst standing.

3. They spake, 'We do indeed dispel the darkness, but not the whole of it: come, let us resort to Father Pragâpati.' Having come to Father Pragâpati, they spake, 'Reverend sir, when we were passing upwards to the world of heaven the Asuras enveloped us in darkness.'

4. 'We entered upon a sacrificial session of a hundred Agnishṭomas, and dispelled the darkness as far as one may see whilst sitting; and in like manner did we dispel the darkness as far as one may see whilst standing: do thou teach us, reverend sir, how, by dispelling the Asuras and darkness, and all evil, we shall find (the way to) the world of heaven!'

5. He spake, 'Surely, ye proceeded by means of two sacrifices, the Agnishṭoma and Ukthya, which do not contain all Soma-rites[1];—enter ye upon

[1] Viz. neither the Shoḍasin which, to (the twelve stotras, and

a sacrificial session of a hundred Atirâtras: when ye have thereby repelled the Asuras and darkness, and all evil, ye shall find the world of heaven.'

6. They entered upon a sacrificial session of a hundred Atirâtras; and, having thereby repelled the Asuras and darkness, and all evil, they found (the way to) the world of heaven. In their first fifty days[1] the night-hymns reached into the day, and the day-hymns into the night.

7. They spake, 'Verily, we have got into confusion and know not what to do: come, let us resort to Father Pragâpati!' Having come to Father Pragâpati, they spake (the verses), 'Our night-hymns are (chanted) in daytime, and those of the day at night: O sage, being learned and wise, teach thou us who are ignorant (how to perform) the sacrifices!'

8. He then recited to them as follows, 'A stronger, pursuing, has, as it were, driven a great snake from its own place, the lake: therefore the sacrificial session is not carried through.'

9. 'For your Âsvina (*s*astra), being recited, has indeed driven the morning-litany from its place[2].'—

---

*s*astras of the Agnish*t*oma, and) the fifteen chants of the Ukthya, adds a sixteenth; and the Atirâtra which has thirteen additional chants (and recitations), viz. three nocturnal rounds of four chants each, and one twilight-chant, followed by the Âsvina-*s*astra, recited by the Hotri. No account is here taken of either the Atyagnish*t*oma of thirteen chants, or the Aptoryâma, which, to those of the Atirâtra, adds four more chants. Cf. part ii, p. 397, note 2.

[1] Or, perhaps, rather, in their days prior to the fiftieth (arvâkpâñkâseshv aha*h*su), St. Petersb. Dict.

[2] The Âsvina-*s*astra, with the recitation of which, by the Hotri, the Atirâtra concludes, takes the place, and is, indeed,

'What ye, being wise, have unwise-like driven from its place, take ye up that gently through the Prasâstṛi, reciting so as not to disturb [1] (the Hotṛi).'

10. They spake, 'How, then, reverend sir, is (the Âśvina-śastra properly) recited and how is the recitation not disturbed?' He spake, 'When the Hotṛi, in reciting the Âśvina-śastra, reaches the end of the Gâyatra metre of the Âgneya-kratu [2], the Pratiprasthâtṛi [3] should carry round the Vasatîvarî water [4], and bespeak the Prâtar-anuvâka for the Maitrâvaruṇa (seated) between the two Havirdhâna (carts containing the offering-material). The Hotṛi recites (the Âśvina-śastra) in a loud voice, and the other (the Maitrâvaruṇa) repeats (the morning-litany) in a low voice, only just muttering it: in this

merely a modification, of the Prâtar-anuvâka, or morning-litany (see part ii, p. 229, note 2), by which an ordinary Soma-sacrifice is ushered in. Like it, its chief portion consists of three sections, termed kratu, of hymns and detached verses addressed to the 'early-coming' deities, Agni, Ushas and the two Aśvins. The whole is to consist of not less than a thousand Bṛihatîs, that is to say, the whole matter is to amount to at least 36,000 syllables. For a full account of this Śastra, see Haug's Transl. of Ait. Br., p. 268.

[1] Whilst the Hotṛi is reciting the Âśvina-śastra, his first assistant, the Praśâstṛi (or, as he is more commonly called, the Maitrâvaruṇa), is to repeat the Prâtar-anuvâka in a low voice.

[2] The hymns and detached verses of each of the three sections—the Âgneya-, Ushasya- and Âśvina-kratu—of the Âśvina-śastra (as of the Prâtar-anuvâka) are arranged according to the seven principal metres—gâyatrî, anushṭubh, trishṭubh, bṛihatî, ushṇih, gagatî, and pańkti—forming as many subdivisions of the three sections.

[3] That is, the first assistant of the Adhvaryu priest; the latter having to respond (pratigara) to the Hotṛi's calls (see part ii, p. 326, note 1) at the beginning and end of the Śastra, and to sit through the recitations (III, 9, 3, 11).

[4] See III, 9, 2, 13 seqq.

way he does not run counter to (the Hotṛi's) speech by (his own) speech, nor metre by metre.

11. 'When the Prâtar-anuvâka has been completed, he (the Pratiprasthâtṛi), having offered, at their proper time [1], the Upâṃśu and Antaryâma cups [2], presses out the straining-cloth and puts it in the Droṇakalaśa [3]. And when ye have performed the (offering of the cups of) fermented Soma [4], and returned (to the Sadas), ye should drink the fermented Soma (remaining in those cups). Having then, in the proper form, completed the "tail of the sacrifice," and taken up the cups of Soma (drawn) subsequent to the Antaryâma [5], and offered the oblation of drops [6], as well as the Santani-oblation [7], ye should perform the Bahishpavamâna chant, and enter upon the day (-performance).'

12. Concerning this there are these verses:—'With four harnessed Saindhava (steeds) the sages left behind them the gloom—the wise gods who spun out the session of a hundred sacrifices.'

13. In this (sacrificial session) there are, indeed, four harnessed (steeds),—to wit, two Hotṛis and two Adhvaryus.—'Like unto the artificer contriving spikes to the spear, the sages coupled the ends of

[1] Yathâyatanam eva prakṛitau yasmin kâle hûyeta tathaiva hutvâ, Sây.

[2] See IV, 1, 1, 22 seqq.; 1, 2, 21 seqq.

[3] See II, 1, 2, 3, with note thereon.

[4] That is, having, after the completion of the Âśvina-śastra, offered to the Aśvins some of the Soma that has been standing 'over the previous day.'

[5] Viz. the Aindravâyava, Maitrâvaruṇa, &c., see IV, 1, 3, 1 seqq.

[6] See IV, 2, 5, 1 seqq.

[7] Called 'savanasantani' (? i. e. continuity of pressing) by Kâty., XXIV, 4, 1.

two days: now the Dânavas, we know [1], will not disorder the sacrificial thread of them stretched out by us.—They leave undone the work of the previous day, and carry it through on the following day,—difficult to be understood is the wisdom of the deities: streams of Soma flow, interlinked with streams of Soma!—Even as they constantly sprinkle the equal prize-winning [2] steeds, so (they pour out) the cups full of fiery liquor in the palace of *G*anamegaya.' Then the Asura-Rakshas went away.

Sixth Brâhmaṇa.

The Study of the Veda.

1. There are five great sacrifices, and they, indeed, are great sacrificial sessions,—to wit, the sacrifice to beings, the sacrifice to men, the sacrifice to the Fathers, the sacrifice to the gods, and the sacrifice to the Brahman.

2. Day by day one should offer an oblation to beings: thus he performs that sacrifice to beings. Day by day one should offer (presents to guests) up to the cupful of water [3]: thus he performs that

[1] Sâyaṇa construes,—we know the extended sacrificial thread of these (days), and the Dânavas (Asuras) do not henceforth confound us. In that case the order of words would be extremely irregular.

[2] Kâsh*th*abhṛ*t*a*h*, âgyantâ (!) kâsh*th*âni tâni bibhratîti kâsh*th*abhṛ*t*a*h* svâdasa*m* (? *kh*âṇḍasa*m*) pûrvapadasya hrasvatvam, âgidhâvana*m* kṛ*t*avato hayân aśvân, Sây. According to this authority the general meaning of the verse is that even as the (king's) horses, when they have performed their task, have sweet drinks poured out on (? to) them, and thus obtain their hearts' desire, so the gods, by performing a sacrificial session of a hundred Atirâtras, in accordance with Pragâpati's directions, dispel the darkness and gain the world of heaven.

[3] Or perhaps, from a cupful of water onwards,—aharahar dadyâd

sacrifice to men. Day by day one should offer with Svadhâ up to the cupful of water[1]: thus he performs that sacrifice to the Fathers. Day by day one should perform with Svâhâ up to the log of fire-wood[2]: thus he performs that sacrifice to the gods.

3. Then as to the sacrifice to the Brahman. The sacrifice to the Brahman is one's own (daily) study (of the Veda). The *g*uhû-spoon of this same sacrifice to the Brahman is speech, its upabh*ri*t the mind, its dhruvâ the eye, its sruva mental power, its purificatory bath truth, its conclusion heaven. And, verily, however great the world he gains by giving away (to the priests) this earth replete with wealth, thrice that and more—an imperishable world does he gain, whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day his lesson (of the Veda): therefore let him study his daily lesson.

4. Verily, the *Ri*k-texts are milk-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the *Ri*k-texts for his lesson, thereby satisfies the gods with milk-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by (granting him) security of

---

iti manushyân uddi*s*ya odapâtrât udakapûritam pâtram udapâtram udakapâtrâvadhi yad odanâdika*m* dadyât sa manushyayag*ñ*a ity artha*h*, Sây.—Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sanskrit Texts, vol. iii, p. 18 seqq.

[1] In making offering to the (three immediately preceding) departed ancestors, water is poured out for them (to wash themselves with) both at the beginning and at the end of the ceremony; see II, 4, 2, 16; 23; II, 6, 1, 34; 41, where each time it is said that this is done 'even as one would pour out water for (a guest) who is to take (or has taken) food with him;'—pit*ri*n uddi*s*ya pratyaha*m* svadhâkâre*n*a annâdikam udapâtraparyanta*m* dadyât, Sây.

[2] Apparently the log of wood placed on the Gârhapatya after the completion of the offering.

possession[1], by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his (departed) Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

5. And, verily, the Yagus-texts are ghee-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the Yagus-texts for his lesson thereby satisfies the gods with ghee-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by security of possession, by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

6. And, verily, the Sâman-texts are Soma-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the Sâman-texts for his lesson thereby satisfies the gods with Soma-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by security of possession, by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

7. And, verily, the (texts of the) Atharvâṅgiras are fat-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the (texts of the) Atharvâṅgiras for his lesson, satisfies the gods with fat-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by security of possession, by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

[1] Aprâptasya phalasya prâptir yoga*h* tasya paripâlana*m* kshema*h*, Sây.

8. And, verily, the precepts[1], the sciences[2], the dialogue[3], the traditional myths and legends[4], and the Nârâśaṃsî Gâthâs[5] are honey-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the precepts, the sciences, the dialogue, the traditional myths and legends, and the Nârâśaṃsî Gâthâs, for his lesson, satisfies the gods with honey-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by (granting him) security of possession, by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

[1] The Anuśâsanâni, according to Sâyaṇa, are the six Vedâṅgas, or rules of grammar, etymology, &c.

[2] By vidyâḥ, according to Sâyaṇa, the philosophical systems, Nyâya, Mîmâṃsâ, &c., are to be understood. More likely, however, such special sciences as the 'sarpavidyâ' (science of snakes) are referred to; cf. XIII, 4, 3, 9 seqq.

[3] Vâkovâkyam, apparently some special theological discourse, or discourses, similar to (if not identical with) the numerous Brahmodya, or disputations on spiritual matters. As an example of such a dialogue, Sâyaṇa refers to the dialogue between Uddâlaka Âruṇi and Svaidâyaṇa Gautama, XI, 4, 1, 4 seqq.

[4] Itihâsa-purâṇa: the Itihâsa, according to Sâyaṇa, are cosmological myths or accounts, such as 'In the beginning this universe was nothing but water,' &c.; whilst as an instance of the Purâṇa (stories of olden times, purâtanapurushavṛittânta) he refers to the story of Purûravas and Urvaśî. Cf. Max Müller, History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 41.

[5] Or, the Gâthâs and Nârâśaṃsîs. Sâyaṇa, in the first place, takes the two as one, meaning 'stanzas (or verses) telling about men;' but he then refers to the interpretation by others, according to which the Gâthâs are such verses as that about 'the great snake driven from the lake' (XI, 5, 5, 8); whilst the Nârâśaṃsîs would be (verses 'telling about men') such as that regarding Ganamegaya and his horses (XI, 5, 5, 12). On Aitareyâr. II, 3, 6, 8, Sâyaṇa quotes 'prâtaḥ prâtar anṛitaṃ te vadanti' as an instance of a Gâthâ.

9. Now, for this sacrifice to the Brahman there are four Vashaṭ-calls[1],—to wit, when the wind blows, when it lightens, when it thunders, and when it rumbles[2]: whence he who knows this should certainly study[3] when the wind is blowing, and when it lightens, or thunders, or rumbles, so as not to lose his Vashaṭ-calls; and verily he is freed from recurring death, and attains to community of nature (or, being) with the Brahman. And should he be altogether unable (to study), let him at least read a single divine word; and thus he is not shut out from beings[4].

Seventh Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now, then, the praise of the study (of the scriptures). The study and teaching (of the Veda) are a source of pleasure to him, he becomes ready-minded[5], and independent of others, and day by day he acquires wealth. He sleeps peacefully; he is the best physician for himself; and (peculiar) to him are restraint of the senses, delight in the one thing[6], growth of intelligence, fame, and the (task of) perfecting the people[7]. The growing

[1] That is, the call 'Vaushaṭ!' with which, at the end of the offering-formula, the oblation is poured into the fire.

[2] That is, when the rumbling of distant thunder is heard; or, perhaps, when there is a rattling sound, as from hail-stones.

[3] Hardly, should only study,—adhîyîtaiva.

[4] Or, from (the world of) spirits (?).

[5] Or, as Sâyaṇa takes it to mean, of intent, undistracted mind,—yuktam avikshiptam ekâgraṃ mano yasya sa yuktamanâḥ.

[6] Sâyaṇa seems to take 'ekârâmatâ' in the sense of 'remaining always the same,'—eka eva sann â samantâd bhavatîty ekârâmas tasya bhâvaḥ.

[7] Or, perfecting the world,—tadyukto yo lokas tasya paktiḥ paripâko bhavati, Sây.

intelligence gives rise to four duties attaching to the Brâhmaṇa—Brâhmaṇical descent, a befitting deportment, fame, and the perfecting of the people; and the people that are being perfected guard the Brâhmaṇa by four duties—by (showing him) respect, and liberality, (and by granting him) security against oppression, and security against capital punishment.

2. And, truly, whatever may be the toils here between heaven and earth, the study (of the scriptures) is their last stage, their goal (limit) for him who, knowing this, studies his lesson: therefore one's (daily) lesson should be studied.

3. And, verily, whatever portion of the sacred poetry (*kh*andas) he studies for his lesson with that sacrificial rite[1], offering is made by him who, knowing this, studies his lesson: therefore one's (daily) lesson should be studied.

4. And, verily, if he studies his lesson, even though lying on a soft couch, anointed, adorned and completely satisfied, he is burned (with holy fire[2]) up to the tips of his nails, whosoever, knowing this, studies his lesson: therefore one's (daily) lesson should be studied.

5. The *Ṛ*k-texts, truly, are honey, the Sâman-texts ghee, and the Yagus-texts ambrosia; and, indeed, when he studies the dialogue that (speech and reply) is a mess of milk and a mess of meat.

[1] The study of the Veda being 'the sacrifice of the Brahman,' the reading of a portion is, as it were, a special rite, or form of offering, belonging to that sacrifice. Sâyaṇa, on the other hand, takes it to mean that the student performs, as it were, the particular rite, or offering, to which the portion he reads may refer. It may, indeed, be implied, though it certainly is not expressed in the text.

[2] Thus A. Weber, Ind. Stud. X, p. 112;—*sarîrapîd*anena tapas-tapto bhavati, Sây.

6. And, indeed, he who, knowing this, studies day by day the *Ṛi*k-texts for his lesson, satisfies the gods with honey, and, thus satisfied, they satisfy him by every object of desire, by every kind of enjoyment.

7. And he who, knowing this, studies day by day the Sâman-texts for his lesson, satisfies the gods with ghee; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by every object of desire, by every kind of enjoyment.

8. And he who, knowing this, studies day by day the Yagus-texts for his lesson, satisfies the gods with ambrosia; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by every object of desire, by every kind of enjoyment.

9. And he who, knowing this, studies day by day the dialogue, the traditional myths and legends, for his lesson, satisfies the gods by messes of milk and meat; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by every object of desire, by every kind of enjoyment.

10. Moving, indeed, are the waters, moving is the sun, moving the moon, and moving the stars; and, verily, as if these deities did not move and act, even so will the Brâhmaṇa be on that day on which he does not study his lesson: therefore one's (daily) lesson should be studied. And hence let him at least pronounce either a *Ṛi*k-verse or a Yagus-formula, or a Sâman-verse, or a Gâthâ, or a Kumbyâ[1], to ensure continuity of the Vrata[2].

[1] A 'Kumbyâ,' according to Sâyaṇa, is a Brâhmaṇa-passage explanatory of some sacrificial precept or rite (vidhyarthavâdâtmakaṃ brâhmaṇa-vâkyam); whilst, on Aitareyâr. II, 3, 6, 8, the same commentator explains it as a verse (*ṛig*-visesha) conveying some precept of conduct (âkâraśikshârûpa), such as 'brahmakâryasyâposânaṃ karma kuru, divâ mâ svâpsîḥ,' &c. Cf. Prof. F. Max Müller's transl., Upanishads I, p. 230, note 2.

[2] This is in keeping with the mystic representation of this and

Eighth Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, in the beginning, Praǵâpati alone was here. He desired, 'May I exist, may I be generated.' He wearied himself and performed fervid devotions: from him, thus wearied and heated, the three worlds were created—the earth, the air, and the sky.

2. He heated these three worlds, and from them, thus heated, three lights (*g*yotis) were produced—Agni (the fire), he who blows here (Vâyu), and Sûrya (the sun).

3. He heated these three lights, and from them, thus heated, the three Vedas were produced—the *Rig*-veda from Agni, the Yaǵur-veda from Vâyu, and the Sâma-veda from Sûrya.

4. He heated these three Vedas, and from them, thus heated, three luminous essences[1] were pro-

---

the preceding chapters which represent the daily study of the scriptural lesson as a sacrifice continued day by day. The student, as the sacrificer, has accordingly, during the sacrifice (that is, during the period of his study of the Vedas, or for life), as it were, to limit his daily food to the drinking of the Vrata-milk, which rule he obeys symbolically by reciting such a verse or formula.

[1] ? Sâya*ṇ*a takes '*s*ukra' here in the sense of 'flame, light' (vyâh*ṛ*itirûpâ*ṇ*i tegâ*ṃ*si); whilst the St. Petersb. Dict. assigns to it the meaning of 'sap, juice' (Saft, Seim, cf. next note). Ait. Br. V, 32, contains a very similar passage in which the same process of evolution is set forth:—Praǵâpati first creates the three worlds, earth, air, and heaven. From them, being heated by him, three lights (*g*yotis) are produced—Agni from the earth, Vâyu from the air, and Âditya from the sky (or heaven). From them, being heated, the three Vedas are produced—the *Rig*-veda from Agni, the Yaǵur-veda from Vâyu, and the Sâma-veda from Âditya. From the Vedas, being heated, three flames (*s*ukra, luminaries, Haug) are produced—Bhû*ḥ* from the *Rig*-veda, Bhuva*ḥ* from the Yaǵur-

duced—'bhûḥ' from the *Ṛig*-veda, 'bhuvaḥ' from the Yagur-veda, and 'svar' from the Sâma-veda. And with the *Ṛig*-veda they then performed the work of the Hotṛi priest, with the Yagur-veda the work of the Adhvaryu, and with the Sâma-veda the work of the Udgâtṛi; and what luminous essence[1] there was in the threefold science, therewith the work of the Brahman priest then proceeded.

5. The gods spake unto Pragâpati, 'If our sacrifice were to fail in respect of either the *Ṛik*, or the Yagus, or the Sâman, whereby should we heal it?'

6. He spake, 'If (it were to fail) in respect of the *Ṛik*, ye should take ghee by four ladlings and offer it in the Gârhapatya fire with 'Bhûḥ!' and if in respect of the Yagus, ye should take ghee by four ladlings and offer it in the Âgnîdhrîya—or in the Anvâhâryapaćana[2] in the case of a Haviryagña—with 'Bhuvaḥ!' and if in respect of the Sâman, ye should take ghee by four ladlings and offer it in the Âhavaniya with 'Svar!' But if it should not be known (where the mistake has occurred), ye should make offering in the Âhavanîya after utter-

---

veda, and Svar from the Sâma-veda. From these in the same way are produced three sounds (or letters, varṇa), â, u and m, which being combined yield the syllable 'Om.' Cp. J. Muir, Original Sanskrit Texts, vol. iii, p. 4.

[1] Here Sâyaṇa also seems to take 'śukra' in the sense of 'pure, essential part'—nirmalaṃ rûpaṃ sâratvatâṃśaḥ (!).

[2] That is, the Dakshiṇâgni. At the Haviryagña (of which class of sacrifices, performed in the Prâćînavaṃśa hall, the full and new moon serves as model) there is no Âgnîdhrîya, which is, however, required for the Soma-sacrifice. See the plan in part ii, p. 475.

ing rapidly all (the three sacred words [1]): thus one heals the *Ṛig*-veda by the *Ṛig*-veda [2], the Yagur-veda by the Yagur-veda, and the Sâma-veda by the Sâma-veda;—even as one would put together joint with joint [3], so does he put together (the broken part of the sacrifice) whoever heals it by means of these (three sacred words). But if he heals it in any other way than this, it would be just as if one tried to put together something that is broken with something else that is broken, or as if one were to apply some poison as lotion to a broken part [4]. Let him therefore appoint only one who knows this (to officiate as) his Brahman, and not one who does not know this.

7. As to this they say, 'Seeing that the work of the Hotṛi is performed with the *Ṛig*-veda, that of the Adhvaryu with the Yagur-veda, and that of the Udgâtṛi with the Sâma-veda, wherewith then is the work of the Brahman (performed)?' Let him reply, 'With that threefold science.'

[1] According to Sâyaṇa, offering would be used with the formula 'Bhûr bhuvaḥ svaḥ, svâhâ!'

[2] Viz. by the word 'bhûḥ,' representing that Veda.

[3] Yathâ khalu loke bhagnaṃ hastapâdâdiparva tatsannihitenânyena parvaṇâ purushâya saṃdadhyât saṃsleshayet, evam evânena vyâhṛitigñânena tat tad avedoktaṃ prabhṛishṭam aṅgaṃ punaḥ sahitaṃ bhavati, Sây.

[4] ? Or, as if one were to put some fluid into some broken (vessel; or, on some broken part),—yathâ sîrṇena bhagnena anyaḳ khîrṇaṃ bhagnaṃ vastu saṃdhitset saṃdhâtum iḳkheṭ; yathâ vâ sîrṇe garaṃ bhaktâvayave garam abhinidadhyât praḥdattipeta (? prakshipet), Sây.

NINTH BRÂHMAṆA.

THE ADÂBHYA-GRAHA.

1. Now, the Aṃsu (cup of Soma)[1], indeed, is no other than Pragâpati; and it is the body of this (sacrifice), for Pragâpati, indeed, is the body. And the Adâbhya[2] (cup of Soma) is no other than speech. When he draws the Aṃsu-cup, and then the Adâbhya-cup, he thereby constructs the body of this (sacrifice) and then establishes that speech therein.

2. And, indeed, the Aṃsu is also the mind, and the Adâbhya speech; and the Aṃsu is the out-breathing, and the Adâbhya the up-breathing; and the Aṃsu is the eye, and the Adâbhya the ear: these two cups they draw for the sake of wholeness and completeness.

3. Now, the gods and the Asuras, both of them sprung from Pragâpati, were contending,—it was for this very sacrifice, for Pragâpati, that they were contending, saying, 'Ours he shall be! ours he shall be!'

4. The gods then went on singing praises, and toiling. They saw this cup of Soma, this Adâbhya, and drew it: they seized upon the (three) Soma-services, and possessed themselves of the whole sacrifice, and excluded the Asuras from the sacrifice.

5. They spake, 'Surely, we have destroyed (adabhâma) them;' whence (the cup is called) Adâbhya; —'they have not destroyed (dabh) us;' whence also (it is called) Adâbhya. And the Adâbhya

[1] See IV, 1, 1, 2; 6, 1, 1.

[2] See part ii, p. 424, note 1.

being speech, this speech is indestructible, whence also it is (called) Adâbhya; and, verily, in like manner does he who knows this possess himself of the whole sacrifice of his spiteful enemy, and exclude and shut out his spiteful enemy from all participation in the sacrifice.

6. Into the same vessel with which he draws the Aṁśu[1] he pours water from the Nigrâbhyâḥ[2], and therein puts those Soma-plants[3] with (Vâg. S. VIII, 47),—

7. 'Thou art taken with a support[4]: for Agni I take thee, possessed of the Gâyatrî metre!'—the morning-service is of Gâyatrî nature: he thus possesses himself of the morning-service;—'For Indra I take thee, possessed of the Triṣṭubh metre!'—the midday-service is of Triṣṭubh nature: he thus possesses himself of the midday-service;—'For the Viśve Devâḥ I take thee, possessed of the Gagatî metre!'—the evening-service is of Gagatî nature: he thus possesses himself of the evening-service;—'The Anuṣṭubh is thy song of praise;'—whatever is subsequent to the (three) services[5], that is of Anuṣṭubh nature: it is thereof he thus possesses

[1] See IV, 6, 1, 3 seq.

[2] That is, the water originally taken from the Praṇîtâ water, and poured into the (square) Hotṛi's cup (made of Udumbara wood), to be used for moistening the Soma-plants.

[3] For the Adâbhya he puts three Soma-plants into the Hotṛi's cup.

[4] According to Kâty. XII, 6, 15, this portion of the formula—the 'upayâma,' or support—is repeated before the formulas of each of the three plants, hence also before 'For Indra . . .,' and 'For the Viśve Devâḥ . . .'

[5] Viz. the Ukthyas, Shoḍaśin, &c., in forms of Soma-sacrifice other than the Agniṣṭoma.

himself. He does not press this (batch of Soma-plants) lest he should injure speech (or, the voice of the sacrifice), for the press-stone is a thunderbolt, and the Adâbhya is speech.

8. He merely shakes the (cup with the) plants with (Vâg. S. VIII, 48), 'In the flow of the streaming (waters) I waft thee! in the flow of the gurgling I waft thee! in the flow of the jubilant I waft thee! in the flow of the most delightsome I waft thee! in the flow of the most sweet I waft thee!' These doubtless are the divine waters: he thus bestows sap on him (Praǵâpati, the sacrifice) by means of both the divine and the human waters which there are.

9. 'Thee, the bright, I waft in the bright,'—for he indeed wafts the bright one in the bright;—'in the form of the day, in the rays of the sun;'—he thus wafts it both in the form of the day and in the rays of the sun.

10. [Vâg. S. VIII, 49], 'Mightily shineth the towering form of the ball,'—for mightily indeed shines that towering form of the ball, to wit, yonder burning (sun);—'the bright one, the leader of the bright one, Soma, the leader of Soma,'—he thereby makes that bright (sun) the leader of the bright (Soma), and Soma the leader of the Soma;—'what indestructible, watchful name there is of thine, for that do I take thee;'—for this, to wit, speech, is indeed his (Soma's) indestructible (adâbhya), watchful name: it is thus speech he thereby takes for speech.

11. Then, stepping out (from the Havirdhâna shed[1]) to (the Âhavanîya), he offers with, 'O

[1] It is there that the Soma-plants are kept.

Soma, to this thy Soma, hail!'—he thus offers Soma to Soma, and so does not throw speech into the fire[1]. He breathes over gold[2]: the meaning of this is the same as there (on the occasion of the Aṃsu). He gives as many presents (to the priests) as for the Aṃsu-graha.

12. He then puts the Soma-plants back (on the heap of plants in the Havirdhâna) with (Vâg. S. VIII, 50), 'Enter thou gladly Agni's dear seat, O divine Soma!—Enter thou willingly Indra's dear seat, O divine Soma!—As our friend enter thou, O divine Soma, the dear seat of the Viśve Devâḥ!' On that former occasion he possessed himself of the (three) Soma services: he now restores them again, and causes them to be no longer used up; and with them thus restored they perform the sacrifice.

Sixth Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now, Bhṛigu, the son of Varuṇa, deemed himself superior to his father Varuṇa in knowledge[3]. Varuṇa became aware of this: 'He deems himself superior to me in knowledge,' he thought.

2. He said, 'Go thou eastward, my boy; and

[1] Though the Adâbhya-graha, that is, the water in which the three Soma-plants are contained, and which alone is offered, has been identified with speech, the wording of the formula is such as to protect (the faculty of) speech from being burned in the fire.

[2] Just as, after the offering of the Aṃsu-graha, he smelled at (or breathed over) a piece of gold fastened to (? or contained in) the spoon, see IV, 6, 1, 6 seqq.

[3] On this legend, see Prof. Weber, Indische Streifen, I, p. 24 seqq., where the scenes here depicted are taken to be reflections of the popular belief of the time as to the punishments awaiting the guilty in a future existence.

having seen there what thou shalt see, go thou southwards; and having seen there what thou shalt see, go thou westward; and having seen there what thou shalt see, go thou northward; and having seen there what thou shalt see, go thou toward the northern of those two intermediate quarters in front[1], and tell me then what thou shalt see there.'

3. He then went forth from thence eastward, and lo, men were dismembering men[2], hewing off their limbs one by one, and saying, 'This to thee, this to me!' He said, 'Horrible! woe is me! men here have dismembered men, hewing off their limbs one by one!' They replied, 'Thus, indeed, these dealt with us in yonder world, and so we now deal with them in return.' He said, 'Is there no atonement for this?'—'Yes, there is,' they replied.—'What is it?'—'Thy father knows.'

4. He went forth from thence southward, and lo, men were dismembering men, cutting up their limbs one by one, and saying, 'This to thee, this to me!' He said, 'Horrible! woe is me! men here have dismembered men, cutting up their limbs one by one!' They replied, 'Thus, indeed, these dealt with us in yonder world, and so we now deal with them in return.' He said, 'Is there no atonement for this?'—'Yes, there is,' they replied.—'What is it?'—'Thy father knows.'

[1] That is to say, in the north-easterly direction. Prof. Weber seems to take it in the sense of the northern one of the two regions intermediate between the two (regions) first referred to. This, however, makes no sense.

[2] I think, with Prof. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 404, that the instrumental 'purushaiḥ' stands in lieu of the accusative; this construction being adopted in order to avoid the double accusative and consequent ambiguity.

5. He went forth from thence westward, and lo, men, sitting still, were being eaten by men, sitting still! He said, 'Horrible! woe is me! men, sitting still, are eating men, sitting still!' They replied, 'Thus, indeed, these have dealt with us in yonder world, and so we now deal with them in return.' He said, 'Is there no atonement for this?'—'Yes, there is,' they replied.—'What is it?'—'Thy father knows.'

6. He went forth from thence northward, and lo, men, crying aloud, were being eaten by men, crying aloud! He said, 'Horrible! woe is me! men, crying aloud, here are eating men, crying aloud!' They replied, 'Thus, indeed, these dealt with us in yonder world, and so we now deal with them in return.' He said, 'Is there no atonement for this?'—'Yes, there is,' they replied.—'What is it?'—'Thy father knows.'

7. He went forth from thence toward the northern of those two intermediate quarters in front, and lo, there were two women, one beautiful, one over-beautiful[1]: between them stood a man, black, with yellow eyes, and a staff in his hand. On seeing him, terror seized him, and he went home, and sat down. His father said to him, 'Study thy day's lesson (of scripture): why dost thou not study thy lesson?' He said, 'What am I to study? there is nothing whatever.' Then Varuṇa knew, 'He has indeed seen it!'

8. He spake, 'As to those men whom thou

[1] According to Sâyaṇa 'ati-kalyâṇî' means 'not beautiful (asobhanâ), ugly.' Perhaps its real meaning is 'one of past beauty,' one whose beauty has faded.

sawest in the eastern region being dismembered by men hewing off their limbs one by one, and saying, "This to thee, this to me!" they were the trees: when one puts fire-wood from trees on (the fire) he subdues the trees, and conquers the world of trees.

9. 'And as to those men whom thou sawest in the southern region being dismembered by men cutting up their limbs one by one, and saying, "This to thee, this to me!" they were the cattle: when one makes offering with milk he subdues the cattle, and conquers the world of cattle.

10. 'And as to those men thou sawest in the western region who, whilst sitting still, were being eaten by men sitting still, they were the herbs: when one illumines (the Agnihotra milk) with a straw [1], he subdues the herbs, and conquers the world of herbs.

11. 'And as to those men thou sawest in the northern region who, whilst crying aloud, were being eaten by men crying aloud, they were the waters: when one pours water to (the Agnihotra milk), he subdues the waters, and conquers the world of waters.

12. 'And as to those two women whom thou sawest, one beautiful and one over-beautiful,—the beautiful one is Belief: when one offers the first libation (of the Agnihotra) he subdues Belief, and conquers Belief; and the over-beautiful one is Unbelief: when one offers the second libation, he subdues Unbelief, and conquers Unbelief.

13. 'And as to the black man with yellow eyes,

[1] See II, 3, 1, 16.

who was standing between them with a staff in his hand, he was Wrath: when, having poured water into the spoon, one pours (the libation into the fire), he subdues Wrath, and conquers Wrath; and, verily, whosoever, knowing this, offers the Agnihotra, thereby conquers everything, and subdues everything.'

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now, Ganaka of Videha once met some Brâhmaṇas who were travelling about[1], to wit, Svetaketu Âruṇeya, Somaśushma Sâtyayagñi, and Yâgñavalkya. He said to them, 'How do ye each of you perform the Agnihotra?'

2. Svetaketu Âruṇeya replied, 'O great king, I make offering, in one another, to two heats, never-failing and overflowing with glory.'—'How is that?' asked the king.—'Well, Âditya (the sun) is heat: to him I make offering in Agni in the evening; and Agni, indeed, is heat: to him I make offering in the morning in Âditya[2].'—'What becomes of him who offers in this way?' asked the

[1] Or, driving about (and officiating at sacrifices); see XI, 4, 1, 1. For a translation of this story see Max Müller, History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 421 seqq.

[2] Âdityaṃ sâyaṃkâle agnâv anupravishṭaṃ guhomi havishâ tarpayâmi; athâgnir api gharmaḥ, sa prâtar âdityam anupraviśati, tam agniṃ prâtaḥkâle âdityе sthitaṃ havishâ prîṇayâmi, Sây.—At II, 3, 1, 36, instead of—'In the evening he offers Sûrya in Agni, and in the morning he offers Agni in Sûrya'—we ought probably to translate,—'In the evening he makes offering to Sûrya in Agni, and in the morning he makes offering to Agni in Sûrya.' The commentary there would admit of either rendering:—Agnir gyotir, iti mantreṇa guhvad agnâv eva santaṃ sûryaṃ guhoti, tathâ ka gyotiḥśabdaḥ sûryavakanaḥ; prâtaḥkâle tu sûrye santam agniṃ guhoti.

king.—'He verily becomes never-failing in prosperity and glory, and attains to the fellowship of those two deities, and to an abode in their world.'

3. Then Somaśushma Sâtyayaǵñi said, 'I, O king, make offering to light in light.'—'How is that?' asked the king.—'Well, Âditya is light: to him I make offering in Agni in the evening; and Agni, indeed, is light: to him I make offering in Âditya in the morning.'—'What becomes of him who offers in this way?'—'He verily becomes lightsome, and glorious, and prosperous: and attains to the fellowship of those two deities, and to an abode in their world.'

4. Then Yâǵñavalkya said, 'When I take out the fire (from the Gârhapatya), it is the Agnihotra itself, I thereby raise[1]. Now when Âditya (the sun) sets, all the gods follow him; and when they see that fire taken out by me, they turn back. Having then cleansed the (sacrificial) vessels, and deposited them (on the Vedi), and having milked the Agnihotra cow, I gladden them, when I see them, and when they see me.'—'Thou, O Yâǵñavalkya, hast inquired most closely into the nature of the Agnihotra,' said the king; 'I bestow a hundred cows on thee. But not even thou (knowest) either the uprising, or the progress, or the support, or the contentment, or the return, or the renascent world of those two (libations of the Agnihotra).' Thus saying, he mounted his car and drove away.

5. They said, 'Surely, this fellow of a Râǵanya has outtalked us: come, let us challenge him to

[1] Yad yadâ âhavanîyam gârhapatyâd aham uddharâmi tat tadânîm kṛitsnam aṅgopâṅgasahitam agnihotram eva udyakkhâmi udvahâmi, Sây.

a theological disputation!' Yâgñavalkya said, 'We are Brâhmaṇas, and he is a Râganya: if we were to vanquish him, whom should we say we had vanquished? But if he were to vanquish us, people would say of us that a Râganya had vanquished Brâhmaṇas: do not think of this!' They approved of his words. But Yâgñavalkya, mounting his car, drove after (the king). He overtook him, and he (the king) said, 'Is it to know the Agnihotra, Yâgñavalkya?'—'The Agnihotra, O king!' he replied.

6. 'Well, those two libations, when offered, rise upwards: they enter the air, and make the air their offering-fire, the wind their fuel, the sun-motes their pure libation: they satiate the air, and rise upwards therefrom.

7. 'They enter the sky, and make the sky their offering-fire, the sun their fuel, and the moon their pure libation: they satiate the sky, and return from there.

8. 'They enter this (earth), and make this (earth) their offering-fire, the fire their fuel, and the herbs their pure libation: they satiate this (earth), and rise upwards therefrom.

9. 'They enter man, and make his mouth their offering-fire, his tongue their fuel, and food their pure libation: they satiate man; and, verily, for him who, knowing this, eats food the Agnihotra comes to be offered. They rise upwards from there.

10. 'They enter woman, and make her lap their offering-fire, her womb the fuel,—for that (womb) is called the bearer, because by it Pragâpati bore creatures,—and the seed their pure libation: they satiate woman; and, verily, for him who, knowing this, approaches his mate, the Agnihotra comes to

be offered. The son who is born therefrom is the renascent world: this is the Agnihotra, Yâgñavalkya, there is nothing higher than this.' Thus he spoke; and Yâgñavalkya granted him a boon. He said, 'Let mine be the (privilege of) asking questions of thee when I list, Yâgñavalkya!' Thenceforth Ganaka was a Brahman.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Ganaka of Videha performed a sacrifice accompanied with numerous gifts to the priests. Setting apart a thousand cows, he said, 'He who is the most learned in sacred writ amongst you, O Brâhmaṇas, shall drive away these (cows)[1]!'

2. Yâgñavalkya then said, 'This way (drive) them!' They said, 'Art thou really the most learned in sacred writ amongst us, Yâgñavalkya?' He replied, 'Reverence be to him who is most learned in sacred writ! We are but hankering after cows[2].'

3. They then said (to one another), 'Which of us shall question him?' The shrewd Śâkalya said, 'I!' When he (Yâgñavalkya) saw him, he said, 'Have the Brâhmaṇas made of thee a thing for quenching the firebrand, Śâkalya?'

4. He said[3], 'How many gods are there, Yâgñavalkya?'—'Three hundred and three, and three thousand and three,' he replied.—'Yea, so it is!' he said. 'How many gods are there really, Yâgñavalkya?'—'Thirty-three.'—'Yea, so it is!' he said.

[1] One might also construe,—These are yours, O Brâhmaṇas: he who is the most learned in sacred writ shall drive (them) away. Cf. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, pp. 251, 363.

[2] Gokâmâ eva kevalaṁ vayaṁ smaḥ bhavâmaḥ, Sây.

[3] See XIV, 6, 9, 1 seqq.

'How many gods are there really, Yâgñavalkya?'—'Three.'—'Yea, so it is!' he said. 'How many gods are there really, Yâgñavalkya?'—'Two.'—'Yea, so it is!' he said. 'How many gods are there really, Yâgñavalkya?'—'One and a half.'—'Yea, so it is!' he said. 'How many gods are there really, Yâgñavalkya?'—'One.'—'Yea, so it is!' he said. 'Who are those three hundred and three, and three thousand and three?'

5. He replied, 'These are their powers, but thirty-three gods indeed there are.'—'Who are those thirty-three?'—'Eight Vasus, eleven Rudras, and twelve Âdityas,—that makes thirty-one; and Indra and Pragâpati make up the thirty-three.'

6. 'Who are the Vasus?'—'Agni, the Earth, Vâyu (the wind), the Air, Âditya (the sun), Heaven, the Moon, and the Stars:—these are the Vasus, for these cause all this (universe) to abide (vas), and hence they are the Vasus.'

7. 'Who are the Rudras?'—'These ten vital airs in man, and the self (spirit) is the eleventh: when these depart from this mortal body, they cause wailing (rud), and hence they are the Rudras.'

8. 'Who are the Âdityas?'—'The twelve months of the year: these are the Âdityas, for they pass whilst laying hold on everything here; and inasmuch as they pass whilst laying hold (â-dâ) on everything here, they are the Âdityas.'

9. 'Who is Indra, and who Pragâpati?'—'Indra, indeed, is thunder[1], and Pragâpati the sacrifice.'—'What is thunder?'—'The thunderbolt.'—'What is the sacrifice?'—'Cattle.'

[1] Sâyaṇa takes 'stanayitnu' in the sense of 'thunder-cloud,'—stanayitnuḥ stananaśilo gargan parganya ity arthaḥ.

10. 'Who are those three gods?'—'These three worlds, for therein all the gods are contained.'—'Who are those two gods?'—'Food and breath (life).' 'Who is the one and a half?'—'He who is blowing here[1] (Vâyu, the wind).'—'Who is the one god?'—'Breath.'

11. He (Yâgñavalkya) said, 'Thou hast gone on questioning me beyond the deity[2], beyond which there must be no questioning: thou shalt die ere such and such a day, and not even thy bones shall reach thy home!' And so, indeed, did he (Sâkalya) die; and robbers carried off his bones[3], taking them for something else[4]. Wherefore let no man decry[5] any one, for even (by) knowing this, he gets the better of him[6].

---

[1] XIV, 6, 9, 10, the use of 'adhyardha (having one half over)' in connection with the wind is accounted for by a fanciful etymology, viz. because the wind succeeds (or prevails) over (adhy-ardh) everything here.

[2] That is, as would seem, Pragâpati, cf. XIV, 6, 6, 1, where Yâgñavalkya tells Gârgî how one world is 'woven and rewoven' on another, the last being that of Pragâpati, which was woven on that of the Brahman; and when Gârgî asks him as to what world the Brahman-world was woven on, he gives the same reply as here, viz. that there must be no questioning beyond that deity (Pragâpati).

[3] Prof. Weber, Ind. Streifen, I, p. 21, connects this feature with the belief in a strictly personal existence after death prevailing at the time of the Brâhmaṇa, which involved, as a matter of great moment, the careful collection of the bones after the corpse had been burnt, with a view to their being placed in an earthen vessel and buried. —Cf. Âsval. Gṛihyas. IV, 5, 1 seqq.; Kâty. Śr. XXI, 3, 7 seqq. See also J. Muir, Orig. Sanskrit Texts, vol. v, p. 316.

[4] That is, mistaking them for gold or some other valuable substance, comm., — anyan manyamânâḥ suvarṇâdidravyatvena gânantaḥ.

[5] Or, 'revile,' as the St. Petersb. Dict. takes it. Possibly, however, 'upa-vad' has here the sense of 'to speak to,' i.e. 'to question or lecture some one.'

[6] The commentary is partly corrupt and not very intelligible:—

SEVENTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

THE ANIMAL SACRIFICE[1].

1. He performs the animal sacrifice. Now the animal sacrifice means cattle: thus, when he performs the animal sacrifice (paśubandha, the binding of the animal), it is in order that he may be possessed of cattle. Let him perform it at his home, thinking, 'I will bind (attach) cattle to my home.' Let him perform it in the season of abundant fodder, thinking, 'I will bind to myself cattle in a season of abundant fodder. For, whilst he is offering[2], the Sacrificer's fires become worn out, and so does the Sacrificer, along with the worn-out fires, and along with the Sacrificer his house and cattle.

2. And when he performs the animal sacrifice, he renews his fires, and so, along with the renewal of his fires, does the Sacrificer (renew himself), and along with the Sacrificer his house and cattle. And beneficial to life, indeed, is that redemption of his

---

Yasmâd evaṃ tasmâd iti goshu kathârûpeṇa tattvanikṛi(ti)m upetya vâdî na bhavet, sva (? svayam) api tu evaṃvit paro bhavati, uktaprakâreṇa yaḥ prâṇasvarûpaṃ gânâti taṃ vidvâṃsam upetya tâtparyeṇâ savâ (? âtmanâ) yukto bhaved ity arthaḥ, Sây. Cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. V, p. 361, note.—Prof. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 528, takes 'paro bhavati' in the sense of 'he becomes one of the other side, or shore,' i.e. he dies.

[1] Whilst a full account is given in the third Kâṇḍa (part ii, p. 162 seqq.) of the animal sacrifice performed on the day before the Soma-sacrifice, the Brâhmaṇa, in the last two adhyâyas of the present Kâṇḍa, touches on certain features in which the performance of the animal sacrifice of the pressing-day differs from that of the preceding day.

[2] Viz. the Agnihotra every morning and evening.

own self[1]; for whilst he is offering the Sacrificer's fires long for flesh; they set their minds on the Sacrificer and harbour designs on him. In other fires[2] people do indeed cook any kind of meat, but these (sacrificial fires) have no desire for any other flesh but this (sacrificial animal), and for him to whom they belong.

3. Now, when he performs the animal offering he thereby redeems himself—male by male, for the victim is a male, and the Sacrificer is a male. And this, indeed, to wit, flesh, is the best kind of food: he thus becomes an eater of the best kind of food. Let not a year pass by for him without his offering; for the year means life: it is thus immortal life he thereby confers upon himself.

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now there is one animal sacrifice of the Haviryagña order[3], and another of the order of the Soma-sacrifice. Of the Haviryagña order is that at which he (the Adhvaryu) brings him fast-food[4], leads water

[1] That is, the ransoming of one's own life from the sacrificial fires, by offering an animal victim to them in lieu of his own self.

[2] That is, in ordinary, culinary fires.

[3] That is, the offering of the Agnishomîya he-goat which takes place on the day before the press-day (see part ii, p. 162 seqq.): whilst the Savanîya-pasubandha is performed on the day of the Soma-sacrifice itself; the victim being slaughtered during the morning-service, and the flesh-portions cooked during the day and offered at the evening-service (cf. part ii, p. 313, note 3; p. 356, note 3).

[4] That is, milk from the Vratadughâ cow (which may be mixed with some rice or barley; III, 2, 2, 14), the only food to be taken by the Sacrificer during his dîkshâ, or period of initiation—in this case on the day before the Soma-sacrifice.

forward[1], and pours out a jarful of water[2], and at which (the Sacrificer) strides the Vishṇu-strides[3]; and of the order of the Soma-sacrifice is that (animal sacrifice) at which these (rites) are not performed.

2. Concerning this they ask, 'Is the animal sacrifice an ishṭi or a great (Soma-) sacrifice?'—'A great sacrifice,' let him say; 'for in that (other) case[4] thou hast made the animal sacrifice an ishṭi, and shattered it.' Thus he should say to him.

3. Its fore-offerings are the morning-service[5], its after-offerings the evening-service, and its sacrificial cake[6] the midday-service.

4. Now, some bring up the Dakshiṇâs (presents to the priests) when the omentum has been offered[7];

---

[1] That is, the so-called 'praṇîtâḥ' used for sacrificial purposes generally, and especially for supplying what is required for pressing the Soma. Cf. the comm. on Kâty. VI, 7, 19, where the 'praṇîtâpraṇayana' is expressly referred to as a necessary element of the performance of the Agnîshomîya.

[2] For the pouring out of the water on the south side of the Vedi, at the end of the Haviryagña, see I, 9, 3, 1 seqq.

[3] The Sacrificer intercepts with his hands some of the water poured out, touches his face therewith, and then strides the three Vishṇu-strides; cf. I, 9, 3, 8 seqq.

[4] Viz. in case of the animal sacrifice being performed on the Haviryagña or Ishṭi model; which, strictly speaking, would involve the use of no other offering-material except milk, ghee, and dishes made of cereals.

[5] The usual order of subject and predicate would require the translation, 'the morning-service is its fore-offerings,' which would hardly be in accordance with the author's reasoning.

[6] For the paśu-puroḍâśa, III, 8, 3, 1 seqq.

[7] That is, prior to the offering of the 'animal cake' (paśu-puroḍâśa), whilst the presentation of the dakshiṇâs—a head of cattle, or a milch-cow, or some other desirable object—according to Kâty. VI, 7, 29, should take place after the offering of the Iḍâ, which marks the end of the Paśu-puroḍâśa-ishṭi.

but let him not do so, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this (Sacrificer) has brought the Dakshiṇâs outside of the vital airs (or, of life), he has not strengthened his vital airs: he will become either blind, or lame, or deaf, or paralyzed on one side;' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

5. Let him perform it in this way:—when the Iḍâ of the cake-offering has been invoked, he should bring up the Dakshiṇâs; for to Indra belongs this vital air in the centre (of the body): by means of the Dakshiṇâs he thus strengthens this vital air in the centre (of the body); and to Indra also belongs the midday Soma-service, and at the midday-service the Dakshiṇâs are brought up: therefore he should bring up the Dakshiṇâs after the invocation of the Iḍâ of the cake-offering.

6. Here now they say, 'Seeing that the want of the purificatory bath in the case of the initiated is improper, Adhvaryu, when didst thou initiate him?' Well, let them[1] sustain him till the purificatory bath, —to wit, the Adhvaryu, the Pratiprasthâtṛi, the Hotṛi, the Maitrâvaruṇa, the Brahman, and the

[1] Sâyaṇa supplies '*g*anâ*h*,' 'the people;' but possibly the text of the commentary may be corrupt in this place. The author's meaning would seem to be that, as there is no purificatory bath at the end of the animal sacrifice performed on the Soma-day, the Sacrificer's strength is to be kept up by the Sha*ddh*otṛi formula (representing the six priests themselves) which will carry him as far as the purificatory bath at the end of the Soma-sacrifice. I am, however, far from sure that this is the real meaning of the passage. The Sha*ddh*otṛi is performed (at the animal sacrifice of the pressing-day) shortly after the beginning of the ceremonies connected with the Paśubandha, viz. immediately after the 'yûpâhuti,' see part ii, p. 162 seqq.

Âgnidhra, for it is through these that this (formula) is called 'shaddhotri[1]': having rapidly muttered that 'shaddhotri,' he offers, performing either one or five oblations of ghee[2],—'The heaven is his[3] back, the air his body, O Vâkaspati, by his limbs he gave rise to the sacrifice, by his forms to the earth; by his flawless voice and his flawless tongue to the god-gladdening invocation, Hail!' This, indeed, is his initiation.

7. As to this they say, 'Seeing that the want of the purificatory bath in the case of the initiated is improper, Adhvaryu, when didst thou take him down to the purificatory bath?' Well, when they perform with the heart-spit[4], that is his purificatory bath.

8. Madhuka Paiṅgya once said, 'Some perform the animal sacrifice without Soma, and others do so with Soma. Now, Soma was in the heavens, and Gâyatri, having become a bird, fetched him; and inasmuch as one of his leaves (parṇa) was cut off[5],

[1] That is, one containing (mentioning), or requiring, six offering-priests, the number required for the animal sacrifice.

[2] In either case the offering consists of five ladlings of ghee; and in the case of a single oblation, according to Sâyaṇa, a different dipping-spoon (sruva) would seem to be used for each ladling; unless, indeed, 'ekaikena sruvena' mean 'with one sruva-full each.' According to Kâty. VI, 1, 36, the formula is merely 'run through mentally.'

[3] Sâyaṇa interprets 'thy back'; and he apparently supplies 'prâpnoti' at the end of the first half-verse, whilst 'airayat' he takes to stand for the second person singular.

[4] That is, when the heart is roasted on the spit prior to its being offered; see III, 8, 3, 16. This use of the spit is to take the place of the purificatory bath, the technical term of which is 'spit-bath' (śûlâvabhṛitha), the spit being on that occasion buried at the point 'where the dry and the moist meet,' see III, 8, 5, 8–10.

[5] Either a leaf of Soma or a feather of Gâyatri was cut off by an

that was how the Parṇa-tree arose:' such, indeed, is (the passage in) the Brâhmaṇa that is told. And some, it is true, perform the animal sacrifice without Soma, and others with Soma; for he who makes the sacrificial stake other than of Palâśa wood, performs the animal sacrifice without Soma; and he who makes the sacrificial stake of Palâśa performs the animal sacrifice with Soma: therefore let him make his sacrificial stake of Palâśa wood.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Such a (sacrificial stake) as has much substance[1] is not auspicious to cattle, whence he who desires to have cattle should not make such a one his sacrificial stake: but such a one as is of little hardness is auspicious to cattle, whence he who desires to have cattle should make such a one his sacrificial stake.

2. And such a one as, while being crooked, has a top like a spit, is called 'kapoti[2]'; and whoever makes such a one his sacrificial stake certainly goes to yonder world before his full measure of life: therefore let no one wishing for long life make such a one his sacrificial stake.

---

arrow shot by an archer pursuing Gâyatrî, and, on its falling to the earth, a Palâśa, or Parṇa, tree (Butea frondosa) sprang forth, see III. 3, 4. 10.

[1] That is, as would seem, made of very hard wood. It cannot mean 'pithy,' because at XIII, 4. 4. 9, the Khadira (acacia catechu), a tree of very hard, solid wood, is mentioned as 'bahusâra.'

[2] Either 'that which has a pigeon (sitting) on it' (kapotin, viz. yûpa), or, as Sâyaṇa takes it, fem. of 'kapota,'—a female pigeon; i. e. a tree too much pointed at the top.

3. And such a one as is bent at the top, and bent outwards[1] in the middle, is a type of hunger (poverty); and if any one makes such a one his sacrificial stake, his dependants will certainly be hungry; therefore let no one wishing for food make such a one his sacrificial stake. But such a one as is bent at the top and bent inwards in the middle, is a type of food (prosperity): therefore let him who wishes for food make such a one his sacrificial stake.

Fourth Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now, when he who is about to perform an animal sacrifice makes a stake one cubit long, he thereby gains this (terrestrial) world; and when (he makes) one two cubits long, he thereby gains the air-world; and when he makes one three cubits long, he thereby gains the heavens; and when he makes one four cubits long, he thereby gains the regions. But, indeed, that sacrificial stake of the (ordinary) animal sacrifice is either three or four cubits long, and one that is above that belongs to the Soma-sacrifice.

2. As to this they say, 'Should he offer the butter-portions or not?'—'Let him offer them,' they say; 'for the two butter-portions are the eyes of the sacrifice, and what were man without eyes?' For as long as a co-sharer is not bought off by (receiving) a share of his own, so long does he consider himself not bought off; but when he is bought off by a share of his own, then, indeed, he considers himself bought

[1] That is, as would seem, bent to the opposite side from that towards which the top tends.

off: when the Hotṛi, on that occasion[1], recites, 'Endow the Rakshas with blood!' he buys him off by (assigning to him) a share of his own.

3. For on that occasion[2] the anguish of the victim, in being slaughtered, becomes concentrated in the heart, and from the heart (it flows) into the spit. Thus, if they (were to) cook the animal together with the heart, the anguish would again spread all over the animal: let him therefore cook it (the heart) after spitting it from the side on a stick.

4. He makes an underlayer of ghee (in the offering-ladle): this he makes a type of the earth; he then puts a chip of gold thereon: this he makes a type of fire; he then puts the omentum thereon: this he makes a type of the air; he then puts a chip of gold thereon: this he makes a type of the sun; and what (ghee) he pours upon it, that he makes a type of the heavens. This, then, is that five-portioned omentum,—fivefold is the sacrifice, fivefold the sacrificial animal, and five seasons there are in the year: this is why the omentum consists of five portions[3].

---

[1] Viz. at the time when the victim is cut up. Cf. Ait. Br. II, 7,—'Endow ye the Rakshas with blood!' he says; for by (assigning to them) the husks and the sweepings of the grain the gods deprived the Rakshas of their share in the Haviryagña, and by the blood (they deprived them) of that in the great (Soma-) sacrifice: thus by saying, 'Endow ye the Rakshas with blood!' he dispossesses the Rakshas of the sacrifice by assigning to them their own share.—The Adhvaryu then smears a stalk of grass with the blood with, 'Thou art the Rakshas' share,' throws it on the heap of rubbish, and treads on it with, 'Herewith I tread down the Rakshas,' &c. Cf. III, 8, 2, 13–15.

[2] See III, 8, 5, 8.

[3] Or, cuttings; see III, 8, 2, 26.

EIGHTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Verily, even as this cart-wheel, or a potter's wheel, would creak[1] if not steadied, so, indeed, were these worlds unfirm and unsteadied.

2. Pragâpati then bethought him, 'How may these worlds become firm and steadied?' By means of the mountains and rivers he stablished this (earth), by means of the birds and sun-motes[2] the air, and by means of the clouds and stars the sky.

3. He then exclaimed, 'Wealth!'—now, wealth[3] (mahas) means cattle, whence they (cattle) thrive (mahiyante[4]) exceedingly in the homestead of one who possesses many of them; and this (Sacrificer), indeed, possesses many of them, and in his homestead they do thrive exceedingly. Wherefore, if people were either to forcibly drive him from his home, or to bid him go forth, let him, after performing the Agni-hotra, approach (the fires) saying, 'Wealth'; and he becomes firmly established by offspring and cattle, and is not deprived of his home.

---

[1] Sâyaṇa apparently takes 'krand' in the sense of 'to shake, or wabble,'—'even as a cart-wheel or some other wheel, not standing on the ground for want of the wooden rest (âlambana-kâshṭha, ? axle-pin) or some other thing, would wabble (hvalet).' What Sâyaṇa means to say, probably, is that the verb used by the author expresses the effect of the action intended.

[2] Or, sun-beams (rasmi), as Sâyaṇa takes 'marîki'; cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 9, note.

[3] Or, joy;—cp. II, 3, 4. 25, which would seem to be the passage referred to in the present paragraph.

[4] Or, perhaps, 'they enjoy themselves, gambol,' as the St. Petersb. Dict. takes it. Differently, again, Sâyaṇa,—yata ebhiḥ paśubhir mahîyate (he thrives?), ata ete mahaḥ.

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Verily, there are four kinds of fire,—the one laid down, the one taken out, the one taken forward, and the one spread (over the three hearths). Now, that which is laid down is this very (terrestrial) world; that which is taken out is the air-world, that which is taken forward is the sky, and that which is spread is the regions. And that which is laid down is Agni, that which is taken out is Vâyu (the wind), that which is taken forward is Âditya (the sun), and that which is spread is Âandramas (the moon). And that which is laid down is the Gârhapatya, that which is taken out is the Âhavaniya, that which is taken forward is the (fire) they lead forth eastwards from the Âhavanîya; and that which is spread is the one they take northwards for the cooking of the victim, and that (used) for the by-offerings[1]: let him therefore perform the animal sacrifice on a fire taken forward.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Here, now, they say, 'To what deity should this victim belong?'—'It should belong to Pragâpati,' they say; 'for it was Pragâpati who first saw it: therefore it is to Pragâpati that this victim should belong.'

2. And they also say, 'To Sûrya (the sun) that victim should belong;'—whence it is that cattle are tied up when he (the sun) has set: some of them

[1] See III, 8, 3, 18; 8, 4, 9, with note.

they tie up[1] in their respective stables, and others just flock together:—'therefore,' they say, 'it is to Sûrya that this victim should belong.'

3. And they also say, 'To Indra and Agni that victim should belong; for behind these two deities are (all) the other gods;—if one who is afflicted sacrifices, those two (gods) sustain him; and if one sacrifices with (a desire for) abundance[2], they sustain him: therefore it is to Indra and Agni that this victim should belong.'

4. The animal sacrifice, indeed, is the breath, whence, as long as one lives, no other has power over his cattle, for they are tied to him.

5. Pragâpati said to Agni, 'I will perform sacrifice with thee: I will lay hands upon thee (as a victim).'—'Nay,' said he, 'speak unto man!' He said to man, 'I will perform sacrifice with thee: I will lay hands upon thee.'—'Nay,' said he, 'speak unto the cattle!' He said to the cattle, 'I will perform sacrifice with you: I will lay hands upon you.'—'Nay,' said they, 'speak unto the moon!' He said to the moon, 'I will perform sacrifice with thee: I will lay hands upon thee.'—'Nay,' said he, 'speak unto the sun!' He said to the sun, 'I will perform sacrifice with thee: I will lay hands upon thee.' 'So be it!' said he; 'but seeing that those liked it not (to be slaughtered), what, then, shall become mine that now is with these[3]?'—'What-

[1] Or, perhaps, cattle are shut up—some of them they shut up.

[2] ? Thus, apparently, Sâyaṇa:—Anye tv indrâgnyoḥ sarvadevatâ-prâdhânyât svoddesena yâgaṃ kṛitavatâṃ kṛimeṇârtinâśak(atv)ân mahataḥ (? mahaśaḥ) prâpakatvâḳ ḳa pasur aindrâgna iti.

[3] Eteshâṃ svabhûtaṃ vastu kiṃ labdhaṃ bhavet, Sây.

soever thou mayest desire,' he said.—'So be it,' he replied. He laid hands upon him, and this is that animal of his seized (for sacrifice). When slaughtered, it swelled, and by means of those Âprî-hymns, he appeased it[1]; and inasmuch as, by means of these Âprî-hymns, he appeased it, they are called Âprîs. And let him, for that reason, say of the slaughtered animal, 'Let it lie for a moment!' As great as the world is which he gains by performing the horse-sacrifice, so great a world does he gain by this (animal sacrifice).

6. The (wind of the) eastern region breathed over that (dead victim), saying, 'Breathe forth!' and thereby laid the breath (of the mouth) into it; the southern region breathed over it, saying, 'Breathe through!' and thereby laid the through-breathing into it; the western region breathed over it, saying, 'Breathe off!' and thereby laid the off-breathing into it; the northern region breathed over it, saying, 'Breathe up!' and thereby laid the up-breathing (of the nostrils) into it; the upper region breathed over it, saying, 'Breathe all about!' and thereby laid the circulating breathing into it. Therefore, regarding a new-born son, let him say to five Brâhmaṇas, before the navel-string has been cut, 'Breathe over him in this way[2]!' But if he should be unable to obtain them he may even

[1] See III, 8, 1, 2 (with note), where 'â-prî' is apparently taken by the Brâhmaṇa in the sense of 'to fill up.'

[2] The Brâhmans having been placed in the direction of the respective quarters, the father makes one after the other breathe upon the child,—the first from the east and the child's head, the second from the right side, &c., in sunwise succession; the fifth (whose position is not specified) breathing right down upon the child.

himself breathe over him whilst walking round him; and that (son of his) attains the full measure of life[1] and lives to old age.

7. He (the sun) took unto himself Agni's breath; whence that (fire) does not blaze unless fanned or kindled, for its breath has been taken from it; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the breath of life from his spiteful enemy.

8. He took to himself Vâyu's form; whence people hear it (the wind), as it were, shaking, but do not see it, for its form has been taken from it; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the form of his spiteful enemy.

9. He took to himself man's thought; whence people say, 'The divine thought protect thee, man's thought me!' for his thought has been taken from him; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the thought of his spiteful enemy.

10. He took to himself the eye of cattle; whence, even whilst seeing clearly, as it were, they do not know anything, but only know what it is when they smell at it, for their eye has been taken from them; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the eye of his spiteful enemy.

11. He took to himself the moon's shine; whence of these two (sun and moon), though being similar, the moon shines much less, for its shine has been taken from it; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the shine from his spiteful enemy. And inasmuch as he took these away (á-dâ), he (the sun) is called Âditya.

[1] Viz. a hundred years, Sây. See X, 2, 6, 9; part iv, introd., p. xxiii.

FOURTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, once upon a time, a tiger killed the samrâg-cow[1] of those (who were sacrificing) with (the king of the) Kesin as their Grihapati[2]. He (the king[3]) said to his fellow-sacrificers, 'What atonement is there for this?' They replied, 'There is no atonement for this: Khaṇḍika Audbhâri alone knows an atonement for it; but he certainly desires as much as this, and worse than this[4], (to happen) to thee.'

2. He said, 'Charioteer, put to my horses; I shall drive thither: if so be he will tell me, I shall succeed (with my sacrifice); but if he will have me die, I shall be shattered along with the shattered sacrifice.'

3. Having put to the horses, he drove off, and

[1] That is the cow which supplies the milk for the Pravargya; this milk, when heated, being called 'gharma (heat)' or 'samrâg (sovereign king).' See part ii, p. 104, note 3.

[2] Grihapati, or house-lord, master of the house, is the title of the principal sacrificer at a sacrificial session (sattra).—According to Sâyaṇa, the Kesinaḥ were a race of nobles (râgânaḥ), who, on this occasion, were performing a 'sattra,' and are therefore styled 'householders' (grihapati);—kesino nâma râgânaḥ sattrayâgam anutishṭhanto grihapataya âsuḥ. Sâyaṇa thus takes 'kesi-grihapatayaḥ,' not as a bahuvrîhi, but as a tatpurusha (karmadhâraya, 'the Kesin householders') which would, however, require the accent on the second member of the compound.—Though all those taking part in a sacrificial session ought to be Brâhmans, the rule does not seem to have been strictly observed. Cf. part iv, introd., p. xxv; Weber, Ind. Stud. X, pp. 25; 94.

[3] Grihapatishu pradhânabhûtaḥ kesirâgaḥ, Sây.

[4] That is, that even a greater misfortune should happen to thee,—atyantam pâpayuktam govadhâdidoshayuktam ity arthaḥ, Sây.

came thither[1]. When he (Khaṇḍika) saw[2] him, he said, 'Seeing that there are those skins on deer, we break their ribs and cook them: the skin of the black antelope is attached to my neck[3]—is it with thoughts such as these that thou hast dared to drive over to me?'

4. 'Not so,' he replied; 'a tiger has killed my samrâg-cow, reverend sir; if so be thou wilt tell me, I shall succeed; but if thou wilt have me die, I shall be shattered along with the shattered sacrifice.'

5. He said, 'I will take counsel with my counsellors[4].' Having called them to counsel, he said, 'If I tell him, his race, not mine, will prevail here[5],

[1] Sâyaṇa makes Khaṇḍika the subject of this last verb:—sa ha ratham asvaiḥ saṃyogya Khaṇḍikasamîpaṃ yayau; so 'pi Khaṇḍikaḥ kesinam âgagâma, gatvâ ka vivaktaṃ (? viviktaṃ) Kesinaṃ pratikhyâya nirâkṛtya sadayam eva prathamam uvâka. He thus seems not to allow here to 'yâ' the meaning of 'to drive,' but to take 'yayau' in the sense of 'he went thither.' It might, of course, also mean 'he set off.'

[2] Sâyaṇa apparently takes 'prati-khyâ' in the sense of 'to refuse admittance to, to reject,' 'abweisen.'

[3] Sâyaṇa's comment on this passage is as follows:—'O Kesin, the skin of the cow that yields the gharma-milk is worn by thee on the neck: those (i.e. suchlike) skins, indeed, are (i.e. are seen) on deer; and having broken (i.e. torn to pieces) the "pṛishṭi" (i.e. the small-sized does) amongst them we cook them: that black-antelope skin is fastened on my neck.' Khaṇḍika having spoken thus, the king said, 'No, this is not my intention.'

[4] Literally, those that should be consulted, whom further on Sâyaṇa calls 'âptâḥ' or trusty men.

[5] Or, perhaps, the people here (the Kesins) will become his, not mine; cf. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, pp. 32; 141 (two different renderings). Sâyaṇa, on the other hand, takes 'pragâ,' not in the sense either of 'family' or 'people,' but in that of '(sacred) knowledge'—perhaps with reference to the threefold science (the Veda) as the

but I shall gain the (other) world; and if I do not tell him, my own race, not his, will prevail here, but he will gain the (other) world.' They said, 'Do not tell him, reverend sir, for, surely, this (the earth) is the Kshatriya's world[1].' He replied, 'Nay, I will tell him: there are more nights[2] up yonder.'

6. And, accordingly, he then said to him,—'Having offered the Spṛitis[3], he (the Adhvaryu) should say, "Drive up another (cow)!" and that one should be thy samrâg-cow[4].'—'[Having offered with,] "From the moon I take thy mind, hail!—From the sun I take thine eye, hail!—From the wind I take thy breathings, hail!—From the regions I take thine ear, hail!—From the waters I take thy blood, hail!—From the earth

---

thousandfold progeny of Vâk, speech (cf. IV, 5, 8, 4; 6, 7, 3; V, 5, 5, 12)—which Khaṇḍika would thus lose, whilst, by imparting the sacred knowledge, he would gain a seat in heaven.

[1] Sâyaṇa's comment is not very intelligible, the MS. being more than usually corrupt on this last page:—evaṃvidhe virodha udbhâvitê sati te âptâ ûkuḥ, he bhagavo vidyâṃ mâ vokaḥ, kshatriyasya loko na bhavishyatîti; nanu tavânusayaḥ (? appanage, domain, following) sa tasya nâsti; ayaṃ vâva ayam eva khalu kshatriyasya lokas tasmât sauspatrâter (?) evam ukte sati sadvekenarâpatra bhavânti (!) ato vakshyâmy evety uvâka.

[2] That is, days,—by giving up a brief life of earthly power and glory, he gains eternal life.

[3] That is, oblations performed with a view of 'taking hold (spṛi)' of something; cf. Kâty. Śrautas. XXV, 6, 11. 12.

[4] The particle 'iti' here causes some difficulty of construction which would be removed by the latter clause being taken as part of the Adhvaryu's speech; though Kâtyâyana, it is true, does not recognise it as such. Perhaps, however, Khaṇḍika's speech ends here, and what follows up to 'that one shall be thy samrâg-cow' has to be taken as a ritualistic insertion, in which case the final 'iti' would have some such meaning as 'having been told thus.'

I take thy body, hail!" let him then say, "Drive up another (cow)!" and that one shall be thy samrâg-cow!' He then departed from thence[1], and, verily, members of the Keśin race are born here even to this day.

[1] Sâyaṇa takes this thus:—'Thus instructed, Keśin disappeared (or, passed away, vanished, utsasâda vinashṭaḥ) from that region (tato deśât)'—after which there is a lacuna in the MS. Perhaps, however, it is Khaṇḍika, rather than Keśin, to which this refers,—he (and his race) then, indeed, passed away from that region, whilst the Keśins flourished.

TWELFTH KÂṆḌA.

THE SACRIFICIAL SESSION (SATTRA).

First Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, this sacrifice is the same as this blowing (wind): it is that[1] they wish to secure who take the vow of initiation for a year. Of them the Gṛihapati is initiated first[2]; for the Gṛihapati is this (terrestrial) world, and upon this world everything here is established; and so, indeed, are his fellow-sacrificers established in the Gṛihapati: it is thus after they have become established on a firm foundation that they are initiated.

2. He (the Adhvaryu) then initiates the Brahman (priest). Now the Brahman is the moon, and the moon is Soma, and plants belong to Soma[3]: he thus connects the plants with this (terrestrial) world. Therefore no other person should be initiated between those two; for, assuredly, were any one else to be initiated between those two, he would separate (tear up) the plants from this (terrestrial) world, and they would be liable to dry up: let therefore no other person be initiated between those two.

3. He then initiates the Udgâtṛi. Now, the Udgâtṛi is the thunder-cloud, and from the thunder-cloud rain is produced: he thus connects the rain

[1] Viz. the wind as the vital air pervading man; see paragraph 11.

[2] He, as well as the first three priests, is initiated by the Adhvaryu.

[3] Soma is the king of plants, whence these are called 'somarâgñî,' II, 3, 4, 4; V, 4, 2, 3; *Ṛig*-veda S. X, 97, 8.

with the plants. Therefore no other person should be initiated between those two; for, assuredly, were any one else to be initiated between those two, he would separate the rain from the plants, and (the cloud) would be liable to lack rain: let therefore no other person be initiated between those two.

4. He then initiates the Hotṛi. Now, the Hotṛi[1] is Agni in respect of the deity, and speech in respect of the body; and rain is food: he thus connects both Agni (fire) and speech with food. Therefore no other person should be initiated between those two; for, assuredly, were any one else to be initiated between those two, he would separate fire and speech from food, and (people) would be liable to starve: let therefore no other person be initiated between those two.

5. The Pratiprasthâtṛi then initiates the Adhvaryu. Now, the Adhvaryu is the mind[2], and the Hotṛi is speech: he thus connects mind and speech with one another. Therefore no other person should be initiated between those two; for, assuredly, were any one else to be initiated between those two, he would separate mind and speech, and (people) would be liable to perish: let therefore no other person be initiated between those two.

6. He then initiates the Brâhmaṇâkhaṃsin for the Brahman, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Prastotṛi for the Udgâtṛi, for under

[1] Viz. as the offering-priest κατ' ἐξοχήν, he who, by the recitation of his 'invitatory' and 'offering' verses, like Agni, draws the gods to the offering, and causes them to graciously accept it.

[2] The Adhvaryu is the head of the sacrifice (IV, 1, 5, 16); and, as the mind, he marches in front. See also III, 2, 4, 11. 'Mind goes before Speech (prompting her), "Speak thus! say not this!"'

him the former is. He then initiates the Maitrâ-varuṇa for the Hotṛi, for under him the former is. These four the Pratiprasthâtṛi initiates.

7. The Neshṭṛi then initiates the Pratiprasthâtṛi for the Adhvaryu, for under him the former is. It is after the fitting out[1] of these nine that the others are fitted out; for there are nine vital airs: he thus lays the vital airs into them; and so they attain the full term of life, and so they do not depart this world before their (full) term of life.

8. He then initiates the Potṛi for the Brahman, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Pratihartṛi for the Udgâtṛi, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Akhâvâka for the Hotṛi, for under him the former is. These four the Neshṭṛi initiates.

9. The Unnetṛi then initiates the Neshṭṛi for the Adhvaryu, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Âgnidhra for the Brahman, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Subrahmaṇyâ for the Udgâtṛi, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Grâvastut for the Hotṛi, for under him the former is. These four the Unnetṛi initiates.

10. Either a Snâtaka[2], or a Brahmakârin, or some one else who is not initiated, then initiates the Unnetṛi; for they say, 'No pure one should purify.' This is the regular order of initiation[3];

[1] Or, after getting them ready, or prepared (klipti).

[2] That is, one who has completed his course of theological study (brahmakarya), and has taken the bath (snâta) marking the end of that course, and his return to the bosom of his family. See above, pp. 48–50 (esp. XI, 3, 3, 7).

[3] Literally, the initiation in the regular succession.

and, assuredly, only when, knowing this[1], they become initiated, they make ready the sacrifice even whilst being initiated, and along with the getting ready of the sacrifice security of property accrues to the performers of the sacrificial session (Sattra); and, along with the accruing of security of property to the performers of the session, security of property also accrues to that district in which they perform the sacrifice.

11. Now, the Unnetṛi is initiated last of these, and when they come out from the purificatory bath it is he that comes out first; for the Unnetṛi is the vital air: he thus lays vital air into them on both sides; and so they attain the full term of life, and so they do not depart this world before their (full) term of life. This is the regular order of initiation: and, assuredly, he should become initiated only where such as know this become initiated.

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, from out of faith the gods fashioned the initiation, from out of Aditi the opening (sacrifice[2]), from out of Soma the buying (of Soma-plants), from out of Vishṇu the guest-offering, from out of the sun the Pravargya, from out of the Svadhâ (the food of departed ancestors) the Upa-

[1] That is to say, when they become initiated in accordance with this knowledge.

[2] For the Prâyaṇîyeshṭi of the ordinary Soma-sacrifice, see part ii, p. 47 seqq. For the subsequent ceremonies, cf. the table of contents of the same part. They are here alluded to for the reason that they are essential parts of every day's performance during the year's session.

sads, from out of Agni and Soma the day of fasting, and from out of this world the opening Atirâtra[1].

2. From out of the year (they fashioned) the *K*aturvi*m*sa day, from out of the priesthood the Abhiplava (sha*d*aha), from out of the nobility the P*r*ish*th*ya (sha*d*aha)[2], from out of Agni the Abhigit, from out of the waters the Svarasâman days, from out of the sun the Vishuvat,—the Svarasâman days have been told;—from out of Indra the Visvagit,—the P*r*ish*th*ya and Abhiplava have been told;—from out of Mitra and Varu*n*a the Go and

[1] The Prâya*n*îya Atirâtra is the first day of the sacrificial session called Gavâm ayanam, the performance of which lasts a year, and includes the following sacrificial periods and days (cf. part ii, p. 427):—

Prâya*n*îya Atirâtra, or opening day.

*K*aturvi*m*sa day, an Ukthya, all the stotras of which are in the *k*aturvi*m*sa-stoma.

5 months, each consisting of 4 Abhiplava sha*d*ahas, and 1 P*r*ish*th*ya sha*d*aha (= 30 days).

3 Abhiplavas and 1 P*r*ish*th*ya.
Abhigit day (performed with all the stomas).
3 Svarasâman days.
} 28 days which, with the two opening days, complete the sixth month.

Vishuvat, or Divâkîrtya day (Ekavi*m*sa-stoma).

3 Svarasâman days.
Visvagit day (performed with all the p*r*ish*th*as).
1 P*r*ish*th*ya and 3 Abhiplavas.
} 28 days which, with the two concluding days, complete the seventh month.

4 months, each consisting of 1 P*r*ish*th*ya sha*d*aha and four Abhiplava sha*d*ahas.

3 Abhiplava sha*d*ahas (18 days).
1 Gosh*t*oma (Agnish*t*oma).
1 Âyush*t*oma (Ukthya).
1 Da*s*arâtra (10 days).
} 30 days (twelfth month).

Mahâvrata day (Agnish*t*oma).

Udayanîya Atirâtra, or concluding day.

[2] For the difference between these two sacrificial periods of six days, see part iii, introd., p. xxi, note 2.

Âyus[1], from out of the Viśve Devâḥ the Daśarâtra[2], from out of the regions the Pṛiṣhṭhyaṣhaḍaha of the Daśarâtra, from out of these worlds the Khandoma days.

3. From out of the year (they fashioned) the tenth day, from out of Pragâpati the Mahâvrata, and from out of the world of heaven the Udayanîya Atirâtra:—such was the birth of the Year; and, verily, whosoever thus knows that birth of the Year becomes more (and more) glorious to (the end of) it, he becomes possessed of a (new) body, he becomes the Year, and, as the Year[3], he goes to the gods.

Third Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now, when they are initiated they indeed offer sacrifice to the deities Agni and Vishṇu: they become the deities Agni and Vishṇu, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Agni and Vishṇu.

2. And when they perform the opening sacrifice they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Aditi: they become the deity Aditi, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Aditi.

3. And when they proceed with the buying (of Soma-plants) they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Soma: they become the deity Soma, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Soma.

[1] For the differences between the three modes of chanting the Stotras of the Agniṣhṭoma and Ukthya Soma-sacrifices—viz. Gyotiṣhṭoma, Goṣhṭoma, Âyuṣhṭoma—see part iv, p. 287, note 2.

[2] The Daśarâtra, or central ten days of the Dvâdaśâha (twelve days' period), consists of a Pṛiṣhṭhya shaḍaha, three Khandoma days (of the Ukthya order), and a final (tenth) Atyagniṣhṭoma day called Avivâkya.

[3] For the Sacrificer as father Time, see part iv, introd., p. xxii.

4. And when they perform the guest-offering they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Vish*ṇ*u: they become the deity Vish*ṇ*u, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Vish*ṇ*u.

5. And when they perform the Pravargya-offering[1] they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Âditya: they become the deity Âditya, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Âditya (the sun).

6. And when they enter upon the Upasads they indeed offer sacrifice to those very deities[2] who (receive oblations) at the Upasads: they become those deities, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with those deities.

7. And when they perform the animal sacrifice to Agni and Soma[3] they indeed offer sacrifice to the deities Agni and Soma: they become the deities Agni and Soma, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Agni and Soma.

8. And when they perform the opening Atirâtra (of the sacrificial session) they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, the Day and Night[4]: they become those deities, the Day and Night, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Day and Night.

9. And when they enter upon the *K*aturvi*ṃ*sa day they indeed offer sacrifice to that deity, the Year[5]: they become that deity, the Year, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Year.

---

[1] See XIV, 1–3; and part ii, p. 104, note 3.

[2] Viz. Agni, Soma, and Vish*ṇ*u; cf. part ii, p. 105, note 1.

[3] See part ii, p. 162 seqq.

[4] Viz. inasmuch as the Atirâtra includes both a day and a night performance.

[5] Viz. both because this is the real opening day of the year's session, and because Pragâpati (as the Purusha and the Year) is '*k*aturvi*ṃ*sa' or 'twenty-four-fold' (e.g. VI, 2, 1, 23).

10. And when they enter upon the Abhiplava-shaḍaha they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, the Half-months and Months: they become those deities, the Half-months and Months, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Half-months and Months.

11. And when they enter upon the Pṛishṭhya-shaḍaha they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, the Seasons: they become those deities, the Seasons, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Seasons.

12. And when they enter upon the Abhigit (day) they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Agni: they become the deity Agni, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Agni.

13. And when they enter upon the Svarasâman (days) they indeed offer sacrifice to that deity, the Waters: they become that deity, the Waters, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Waters.

14. And when they enter upon the Vishuvat (day) they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Âditya: they become the deity Âditya, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Âditya. The Svarasâmans have been told.

15. And when they enter upon the Visvagit (day) they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Indra: they become the deity Indra, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Indra. The Pṛishṭhya and Abhiplava (shaḍahas) have been told.

16. And when they enter upon (the performance of) the Go and Âyus (stoma)[1] they indeed offer sacrifice to the deities Mitra and Varuṇa: they

[1] See p. 140, note 1.

become the deities Mitra and Varuṇa, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Mitra and Varuṇa.

17. And when they enter upon the Daśarâtra they indeed offer sacrifice to that deity the Viśve Devâḥ: they become that deity, the Viśve Devâḥ, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Viśve Devâḥ.

18. And when they enter upon the Pṛishṭhyashaḍaha of the Daśarâtra they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, the Regions: they become those deities, the Regions, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Regions.

19. And when they enter upon the Khaṇḍomas they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, these Worlds: they become those deities, these Worlds, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with these Worlds.

20. And when they enter upon the tenth day (of the Daśarâtra) they indeed offer sacrifice to that deity, the Year: they become that deity, the Year, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Year.

21. And when they enter upon the Mahâvrata they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Pragâpati: they become the deity Pragâpati, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Pragâpati.

22. And when they enter upon the concluding Atirâtra (of the sacrificial session), then, indeed, having gained the Year, they establish themselves in the world of heaven. And were any one to ask them, 'To what deity are ye offering sacrifice this day? what deity are ye? with what deity do ye dwell?' let them name of those (deities) the one to whom they may be nearest (in the performance of the Sattra). And,

verily, such (sacrificers) are seated (sad) in the good[1] (place), for they are for ever seated among the good deities; and the others are mere partakers in the sacrificial session[2]; and if any one were, during a sacrificial session, to speak evil of such initiates as know this, let them say to him, 'We cut thee off from those deities;' and he becomes the worse, and they themselves become the better for it.

23. That same year contains three great rites (mahâvrata):—the great rite on the *K*aturvi*ṃ*sa day, the great rite on the Vishuvat day, and the great rite[3] on the Mahâvrata day itself. Now, those of old used, indeed, to enter upon (perform) that (year's session) with three great rites, and they became glorious, truth-speaking, and faithful to their vow; but if nowadays any (sattrins) were to perform it on this wise, they assuredly would crumble away even as a jar of unbaked clay would crumble away if water were poured into it. They (who do so) perform too much: that (object) of theirs is gained by truth, by toil, by fervid devotion, by faith, by sacrifice, and by oblations.

Fourth Brâhmaṇa.

1. The Year, indeed, is Man;—the opening (prâya*ṇ*îya) Atirâtra is his feet, for by means of their

[1] Or, in the true, abiding (place)—sati.

[2] That is, those who perform a sacrificial session (sattra) without their possessing the esoteric knowledge regarding the several ceremonies, set forth in the preceding paragraphs, are mere 'sattra-sada*ḥ*' (i.e. merely 'sitting through the sacrificial session') whilst those possessing that knowledge are 'sati sada*ḥ*.'

[3] That is, more especially, the chanting of the Mahâvrata-sâman, for which see part iv, p. 282, note 5.

feet (men) go forward (prayanti): that part of them which is white is of the form of the day, and that which is black is (of the form) of the night; the nails are of the form of herbs and trees. The Âturvi*ṃ*sa day is the thighs, the Abhiplava the breast, and the P*r*ish*th*ya the back.

2. The Abhigit is this right arm, the Svarasâman days these three (openings of the) vital airs on the right side [1], the Vishuvat the head, and the (second period of) Svarasâman days these three vital airs on the left side.

3. The Vis*v*agit is this left arm,—the P*r*ish*th*ya and Abhiplava have been told,—the Go and Âyus those downward vital airs; the Dasarâtra the limbs, the Mahâvrata the mouth; and the concluding (udayanîya) Atirâtra is the hands, for by means of the hands (men) move (reach) upwards (udyanti): that part of them which is white is of the form of the day, and that which is black is of that of the night; and the nails are of the form of the stars. Thus that year is established in respect of the body; and, verily, whosoever thus knows that year to be established in respect of the body, establishes himself by means of offspring and cattle in this, and by immortality in the other, world.

SECOND ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Verily, those who become initiated for (a sacrificial session of) a year cross an ocean: the Prâya*ṇ*iya Atirâtra is a flight of steps [2], for it is by means of a flight of steps that one enters (the water); and

[1] Viz. the right eye, ear, and nostril.

[2] Or, a descent, a passage leading down to a bathing-place.

when they enter on the Prâyaṇîya Atirâtra it is just as if they were entering the ocean by a flight of steps.

2. The Ṣaturvi*m*śa day is (in the form of) a foothold, a shallow place [1], such a one as (where the water reaches) either to the arm-pits or to the neck, whence, having rested, they enter [2] (the deep water). The Abhiplava is (a spot) suitable for swimming; and so is the Pṛish*th*ya suitable for swimming.

3. The Abhigit is a foothold, a shallow place, such a one as (where the water reaches) either to the arm-pits, or to the neck, whence, having rested, they come out (of the water). The first Svarasâman is thigh-deep, the second knee-deep, the third knuckle-deep. The Vishuvat is a foothold (in the form of) an island. The first (Ṣvarasâman) with reversed Sâmans is knuckle-deep, the second knee-deep, and the third thigh-deep.

4. The Viśvagit is a foothold, a shallow place, such a one as (where the water reaches) either to the arm-pits or to the neck, whence, having rested, he enters (the deep water again). The Pṛish*th*ya is suitable for swimming, and so is the Abhiplava, and so are the Go and Âyus, and so is the Daśarâtra.

5. The Mahâvrata is a foothold, a shallow place, such a one as (where the water reaches) either to the arm-pits or to the neck, whence, having rested,

---

[1] Gâdham eva pratish*th*â,—it may be remarked that this is just the form in which an appositional compound is analyzed by native grammarians, as if it were 'gâdha-pratish*th*â,' a foothold which is just a ford, a ford-foothold, as indeed it is written in paragraph 9. Cf. p. 66, note 4.

[2] Or, bathe,—'prasnâti,' indeed, would really seem to mean here 'he swims forward.'

they step out (of the water). The Udayanîya (concluding) Atirâtra is a flight of steps, for it is by a flight of steps that people step out (of the water): thus, when they perform the Udayanîya Atirâtra, it is just as if, having entered the sea by a flight of steps, they were to step out of it by a flight of steps.

6. Regarding this they say, 'How many Atirâtras are there in the year, how many Agnish*ṭ*omas, how many Ukthyas, how many Sho*ḍ*asins, how many Sha*ḍ*ahas?'—Two Atirâtras, a hundred and six Agnish*ṭ*omas, and two hundred and forty Ukthyas,—thus in the case of those who perform the Svarasâmans as Ukthyas.

7. But in the case of those who perform them as Agnish*ṭ*omas, a hundred and twelve Agnish*ṭ*omas, two hundred and thirty-four Ukthyas, twelve Sho*ḍ*asins, and sixty Sha*ḍ*ahas. This, then, is how the year is obtained.

8. There are twelve months in the year, and their vital energy and power are the P*ṛ*sh*ṭh*as; and by performing the P*ṛ*sh*ṭh*as month by month, they obtain, in monthly portions[1], that vital energy of the year.—'And how do they obtain the vital energy of the thirteenth (intercalary) month?' Well, subsequent to the Vishuvat day they perform the Visvagit Agnish*ṭ*oma with all the P*ṛ*sh*ṭh*as[2], and thus indeed they obtain the vital energy of the thirteenth month.

9. Now, concerning this, Śvetaketu Âru*ṇ*eya,

[1] Lit., by the month, i.e. by monthly instalments; cf. Tâ*ṇḍ*ya-Br. IV, 2, 9.

[2] On Soma-days with all the (six) P*ṛ*sh*ṭh*a-sâmans, see part iii, introd., p. xxi.

knowing this, once said, 'I am now going to get myself initiated for one year.' His father, looking at him, said, 'Knowest thou, long-lived one, the fording-footholds of the year?'—'I know them,' he replied, for, indeed, he said this as one knowing it.

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Here, now, they say, 'Whereby are the Abhiplavas possessed of light (*gyotis*) on both sides[1],

[1] The difference between the Abhiplava-sha*d*aha and the P*r*ish*th*ya-sha*d*aha was thus explained in part iii, introd., p. xxi, note 2:—'In both kinds of sha*d*aha, the P*r*ish*th*a-stotras (at the Mâdhyandina-savana) are performed in the ordinary way—viz. either in the Agnish*t*oma or the Ukthya way (see ib., p. xvi, note 2, as the correct reference is);—but whilst, in the Abhiplava-sha*d*aha, the Rathantara and B*r*ihat-sâmans are used for the Hotri's P*r*ish*th*a-stotra on alternate days, the P*r*ish*th*ya-sha*d*aha requires a different P*r*ish*th*a-sâman on each of the six days. The two kinds of sha*d*ahas also differ entirely in regard to the sequence of Stomas prescribed for the performance of the Stotras.' It is this difference in the 'sequence of Stomas' which is referred to in our passage. On the six days of the Abhiplava-sha*d*aha, the sequence of Stomas (the first four of which, viz. Trivri*t*, Pañkada*s*a, Saptada*s*a, and Ekavi*m*sa, are only used) varies from day to day in this way: 1. *G*yotish*t*oma; 2. Gosh*t*oma; 3. Âyush*t*oma; 4. Gosh*t*oma; 5. Âyush*t*oma; 6. *G*yotish*t*oma (for the difference between these, see part iv, p. 287, note 2). It will thus be seen that the Abhiplava has the '*gyotih* (stoma)' on both sides, on the first and the last days. For the Hotri's P*r*ish*th*a-stotra on these successive days the Rathantara-sâman and B*r*ihat-sâman are used; and, as the Gosh*t*oma and Âyush*t*oma are Ukthya-days, the usual practice which requires the B*r*ihat-sâman for such days, is not followed; just as the final *G*yotish*t*oma in this case requires the B*r*ihat-sâman. —As regards the P*r*ish*th*ya-sha*d*aha, each successive day requires for its stotras a single Stoma, in the ascending order: Trivri*t*, Pañkada*s*a, Saptada*s*a, Ekavi*m*sa, Tri*n*ava, Trayastri*m*sa; —a different P*r*ish*th*a-sâman being used for the Hotri's P*r*ish*th*a-

and the Pṛishṭhya of light on one side only?' Well, the Abhiplavas are these worlds, and these worlds are indeed possessed of light on both sides—through the fire on this side, and through the sun on yonder side; and the Pṛishṭhya is the seasons, and the seasons are indeed possessed of light on one side only: he who burns yonder (the sun) is their light.

2. Verily, those two wheels of the gods, established on the Pṛishṭhya [1], revolve crushing [2] the Sacrificer's evil; and, indeed, if during a sacrificial session any one speaks evil of such initiates as know this, those two wheels of the gods cut off his head: the (chariot-) seat is the Daśarâtra, and the two wheels are the Pṛishṭhya and Abhiplava.

3. Concerning this they say, 'Seeing that the two wheels (of a cart) are alike, and those stomas unlike, how are those stomas one after another performed alike for him?' Let him reply, 'Thereby, that there are six of the one, and six of the other.'

4. 'Let him make the Pṛishṭhya and Abhiplava two warps [3],' said Paiṅgya; 'let him make their

stotra on each of the six days. Here only the first day has the same Stoma at the beginning, as the Gyotishṭoma,—whence it has 'gyotis' on one side only.

[1] This 'pṛishṭhyapratishṭhite' looks rather strange,—perhaps the correct reading is 'pṛishṭhapratishṭhite,' 'established on the pṛishṭha-sâmans'; unless, indeed, 'pratishṭhita' has to be understood here to refer to the Abhiplava, as the established, or ordinary, Shaḍaha, which doubtless would make the best sense,—'those two wheels of the gods, the Pṛishṭhya and the established (Abhiplava-) shaḍaha.'

[2] Or, as we would rather say, whilst revolving, crush the Sacrificer's evil.

[3] ? Or, possibly, two kinds of threads, those of the warp and the woof (or weft), which are combined into one web. The St. Petersh.

Stotras and Śastras run together:' inasmuch as he makes them run together, these (channels of the) vital airs, though separate from one another, run together, with one and the same aim[1], into a common web; but were he not to make them run together, the Sacrificer would be liable to perish; and liable to perish, indeed, is one who is either blind or deaf.

5. The Agnish*ṭ*omas amount to nine in a month[2]; —now, there are nine vital airs: it is the vital airs he thus lays into them (the Sacrificers); and thus they attain the full term of life, and so, indeed, they do not depart this world before the (full) term of life.

6. And the Ukthyas (amount) to twenty-one;—now, there are twelve months in the year, five seasons, and three worlds, that makes twenty, and he who burns yonder (the sun) is the twenty-first[3],

---

Dict., on the other hand, takes 'tantra' here in the sense of 'model form, type,'—and, indeed, the one meaning constantly passes into the other. The MS. of the comm. is too corrupt to be of much use.

[1] This is a doubtful rendering of 'ekoti.' Though, doubtless, the juxtaposition of 'ekoti' and 'samânam ûtim' cannot be accidental, the word 'ûti' may probably have a different derivation and meaning in the two occurrences. Cf. Kern, Saddharmapu*ṇḍ*arîka, introd., p. xvii; Journ. of the Pâli Text Society, 1885, pp. 32–38.

[2] During five complete months of the first half, and four complete months of the second half, of the year four Abhiplava-sha*ḍ*ahas and one Pṛ*i*sh*ṭh*ya-sha*ḍ*aha are performed. Now, the six days of the Abhiplava-sha*ḍ*aha consist of 1. Agnish*ṭ*oma; 2–5. Ukthyas; 6. Agnish*ṭ*oma; and those of the Pṛ*i*sh*ṭh*ya-sha*ḍ*aha of 1. Agnish*ṭ*oma; 2. 3. Ukthya; 4. Sho*ḍ*asin; 5. 6. Ukthya. For the four Abhiplavas and the one Pṛ*i*sh*ṭh*ya of each month this, accordingly, gives nine Agnish*ṭ*omas, twenty Ukthyas, and one Sho*ḍ*asin (counted, however, as an Ukthya in paragraphs 6 and 7).

[3] The reason why the Sun is so often referred to as the twenty-first or twenty-one-fold, is not easy to discover. Possibly it may be from the fact that the Vishuvat day, or central day of the great session and the longest day of the year, is identified with the Sun,

—that consummation (he attains), and by that consummation he ascends month by month to the world of heaven, and gains, in monthly portions, the world of heaven, and the twenty-one-fold Stoma, and the B*ri*hatî metre [1].

7. The Agnish*t*omas amount to thirty-four in a month [2]—for the obtainment of all the gods; for there are thirty-three gods, and Praǵâpati is the thirty-fourth. And there is one Ukthya with the Sho*d*a*s*in (stotra); for the Ukthya means food, and the Sho*d*a*s*in vital strength.

8. By means of that food and vital strength the gods obtained all their desires, and secured all their desires; and in like manner does this (Sacrificer), by means of that food and vital strength, obtain all his desires, and secure all his desires: with a view to that object he who is initiated for (a sacrificial session of) a year should therefore perform the P*ri*sh*th*ya and Abhiplava (-sha*d*ahas).

---

and that this day is flanked on both sides by ten special days which together with the central day, form a special group of twenty-one days. But, on the other hand, it may be exactly the other way, viz. that this central group was made one of twenty-one days because of the already recognised epithet of Âditya as the 'ekavi*m*sa.' Cf. A. Hillebrandt, Die Sonnwendfeste in Alt-Indien, p. 6 seq.

[1] Here the twenty-one Ukthyas are symbolically identified with the twenty-one-versed hymn-form; and the nine Agnish*t*omas (of paragraph 5) with the B*ri*hatî metre which consists of four pâdas of nine syllables each.

[2] This number is evidently arrived at by counting the twenty Ukthyas as Agnish*t*omas (hence 9 + 20), and adding thereto five more Agnish*t*omas obtained by the calculation referred to in paragraph 12 (see note thereon), according to which the characteristic Stotras and Śastras of the Ukthya make one additional Agnish*t*oma in every four Ukthyas. The Sho*d*a*s*in, thus, is not taken into account in this calculation.

9. Now, the Âdityas and the Aṅgiras, both of them sprung from Pragâpati, were contending together saying, 'We shall be the first to reach heaven,—we shall be the first!'

10. By means of four Stomas, four Pṛish*th*as [1], and light (simple) hymn-tunes, the Âdityas sailed across to the heavenly world; and inasmuch as they sailed (abhi-plu) to it, they (these six-days' periods) are called Abhiplava.

11. By means of all the Stomas, all the Pṛish*th*as [2], and heavy (complicated) hymn-tunes, the Aṅgiras, coming after (the gods), as it were [3], touched (reached) the heavenly world; and inasmuch as they touched (spṛis) it, it (this six-days' period) is called Pṛish*th*ya [4].

12. It is a six-days' Abhiplava, because it consists of six days; or a five-days' Abhiplava, because it consists of five days, for the last day is the same as the first; or a four-days' Abhiplava, for there are four Stomas (used) in it—the thrice-threefold (trivṛit), the fifteen-versed, the seventeen-versed, and the twenty-one-versed one; or a three-days' Abhiplava, for it is of three orders—*G*yotis, Go, and

[1] Besides the Rathantara and Bṛihat, used on alternate days for the Hotṛi's Pṛish*th*a-stotra at the Abhiplava, the Vâmadevya and Kâleya-sâmans, used on each day for the Maitrâvaruṇa's and Akkhâvâka's Pṛish*th*a-stotras, seem to be counted here as making up the four Pṛish*th*a-sâmans of the Abhiplava-shaḍaha. For the four Stomas, see p. 148, note.

[2] See ib., and part iii, introd., p. xxi.

[3] The 'iva' would seem here (as, indeed, pretty frequently) to have the meaning of 'eva,' 'indeed,' thus—coming considerably after (the gods). Cf. Ait.-Brâhm. IV, 17, 5, where the Aṅgiras are said to have reached heaven sixty years after the Âdityas.

[4] This etymology is of course not meant to be taken seriously, the word 'pṛish*th*ya' being derived from 'pṛish*th*a,' 'back' (XII, 1, 4, 1).

Âyus[1]; or a two-days' Abhiplava, for there are two Sâmans (used) in it—the Bṛ*h*at and the Rathantara[2]; or a one-day's Abhiplava, for it is performed with the Stomas of a one-day's (Soma-sacrifice[3]). Twelve Stotras and twelve Śastras of the four Ukthyas are in excess[4]—they make a seventh Agnish*ṭ*oma, and thus the Agnish*ṭ*omas amount to seven.

13. Now, Proti Kauśâmbeya[5] Kausurubindi dwelt with Uddâlaka Âruṇi as a religious student. The teacher asked him, 'My son, how many days did thy father[6] consider that there are in the year?'

14. 'Ten,' he replied.—'Ten, indeed,' he said; 'for the Virâg consists of ten syllables, and the sacrifice is of Virâg nature;—

15. But how many are there really?'—'Nine,' he replied.—'Nine, indeed,' he said; 'for there are nine vital airs, and by means of the vital airs the sacrifice is performed;—

---

[1] See p. 148, note; part iv, p. 287, note 2.

[2] These two principal Pṛish*ṭ*ha-sâmans are used on alternate days of the Abhiplava-sha*ḍ*aha for the first (or Hotṛi's) Pṛish*ṭ*ha-stotra at the midday-service.

[3] Viz. with the four Stomas used at the ordinary Agnish*ṭ*oma-sacrifice.

[4] Whilst the Agnish*ṭ*oma includes twelve Stotras and twelve Śastras, the Ukthya-sacrifice has three additional (Uktha-) Stotras and Śastras, which in the four Ukthya days of the Abhiplava-sha*ḍ*aha make up another twelve chants and twelve recitations.

[5] That is, either a descendant of Kuśâmba; or, as Harisvâmin takes it, a native of the city Kauśâmbî; cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 193.—Prakṛish*ṭ*abhûpati-kośâmbînivâsi-kusurabindasyâpatyam; MS. comm.

[6] Harisvâmin applies to the father the epithet 'mahâyâgñika,' or performer of the great sacrifices.

16. But how many are there really?'—'Eight,' he replied.—'Eight, indeed,' he said; 'for the Gâyatrî consists of eight syllables, and the sacrifice is of Gâyatrî nature;—

17. But how many are there really?'—'Seven,' he replied.—'Seven, indeed,' he said; 'for there are seven metres (successively) increasing by four (syllables), and by means of the metres the sacrifice is performed;—

18. But how many are there really?'—'Six,' he replied.—'Six, indeed,' he said; 'six seasons make up a year, and the sacrifice is the year; and one and the same day are those two, the opening and concluding (Atirâtra [1]);—

19. But how many are there really?'—'Five,' he replied.—'Five, indeed,' he said; 'the sacrifice is fivefold; the sacrificial animal is fivefold [2]; there are five seasons in the year, and the sacrifice is the year;

[1] In the scheme of the Gavâm ayanam, given above (p. 139, note 1), there is one day in excess of the year, viz. either the central Vishuvat day (XII, 2, 3, 6) or the final Atirâtra; but by making this latter day identical with the opening Atirâtra, Uddâlaka would seem to bring the whole within the compass of one year of six seasons. In the next paragraph, on the other hand, the same result is obtained by the identification of the second and the last but one days of the session. Another, and perhaps more probable, explanation of Uddâlaka's calculation would, however, be this. In the scheme of the sacrificial session there occur, as not included in the different sacrificial groups or periods (the shaḍahas, svarasâmans, &c.), seven special days—the opening and final Atirâtras, the Katurvimśa and Mahâvrata days, and the Abhigit, Vishuvat, and Viśvagit days. These seven days he here successively reduces to six and five days. The further reduction of this number by the identification of the Pṛishṭhya and Abhiplava, as well as of the Svarasâman days, requires no explanation. Cf., however, the Addenda.

[2] For the 'pâṅkta' nature of the sacrifice, see III, 1, 4, 19. 20; XIII, 2, 5, 1, for the five kinds of sacrificial animals, VI, 1, 2, 32 seqq.

and one and the same day are those two, the *K*aturvi*ṃ*sa and the Mahâvrata ;—

20. But how many are there really ?'—'Four,' he replied.—'Four, indeed,' he said ; 'animals are four-footed, and animals constitute a sacrifice ; and one and the same day are those two, the P*r*ish*th*ya and Abhiplava ;—

21. But how many are there really ?'—'Three,' he replied.—'Three, indeed,' he said ; 'there are three metres, three worlds ; and the (Soma-) sacrifice consists of three services ; and one and the same day are those two, the Abhigit and Visvagit ;—

22. But how many are there really ?'—'Two,' he replied.—'Two, indeed,' he said ; 'for man is two-footed, and the sacrifice is man ; and one and the same day are the Svarasâmans ;—

23. But how many are there really ?'—'One,' he replied.—'A day, indeed,' he said ; 'the whole year is just that day after day :'—this is the mystic import of the year ; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this mystic import[1] of the year grows more (and more) glorious up to (the end of) it ; he becomes possessed of a (new) body, he becomes the year, and in the shape of the year he joins the gods.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. That year, doubtless, amounts to a B*r*ihatî,—there are two sha*d*ahas (12) of winning days[2] ; the

[1] Prof. Oldenberg (Zeitschr. d. Deutschen Morg. Ges., vol. 50, p. 460) takes 'upanishad' in the sense of 'worship'—'this is the worship to be offered to the year.' Perhaps 'meditation' might be the more appropriate rendering :—'this is the form in which the year should be meditated upon.' Cf. X, 4, 5, 1 ; 5, 1, 1.

[2] The term 'ârkshyat' is apparently a future participle of 'â-arg,'

two, Pṛishṭhya and Abhiplava (12); the Go and Âyus, and the Daśarâtra (ten days)—that makes thirty-six; for the Bṛihatî consists of thirty-six syllables, and by means of the Bṛihatî the gods strove to reach heaven, and by the Bṛihatî they did gain heaven; and in like manner does this one, by means of the Bṛihatî, now strive to reach heaven, and thereby gain heaven; he who knows this secures for himself whatever wish there is in the Bṛihatî.

2. And as to the Ḳaturvimśa day, it is the same as either the seventh or the ninth (day) of the Daśarâtra[1]. From out of the Abhiplava the Pṛishṭhya is formed, from the Pṛishṭhya the Abhigit,

hence 'calculated to procure, or win.' The Ait.-Br. has 'âkshyat' instead. The two Shaḍahas (or periods of six days), here counted as such days, would seem to include the six Svarasâman days, and the special named days scattered over the session (the opening and concluding Atirâtra being apparently counted as one).

[1] Ḳaturvimśa day is one in which the Ḳaturvimśa-stoma, or twenty-four-fold hymn-form, is exclusively used in the chanting of the Stotras. The one usually denoted by that term is the second day of the Gavâm ayanam. In the Daśarâtra, or ten-days' period, there is, however, likewise a day in which the Ḳaturvimśa-stoma is used exclusively. That period consists of a Pṛishṭhya-shaḍaha (six days), three Ḳhandoma days, and a final Atyagnishṭoma, called Avivâkya. The three Ḳhandoma days (i.e. days fashioned after metres) have assigned to them as their exclusive Stomas the twenty-four-fold, the forty-four-fold, and the forty-eight-fold hymn-forms respectively; the first of them, or the seventh day of the Daśarâtra, being thus a Ḳaturvimśa day. But in the second half of the year's session the regular order of the days of the minor sacrificial periods —the Shaḍahas and Svarasâmans—is reversed, the last day being performed first; and according to this paragraph the same is optionally to be the case in regard to the three Ḳhandoma days, the Ḳaturvimśa day being taken either first or last (see, however, parag. 9). Cf. also Haug, Ait.-Br., Transl., p. 347, note (where, in l. 3, read Daśarâtra instead of Dvâdaśâha).

from the Abhigit the Svarasâmans, from the Svarasâmans the Vishuvat, from the Vishuvat the Svarasâmans, from the Svarasâmans the Visvagit, from the Visvagit the Prishṭhya [1], from the Prishṭhya the Abhiplava, from the Abhiplava the Go and Âyus, and from the Go and Âyus the Dasarâtra.

3. And that Mahâvrata is a winning-day, for its Stoma is the Pañkaviṃsa, and a metre does not collapse from (excess or deficiency of) a syllable—neither from one nor from two (syllables); neither does a Stoma by (an excess of) one hymn-verse [2].

4. Prior to the Vishuvat they perform first the Abhiplava, and afterwards the Prishṭhya, for the Abhiplava represents the sons, and the Prishṭhya the father; whence in early life the sons subsist on (the resources of) their father. Subsequent to the Vishuvat they perform first the Prishṭhya, and afterwards the Abhiplava; whence in later life the father subsists on (the resources of) his sons; and, verily, the sons of him who thus knows this subsist on him in early life, and he subsists on his sons in later life.

5. Here, now, they ask, 'If he were to die after entering on the Katurviṃsa day, how does he become one who has not merely (uttered) the Âgur-

[1] Here, the order of Abhiplava and Prishṭhya followed in the first half of the year is reversed.

[2] The author apparently claims for the pañkaviṃsa-stoma, or twenty-five-versed hymn-form, the same efficacy as for the katurviṃsa-stoma, the hymn-form of what is practically the first day of the sacrificial session (cf. Tâṇḍya-Br. XXV, 1, 1, where it is called Katurviṃsam prâyaṇîyam), and which by the number of its stotriyâ-verses, being that of the half-months in the course of the year (24), is supposed to represent the whole year; cf. Ait.-Br. IV, 12.

formula[1]?' Let him say, 'In that they then perform the Opening Atirâtra, thereby (he becomes such a one).'

6. As to this they ask, 'Seeing that there are the twelve months of the year, and that one day, to wit, the Vishuvat, is in excess, does this belong to those (months) that go before or to those that follow?' Let him say, 'Both to those that go before and to those that follow;' for the Vishuvat is the body (trunk) of the year, and the months are its limbs; and where the body is there are (or, that includes) also the limbs, and where the limbs are there is also the body; and neither is the body in excess of the limbs, nor are the limbs in excess of the body: and thus, indeed, that (day) belongs both to those (months) that go before and to those that follow.

7. But, indeed, that year is a great eagle: the six months which they perform prior to the Vishuvat are the one wing, and those which they perform subsequent thereto are the other; and the Vishuvat is the body; and, indeed, where the body is there are also the wings, and where the wings are there is also the body; for neither is the body in excess of the wings, nor are the wings in excess of the body: and thus, indeed, that (day) belongs both to those (months) that go before and to those that follow.

8. As to this they ask, 'Seeing that for six months prior to the Vishuvat they perform Stomas tending upwards, and for six (months) reversed

[1] See XI, 2, 5, 10 with note. The *K*aturvi*ṃ*śa day is, as it were, a promise on the part of the Sacrificer to perform the sacrificial session; whilst the Prâya*ṇ*îya Atirâtra not only represents the actual entering on the performance, but, as it were, implies the Udayanîya Atirâtra (XII, 2, 2, 18).

(Stomas), how are these latter performed so as to tend upwards?' Let him say, 'In that they perform that Dasarâtra as one with upward tending Stomas, thereby they do so.' Now, the Mahâvrata did not yield itself to the gods saying, 'How is it, ye have performed the Vishuvat with upward tending hymns, and me with reversed ones?'

9. The gods said, 'Try ye to find out that sacrificial performance which has upward tending Stomas, and whereby we may gain this.' They saw that Dasarâtra with upward tending Stomas after the manner of the year: what Prishthya-shadaha there is in it that is the seasons, the (three) Khandomas are these worlds, and the tenth day is the year. Thereby they gained this (Mahâvrata), and it yielded itself to them; and, verily, the Mahâvrata yields itself to him who so knows this.

10. And in this way, indeed, there is an ascent of days:—by means of the Opening Atirâtra they ascend the concluding Atirâtra, by means of the Katurvimsa the Mahâvrata, by means of an Abhiplava a subsequent Abhiplava, by means of a Prishthya a subsequent Prishthya, by means of the Abhigit the Visvagit, by means of the Svarasâmans the subsequent Svarasâmans—but that one day is not ascended, to wit, the Vishuvat: and, verily, he who thus knows this ascends to (the state of) one more glorious, and no one inferior to him ascends (to be equal) to him.

11. And in this way, indeed, there is a descent of days:—the Prâyanîya Atirâtra descends to the Katurvimsa day, the Katurvimsa day to the Abhiplava, the Abhiplava to the Prishthya, the Prishthya to the Abhigit, the Abhigit to the Svarasâmans, the

Svarasâmans to the Vishuvat, the Vishuvat to the Svarasâmans, the Svarasâmans to the Visvagit, the Visvagit to the Prishthya, the Prishthya to the Abhiplava, the Abhiplava to the Go and Âyus, the Go and Âyus to the Dasarâtra, the Dasarâtra to the Mahâvrata, the Mahâvrata to the Udayanîya Atirâtra, the Udayanîya Atirâtra to the world of heaven, to the resting-place, to plenty.

12. Such, indeed, are the wilds and ravines of sacrifice, and they (take) hundreds upon hundreds of days' carriage-drives; and if any venture into them without knowledge, then hunger or thirst, evil-doers and fiends harass them, even as fiends would harass foolish men wandering in a wild forest; but if those who know this do so, they pass from one duty to another, as from one stream into another, and from one safe place to another, and obtain well-being, the world of heaven.

13. As to this they say, 'How many onward, and how many backward days are there?' Well, those which are performed once each are onward days, and those which are performed repeatedly are backward days: let him at least consider these[1] as backward ones, for in accordance with the course of the Shadahas he himself moves.

Fourth Brâhmaṇa.

1. The Year, indeed, is Man;—the Prâyaṇîya Atirâtra is his breath, for by means of the breath men go forward (prayanti); and the Ârambhaṇîya

[1] Or, 'meditate upon these' (? worship these); see p. 155, note 1.

(opening) day[1] is speech, for by means of speech men undertake (ârabh) whatever they do undertake.

2. The Abhiplava-shaḍaha is this right hand[2]. This (little finger) is the first day thereof,—this (upper joint[3]) is its morning-service, this (middle joint) its midday-service, and this (lower joint) its evening-service: it is in place of the Gâyatrî, whence this (little finger) is the shortest of these (fingers).

3. This (third finger) is the second day,—this (upper joint) is its morning-service, this (middle joint) its midday-service, and this (lower joint) its evening-service: it is in place of the Triṣhṭubh, whence this (third finger) is larger than this (little finger).

4. This (middle finger) is the third day,—this is its morning-service, this its midday-service, and this its evening-service: it is in place of the Gagatî, whence this is the largest of these (fingers).

5. This (fore-finger) is the fourth day,—this is its morning-service, this its midday-service, and this its evening-service: it is in place of the Virâg; for the Virâg is food, whence this (fore-finger) is the most food-eating[4] of these (fingers).

[1] Hereby the Kâturvimsa day would seem to be meant (as, indeed, it is also taken by Harisvâmin), see p. 157, note 3; p. 167, note 1.

[2] The right hand is apparently taken here to represent the four limbs—the arms and legs. In Sanskrit the terms for finger and toe (as for thumb and large toe) are the same.

[3] That is, apparently the bone joining the palm; though possibly the one forming the extreme end of the finger may be intended. But inasmuch as the morning-service has five stotras as compared with the two of the evening-service the former might be expected to be compared with the larger of the two bones.

[4] Prof. Weber, Pratigñâsûtra, p. 97, refers to II, 4, 2, 18, where, in his opinion, the passage '(thus) they ladle out (food) for men'

6. This (thumb) is the fifth day,—this is its morning-service, this its midday-service, and this its evening-service: it is in place of the Paṅkti, for the Paṅkti is broad [1], as it were, whence this (thumb) is the broadest of these (fingers).

7. This (right arm) is the sixth day,—this (fore-arm [2]) is its morning-service, this (upper arm) its midday-service, and this (shoulder-blade) its evening-service: it is in place of the Ati*kh*andas, whence this (arm) is larger than those (fingers). That day is a Gâyatrî one, whence this shoulder-blade is the shortest: this Abhiplava-sha*d*aha (extends) in this, in this, in this, and in this, direction [3]; and the P*ri*sh*th*ya is the body (trunk).

8. Now, as to this, Paiṅgya, knowing this, said, 'The Abhiplavas leap about (plavante), as it were, and the P*ri*sh*th*ya stands (sthâ) [4], as it were; for

points to the fore-finger as the finger used most in eating. This is not improbable, though Sâya*ṇa*, as well as the commentary on Kâty. IV, 1, 10, it is true, does not interpret the passage in that way.

[1] Viz. inasmuch as it consists of five pâdas,—instead of three, as in the case of the Gâyatrî, or four, as in that of the others.

[2] Thus also Harisvâmin (hardly, the palm; but see p. 161, note 3).

[3] Viz. in the direction of the two arms and the two legs. There being, in nine of the twelve months of the year, four Abhiplavas and one P*ri*sh*th*ya in each month, the two kinds of six-days' performances as regards numbers, certainly offer an analogy to the limbs and the body.

[4] This etymological quibble seems to refer to the fact that the Abhiplavas are performed before the P*ri*sh*th*ya in the first half of the year, and after them in the second half; though the same feature of change might, vice versâ, be applied to the P*ri*sh*th*ya. It is possible, however, that the author may refer here to other characteristic features of the two kinds of Sha*d*ahas; and it cannot be denied that the Abhiplava days are liable to much greater change than the P*ri*sh*th*ya days. The constant change in the

this (man) leaps about, as it were, with his limbs, and he stands, as it were, with his body.'

9. The Trivṛ*i*t (stoma) is its head, whence that (head) is threefold (trivṛ*i*t)—skin, bone, and brain.

10. The Pa*ñk*adaśa (fifteen-versed hymn-form) is the neck-joints,—for there are fourteen of these (joints)[1], and the vital force is the fifteenth; hence by means of that (neck), though being small, man bears a heavy burden: therefore the Pa*ñk*adaśa is the neck.

11. The Saptadaśa (seventeen-versed hymn-form) is the chest; for there are eight '*g*atru[2]' on the one

'sequence of stomas' in the Abhiplava has already been referred to (p. 148, note 1). Another source of change, in the Abhiplava, is the peculiar way in which the Brahmasâman (or Brâhma*nâkh*a*m*sin's Pṛish*th*astotra) is varied from day to day. For, whilst during the months preceding the Vishuvat day, the Abhivarta tune is used for this stotra on each day, but with different Pragâtha verses chanted thereto from day to day; during the second half of the year, on the other hand, the same text (Sâma-veda II, 806) is used throughout, whilst its tune is varied from day to day. Since in the second half of the year the order of the days of the Pṛish*th*ya-sha*d*aha must be reversed, whilst this is optionally the case as regards the Abhiplava, this feature can hardly be referred to here.

[1] The 'grivâ*h*' thus, as far as man is concerned, include not only the seven cervical vertebrae, but also the upper seven dorsal vertebrae, being those to which the true ribs are attached. It is worth remarking, however, that in large birds such as the eagle, the neck itself consists of fourteen vertebrae.

[2] The St. Petersb. Dict. takes '*g*atru' in the sense of 'tuberculae costarum,' or tubercles of the ribs, the projections near the 'heads' of the ribs where these join the spinal vertebrae; this conjectural meaning being based on VIII, 6, 2, 10, where the ribs are said to be fastened on both sides to the kîkasâ*h* (? sternum) and the *g*atrava*h*. Against this conjecture (as the Dict. remarks) is the circumstance that the *g*atrava*h* are here said to form part of the chest; and, besides, the tubercle of the rib is not a separate bone, and would hardly be likely to be specially singled out in this

side, and eight on the other, and the chest itself is the seventeenth: therefore the Saptadaśa (stoma) is the chest.

12. The Ekaviṁśa (twenty-one-versed hymn-form) is the belly, for inside the belly there are twenty 'kuntâpa [1],' and the belly is the twenty-first: therefore the Ekaviṁśa (stoma) is the belly.

13. The Triṇava (thrice nine-versed hymn-form) is the two sides (pârśva);—there are thirteen ribs (parśu) on the one side, and thirteen on the other [2], and the sides make up the thrice ninth: therefore the Triṇava (stoma) is the two sides.

14. The Trayastriṁśa (thirty-three-versed hymn-

connection. Perhaps, therefore, the *gatravaḥ* may rather be the costal cartilages connecting the seven true ribs with the sternum, and along with them the ligament of the collar-bone where it joins the sternum; in which case the former passage would have to be understood in the sense that the ribs are on both (the right and left) sides fastened on to the costal cartilages and (through them) to the 'kîkasâḥ,' the breast-bone, or rather the several bones or plates of which the sternum consists, as articulated with the clavicles and the true ribs. It is possible, however, that 'kîkasâḥ' may have a different meaning from that here assigned to it, in acc. with the St. Petersb. Dict. Indeed, one would expect the 'kîkasâḥ' and '*g*atravaḥ' on different ends of the ribs.

[1] The meaning of 'kuntâpa' is likewise doubtful. The St. Petersb. Dict. suggests that certain glands may be intended thereby; but possibly the term may refer to the transverse processes (forming spikes, so to speak; cf. kunta) on both sides of the ten lower spinal vertebrae below the vertebra of the last true rib,—i. e. of the five lower dorsal, and the five lumbar vertebrae.

[2] The clavicle, or collar-bone, would thus seem to be classed along with the ribs. Rather peculiar, in the anatomical phraseology employed in the Brâhmaṇa, is the collateral use of 'parśu' and 'pṛishṭi' for 'rib': and it is by no means clear that there is no distinction between the two terms. In connection with the Retaḥsik bricks the term 'pṛishṭi' seems to be invariably used,—cf. VIII, 6, 2, 7, as against ib. paragraph 10 (parśu).

form) is the spine; for there are thirty-two 'karûkara[1]' of that (spine), and the spine itself is the thirty-third: therefore the Trayastri*ṃ*sa (stoma) is the spine.

15. The Abhigit is the same as this right ear; the first Svarasâman is this white part of the eye, the second the black part, and the third the pupil; the Vishuvat is the nose, the first backward Svarasâman is this pupil of the eye, the second the black, and the third the white part thereof.

16. The Visvagit is the same as this left ear; the Pri*s*hth*y*a and Abhiplava have been told; the Go and Âyus are the two downward breathings which there are (in the body); the Da*s*arâtra the limbs, the Mahâvrata is the mouth; and the Udayanîya Atirâtra the up-breathing, for by means of the up-breathing men go upwards (ud-yanti): such is that year as established in the body; and, verily, whosoever thus knows that year as established in the body, establishes himself by offspring and cattle in this, and by immortality in the other, world.

THIRD ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. 'Seeing that all this threefold universe keeps passing into one another, O Bâlâki, how is it that

[1] This is another term, the exact meaning of which is somewhat doubtful. The St. Petersb. Dict. takes 'karûkara' to refer to the vertebrae of the spinal column; and if that be correct, the term would seem to include not only the twenty-four joints of the backbone down to the last lumbar vertebrae, but also the appendages of the spine, viz. the sacrum with its five, and the coccyx with its four pieces: this, it is true, yields thirty-three, instead of thirty-two, parts, but it seems scarcely possible in any other way—as, for instance, by taking into account the epiphysial plates between the vertebrae, along with the latter—to arrive at a total approximating that mentioned in the above passage.

these,—to wit, the sacrifice, Man, and Pragâpati,—do not exceed one another?

2. Seeing that the upward Stomas follow the sacrifice, fitting themselves by repetitions with Sâmans, how do they enter man, and how do they become united with the vital airs?

3. The Prâyaṇîya Atirâtra, the Katurvimśa day, the four Abhiplavas, and the Pṛishṭhya (shaḍaha):—how do these enter man, and how do they become united with the vital airs?

4. Fitted out with the Abhigit, the Svarasâmans join the Vishuvat on both sides:—how do these enter man, and how do they become united with the vital airs?

5. Setting out with the Trivṛit, fitted out with the (Pañkadaśa and) Saptadaśa, and ending with the Trayastrimśa; with (the series of stomas increasing) successively by four (syllables[1]):—how do these enter man, and how do they become united with the vital airs?'

6. The Trivṛit is his head, the Pañkadaśa his neck; and the chest, they say, corresponds to the Saptadaśa; the Ekavimśa they make the belly, and

[1] The Trivṛit, or nine-versed stoma, is, however, followed by the Pañkadaśa, or fifteen-versed stoma—the thirteen-versed form not being in ordinary use—and these are succeeded by the Saptadaśa (17), Ekavimśa (21), &c. Possibly, however, this last sentence may refer to the six days of the Pṛishṭhya-shaḍaha for which the stomas consisting of 9, 15, 17, 21, 27 and 33 verses respectively are used. On the Abhigit day, each of the first four stomas is used in succession for three stotras, the four hymn-forms thus making up the twelve stotras of the Agnishṭoma. On the Viśvagit day, on the other hand, only three stomas are used—the Trivṛit, Pañkadaśa, and Saptadaśa—four stotras being assigned to each of these three hymn-forms.

the two sides, by means of the Trivṛava, correspond to the ribs.

7. The Abhiplavas on both sides (of the Vishuvat) are his arms, the Pṛishṭhya is the back,—so say the wise; and his spine the Brâhmaṇas fashion in the year by means of the (series of stomas increasing) successively by four (syllables).

8. The Abhigit and Viśvagit are his ears; and his eyes, they say, correspond to the Svarasâmans: the Vishuvat, they say, is the breath of the nostrils; and the Go and Âyus are those two downward breathings.

9. The Daśarâtra they call his limbs, and the Mahâvrata the Brâhmaṇas fashion (arrange) so as to be the mouth in the year[1];—the Supreme Self has entered into that year endowed with all stomas and with all sâmans: having fashioned him alike with the body, the sage is seated free from pain[2] on the heights of the ruddy one (the sun).

[1] Though the Mahâvrata day is actually the last day but one of the one year's sacrificial session, whilst the Ṣaḍaturvimśa day is the second, these two days mark really the end and beginning of the year, whilst the nominal first and last days of the sessional performance may be considered as consisting of mere preliminary and concluding (winding-up) rites. The above symbolic identification of the Mahâvrata with the mouth of Agni-Pragâpati, the Year, might thus lead one to suppose (as, indeed, is done by Prof. Hillebrandt, Die Sonnwendfeste in Alt-Indien, p. 11) that if two such annual sessions were immediately to succeed each other, the Mahâvrata and Ṣaḍaturvimśa would fall on one and the same day. The Mahâvrata, representing (at least symbolically) the winter-solstice, would thus mark both the end and the beginning of two successive solar periods.

[2] Literally, with unborn pain (or, with the pain of one unborn).

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. The Year is Man[1]:—'Man' is one unit, and 'year' is another, and these now are one and the same;—there are in the year the two, day and night, and in man there are these two breathings, and these now are one and the same;—there are three seasons in the year, and these three breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same;—'sa*m*vatsara (year)' consists of four syllables, and so does 'yagamâna (sacrificer),' and these (two) now are one and the same;—there are five seasons in the year, and these five breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same;—there are six seasons in the year, and these six breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same;—there are seven seasons in the year, and these seven breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same.

2. There are twelve months in the year, and these twelve breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same;—there are thirteen months in the (leap-) year, and these thirteen (channels of) breathings in man, the navel being the thirteenth, and these (two) now are one and the same;—there are twenty-four half-months in the year, and this man is twenty-four-fold, being possessed of twenty fingers and toes and four limbs; and these (two) now are one and the same;—there are twenty-six half-months in the (leap-) year, and this man is twenty-six-fold, the two feet making up the twenty-six; and these (two) now are one and the same.

3. And there are three hundred and sixty nights

[1] Or, the man, identified with the Sacrificer.

in the year, and three hundred and sixty bones in man, and these (two) now are one and the same;—there are three hundred and sixty days in the year, and three hundred and sixty parts of marrow in man, and these (two) now are one and the same.

4. And there are seven hundred and twenty days and nights in the year, and seven hundred and twenty bones and parts of marrow in man, and these (two) now are one and the same.

5. And there are ten thousand and eight hundred 'muhûrta' in the year; and fifteen times as many 'kshipras' as there are 'muhûrta'; and fifteen times as many 'etarhi' as there are 'kshipra'; and fifteen times as many 'idâni' as there are 'etarhi'; and fifteen times as many breathings as there are 'idâni'; and as many spirations as there are breathings[1]; and as many twinklings of the eye as there are spirations, and as many hair-pits as there are twinklings of the eye, and as many sweat-pores as there are hair-pits; and as many sweat-pores as there are so many drops it rains.

6. Concerning this, Vârkali, knowing this, once said, 'I know the raining cloud extending over the whole earth, and the drops of that rain.'

7. It is with reference thereto that this verse is told,—Whilst whirling round, be it standing, or sitting, or even sleeping, how often does man, otherwise than from toil, breathe and expel the air regularly[2] by day and night?

8. And in answer thereto this verse is told,—

[1] Perhaps the distinction between 'prâṇa' and 'ana' here is that of out-breathing and in-breathing.

[2] Or, uniformly (gleichmässig). The St. Petersb. Dict. here takes 'samena' in the sense of 'exactly.'

Inasmuch as man is what is measured a hundred hundred and eight hundred, therefore they say:—so often does man regularly[1] breathe and expel the air by day and night.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. The gods were once performing the initiation ceremony for a (sacrificial session) of a thousand years. When five hundred years had passed with them, everything here was worn out—to wit, Stomas, and Pṛishṭhas, and metres (texts).

2. The gods then perceived that unexhausted element of the sacrifice, and by means of that unexhausted element they obtained what success there was in the Veda; and, verily, for him who thus knows this, the Vedas are unexhausted, and the work of the officiating priests is performed with the unexhausted threefold science.

3. Now, this is that unexhausted element of the sacrifice:—o-śrâvaya, astu śraushaṭ, yaga, ye yagâmahe, and vaushaṭ[2]. In these five utterances there are seventeen syllables:—o-śrâvaya consists of four syllables, astu śraushaṭ of four syllables, yaga of two syllables, ye yagâmahe of five syllables;

4. And the Vashaṭ-call consists of two syllables. This is the seventeenfold Pragâpati, as established in the deity and in the body, and, verily, whosoever thus knows that seventeenfold Pragâpati, as established in the deity and in the body, establishes himself by offspring and cattle in this, and by immortality in the other, world.

[1] See note 2 on p. 169.

[2] For these sacrificial calls, see part i, p. 142, note 2.

5. The gods then spake, 'Find ye out that sacrificial performance which shall be a substitute for one of a thousand years; for what man is equal thereto that he could get through with (a performance of) a thousand years?'

6. They saw the Visvagit with all the P*r*ish*th*as[1] to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of the P*r*ish*th*ya-sha*d*aha, for there are those (same) Stomas, those P*r*ish*th*as, and those metres.

7. They saw the P*r*ish*th*ya-sha*d*aha to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of the Dvâdaśâha, for there are those (same) Stomas, those P*r*ish*th*as, and those metres[2].

8. They saw the Dvâdaśâha to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of (a session of) a year[3], for there are those (same) Stomas, those P*r*ish*th*as, and those metres.

9. They saw the (session of a) year to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of the Tâpa*s*kita[4], for there are those (same) Stomas, those P*r*ish*th*as, and those metres.

10. They saw the Tâpa*s*kita to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of the thousand years' performance, for there are those (same) Stomas, those P*r*ish*th*as, and those metres.

11. He passes a year with the rites of initiation,

[1] For such a day's performance with all the P*r*ish*th*a-sâmans, see part iii, introd., p. xx seq.

[2] The Dvâdaśâha, or twelve-days' performance, includes a P*r*ish*th*ya-sha*d*aha as its second to seventh days.

[3] The one year's session includes a Daśarâtra, or ten-days' performance, forming the central part of the Dvâdaśâha; and the first and last days of the latter being, like those of the Gavâm ayanam, a prâya*n*îya and udayanîya Atiratra.

[4] See part iv, p. 317, note 2.

a year with the Upasads, and a year with the pressings of Soma.

12. When he passes a year with the rites of initiation he thereby secures for himself the first part of the performance of a thousand years; and when he passes a year with the Upasads he thereby secures for himself the central part of the performance of a thousand years; and when he passes a year with the pressings he thereby secures for himself the last part of the performance of a thousand years.

13. Twelve months he passes with the rites of initiation, twelve with the Upasads, and twelve with the pressings,—that makes thirty-six. Now the Bṛihatî (metre) consists of thirty-six syllables, and by means of the Bṛihatî the gods strove to reach heaven, and by means of the Bṛihatî they indeed attained heaven; and in like manner does this one, by means of the Bṛihatî, now strive to reach heaven, and by means of the Bṛihatî he indeed attains heaven; and whatever object of desire there is in the Bṛihatî, that he thereby secures for himself.

14. But, indeed, there is that triad that is performed together,—the Agni (fire-altar), the Arkya, and the Mahad Uktham (great litany). When he passes a year with the rites of initiation, and a year with the Upasads, thereby the Agni and the Arka are secured by him; and when he passes a year with the pressings, thereby the Mahad Uktham is secured by him: this, then, to wit, the Tâpaskita, is the substitute for the performance of a thousand years, and this, to wit, the Tâpaskita, conduces to the procreation of creatures.

Fourth Brâhmaṇa.

1. Pragâpati once upon a time spake unto Purusha

Nârâyaṇa, 'Offer sacrifice! offer sacrifice!' He spake, 'Verily, thou sayest to me, "Offer sacrifice! offer sacrifice!" and thrice have I offered sacrifice: by the morning-service the Vasus went forth, by the midday-service the Rudras, and by the evening-service the Âdityas; now I have but the offering-place[1], and on the offering-place I am sitting.'

2. He spake, 'Offer yet sacrifice! I will tell thee such a thing that thy hymns shall be strung as a pearl on a thread, or a thread through a pearl.'

3. And he spake thus unto him, 'At the (chanting of the) Bahishpavamâna, at the morning-service, thou shalt hold on to the Udgâtṛi from behind, saying, "Thou art a falcon formed of the Gâyatrî metre,—I hold on to thee: bear me unto well-being!"

4. 'And at the midday Pavamâna thou shalt hold on to the Udgâtṛi from behind, saying, "Thou art an eagle formed of the Trishṭubh metre,—I hold on to thee: bear me unto well-being!"

5. 'And at the Ârbhava-pavamâna, at the evening-service, thou shalt hold on to the Udgâtṛi from behind, saying, "Thou art a *R*ibhu formed of the *G*agat metre,—I hold on to thee: bear me unto well-being!"

6. 'And at the close of each pressing thou shalt mutter, "In me be light, in me might, in me glory, in me everything!"'

7. Now light, indeed, is this (terrestrial) world, might the air-world, glory the heavens, and what other worlds there are, they are everything (else).

8. And light, indeed, is Agni, might Vâyu (the

[1] ? That is to say, those deities have taken possession of everything else. Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sansk. Texts, vol. v, p. 377.

wind), glory Âditya (the sun), and what other gods there are they are everything.

9. And light, indeed, is the *Rig*-veda, might the Yagur-veda, glory the Sâma-veda, and what other Vedas there are they are everything.

10. And light, indeed, is speech, might the breath, glory the eye, and what other vital airs there are they are everything.

11. Let him know this:—'All the worlds have I placed within mine own self, and mine own self have I placed within all the worlds; all the gods have I placed within mine own self, and mine own self have I placed within all the gods; all the Vedas have I placed within mine own self, and mine own self have I placed within all the Vedas; all the vital airs have I placed within mine own self, and mine own self have I placed within the vital airs.' For imperishable, indeed, are the worlds, imperishable the gods, imperishable the Vedas, imperishable the vital airs, imperishable is the All: and, verily, whosoever thus knows this, passes from the imperishable unto the imperishable, conquers recurrent death, and attains the full measure of life.

FIFTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Of old, indeed, they were wont to seize this victim as one dedicated to Savit*ri*, but now they seize it as one dedicated to Pragâpati, saying, 'Savit*ri*, in truth, is the same as Pragâpati.' It is therefore after having thrown together the (sacrificial) fires that they ought to perform this (animal) sacrifice on the Gârhapati's own fires, thinking, 'May we also have a share in this tail (of the victim) wherewith they are now making offering together to the wives

(of the gods).' They then perform the initiation ceremony whenever they choose.

2. Here now they say, 'They ought to have separate hearths; and if one of the initiates were to be taken ill let him stay aside offering the Agnihotra. If he gets well again, they bring (the fires) together and invite him to join them; but if he dies they burn him by his own (three) fires[1] without an (ordinary) fire for (burning) a dead body; and the other sacrificers sit (through the sacrificial session);—such at least is the performance in the case of one who keeps up his sacrificial fires; but, indeed, they have their hearths in common: the theological explication of this is the same as in regard to the preparatory ceremonial[2].'

3. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how does their Agnihotra come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the fast-milk.'

4. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how does their Full-moon oblation come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the ghee and the sacrificial cake.'

5. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how does their New-moon oblation come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the sour curds and the cake.'

[1] This is the regular procedure in accordance with Gṛihya rites, cf. Âśv. Gṛihy. IV, 2, 11–13; whilst Pâraskara, III, 10, 11, merely says, 'with the domestic fire they burn him who has established his (sacred) fire.'

[2] For the 'puraskaraṇa,' see part iv, p. 337, note 2.

6. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how does their offering to the Fathers come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the Aupâsana (rites[1]).'

7. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how does their offering of firstfruits come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By Soma's pap[2].'

8. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how do their seasonal offerings come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the Payasyâ[3].'

9. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how does their animal sacrifice come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the animal and the cake[4].'

10. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how

[1] Viz., by those rites which, during the time for which the Sacrificer is initiated, may be performed on his domestic (Âvasathya or Aupâsana) fire. Cf. Kâty. I, 1, 20. 21. Whether the domestic offerings to the Fathers (śrâddha) may be so performed seems doubtful.

[2] For the ordinary performance of the Âgrayaṇeshṭi, see part i, p. 370 seqq. According to Kâty. IV, 6, 11 seq. the performance of a year's sattra is to mark the time at which the offering of firstfruits would otherwise have taken place by using new grain for his vrata-food, as well as for two Rauhiṇa cakes at the Upasads, and for the cakes offered in the animal sacrifice of the Soma days; and that a pap of new śyâmâka (millet) is to be offered to Soma at the proper season (during the rains, or autumn), and a pap of bamboo grain in summer.

[3] For this dish, made by the addition of fresh boiled milk to sour curds, see part i, p. 381, note 2.

[4] That is, by the animal offered on each successive Soma day, and the (savanîya) puroḍâśas offered subsequently; cf. IV, 2, 5, 14–22.

does their Soma come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the Soma-pressings.'

11. It is thus that these sacrificial rites enter into the year; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this entering of the sacrificial rites into the year becomes a sharer in the heavenly world.

12. In the year there should be known to be uniformity:—one Atirâtra they perform before, and one after, the Vishuvat; fifty-three Agnish*t*omas they perform before, and fifty-three after, the Vishuvat; one hundred and twenty Ukthya days they perform before, and one hundred and twenty after, the Vishuvat,—thus at least in the case of those who perform the Svarasâmans as Ukthyas.

13. And in the case of those who (perform them) as Agnish*t*omas, they perform fifty-six Agnish*t*omas before, and fifty-six after, the Vishuvat; one hundred and seventeen Ukthya days they perform before, and one hundred and seventeen after, the Vishuvat; six Sho*d*asins they perform before, and six after, the Vishuvat; thirty Sha*d*ahas[1] they perform before, and thirty after, the Vishuvat:—such, then, is the uniformity of that (year), and, verily, he who thus knows this goes through a course of sacrificial performance which is uniform, and not ineffectual, neither defective nor redundant.

[1] That is, counting the Prâya*n*îya Atirâtra, *K*aturvi*m*sa, Abhigit, and three Svarasâmans as one six-days' performance, before the Vishuvat; and the three Svarasâmans, the Visvagit, Gosh*t*oma, Âyush*t*oma, four days of the Dasarâtra (preceding and succeeding the central Sha*d*aha), the Mahâvrata, and Udayanîya Atirâtra as two six-days' performances after the Vishuvat.

FOURTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

EXPIATORY CEREMONIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE AGNIHOTRA.

1. Verily, they who perform an Agnihotra enter upon a long sacrificial session:—the Agnihotra, indeed, is a sacrificial session ensuring death in old age[1], for people are set free from it either by old age or by death.

2. Here, now, they say, 'If either a team (yukta) were to drive through, or people were to walk to and fro, between the two fires of such a one performing an Agnihotra, and (being thus) a performer of a long session, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' He may, indeed, perform an expiation, and also offer an ishṭi; but let him disregard it, for he who lays down his two fires doubtless spreads himself all over these worlds.

3. His Gârhapatya is this (terrestrial) world, his Anvâhâryapaćana (or southern fire) the air-world, and his Âhavanîya yonder (heavenly) world; and freely, indeed, birds, both combined (yukta) and single, pass to and fro in these worlds; and even if a whole crowd were to pass through between his fires, let him know that no harm and no hurt will come to him.

4. 'But, surely, there are three unclean animals, a vicious boar, a vicious ram[2], and a dog: if any

[1] Literally, as would seem, 'old-age-deathed' (garâmarya), or perhaps, 'having old age for its extreme limit (maryâ).' The author apparently takes it in the former sense, though interpreting the compound in his own way.

[2] According to Molesworth's Dictionary, 'eḍakâ' and 'meṃḍhâ,' in Marâṭhî, mean both 'ram,' but the former 'is ordinarily under-

one of these runs about between (the fires) whilst the Agnihotra-offering is put on (the fire), what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Well, some poke out the ashes from the Gârhapatya, and keep throwing it down from the Âhavaniya, with this verse (*Ṛig*-veda I, 22, 17), 'Here Vishṇu strode[1],' saying, 'Vishṇu is the sacrifice: by the sacrifice we thus continue the sacrifice, and with ashes we bestrew its track.' But let him not do it in this way, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely this (priest) has scattered about[2] the Sacrificer's ashes: he will soon scatter his last ashes, the chief's household will be wailing,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

5. Let him proceed in this way:—Having taken either a bowl of water, or a pot of water, let him go on pouring it out from in front of the Gârhapatya up to the Âhavanîya, with this verse, 'Here Vishṇu strode;' for Vishṇu being the sacrifice, he thus continues the sacrifice by the sacrifice; and whatever is injured or unpropitiated in the sacrifice, for all that the water is the means of propitiation, and by water, as a means of propitiation, he thus propitiates it. Such, then, is the rite performed in that case.

6. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra (milk) were to be spilled whilst he gets it milked, what rite and what expiation would there be in that

stood of a ram trained to fight, or suffered to live long enough to obtain horns.'

[1] See III, 5, 3, 13.

[2] ? Or, thrown in (viz. into the pot, or urn). According to Âsv. Gṛihy. IV, 5, 1 seqq., it is, however, only the bones which are collected and placed in the urn.

case?' Having touched (the spilled milk) with the (formula of) expiation for spilling, and poured water on it, let him make offering with what (milk) is left. But if the bowl were to be turned upside down, or if it were to break, let him touch (the spilled milk) with the (formula of) expiation, and, having poured water on it, let him make offering with what other (milk) he can procure.

7. Now, in case there should be a spilling (of milk), let him touch it with, 'It hath been shed, it hath been implanted: birth hath ensued;' for when (seed) is shed then it is implanted; and when it is implanted then birth takes place. And, indeed, this (earth) is a womb, and the milk is seed: he thus implants seed in that womb, and forthwith that shed seed of him who so knows this is born forth. And, indeed, it rains from yonder sky, and herbs and trees are produced here on earth; and seed flows from man and animals, and therefrom everything here is generated: let him therefore know that abundant production has accrued unto him, that he will be multiplied in offspring and cattle, and that he will become more prosperous.

8. And in case there should be a breaking (of the vessel), let him pour out a bowlful or potful of water, and, indeed, whatever is injured or unpropitiated in the sacrifice, for all that water is the means of propitiation, and by water, as a means of propitiation, he thus propitiates it. He does so with these utterances, 'Bhûr bhuvaḥ svar (earth, air, sky);' for these utterances are all-expiatory[1]:

[1] Or, perhaps,—these (great) utterances are used with the 'Sarvaprâyaśchittam' (libation for expiating every mistake). According to Kâty. XXV, 1, 10, five verses are also to be muttered after

he thus makes expiation with all this (universe). Having collected the potsherds let him throw them to where the ashes have been removed. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

9. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-cow were to lie down whilst being milked, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Well, some make her get up by means of the Yagus-formula, 'The divine Aditi hath risen,'—Aditi, doubtless, is this (earth):—thus saying, 'It is this (earth) we thus raise for him;'—'life hath she bestowed upon the lord of sacrifice,' thereby saying, 'It is life we thus bestow upon this (Sacrificer);'—'giving unto Indra his share,' thereby saying, 'It is Indra's power we thus bestow upon him;'—'and unto Mitra and Varuṇa,'—Mitra and Varuṇa, doubtless, are the in-breathing and the up-breathing:—thus saying, 'It is the in and up-breathing we thus bestow upon him.' At this offering he should present that (cow) to a Brâhmaṇa whom he does not intend to visit[1]—(thus they enjoin) saying, 'It was, indeed, after perceiving the Sacrificer's suffering and evil that she lay down: we thus fasten the suffering and evil on this (Brâhmaṇa)[2].'

---

the libation with the three 'great words.' As regards the libation itself, it is to be made in the Gârhapatya with 'bhûḥ,' in the Dakshiṇâgni with 'bhuvaḥ,' and in the Âhavanîya with 'Svaḥ': cf. ib. sûtra 13.

[1] The commentators on Kâty. XXV, 1, 15 are divided in interpretation of this passage; whilst some take it in the above (and most natural) sense, others take it to mean—to the Brâhmaṇa who will not be coming again to his (the Sacrificer's) house.

[2] The reason why a Brâhman is thus chosen to serve as scape-goat doubtless is that his holy nature is supposed to be proof against such evil influences (cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. X, p. 64).

10. But on this point Yâgñavalkya said, 'Surely, the cow turns from them as from faithless ones, and they smite the offering with trouble; let him rather do it in this way:—Let him make her get up by pushing her with a staff.' And, indeed, as in the case of one driving about here, his horse, or his mule, or his ox yoked (to the car) might become weary, and, by its being urged forward by means of a staff or a goad, he completes the way he wishes to accomplish, even so does he, by that (cow) being urged forward by means of a staff or a goad, attain that heavenly world which he desires to reach.

11. And Âruṇi, indeed, said, 'His Agnihotra-cow, assuredly, is the sky, her calf is that blowing (wind), and the Agnihotra-vessel is this (earth). And, verily, the Agnihotra-cow of him who knows this does not perish, for how could yonder (sky) perish? Neither does the calf of the Agnihotra-cow of him who knows this perish, for how could that (wind) perish? Nor does the Agnihotra-vessel of him who knows this break to pieces, for how could this (earth) break to pieces? The rain-cloud showers down blessings: let him therefore think, "Unable to bear my glory and greatness, she (the Agnihotra-cow) has lain down: I shall become more glorious." Let him keep her for himself[1]: he thereby takes glory (prosperity) to himself,'—thus spake Âruṇi. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

12. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-cow were to low whilst he gets it milked, what rite and

[1] That is, he is not to give the cow to a Brâhmaṇa; cf. Kâty. XXV, 1, 17.

what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him pluck a bunch of grass and make her eat thereof. This is the rite performed in that case.

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-cow were to milk blood, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him say 'Disperse!' and having made a stirring-spoon, let him order the Anvâhârya-paćana fire to be enclosed; and having boiled that (blood) thereon, let him silently offer it in an undefined (indistinct) way [1], for Pragâpati is undefined, and the Agnihotra is sacred to Pragâpati; and the undefined also means everything: he thus makes atonement with everything. At this offering he should give that (cow) to a Brâhmaṇa whom he does not intend to visit; for, indeed, she who milks blood milks it after perceiving the Sacrificer's suffering and evil: he thus fastens that suffering and evil upon this (Brâhmaṇa). Let him then make offering with what other milk he can procure: by that which is not unsound he thus throws out what is unsound in the sacrifice. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

2. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-milk were to become impure [2] whilst being milked, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Now some think that it should be offered

[1] According to Kâty. XXV, 2, 2, it is to be offered on hot cinders of the Dakshiṇâgni with the formula, 'To Rudra, hail!'

[2] Or rather, perhaps,—if anything impure were to get (to fall) into any one's Agnihotra-milk; cf. XII, 4, 2, 9.

(arguing that) it is ready (for offering), and it would be improper if it were not offered; and that the gods have no loathing for anything. But the gods have indeed loathings:—let him rather proceed in the following way. Having shifted some hot cinders from the Gârhapatya, let him silently pour that (milk) on these hot cinders. He then pours water thereon, and thus secures (âp) it by means of the water (âp). Let him then make offering with what other (milk) he can procure. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

3. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-milk were to become impure after he has had it milked, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him shift back the coals which were shifted away (from the fire) and on which he was going to put (the Agnihotra-milk); and let him then pour it silently on these hot cinders. He then pours water thereon, and secures it by means of the water. Let him then make offering with what other (milk) he can procure.

4. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-milk were to become impure after being put on the fire, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him offer it silently on the coals which were shifted away (from the fire), and on which it had been placed: thus it is both offered and not offered: for inasmuch as he offers it on those (hot coals) it is offered, and inasmuch as he extinguishes it along with them it is not offered. He pours water thereon, and secures it by means of the water. Let him then make offering with what other (milk) he can procure.

5. They also say, 'If the Sacrificer were to die

when the Agnihotra-milk has been put on the fire, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Having enclosed it, let him pour it out: and such, indeed, they say, is the expiation (in that case) for every Haviryagña. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

6. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-milk were to be spilled after being ladled out into the offering-spoon, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him touch it with the (formula of) atonement for spilling, and, having poured water thereon, let him make offering with what (milk) there is left. And if the spoon be turned upside down, or if it were to break, let him touch (the spilled milk) with the (formula of) atonement for spilling, and, having poured water thereon, let him make offering with what (milk) is left in the pot.

7. Now some go back (to the Gârhapatya) and make offering with what (milk) is left in the pot; but let him not do this, for, indeed, that Agnihotra is conducive to heaven, and if any one, in that case, were to say of him, 'Surely, this one has descended again from the heavenly world: this (offering) will be in no wise conducive to heaven for him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

8. Let him rather do it in this way:—let him sit down there and then, and let them ladle out and bring to him what (milk) there is left in the pot. Now some perplex him, saying, 'Surely, this (milk) is the remainder of an offering; surely, this is exhausted: offering should not be made thereof;' but let him give no heed to this; for, surely, when that (milk) is of unexhausted strength it is used for

curdling the offering-material[1]: let them therefore ladle out and bring to him what (milk) there is left in the pot; and if there should not be any in it, let him put on the fire what other (milk) he can procure; and when he has made the light fall on it[2], and poured water to it, and taken it off (the fire),—then on that (former) occasion[3] he (the Adhvaryu) says, 'I will ladle out[4];' but on the present occasion let them ladle it out in the way it is (there) ladled out and bring it to him; and let him by all means make offering therewith. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

9. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-milk were to become impure after it has been ladled into the offering-spoon, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Now some think it should be offered, on the ground that it is ready (for offering), and it would be improper if it were not offered, for the gods have no loathing for anything. And some fill it to overflowing and let it flow off[5];—but let him not do this; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this (priest) has poured away the Agnihotra: this Sacrificer will be poured away,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass. Let him rather do it in this way:—let him put

[1] Literally, they make it the means of curdling the havis;—cf. XI, 1, 4, 1, where the sour milk from last night's milking is so used. In the same way the milk not used for the Agnihotra might have served for curdling next morning's milk.

[2] Viz. by means of a lighted straw, cf. II, 3, 1, 16.

[3] Viz. at the evening-offering of the Agnihotra; the Sacrificer then replying, 'Om, ladle out!' At the morning-offering the Adhvaryu says, 'I ladle out,' instead. Cf. part i, p. 331, note 1.

[4] Or, 'shall I ladle out?' as the Paddhati on Kâty. IV, 14, 8 takes it.

[5] That is to say, they let the impure matter flow off.

fuel on the Âhavanîya, and, having shifted some hot cinders away from the Âhavaniya, let him silently pour it on these hot cinders. He then pours water on it, and secures it by means of the water; and let him then make offering with what other (milk) he can procure. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

10. They also say, 'If it were to rain upon (uparishṭât) any one's Agnihotra-milk when it has been ladled into the offering-spoon, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him know, 'Light (or sap) has come to me from above (uparishṭât); the gods have helped me: I shall become more glorious;' and let him by all means make offering therewith. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. They also say, 'If the fire were to go out after the first libation has been offered, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Having thrown down (on the fire-place) any log of wood he may find lying near by[1], let him offer thereon, saying, 'In every (piece of) wood there is a fire,' for, indeed, there is a fire in every (piece of) wood. But if his heart should at all misgive him, he may offer upon gold; for gold, doubtless, is Agni's seed; and the father is the same as the son, and the son is the same as the father: he may therefore offer upon gold. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

2. They also say, 'If, after being taken out (from the Gârhapatya), the Âhavanîya were to go out

[1] Pratyâsanno visatîti prativesaḥ samîpasthaḥ, comm.

before the Agnihotra (has been offered), what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him take it out (again) from the Gârhapatya (and bring it) forward, and, having laid it down (on the Âhavaniya hearth), let him offer the Agnihotra thereon. And were it to go out again and again, after being taken out even a hundred times, let him take it out (again) from the Gârhapatya, and, having laid it down, let him offer the Agnihotra thereon. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

3. They also say, 'If the Gârhapatya were to go out, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Well, some churn it out from a firebrand, saying, 'Whereby man's (body) is destroyed in the end, it is therefrom he desires the expiation of this (mishap).' Let him, however, not do this; but let them proceed by taking either a firebrand, or a piece from a firebrand;—let him do it in this way:—having taken a coal from a firebrand, let him crumble it on the two churning-sticks, for (in this way) he obtains both that desire which is contained in the (fire) churned out of a firebrand, and that which is contained in (the fire churned out from) the churning-sticks. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

4. They also say, 'If they take out fire for any one and put it with (the burning Âhavanîya) fire, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' When uniting, these two (fires), if unappeased, would indeed be liable to burn up the Sacrificer's family and cattle: let him therefore utter upon them the text (Vâg. S. XII, 57, 58), 'Unite ye two, and get ye on together, loving, radiant, well disposed, dwelling together for food and drink!—Together have I brought

your minds, together your rites, together your thoughts: O Agni Purishya, be thou the overlord, and bestow thou food and drink upon our Sacrificer!' He thereby bespeaks peace on the part of those two for the safety of the Sacrificer's family and cattle.

5. But if his heart should at all misgive him, let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds to Agni Agnimat (the fire possessed of a fire). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vritra[1]; the samyâgyâs[2] are two Virâg verses; and the invitatory and offering formulas (of the chief oblation) are as follows:—(the anuvâkyâ, *Rig*-veda S. I, 12, 6), 'Agni is kindled by Agni, he, the sage, the youthful house-lord, the tongue-mouthed bearer of oblations;' and the yâgyâ, 'For thou, O Agni, art kindled by Agni, priest, as thou art, by a priest, friend by friend.' He thereby bespeaks peace on the part of those two, for the safety of the Sacrificer's family and cattle. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

6. They also say, 'If any one's Gârhapatya were to go out when the Âhavanîya has not gone out, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Now, some take (a new fire) out from that same (Âhavanîya hearth, and carry it) forwards[3],

[1] That is, their Anuvâkyâs refer to Vritrahan.

[2] That is, the anuvâkyâ (invitatory formula) and yâgyâ (offering-formula) recited for the oblation to Agni Svishtakrit. Cf. XIII, 4, 1, 13 note.

[3] That is to say, they make the still burning Âhavanîya their Gârhapatya and take out a new offering-fire which they lay down on a place to the eastward of the former Âhavanîya (the former

saying, 'The fires are the vital airs: it is the vital airs we thus take up for him.' But let him not do this, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely this one has obstructed the forward vital airs[1]: this Sacrificer will die,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

7. And some, indeed, take (the Âhavanîya) back (to the Gârhapatya[2]), saying, 'These two are the out-breathing and the up-breathing.' But let him not do this; for conducive to heaven, indeed, is the Agnihotra; and if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this one has descended again from the heavenly world: this (offering) will be in no wise conducive to heaven for him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

8. And some, indeed, churn out another Gârhapatya; but let him not do this, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this one has raised a spiteful enemy from out of the fire[3]: speedily a spiteful enemy will be raised to him; he (the Sacrificer) will weep[4] for him who is dearest to him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

9. And some, again, extinguish (the Âhavanîya fire) and churn out another;—let him not yield to a desire for this; (for if, in that case, any one were to

Dakshiṇâgni being likewise transferred to a place south of the first third of the line between the new Gârhapatya and Âhavanîya, Kâty. XXV, 3, 5 comm.).

[1] ? Or, has forced them forward.

[2] That is, they take the burning Âhavanîya fire back to the Gârhapatya hearth, and then take out therefrom a fresh Âhavanîya.

[3] Viz. inasmuch as he takes out a new Âhavanîya from the newly kindled Gârhapatya, and puts it on the still burning Âhavanîya fire.

[4] Harisvâmin takes 'rotsyati' as from 'rudh'—rodhena mâraṇam lakshyate, mârayishyatîty arthaḥ.

say of him[1]), 'He has caused to be extinguished even what was left him: no heir will remain to him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

10. Let him rather proceed thus:—having lifted the two fires on the two churning-sticks[2], let him betake himself northwards, and, having churned out (the fire), let him remain there offering; for in this way he passes no censure on any one, and towards night offering is made by him at his new resting-place.

FOURTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. And, in the morning, having taken out the ashes, and smeared (the fire-places) with cow-dung, he lifts the two fires on the churning-sticks, and returns (to the offering-ground). Having then churned out the Gârhapatya, taken out the Âhavanîya, and brought the Anvâhârya-pa*k*ana (to the southern hearth), he should prepare a cake on eight potsherds to Agni Pathik*ri*t (the path-maker). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of V*ri*tra[3]; the sa*m*yâg*y*âs are two Virâg verses[3]; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows:—(the anuvâkyâ, *Rig*-veda VI, 16, 3), 'For thou, most wise Agni, divine disposer, readily knowest the ways and paths at sacrifices;' and the yâgyâ (*Rig*-veda X, 2, 3), 'We have entered upon the path of the gods to carry on what we can do: the wise Agni shall sacri-

[1] There seems here to be an omission in the printed text, though MS. Ind. Off. 311, it is true, has the same reading.

[2] That is, by holding the sticks a moment near the fires.

[3] See notes on XIII, 4, 1, 13.

fice, he shall be the priest, he shall order the sacrifices and their seasons;' for Agni is the path-maker, the guide of paths: he, verily, guides him upon the path of sacrifice. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

2. They also say, 'If any one's fires were to come in contact with each other, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' If this burning (fire) were to come (to the other) from behind, he may know that light has come to him from beyond; that the gods have helped him, and that he will become more glorious. But if his heart should at all misgive him, let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds for Agni Vivi*k*i (the discerning). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of V*r*itra; the sa*m*yâg*y*âs are two Virâg verses; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows:—(the anuvâkyâ, *Rig*-veda VI, 6, 3), 'Thy brilliant, wind-sped flames, bright Agni, spread in every direction: the divine ninefold destroyers overpower the woods, boldly crushing them;' and the yâgyâ (*Rig*-veda V, 8, 3), 'The tribes of men glorify thee, Agni, the discerning knower of offerings, and most liberal dispenser of treasures; thee, O wealthy one, dwelling in secret, yet visible to all, loud-sounding offerer of sacrifice, glorying in ghee!' And if any one should desire to rid himself of his spiteful enemy, let him, with that object in view, perform this offering, and he verily will rid himself of him. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

3. If, however, this burning (fire) were to come from this side, he may know that he will overcome his spiteful enemy: that he will become more glorious. But if his heart should at all misgive him, let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds for Agni Sa*m*varga (the despoiler). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses: the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vr*i*tra, the sa*m*yâgyâs are two Virâg verses; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows:—(*Rig*-veda VIII, 75, 15; Vâg. S. XI, 71), 'From the far region cross thou over to the near: protect thou that wherein I am!' and the yâgyâ (*Rig*-veda VIII, 75, 12), 'Desert us not in this great strife, like as the bearer of a load: win thou the spoil (sa*m* varga*m* *g*aya), win riches thou!' And if any one desire to despoil his spiteful enemy, let him, with that object in view, perform this offering, and he verily will despoil him. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

4. They also say, 'If the lightning were to burn any one's (sacrificial fire), what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him know that light has come to him from above; that the gods have helped him, and that he will become more glorious. But if his heart should at all misgive him, let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds for Agni Apsumat (abiding in the waters). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vr*i*tra; the sa*m*yâgyâs are two Virâg verses; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows:

—(*Ṛig*-veda VIII, 43, 9; Vâg. S. XII, 36), 'In the waters, O Agni, is thy seat; as such thou clingest to plants: being in (their) womb, thou art born again;' and the yâgyâ (Vâg. S. XII, 37), 'Thou art the child of the herbs, the child of the trees, the child of all that is, O Agni, thou art the child of the waters;'—he thereby bespeaks peace on the part of those two (fires) for the safety of the Sacrificer's family and cattle. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

5. They also say, 'If any one's fires were to come in contact with impure (profane) fires, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds for Agni Śuṅi (the bright),—the course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vritra; the sa*m*yâgyâs are two Virâg verses; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows:—(*Ṛig*-veda VIII, 44, 21), 'Agni of brightest work, the bright priest, the bright sage, brightly he shineth with offering fed;' and the yâgyâ (*Ṛig*-veda VIII, 44, 17), 'Up rise thy flames, the bright, the pure, the shining, thy lights, O Agni;'—he thereby bespeaks peace to those two (kinds of fires) for the safety of the Sacrificer's family and cattle. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

6. They also say, 'If the sun were to set on any one's Âhavaniya not yet having been taken out, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Verily, those rays (of the sun) are the All-gods: they go from him, and that (Agnihotra) fails

him, because the gods go from him; and after that failure—whether he know it or know it not—those two (fires) say, 'He (the sun) has set on his unlifted (fire).' In such a case let him proceed thus:—having fastened a piece of yellow gold to a plant of darbha grass, let him order it to be taken towards the back (west): thus it is made of the form of him who shines yonder; and that (sun) being the day, it is made of the form of the day. And darbha plants are a means of purification[1]: he thus purifies it thereby. Having then kindled some firewood, let him order it to be taken forward (to the Âhavanîya hearth). A Brâhmaṇa descended from a *Ri*shi should take it out, for a Brâhmaṇa descended from a *Ri*shi represents all the deities: it is thus with the help of all the deities that he causes it (the fire) to succeed. Having laid it down, he returns, and having placed ghee on the Gârhapatya, taken it off, purified it and looked down on it[2], he takes ghee by four ladlings, and, having seized a log, he hastens up to the front; and, having put the log on the Âhavaniya, he bends his right knee, and offers with, 'To the All-gods, hail!' Even as one would call (back) to him a Brâhmaṇa staying at one's dwelling, when he goes away offended, by (presenting him with) a cow longing for the bull, so he thereby calls to him the All-gods; and they indeed acknowledge, and

[1] Viz. inasmuch as they are used as strainers; see I, 1, 3, 5; cf. also part i, p. 84, note 2.

[2] Whilst, on ordinary occasions, in clarifying butter for offering, the priest would first make the lady of the house look down on the ghee taken from the fire, before he himself (or the Sacrificer) does so (I, 3, 1, 19; 26); on the present occasion—as at offerings to the Fathers (Kâty. II, 7, 4 comm.)—the priest alone does so.

turn to, him. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

7. They also say, 'If the sun were to rise over any one's Âhavaniya not having been taken out, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Verily, those rays are the All-gods; and, having dwelt there, they now go from him, and that (Agnihotra) fails him, because the gods go from him; and after that failure—whether he know it or know it not—those two (fires) say, 'He (the sun) has risen on his unlifted (fire).' In such a case let him proceed thus:—having fastened a piece of white gold (silver) to a plant of darbha grass, let him order it to be taken towards the front: thus it is made of the form of the moon; and, the moon being the night, it is made of the form of the night. And darbha plants are a means of purification: he thus purifies it thereby. Having then kindled some firewood, let him order it to be taken after (the piece of silver). A Brâhmaṇa descended from a *Ri*shi should take it out, for a Brâhmaṇa descended from a *Ri*shi represents all the deities: it is thus with the help of all the deities that he causes it (the fire) to succeed. Having laid it down, he returns, and, having placed ghee on the Gârhapatya, taken it off, purified it and looked down upon it, he takes ghee in the same way as it was taken before, and, having seized a log, he hastens up to the front; and, having put the log on the Âhavaniya, he bends his right knee and offers with, 'To the All-gods, hail!' The import is the same as before; and, verily, no hurt and no harm of any kind befalls where that expiation is made. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

FIFTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

CEREMONIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE DEATH OF THE AGNIHOTRIN.

1. They also say, 'If that performer of a long sacrificial session—to wit, he who (regularly) offers the Agnihotra—were to die whilst staying abroad, are they to sacrifice for him or not?' Now, some indeed think that (his Agnihotra) should be offered till they get home[1]; but let him not do so, for that (fire) does not submit thereto that they should offer to it, as for the burning of a dead body: it is rather to sacrifice and oblations that it submits, and, unable to endure it, it stays by him with impatience.

2. And some, indeed, say, 'They (the fires) should lie in the very same condition, kept up (with fuel) but without offering being made on them;' but let him not do so, for that (fire) does not submit thereto that they should kindle it as for the burning of a dead body: it is rather to sacrifice and oblations that it submits, and, unable to endure it, it stays by him with impatience.

3. And some, indeed, having lifted the two fires

[1] Prof. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 430, takes 'âganto*h*' in the sense,—'(thinking) he may still come;' but cf. Kâty. XXV, 8, 9 with comm., according to which, in case of an Agnihotrin dying away from home, his people are—if the place of his death be somewhere near his home—to take the body there; but if it be far from home, they are to kindle a fire by 'churning' and burn the body, and having collected the bones and taken them home, they are there to perform the punardâha, or second cremation; and in either case the Agnihotra is to be performed regularly for the deceased, in the evening and morning, 'till the body or the bones arrive at the house (g*ri*hâgamanaparyantam).' The force of 'iti' here evidently is,—(thinking,) 'we will do so until the home-coming.' Harisvâmin rightly resolves 'âganto*h*' by 'â âganto*h*.'

on the churning-sticks, lay them down, and churn it (the new fire) out on his being brought (home); but let him not do so, for that (fire) does not submit thereto that they should churn it out as for the burning of a dead body: it is rather to sacrifice and oblations that it submits, and, unable to endure it, it stays by him with impatience.

4. Let him rather proceed thus:—let him bid them seek for a cow suckling an adopted calf, and let him make offering with milk from her; for tainted is that milk which comes from a cow suckling an adopted calf, and tainted is the Agnihotra of one who is dead: by thus removing the tainted by the tainted, he becomes more glorious.

5. Concerning this there also is a simile:—if two smashed cars were to (be made to) unite there would be at least one (fit) for driving.

6. The procedure of this same Agnihotra (is as follows):—He causes her to be milked whilst eastward invested[1]; for, sacrificially invested, one gets (the Agnihotra-cow) milked for the gods, but in the case of the Fathers it is done thus.

7. He does not put (the milk) on the (burning) coals[2]; for were he to put it on coals he would be doing (what is done) for the gods: having shifted some hot cinders from the Gârhapatya towards the right (south) side, he puts it thereon, and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

[1] That is, wearing the Brâhmaṇical cord over the right shoulder, and under the left arm; instead of over the left shoulder, and under the right arm as is done at the sacrifice.

[2] For boiling the milk for the Agnihotra burning coals are shifted northwards from the Gârhapatya, and the pot placed thereon; see part i, p. 330, note.

8. He does not cause the light (of a burning straw) to fall upon it, nor does he pour water to it; for were he to make the light fall on it, and to pour water to it, he would be doing (what is done) for the gods. He does not take it off thrice, setting it down each time[1]; for were he take it off thrice, setting it down each time, he would be doing (what is done) for the gods: only once he takes it off drawing it downwards[2], and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

9. He does not say, 'I will ladle out[3]!' nor does he ladle out (the milk) four times; for were he to say 'I will ladle out!' and were he to ladle out four times, he would be doing (what is done) for the gods: only once he silently turns it upside down (into the spoon), and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

10. He does not take it (to the Âhavaniya) whilst holding a kindling-stick over (the handle of the spoon[4]); for were he to take it (there) whilst holding a kindling-stick over it, he would be doing (what is done) for the gods: he takes it whilst holding (a billet) underneath, and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

11. He does not pass along the north side of the Gârhapatya[5], for were he to pass along the north

[1] When a spoonful of water has been added to the Agnihotra-milk, and the light of a burning straw again thrown on it, the pot is taken up three several times and put down each time further north on the hot ashes; see part i, p. 331, note 1.

[2] That is, down from the ashes—towards the south (where the Fathers, or departed ancestors, are supposed to reside),—whilst in the case of the ordinary Agnihotra he would be shifting the pot more and more upwards, or northwards. Cf. Kâty. XXV, 8, 10.

[3] See XII, 4, 2, 8. [4] See part i, p. 331, note 4.

[5] Possibly we ought to translate,—he does not go to the north side of the Gârhapatya (but to the south side)—that is, if he makes

side of the Gârhapatya he would be doing (what is done) for the gods: he passes along the south side of the Gârhapatya, and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

12. And that sacrificial grass which (ordinarily) is lying with its tops towards the north he lays so as to have its tops towards the south, and thus makes (the offering) to be sacred to the Fathers. And having put a kindling-stick on the Âhavanîya, and bent his left knee, he silently turns (the ladle) once upside down (pouring the milk into the fire) and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers. He neither shakes (the spoon) upwards[1], nor wipes it, nor does he eat (the milk left in the spoon), nor does he throw it out: he thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

13. They also say, 'If that performer of a long sacrificial session—to wit, he who (regularly) offers the Agnihotra—were to die whilst staying abroad, how would they supply him with his fires?' Well, some, having burnt him, bring (the bones) home and make the fires smell him as he is brought; but let him not do this, for this would be as if he were to seek to cause the seed implanted in one womb to be born forth from another womb. Having brought home the bones, let him throw them on a black antelope skin, and arrange them in accordance with man's form, and having covered them with wool and sprinkled with ghee, let him by burning unite him

two oblations, not only on the Âhavanîya, but also on the Gârhapatya (as well as on the Dakshiṇâgni), in which case the Adhvaryu would be standing north (or rather north-west) of the fire. Cf. Kâty. IV, 14, 22–25.

[1] Ordinarily, after the second libation, the priest twice jerks the spoon upwards, and then lays it down on a bunch of grass.

with his fires: he thus causes him to be born from his own (maternal) womb.

14. And some, indeed, burn him in (ordinary) fire (procured) in the village; but let him not do this, for such fire is a promiscuous eater, an eater of raw flesh: it would be capable of devouring him completely, together with his sons and his cattle.

15. And some, indeed, burn him in a forest-fire; but let him not do this; for such fire is unappeased: it would be capable of burning him up together with his sons and his cattle.

16. And some, indeed, burn him in a firebrand; but let him not do this; for such fire belongs to Rudra: it would be capable of destroying him together with his sons and his cattle.

17. And some, indeed, build up a funeral pile in the midst of the (three) fires, and, by burning him, unite him with his fires, thinking, 'There,—to wit, in the midst of his fires,—assuredly is the Sacrificer's abode.' But let him not do this; for if in that case any one were to say of him, 'Verily, this one has caused a cutting up in the middle of the village: the cutting up of him will speedily come about[1]: he will weep for his dearest;' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, Nâka Maudgalya once said, 'If he believe the Sacrificer to be about to die, let him take

[1] The burning of the dead body seems to be compared here with the cutting up of the victim which is done outside the sacrificial ground. Harisvâmin, indeed, takes 'grâma' here, not in the sense of 'village,' but in that of 'agnisamûha'—in the midst of the (set of) sacrificial fires—which, if it were possible, would certainly make the comparison even more striking.

up the two fires in the churning-sticks, and, having churned out (a new fire), let him continue offering (the Agnihotra) at whatever place may have commended itself to him for the immolation[1]. And if the Sacrificer should then depart this world,—

2. Let him build a pile for him[2] in the midst of his fires, and, by burning him, unite him with his fires.' But let him not do this; for, verily, that (fire) does not submit thereto that they should make offering to it as for the burning of a dead body: it is rather to sacrifice and oblations that it submits, and, unable to endure it, it stays by him with impatience.

3. He should rather proceed thus:—let him bid them seek three pots, and, having put therein either (dried) cowdung or straw[3], let him place them separately on the (three) fires; and let them then burn him by means of the fires produced from that blaze: in this way he is indeed burned by (these) fires, though not visibly, so to-speak.

4. Wherefore, also, it has been said by the *Ri*shi (Vâg. S. XIII, 45[4]), 'The Agni who was born from Agni, from the pain of the earth or be it of the sky; whereby Vi*s*vakarman begat

[1] Literally, at any place at which the cutting up may have commended itself to him (to take place). Whether this 'cutting up' is here to be taken figuratively of the burning of the corpse (dâhasthâne, Harisvâmin), or of the sacrifice of a barren cow, which may be performed in such a case, or of both, is not quite clear.

[2] The construction would rather seem to be,—let him build him (i. e. the dead body) up as a pile amidst his fires.

[3] The real meaning of '*ś*umbala' is not known,—acc. to the St. Petersb. Dict., some material which readily takes fire, such as straw or oakum. Harisvâmin takes it in the former sense,—*tri*nâny alpasa*ṃ*sthitâni. Cf. Kâty. XXV, 7, 12 (?dried cotton fibre or pods).

[4] Cf. VII, 5, 2, 21.

living beings, him, O Agni, may thy wrath spare!' As the verse, so its explanation.

5. Now, in the first place, he cleanses him of all foul matter, and causes the foul matter to settle on this (earth): for this (earth) is indeed foul matter: he thus consigns foul matter to foul matter. For, indeed, from that intestine of his, filled with foul matter, when it is burnt, a jackal is produced: (hence he removes it), 'lest a jackal should be produced.' But let him not do this, or his family will be liable to starve. Having washed him out inside, he anoints him with ghee, and thus makes it (the body) sacrificially pure.

6. He then inserts seven chips of gold in the seven seats of his vital airs; for gold is light and immortality: he thus bestows light and immortality on him.

7. Having then built a pile for him in the midst of his fires, and spread out a black antelope skin with the hairy side upwards, and the neck-part towards the east, he lays him down thereon with the face looking upwards, and puts the *g*uhû-spoon filled with ghee on his right, and the upabh*ri*t on his left hand, the dhruvâ on the breast, the Agnihotra-ladle on the mouth, two dipping-spoons on the nostrils, two prâ*s*itra-hara*ṇ*as[1] on the ears, the cup used for carrying forward the lustral water on the head, two winnowing-baskets at the sides, on the belly the vessel used for holding the cuttings (of the i*ḍ*â), filled with clotted ghee, the wedge (yoke-pin) beside the male organ, two mallets beside the testicles, and behind them the mortar and pestle,

[1] That is, two bowls used for holding the Brahman's 'fore-portions'; see part i, p. 69, note 4.

the other sacrificial vessels between the thighs; and the wooden sword on the right hand.

8. Thus supplied with the sacrificial weapons (implements), that Sacrificer passes on to that place which has been won by him in heaven, even as if one who fears spoliation were to escape it: and, verily, those fires (which are) to be enkindled (will) lovingly touch him, even as sons lovingly touch their father when he comes home after staying abroad, and make everything ready for him[1].

9. If the Gârhapatya were to reach him first, one may know that the permanent fire has reached him first: that he will permanently establish himself, and that those behind him will permanently establish themselves in this world.

10. And if the Âhavanîya were to do so, one may know that the foremost fire has reached him first: that he has been foremost in conquering the (other) world, and that those behind him will be foremost in this world.

11. And if the Anvâhâryapaṅkana were to do so, one may know that the food-eating fire has reached him first: that he will eat food, and that those behind him will eat food (be prosperous) in this world.

12. And if they all (were to reach him) at the same time, one may know that he has conquered a blessed world. Such, then, are the distinctions in this respect.

13. This, then, is that offering of the Sacrificer's body which he performs at the end: from out of that place which has been won by him in heaven he arises immortal in the form of an oblation.

[1] That is, they make everything comfortable for him, make him feel at home:—prakṛishṭam evainaṁ svarge kalpayanti pratishṭhitam; nityasthitatvât pratishṭhâ gârhapatyaḥ; comm.

14. Whatever stone and earthen (vessels of the deceased) there are they may be given to a Brâhmaṇa[1]: but, verily, he who accepts them is regarded as a remover of corpses. Let them rather throw these (vessels) into the water, for the waters are the foundation of all this (universe): he thus establishes him firmly on the waters.

15. Either a son (of the deceased), or a brother, or some other Brâhmaṇa then performs that offering[2], with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 22), 'From out of him thou (O Agni) art born: from out of thee let this N. N. be born again into the heavenly world, hail!' They then go away without looking back, and touch water.

Sixth Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

Expiatory Oblations of Soma-sacrifice.

1. Verily, Pragâpati, the sacrifice, is King Soma; and these deities to whom he offers, and these oblations which he offers, are forms of him.

2. If any part of the sacrifice were to fail, let him make an oblation with regard to that same deity for whom he may have intended (that part),—on the Âhavaniya, if it is during the initiation and the

[1] According to Kâty. XXV, 7, 32, 33 the stone and earthen implements are to be thrown into the water; and metal ones may optionally be given to a Brâhman (or likewise be thrown into the water).

[2] According to Kâty. XXV, 7, 34–37 a sterile cow may be offered prior to (or along with) the burning of the body: in which case the victim is to be killed by a blow behind the ear, and its kidneys are to be placed in the deceased's hands, whilst his face is to be covered with the omentum or membrane enclosing the intestines. The final offering referred to in the above passage consists of an oblation of ghee.

Upasads; on the Âgnîdhra, if it is at the Soma-pressing;—for whatever joint of the sacrifice fails, that breaks; and whichever then is the deity in that (part of the sacrifice) through that deity he heals the sacrifice, through that one he makes the sacrifice complete again[1].

3. If, however, the sacrifice, resolved upon in his mind, were not to incline to him[2], let him perform an oblation with, 'To Parameshṭhin hail!' for Parameshṭhin (the most high) he (Soma[3]) then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

4. And if the sacrifice, bespoken by his speech[4], were not to incline to him, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Pragâpati hail!' for Pragâpati (the lord of creatures) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

5. And if any one's (people), having gone in quest of the King (Soma), do not come back bringing (Soma-plants), let him perform an oblation with, 'To the plant hail!' for the plant he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

6. And if, when acquired, (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Savitṛi hail!' for Savitṛi he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

7. And if during the initiation (his Soma) were

[1] Cf. IV, 5, 7, 6.

[2] That is to say, if untoward circumstances were to arise threatening to prevent the intended Soma-sacrifice. The mental resolve (saṁkalpa), on the part of the Sacrificer, is the first act in the performance of a sacrifice.

[3] Or, it (the sacrifice), as Harisvâmin takes it.

[4] That is, after he has announced his intention to perform a Soma-sacrifice, by saying 'Somena yakshye,' 'I will sacrifice by means of Soma.'

to meet with any mishap, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Visvakarman hail!' for Visvakarman he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

8. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap in regard to the (cow) given in exchange for the Soma, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Pûshan hail!' for Pûshan he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

9. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when forthcoming for the purchase, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Indra and the Maruts hail!' for Indra and the Maruts he (Soma) then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

10. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being bargained for, let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Asura hail!' for the Asura he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

11. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap after he has been bought, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Mitra hail!' for Mitra he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

12. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst seated on (the Sacrificer's) lap[1], let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vishṇu Śipivishṭa hail!' for Vishṇu Śipivishṭa he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

13. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being driven about, let him perform

[1] See III, 6, 3, 4. This particular ceremony is rather out of place here, as in its regular order it should come after paragraph 15.

an oblation with, 'To Vishṇu Narandhisha hail!' for Vishṇu Narandhisha he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

14. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when he has reached (the hall), let him perform an oblation with, 'To Soma hail!' for Soma he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

15. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when seated on the throne, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Varuṇa hail!' for Varuṇa he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

16. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst staying in the Âgnidhra, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Agni hail!' for Agni he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

17. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst staying in the Havirdhâna, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Indra hail!' for Indra he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

18. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being taken down (from the car), let him perform an oblation with, 'To Atharvan hail!' for Atharvan he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

19. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when thrown down (on the pressing-board) in (the shape of) the Soma-stalks, let him perform an oblation with, 'To the All-gods hail!' for the All-gods he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

20. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being invigorated (moistened), let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vishṇu Âprîtapâ hail!' for Vishṇu Âprîtapâ (the protector of the appeased) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

21. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being pressed, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Yama hail!' for Yama he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

22. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being gathered together[1], let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vishṇu hail!' for Vishṇu he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

23. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being purified (strained), let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vâyu hail!' for Vâyu he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

24. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when purified, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Śukra hail!' for Śukra (the clear one) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

25. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when mixed with milk, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Śukra hail!' for Śukra he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

26. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any

[1] See III, 9, 4, 19, 'Thrice he presses, and thrice he gathers (the beaten plants) together . . .'

mishap when mixed with barley-meal, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Manthin hail!' for Manthin (Soma mixed with meal) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

27. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when drawn into the cups, let him perform an oblation with, 'To the All-gods hail!' for the All-gods he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

28. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when ready for the libation, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Asu hail!' for Asu (the breath of life) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

29. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being offered, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Rudra hail!' for Rudra he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

30. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when he has returned[1], let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vâta hail!' for Vâta (the wind) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

31. And if, after being looked at, (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap, let him perform an oblation with, 'To N*ri*kakshas hail!' for N*ri*kakshas (man-viewing) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

32. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being consumed, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Bhaksha hail!' for Bhaksha

[1] Viz. to the Havirdhâna where the cups from which libations have been made are deposited on the mound (khara); cf. III, 1, 2, 24.

(drink) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

33. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when contained in the Nârâśaṁsa (cups[1]), let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Nârâśaṁsa Fathers hail!' for the Nârâśaṁsa (man-praising) Fathers he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

34. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when ready for the purificatory bath[2], let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Stream hail!' for a stream he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

35. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being taken down (to the water), let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Sea hail!' for a sea he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

36. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when immersed, let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Flood hail!' for a flood he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

37. These, then, are the thirty-three oblations he performs; for there are thirty-three gods, and Pragâpati is the thirty-fourth: with the help of all the gods he thus heals the sacrifice, and with the help of all the gods he makes it complete again.

38. The Brahman (superintending priest) himself should perform them, and no other than the Brahman; for the Brahman sits on the right (south)

[1] See part ii, p. 154, note 1.

[2] The pressed-out Soma-husks are taken down to (and thrown into) the water where the Sacrificer is to bathe, see IV, 4, 5, 1 seqq.

side of the sacrifice, and protects the sacrifice on the right side. If, however, the Brahman should not know (these formulas and oblations), any one who knows them may perform them; but (let him do so) after applying for leave to the Brahman, and with his permission. Now as to the meaning of these (formulas). Vasish*th*a knew the Virâg[1]: Indra coveted it.

39. He spake, '*Ri*shi, thou knowest the Virâg: teach me it!' He replied, 'What would therefrom accrue to me?'—'I would teach thee the expiation for the whole sacrifice, I would show thee its form.' —He replied, 'Well, but tell me, if thou wert to teach me the expiation for the whole sacrifice, what would become of him to whom thou wouldst show its form?'—'Verily, he would depart from this world to the heaven of the living.'

40. The *Ri*shi then taught Indra that Virâg;—but the Virâg, they say, is this (earth), whence he who possesses most thereof is the most powerful.

41. And Indra then taught the *Ri*shi this expiation from the Agnihotra up to the Great Litany. And formerly, indeed, the Vasish*th*as alone knew these utterances, whence formerly only one of the Vasish*th*a family became Brahman; but since nowadays anybody (may) study them, anybody (may) now become Brahman[2]. And, indeed, he who thus knows these utterances is worthy to become

[1] That is, the 'far-shining,' or 'far-ruling' (metre).

[2] Professor Delbrück, Altindische Syntax, p. 570, takes this clause thus:—'and therefore even now he who remains of them (i.e. of the Vasish*th*a family) is (? becomes) Brahman.' This rendering takes, however, no account of the 'tu'; and, indeed, it will hardly fit in with the relative clause which precedes it.

Brahman, or may reply, when addressed as 'Brahman[1]!'

Seventh Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

The Sautrâmaṇî[2].

1. Indra slew Tvash*ṭṛi*'s son, Visvarûpa. Seeing his son slain, Tvash*ṭṛi* exorcized him (Indra), and

[1] That is to say, when, as superintending priest, he is addressed by another priest asking whether he may now begin some performance, or informing him that he is about to do so, he may give the desired direction. Such applications by the other priests begin with 'O Brahman!' cf. XIII, 1, 2, 4; and part i, p. 22, note 2.

[2] The Sautrâmaṇî is usually classed as one of the seven divisions of the Haviryagñ*a*, though, in reality, it is much more than that; its peculiarity consisting in a combination of the ordinary features of the Haviryagñ*a*, or ish*ṭi* (cf. XII, 7, 2, 21), with those of the animal sacrifice, whilst a third important element, viz. libations of spirituous liquor, imparts to it a certain resemblance, and doubtless an intended resemblance, to the Soma-sacrifice. Of this sacrifice we have already met with a variation in connection with the Râgasûya (cf. part iii, p. 129 seq.), that form being usually called the *K*araka-Sautrâmaṇî, as being adopted from the ritual of the *K*araka-adhvaryus; whilst the form described in the remaining portion of the present Kâṇḍa is, according to Lâṭy. Śraut. V, 4, 20, called Kaukilî Sautrâmaṇî (cf. Âśv. Śr. III, 9, 9 comm.; Weber, Ind. Stud. III, p. 385). The name itself is derived from 'sutrâman,' i.e. 'the good guardian,' as which Indra is worshipped in this sacrifice (cf. V, 5, 4, 1 seq.). The whole performance takes four days, during the first three of which the Surâ-liquor is prepared and matured, and offerings of a rice-pap to Aditi, and a bull to Indra are performed; whilst the main sacrifice takes place on the fourth day—the day of either full moon or new moon—the chief oblations offered on that day being three cups of milk, and as many of Surâ-liquor, to the Aśvins, Sarasvatî, and Indra respectively; of three animal victims to the same deities; and of thirty-three libations of fat gravy, or liquid fat (vasâ), obtained from the cooking of the victims, and offered by means of bull's hoofs used as cups. At the end of the sacrifice, a third bull is offered to Indra in his form of Vayodhas (giver of life), together with another pap

brought Soma-juice suitable for witchery [1], and withheld from Indra. Indra by force drank off his Soma-juice, thereby committing a desecration of the sacrifice. He went asunder in every direction, and his energy, or vital power [2], flowed away from every limb.

2. From his eyes his fiery spirit flowed, and became that grey (smoke-coloured) animal, the he-goat; and what (flowed) from his eyelashes became wheat, and what (flowed) from his tears became the kuvala-fruit [3].

(*k*aru) to Aditi and an oblation of curds to Mitra and Varu*n*a. No mention is made of the Agnishomîya he-goat usually offered on the day preceding the Soma-pressing, the first bull offered to Indra probably taking its place on this occasion, whilst the bull to Indra Vayodhas would seem to take the place of the sacrifice of a barren cow (to Mitra and Varu*n*a) which usually takes place at the end of a Soma-sacrifice. In an interesting variation (Sautrâma*n*a-yag*ñ*a), described in Sâṅkh. Śr. XIV, 12–13, and performed as a real (Agnish/oma) Soma-sacrifice, the final animal sacrifice indeed is that of a barren cow to Indra Sutrâman; only two other victims—a reddish he-goat to the Aśvins and a ewe to Sarasvatî—being mentioned.

[1] 'Exposed (liable) to witching,' Delbrück, Altindische Syntax, p. 401.

[2] 'Vîrya' (virile power) is constantly used to explain 'indriya.'

[3] The words 'kuvala, badara, and karkandhu' are the names of three varieties of the jujube, or fruits of Zizyphus Jujuba, for a description of which see the comm. on Kâty. Śr. XIX, 17 seqq. According to Stewart and Brandis' Forest Flora of North-West and Central India (p. 87), 'this species varies exceedingly, in the shape and size of the fruits, the shape and tomentum of the leaves, and general habit;' 'the Zizyphi of North India want more investigation on the spot.' . . . 'Lakh is produced on this tree in Sindh, the Panjab, and Central India. The bark is used as dye-stuff; the root is a febrifuge in native pharmacy. A gum exudes from the trunk; and in Kangra a wild silkworm lives on the tree, the silk of which was much employed formerly to tie the barrel to the stock of the matchlock. But the tree is mainly cultivated for its fruit,

3. From his nostrils his vital power flowed, and became that animal, the ram; and what (flowed) from the phlegm became the Indra-grain, and what moisture there was that became the badara-fruit [1].

4. From his mouth his strength flowed, it became that animal, the bull; and what foam there was became barley, and what moisture there was became the karkandhu-fruit [1].

5. From his ear his glory flowed, and became the one-hoofed animals, the horse, mule, and ass.

6. From the breasts his bright (vital) sap flowed, and became milk, the light of cattle; from the heart in his breast his courage flowed, and became the talon-slaying eagle, the king of birds.

7. From his navel his life-breath flowed, and became lead,—not iron, nor silver; from his seed his form flowed, and became gold; from his generative organ his essence flowed, and became parisrut (raw fiery liquor); from his hips his fire flowed, and became surâ (matured liquor), the essence of food.

8. From his urine his vigour flowed, and became the wolf, the impetuous rush of wild beasts; from the contents of his intestines his fury flowed, and became the tiger, the king of wild beasts; from his blood his might flowed, and became the lion, the ruler of wild beasts.

9. From his hair his thought flowed, and became millet; from his skin his honour flowed, and became the asvattha tree (ficus religiosa); from his flesh his force flowed, and became the udumbara tree (ficus glomerata); from his bones his sweet drink flowed,

which is more or less globose on the wild and commoner sorts, and ovoid or oblong on the cultivated and improved kinds.'

[1] See note 3 on preceding page.

and became the nyagrodha tree (ficus indica); from his marrow his drink, the Soma-juice, flowed, and became rice: in this way his energies, or vital powers, went from him.

10. Now at that time he (Indra) had to do with Namuki, the Asura. Namuki bethought him, 'He has been undone once for all: I will seize upon his energy, his vital power, his Soma-drink, his food.' By (taking) that Surâ-liquor of his he seized upon his energy, or vital power, his Soma-drink, his food. He lay there dissolved. The gods gathered around him, and said, 'Verily, he was the best of us; evil has befallen him: let us heal him!'

11. They said to the two Asvins, 'Ye are Brahman physicians: heal ye this one!' They replied, 'Let there be a guerdon for us!' They spake, 'That he-goat there shall be your guerdon.' They said, 'So be it!' and hence the smoke-coloured (he-goat) is sacred to the two Asvins.

12. They (the gods) said to Sarasvatî, 'Verily, thou art healing medicine: heal thou this one!' She replied, 'Let there be a guerdon for me!' They spake, 'That ram there shall be thy guerdon!' She said, 'So be it!' and therefore the ram is sacred to Sarasvatî.

13. They then spake, 'Verily, there is even now as much in him (Indra) as that bull: that one shall belong to him himself.' They said, 'So be it!' and therefore the bull is sacred to Indra.

14. The two Asvins and Sarasvatî, having taken the energy, or vital power, from Namuki, restored them to him (Indra), and saved him from evil. 'Truly, we have saved him from evil so as to be well-saved (sutrâta),' they thought, and this became

the Sautrâmaṇî: and this is the (saving) nature of the Sautrâmaṇî—it saves the self from death, and repels evil for whosoever thus knows that (saving) nature of the Sautrâmaṇî. There are (for this sacrifice) thirty-three Dakshiṇâs (presents to priests), for thirty-three were the gods who healed him: whence they say, 'Dakshiṇâs are healing medicine.'

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, his fiery spirit, his energy, or vital power, depart from him whom Soma purges either upwards or downwards.

2. As to this they say, 'Truly, the Soma-juice is the Brâhmaṇa's food; and, indeed, it is not owing to Soma when a Brâhmaṇa vomits Soma; and he who vomits Soma is one who, whilst being fit to (gain) prosperity, does not gain prosperity, and who, whilst being fit to (gain) cattle, does not gain cattle[1], for Soma is cattle.'

3. Let him seize for sacrifice that grey (he-goat) of the Aśvins, the ram of Sarasvatî, and the bull of Indra; for the Aśvins are the physicians of the gods, and it is by them that he heals this (Sacrificer); and Sarasvatî is healing medicine, and it is with her help that he prepares medicine for him; and Indra is energy (indriya), or vital power, and it is with his help that he bestows energy, or vital power, on this (Sacrificer).

4. The two Aśvins, indeed, are the eyesight,

[1] According to Kâty. XIX, 1, 4, the Sautrâmaṇî may also be performed by one who finds himself in the unfortunate position here referred to; as also (acc. to ib. 3) by a king who has been deprived of his kingdom.

fiery spirit; and inasmuch as there is (a victim) sacred to the Aśvins, he (the priest) bestows eyesight, fiery spirit, on this (Sacrificer). And the ear also (he thereby bestows on him), for one and the same are the eye and the ear.

5. Sarasvatî is the breath, vital power; and inasmuch as there is (a victim) sacred to Sarasvatî, he bestows breath, vital power, on this (Sacrificer). And the off-breathing also (he thereby bestows on him), for one and the same are the breath (of the mouth) and the off-breathing.

6. Indra is speech, strength; and inasmuch as there is (a victim) sacred to Indra, he bestows speech, strength, on this (Sacrificer); and mind also, for one and the same are speech and mind.

7. 'He-goats are sacred to the Aśvins, ewes to Sarasvatî, and cows (and bulls) to Indra,' they say: if these animals are sacrificed, he, by means of those deities, gains those (three) animals.

8. There is a mare with a foal[1]: the one-hoofed (animal), glory, he thereby secures (for the Sacrificer[2]). There are hairs of wild beasts[3], for the purpose of securing the wild beasts;—there are hairs of wolf: vigour, the impetuous rush of wild beasts, he thereby secures;—there are hairs of tiger: courage, the sway of wild beasts, he thereby secures;—there are hairs

[1] According to XII, 9, 2, 11, a milch cow with her calf are given as dakshiṇâ for the two paps offered to Aditi, whilst a mare and foal, according to XII, 7, 2, 21, are the fee for the offering of the three victims; though Kâtyâyana, it is true, makes no mention of this dakshiṇâ.

[2] Or, perhaps, he (the Sacrificer) secures for himself; but see paragraph 15, 'asmai avarunddhe.'

[3] Hairs of a wolf, tiger, and lion are put into the cups of spirituous liquor from which libations are made.

of lion: might, the rule of wild beasts, he thereby secures.

9. There are grains of rice and grains of millet, grains of wheat and kuvala jujubes, Indra-grain and badara jujubes, grains of barley and karkandhu jujubes, malted rice and barley[1]: both cultivated and wild-grain food he thereby secures; and by means of both kinds of food he duly lays energy and vital power into his own self.

10. With lead he buys[2] the malted rice, with (sheep's) wool the malted barley, with thread the (fried) rice-grain,—that lead is a form of both iron and gold, and the Sautrâmaṇî is both an ishṭi-offering and an animal sacrifice, so that he thereby secures both of these.

11. With wool and thread[3] he buys,—this, to wit, wool and thread, is women's work; and work, indeed, means energy, or vital power, and this latter is extinct in women: he thus secures (for the Sacrificer) that energy, or vital power, which is extinct in women.

12. Here now, other Adhvaryus buy the malted rice with lead from a eunuch, saying, 'That is that[4]; for the eunuch is neither woman nor man, and the

[1] That is, rice and barley grain that has germinated, and subsequently become dry.

[2] As on the occasion of the purchase of Soma-plants (part ii, p. 63 seq.), the bargain is effected near the antardhâtya-peg at the back of the Vedi, where an ox-hide is spread for the purpose; the Adhvaryu asking the seller, 'Seller of Surâ and Soma, hast thou Surâ and Soma for sale?'

[3] Thus 'ûrṇâ-sûtram' is to be resolved, according to Kâty. XIX, 1, 18; the wool being used for buying malted barley, and the thread for buying fried rice.

[4] That is, one is the same as the other.

Sautrâmaṇî is neither an ishṭi-offering nor an animal sacrifice.' But let him not do so, for the Sautrâmaṇî is both an ishṭi and an animal sacrifice, and the eunuch is something unsuccessful among men: they who do this thus place failure into the very mouth (opening) of the sacrifice. Let him rather buy them from a vendor of Soma, for the Sautrâmaṇî is Soma: he thus puts a form of Soma into the very mouth of the sacrifice so as to secure the sacrifice.

13. There is a pot (kumbhî) perforated with a hundred holes [1], for in many ways did that (Soma) flow out of (Indra); and a hundred-sized also, indeed, is the sacrifice: it is the sacrifice he thereby secures. There is a bowl (sata [2]): it is the real (or good) thing (sat) he thereby secures. There is a dish (kapya) for him to secure food. There is a filter, for they cleanse him, (the Sacrificer, by this offering). There is a tail (-whisk) for turning away evil. There is gold for him to secure form (or colour); it weighs a hundred (grains), for man has a life of a hundred (years) and a hundred energies: life, and energy, vital power, he thus lays into his own self.

14. There is an aśvattha (ficus religiosa) vessel: honour he thereby secures. There is an udumbara (ficus glomerata) one: force he thereby secures. There is a nyagrodha (ficus indica) one: sweet drink he thereby secures. There are (earthen) pots (sthâlî): the food of the earth he thereby secures.

15. There are supernumerary [3] (vessels) of palâśa

[1] For the use of this pot, see note on XII, 8, 1, 8.

[2] See XII, 8, 3, 14. 15.

[3] At III, 7, 2, 1. 2, I would also now translate 'upaśaya' by 'supernumerary' or 'additional':—there are eleven stakes, and a twelfth, rough-hewn, supernumerary one, &c.

wood: the palâśa (butea frondosa) is the Brahman (holy writ, holiness, the priesthood): it is by the Brahman that he gains the heavenly world. There are two feathers of a talon-slaying (bird)[1]: courage, the sway of birds, he thereby secures. There are thirty-six of these (objects), for the Bṛihatî consists of thirty-six syllables, and cattle are related to the Bṛihatî: by means of the Bṛihatî he thus secures cattle for him.

16. As to this they say, 'The victims have one set of deities, and the cakes another set of deities: this is an improper performance[2]; how does it become right and proper?' To Indra belongs the last of the victims, and to Indra the first of the cakes; and Indra, indeed, is energy (indriya), or vital power: through (Indra's) energy he thus confers on him energy, or vital power; and through (Indra's) energy he secures energy, or vital power.

17. There is a cake to Savitṛi for him to become impelled by Savitṛi; and one to Varuṇa, for it is Varuṇa that seizes him who is seized by evil: through Varuṇa he thus delivers him from Varuṇa's power;—it is the final (cake): he thus delivers him finally from Varuṇa's noose.

18. Indra's (cake) is one on eleven potsherds, in order that he may secure (Indra's) energy, or vital

[1] For the use of the two feathers of an eagle, see XII, 7, 3, 22.

[2] The rule (as laid down in III, 8, 3, 1) is that the Paśu-puroḍâśa, or animal cakes, offered after the animal portions, should belong to the same deities to whom the victims are sacred. On the present occasion this is, however, not the case: for while the three sacrificial animals of the main performance belong to the Aśvins, to Sarasvatî and Indra, the three cakes are offered to Indra, Savitṛi, and Varuṇa respectively.

power; for the Trishṭubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trishṭubh is energy, or vital power.

19. Savitṛi's (cake) is one on twelve potsherds, for there are twelve months in the year, and the year means constantly existing food: from the year he thus secures for him food.

20. Varuṇa's (cake) is one on ten potsherds, for the Virâg consists of ten syllables, and Varuṇa is Virâg (the widely ruling), the lord of food: through Varuṇa he thus secures food for him. In the middle (of the sacrifice) they proceed with (the offering of) these cakes, for the centre means their (mother's) womb: he thus causes them to be produced from their own (mother's) womb.

21. A mare with a foal is the sacrificial fee, for such a (mare) produces both the horse and the mule, and the Sautrâmaṇî is both an iṣṭi-offering and an animal sacrifice: thus it is so in order that he may secure both of these.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. By means of the Surá-liquor Namuṣi, the Asura, carried off Indra's (source of) strength, the essence of food, the Soma-drink. He (Indra) hasted up to the Aśvins and Sarasvatî, crying, 'I have sworn to Namuṣi, saying, "I will slay thee neither by day nor by night, neither with staff nor with bow, neither with the palm of my hand nor with the fist, neither with the dry nor with the moist!" and yet has he taken these things from me: seek ye to bring me back these things!'

2. They spake, 'Let us have a share therein, and we will bring them back to thee.'—'These things

(shall be) in common to us,' he said, 'bring them back, then!'

3. The Aśvins and Sarasvatî then poured out foam of water (to serve) as a thunderbolt, saying, 'It is neither dry nor moist;' and, when the night was clearing up, and the sun had not yet risen, Indra, thinking, 'It is neither by day nor by night,' therewith struck off the head of Namuki, the Asura.

4. Wherefore it has been said by the *Ri*shi (*Rig*-veda S. VIII, 14, 13), 'With foam of water, Indra, didst thou sever the head of Namuki, when thou wert subduing all thine enemies.' Now, Namuki is evil: having thus, indeed, slain that evil, his hateful enemy, Indra wrested from him his energy, or vital power. Let him who has an enemy perform the Sautrâmaṇî: he thereby slays that evil, his hateful enemy, and wrests from him his energy, or vital power. In his (Namuki's) severed head there was the Soma-juice mixed with blood. They loathed it. They perceived that (means of) drinking separately (one of) the two liquids,—'King Soma, the drink of immortality, is pressed[1];'— and having thereby made that (Soma) palatable, they took it in (as food).

5. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 1), 'Thee, the sweet (liquor I mix) with the sweet (Soma),' he compounds (the ingredients for the preparation of) the Surâ-liquor[2], and makes it palatable;—'the strong

[1] Vâg. S. XIX, 72 seq. On the myth cp. Muir, O. S. T., vol. v, p. 94.

[2] The preparation of the Surâ is described in Kâty. XIX, 1, 20–21 and comms., and by Mahîdhara on Vâg. S. XIX, 1. in the following way. Having purchased (a) malted rice (sashpa), malted barley (tokma), and fried rice (lâgâh), and (b) various vegetable substances (called with the generic name of nagnahu) serving as spices and ferments, such as the bark of Vatica robusta, three

with the strong,' he thereby bestows energy on him (the Sacrificer);—'the immortal with the immortal,' he thereby bestows life on him;—'the honeyed with the honeyed,' he thereby bestows flavour to it (the liquor);—'I mix with the Soma,' he thereby makes it (the Surâ-liquor) a form of Soma.

6. 'Thou art Soma: get thee matured for the Aśvins! get thee matured for Sarasvatî! get thee matured for Indra Sutrâman!' for these were the deities who first prepared that sacrifice, and with their help he now prepares it; and, moreover, he thereby provides these deities with their share. He distils it with a view to (its being like) the Soma-pressing. For three nights it remains standing, for the Soma remains standing for three nights after it has been bought: he thus makes it a form of Soma.

---

myrobalans (nutmeg, areca-nut, and cloves), ginger, hog-weed, &c., he takes them into the fire-house, and pounds the two lots separately. He then prepares two gruels or mashes of rice and millet respectively, adding more water than is ordinarily used, puts them on the fire till they boil over, and catches the overflowing water in two separate vessels. He then adds thereto one-third part of the (still separate) pounded malted rice and barley and fried rice (or one-sixth part into each vessel), and likewise one-half of the spice (or one-fourth part into each vessel): this mixture, called mâsara (serving both as malt and as flavouring matter), is allowed to dry and is then pounded. One-half of the remaining pounded malted rice and barley and fried rice, as well as the whole of the remaining spices, is then, in equal parts, added to the two mashes, which are thereupon poured into a large vessel, after which the pounded 'mâsara' is mixed with the compound whilst the above formula is pronounced; and the pot is deposited in a hole dug in the south-western corner of the fire-shed (śâlâ), where it remains standing for three days (and nights), during which the milk of one, two, and three cows respectively, and the remaining quantities of malted and fried grain are gradually added to it (see XII, 8, 2, 8–10).

7. There are two Vedis [1] (altar-grounds),—'Two worlds in truth there are,' they say, 'the world of the gods, and the world of the Fathers.' One (of the Vedis) is in the north, and the other in the south, for the world of the gods is in the north, and the world of the Fathers in the south: by the northern one he secures the world of the gods, by the southern one the world of the Fathers.

8. There are both milk and Surâ-liquor; for milk is Soma, and the Surâ-liquor food: through the milk he secures the Soma-drink, and through the Surâ-liquor food. And milk is the nobility (chieftaincy), and Surâ-liquor the peasantry (clan); the milk he purifies after purifying the Surâ-liquor: he thus produces the nobility from out of the peasantry, for the nobility is produced from out of the peasantry.

9. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 3), 'Purified by Vâyu's

[1] The two Vedis are prepared, in front of the Âhavanîya, by the Adhvaryu and Pratiprasthâtṛi respectively in a way similar to those required for the Varuṇapraghâsâḥ, see part i, p. 392, note. There is some space between them, but not more than will allow a seat to stand on both Vedis (XII, 8, 3, 6). The dimensions (of the northern altar-ground) are in accordance with those of the mahâvedi (measuring thirty-six prakramas or steps long, twenty-four on the hind (west) side, and thirty-six (or thirty) on the front (east) side), except that the unit of measure, in this case, is one-third prakrama,—the area being thus equal to one-ninth of the mahâvedi (some authorities, however, making it one-third). Behind the two Vedis two mounds (khara) are thrown up for the three cups of milk, or three cups of Surâ-liquor respectively, to be deposited thereon. On the northern Vedi an uttara-vedi (high-altar), occupying about one-third of its area, is prepared, on which a sacrificial fire (taken from the Âhavanîya) is afterwards laid down for the use of the Adhvaryu in making libations from the cups of milk; another fire being laid down on the southern mound for the use of the Pratiprasthâtṛi in making libations from the cups of Surâ-liquor.

purifier is the backward-flowing, exceeding swift Soma,' he purifies (the liquor[1]) in the case of one purged by Soma: in a suitable manner he thus purifies him (the Sacrificer);—'Indra's faithful companion:' whatever energy, or vital power, had passed away from him with that (Soma), that he now restores to him.

10. With, 'Purified by Vâyu's purifier is the forward-flowing, exceeding swift Soma,' he purifies (the liquor) in the case of one who has vomited Soma: in a suitable manner he thus purifies him (the Sacrificer);—'Indra's faithful companion:' whatever energy, or vital power, had passed away from him with that (Soma), that he now restores to him.

11. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 4), 'She purifieth thy liquor,' he, for prosperity, purifies (the Surâ) in the case of one wishing for prosperity;—'thy Soma, she, the daughter of Sûrya:' the daughter of Sûrya (the sun) assuredly is Faith, and by faith that (liquor) becomes Soma-juice, and by faith he makes it to be Soma-juice;—'with the perpetual tail,' for with a tail-whisk that (liquor) is purified.

12. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 5), 'The Brahman

[1] This performance thus takes place on the fourth day. Behind the mound of the southern Vedi a hole is dug, and an ox-hide spread over it. On this skin the unstrained liquor (parisrut) is either poured, a fine strainer (made of bamboo) being then laid thereon so that the clear liquor percolates through the holes, and the dregs remain below; or the strainer is placed on the skin, and the unstrained liquor is poured on it so as to allow the clear liquor to flow through on the skin. The liquor is then poured into a pan (sata), and further purified by a whisk of cow and horse-hair being drawn through it, or the liquor being strained through the hair.

and Kshatra he purifieth,' he purifies the milk[1]: he thus produces the Kshatra from out of the Brahman, for from out of the priesthood the nobility is produced;—'the fiery spirit and energy;' fiery spirit and energy, vital power, he thus bestows on him;—'with the Surâ the Soma,' for with the Surâ-liquor is Soma;—'the juice, is distilled,' for from the distilled the juice is obtained;—'for joy,' to joy (intoxication), indeed, the Soma-juice contributes, and to joy also does the Surâ-liquor: he thus secures both the joy of the Soma, and the joy of the Surâ;—'with the pure juice, O god, satiate the deities!' that is, 'with the pure juice satisfy thou the deities;'—'with sap bestow thou food on the Sacrificer,' sap and food he thereby bestows on the Sacrificer. The cups of milk are taken first, then the cups of Surâ-liquor: he thereby makes the peasantry obedient to the nobility.

13. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 6), 'Yea, even as the owners of barley cut their barley[2]. . .,' (the Adhvaryu) fills (three) cups of milk,—barley-stalks are Soma-stems, and milk is Soma-juice: by means of Soma he thus makes it Soma-juice. With a single (verse) he fills them: singly and solely on the Sacrificer he thus bestows prosperity, for milk is prosperity.

14. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 7), 'Separately, indeed, a seat, acceptable to the gods, hath been prepared for you two,' he fills the (three) cups

[1] This takes place on the northern Vedi, by means of a wooden (reed) vessel and a strainer of goat's and sheep's hair.

[2] For the complete verse, see V, 5, 4, 24.

of Surâ-liquor; for separate, indeed, are the Soma-juice and the Surâ-liquor; and 'acceptable to the gods' he says, because these two are indeed acceptable to the gods; and 'separately a seat hath been prepared' he says, because there are two altar-grounds;—'do not ye mingle in the highest heaven!' he thereby keeps him (the Sacrificer) from evil;—'the potent Surâ-liquor thou art,' he thereby makes Surâ to be Sûrâ;—'and this is Soma,' he thereby makes Soma to be Soma;—'entering thine own seat, injure me not!' he thereby turns it (the Surâ-liquor) away to its own seat for his own safety. With a single (verse) he fills them: singly and solely on the Sacrificer he thus bestows fame, for the Surâ-liquor is fame.

15. Verily, the cups of milk are the nobility (chieftaincy), and the cups of Surâ-liquor are the peasantry (clan): thus, were he to draw (the cups) without interlinking them, he would detach the peasantry from the nobility, and the nobility from the peasantry, and would cause confusion between the higher and lower, and a failure of the sacrifice. He draws them so as to be interlinked[1], and thereby combines the peasantry with the nobility, and the nobility with the peasantry, for the prevention of confusion between the higher and lower, and for the success of the sacrifice.

16. And the cups of milk are the vital airs, and the cups of Surâ-liquor the body: thus, were he

[1] That is to say, in drawing the cups he draws alternately a cup of milk, and a cup of Surâ; Kâty. Śr. XIX, 2, 21. According to ib. 22, the three cups of milk may, however, be drawn first, and then the cups of liquor.

to draw (the cups) without interlinking them, he would detach the body from the vital airs, and the vital airs from the body, and the Sacrificer would be liable to perish. He draws them so as to be interlinked, and thereby combines the body with the vital airs, and the vital airs with the body; and, indeed, he also lays vital power (or life) into him: whence he who has performed the Sautrâmaṇî, and even he who thus knows this, attains the full (measure of) life.

17. And the cups of milk are Soma, and the cups of Surâ-liquor food: thus, in that both cups of milk and cups of Surâ-liquor are taken, he indeed secures for himself both the Soma-drink and food.

18. And the cups of milk are cattle, and the cups of Surâ-liquor food: thus, in that both cups of milk and cups of Surâ-liquor are taken, he indeed secures for himself both cattle and food.

19. And the cups of milk are domestic animals, and the cups of Surâ-liquor wild animals: thus, in that both cups of milk and cups of Surâ-liquor are taken, he indeed secures for himself both domestic and wild animals. And he mixes the cups of milk with both cultivated and wild-growing (fruit), whereby both cultivated and wild-growing food is secured to the domestic animals.

20. As to this they say, 'In that there are those wild beasts, this is a form of that cruel deity; and if he were to mix the cups of milk with hairs of those beasts, he would thrust the cattle into the mouth of Rudra, and the Sacrificer would be without cattle: let him not mix them, or cattle would not be secured by him, for Rudra is the ruler of animals.' The cups of Surâ-liquor alone he mixes with hairs of those

beasts: he thus puts into the Surâ what belongs to Rudra, whence by drinking Surâ-liquor one becomes of violent (raudra) mind; and on the wild beasts alone he thus directs Rudra's shaft so as to insure safety to the domestic animals; and cattle are secured by him and he does not thrust the cattle into the mouth of Rudra.

21. [Vâg. S. XIX, 10; 11,] 'That dysentery which spareth both the tiger and the wolf, the winged eagle and the lion, may it spare this (Sacrificer) trouble!—Whereas, as a child, joyfully sucking, I chafed my mother, so now, O Agni, I become freed from my debt: unharmed by me are my parents.'

22. With two eagle-feathers, the Adhvaryu and Pratiprasthâtri purify the Sacrificer, turned towards the east behind the altar-ground[1], both upwards and downwards,—this is a form of the in-breathing and the upward breathing: the in-breathing and the upward breathing he thereby secures; for both upwards and downwards this breath passes along the body. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 11), 'Uniting ye are: unite me with happiness[2]!' he touches the cups of milk: with prosperity and fame he thereby endows him. With, 'Disuniting ye are: disunite me from evil!' he touches the cups of Surâ-liquor: he thereby keeps him from evil.

[1] That is, behind the mahâ-vedi, near the antarhpâtya-peg, where the purchase of the ingredients for the preparation of the Surâ had taken place.

[2] Cf. V, 1, 2, 18, where the same two formulas are used whilst the Soma and Surâ-cups are first held together, and then withdrawn from each other; and the terms 'samprik' and 'viprik' were accordingly taken in a passive sense, 'united' and 'disunited;'

EIGHTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, when Indra's energies, or vital powers, departed from him, the gods restored them by means of this very sacrifice. Both cups of milk and cups of Surâ-liquor are filled: they thereby restore to him his energies, or vital powers. On the northern fire they offer (from) the cups of milk, and thereby provide him[1] with the bright liquor, with the Soma-drink.

2. He (the Adhvaryu) offers (of the three cups of milk) with (Vâg. S. XIX, 32), 'By their devotions the buffalos quicken the sacrifice,'—the buffalos, doubtless, are the officiating priests, and devotion is sacrifice: through the priests he causes the sacrifice to prosper, and through the sacrifice the sacrificer[2];—'the barhis-seated one, supplied with Surâ and goodly heroes,' supplied with Surâ, indeed, is this barhis-seated sacrifice, to wit, the Sautrâmaṇî: by means of the barhis (the sacred grass on the Vedi), and the sacrifice, he causes him to prosper;—'they who bestow Soma,'—they thus bestow the Soma-drink upon him;—'with the deities in heaven,'—they thus place him with the deities in heaven;—'may we enjoy ourselves,'—the Soma-juice, indeed, con-

---

whilst here the active sense seems preferable, the term 'vip*rîk*' probably referring to the tendency of fiery liquor for producing broils.

[1] Or, cause him to prosper, render him successful by means of the liquor; MS. I. O. 311 reads 'samardhayanti.'

[2] Or, perhaps, he provides the sacrifice with priests, and the Sacrificer with sacrifice. For obvious reasons the first two pâdas of the verse have been transposed in the translation.

duces to joy, and so does the Surâ-liquor: both the joy of Soma and the joy of Surâ he thus secures;—'worshipping Indra with good hymns of praise!'—for the hymn of praise is food for the gods, and the sacrifice also is food: by sacrifice, by food, he thus makes him successful. Having sacrificed, they drink (of the milk), and thereby increase what is prosperous with him.

3. He drinks[1], with (Vâg. S. XIX, 34), 'The (Soma) which the Aśvins (brought away) from Namuki, the Âsura,'—for the two Aśvins indeed brought away that (Soma-juice) from Namuki;—'and Sarasvatî distilled for the sake of Indra's strength,'—for Sarasvatî indeed distilled it for the sake of Indra's strength;—'that clear, sweet draught,'—for clear and sweet indeed is that draught, Soma;—'King Soma I now drink,'—it is thus king Soma that comes to be drunk by him. The cups of Surâ-liquor they offer (from) on the southern fire[2], and thereby keep him (the Sacrificer) from evil[3].

4. He (the Pratiprasthâtṛi) offers (libations from the cups of Surâ-liquor[4]), with (Vâg. S. XIX, 33), 'What essence there is of thine, gathered from the plants,' for this Surâ-liquor, indeed, is the essence

[1] For particulars as to the persons who partake of the respective cups of milk and Surâ-liquor, see XII, 8, 2, 22 seqq.

[2] That is, on the fire of the southern of the two special Vedis, see p. 225, note.

[3] Viz. inasmuch as the libations of liquor are not made on the offering-fire proper, the (northern) Âhavanîya, where the oblations from the cups of milk are made.

[4] These cups are of the same kind as those used for the draughts of Soma, being made of palâśa-wood, and resembling mortars in shape; cf. part ii, p. 259, note 1, towards the end.

of both the waters and the plants: by the essence of both the waters and the plants he thus causes him to prosper;—'the strength of the Soma-juice together with the Surâ-liquor,'—he thereby secures what strength there is in the Soma-juice and in the Surâ-liquor;—'by that exhilarating drink quicken thou the Sacrificer,'—that is, 'by that exhilarating drink gladden thou the Sacrificer;'—'Sarasvatî, the Aśvins, Indra, and Agni,'—by deities he (the priest) thus causes the sacrifice to prosper, and by deities and sacrifice the Sacrificer. Having made the offering, they drink (the liquor), and thereby cause to prosper what is unprosperous with him.

5. He drinks, with (Vâg. S. XIX, 35), 'Whatever is mingled herewith of the juicy Soma,'—he thereby secures for him the essence (juice) of the effused (extracted) and the infused[1] (Soma);—'which Indra drank with eagerness,'—for Indra, indeed, drank it with eagerness;—'that (essence) thereof (I drink) with propitious mind,'—for unpropitious, as it were, to a Brâhmaṇa is that drink, the Surâ-liquor: having thus made it propitious, he takes it to himself;—'King Soma I drink,'—it is thus king Soma that comes to be drunk by him.

6. Here, now, other Adhvaryus hire some Râǵanya or Vaiśya with the view that he shall drink that (liquor); but let him not do this; for, indeed, this Soma-drink falls to the share of the fathers and grandfathers of whoever drinks (the liquor[2]) on

[1] For the distinction between 'suta' and 'âsuta' (not 'asuta'), cf. XII, 8, 2, 12.

[2] According to Kâty. Śr. XIX, 3, 15, some authorities, however,

this occasion. Having shifted three coals of the southern fire to outside the enclosing-stones [1], he may there offer (of the liquor) with these (three) utterances (Vâg. S. XIX, 36) :—

7. 'To the Svadhâ-loving Fathers be Svadhâ, adoration!' he thereby places the Fathers with the Svadhâ in the world of the Fathers.—'To the Svadhâ-loving grandfathers be Svadhâ, adoration!' he thereby places the grandfathers with the Svadhâ in the world of the grandfathers.—'To the Svadhâ-loving great-grandfathers be Svadhâ, adoration!' he thereby places the great-grandfathers with the Svadhâ in the world of the great-grandfathers.

8. Having fetched water, he pours it (into the cups) with, 'The Fathers have drunk:' he thereby bestows food on them;—'the Fathers have enjoyed themselves:' he thereby causes them to enjoy themselves;—'the Fathers have become satisfied:' he thereby satisfies them;—'may the Fathers cleanse themselves!' he thereby purifies all of them from the first downwards, for the Sautrâmaṇî is a means of purification [2].

think the inhaling of the fumes of the liquor to be sufficient for this purpose.

[1] The coals are to be placed on the south side of the southern fire, from north to south, and the libation from the Âśvina cup is made on the northernmost coal, that from the Sârasvata cup on the central one, and that from the Aindra cup on the southern one. According to Kâty. XIX, 3, 17, and Mahîdhara on Vâg. S. XIX, 36, this is a fourth alternative of disposing of the liquor (in favour of the Fathers), the others being actual drinking, or smelling it, or hiring some one to drink it.

[2] At XII, 7, 2, 13 a perforated pot (with a hundred holes) was mentioned as being used at this sacrifice. According to Kâty. Śr.

9. By three implements of purification he purifies,—three in number are these worlds: by means of these worlds he thus purifies him.

10. With 'pâvamânî[1] (verses)' they purify; for pâvamânîs are a means of purification: by a means of purification they thus purify him.

11. With three (verses) they purify each time,—there are three vital airs, the in-breathing, the up-breathing, and the through-breathing: it is by means of these that they purify him.

12. With nine (verses) they purify,—there are nine vital airs: by means of the vital airs they purify him, and when purified they establish him again in the vital airs.

13. They purify by means of a (goat's hair and sheep's wool) strainer,—such a strainer doubtless is a form (symbol) of goats and sheep: by means of goats and sheep they thus purify him.

14. They purify by means of a tail-whisk,—such a tail-whisk doubtless is a form of kine and horses: with kine and horses they thus purify him.

XIX, 3, 20, and Mahîdhara on Vâg. S. XIX, 37, use is made of this pot at this juncture in much the same way as is described in V, 5, 4, 27 seqq.; viz. two poles are driven into the ground north and south of the southern fire, and a bamboo stick laid thereon: on a string fastened to this stick the pot, containing a tail-whisk (for straining) and a piece of gold, is then made to hang over the fire, and the remains of the Surâ-liquor poured into it; and whilst it trickles through into the fire, the priest makes the Sacrificer pronounce the verses Vâg. S. XIX, 37–44, 52–60, addressed to the different kinds of departed ancestors.

[1] That is, verses recited at the Soma-sacrifice whilst the Soma-juice is clarifying; the term being usually confined to the verses of hymns of the ninth ma*ṇḍ*ala of the *Ṛ*iksa*ṃ*hitâ, whence indeed most of the verses used on this occasion (Vâg. S. XIX, 37–44) are taken.

15. They purify by means of gold,—that (metal), to wit, gold, doubtless is a form of the gods: by means of a form of the gods they thus purify him.

16. They purify him by means of Surâ-liquor, for the Surâ is purified: they thus purify him by that which is purified; and even as the liquor, whilst being purified, is cleared of impure matter[1], so is that Sacrificer thereby freed from all evil who, knowing this, performs the Sautrâmaṇî, or who even knows this.

17. Here, now, they ask, 'Is the Sautrâmaṇî to be performed, or is it not to be performed, seeing that (in any case) they continuously repel from him all evil?' As to this Revottaras Sthapati Pâṭava Kâkra once said, 'Even after making the surrender, one ought certainly to perform the sacrifice; for the Sacrificer is the body of the sacrifice, and the officiating priests are its limbs; and wherever the body is pure there the limbs also are pure; both of them, indeed, purify him, and both of them repel the evil from him: therefore even after making the surrender (of one's own self) one ought certainly to sacrifice.'

18. But, indeed, those who perform at the southern fire, go down to the world of the Fathers. He offers an oblation of ghee: ghee being (material of) sacrifice, it is by sacrifice that they establish themselves in the sacrifice.

19. He (the Sacrificer) offers, with (Vâg. S. XIX, 45), 'The Fathers who, one in form and one in mind, live in Yama's realm,—may their world,

[1] The term 'balkasa' (apparently connected with 'valkala') would seem to mean vegetable matter, esp. chaff or husks. The comm. explains it by 'kidisa' (? kilbisha or kiknasa).

the Svadhâ, adoration, and sacrifice prosper among the gods!' he thereby commits the Fathers to Yama, and he also conquers the world of the Fathers. Having, all of them, invested themselves sacrificially[1], they betake themselves to the northern fire, for the northern fire[2] is this (terrestrial) world[3]: they thus establish themselves in this world. He offers an oblation of ghee: ghee being sacrifice, it is from out of the sacrifice that they establish themselves in the sacrifice.

20. He (the Sacrificer) offers, with (Vâg. S. XIX, 46), 'Mine own (people) who are one in form and one in mind, living among the living,—may their fortune prosper with me, in this world, for a hundred years!' he thereby secures the good fortune of his own people, and he also confers long life on them. Whilst they hold on to each other, he (the Adhvaryu) offers milk, for milk is vital air and food: in the vital air, in food, they thus finally establish themselves.

21. He offers, with (Vâg. S. XIX, 47), 'Two paths for mortals have I heard of, (that of the Fathers and that of the gods[4]),'—'two paths

[1] That is, by shifting their Brâhmaṇical cord so as to hang across the breast from the left shoulder to the right hip.

[2] That is, the fire on the uttara-vedi of the northern of the two special Vedis, see p. 225, note.

[3] They are supposed to return to the earth from the world of the Fathers below.

[4] Not only is the second pâda of the verse omitted here (as also in MS. I. O. 311), but the construction of the first half of the verse is also rather peculiar, the most natural rendering being, 'Two paths of the Fathers have I heard of, (those) of the gods and of men.' The same verse occurs *Ṛ*ks. X, 88, 15 (with the reading 'dve srutî' instead of 'dve sṛtî'), where Grassmann translates,—

indeed there are,' they say, 'those of the gods and of the Fathers,'—'thereon all that liveth here passeth,' for thereon, indeed, everything living here passes;—'what there is between the father and the mother,'—the father, doubtless, is yonder (sky), and the mother is this (earth): by means of these two he leads the Fathers to the world of heaven. He (the Sacrificer) alone drinks what is left from the offering[1]: to himself alone he thus takes prosperity, for milk is prosperity.

22. He drinks it, with (Vâg. S. XIX, 48), 'May this oblation be productive for me,'—for productive indeed it is, whether it be milk or Soma;—'possessed of ten heroes,'—the ten heroes, doubtless, are the vital airs: vital airs he thus takes to himself;—'possessed of all the troops,'—all the troops, doubtless, are the limbs: it is limbs he thus takes to himself;—'for well-being: breath-winning,'—the breath of life he thus wins;—'race-winning,'—a race (offspring) he thus wins;—'cattle-winning,'—cattle he thus wins;—'place-winning,'—for it is for a place (in heaven) that he sacrifices: it is that he gains;—'safety-winning,'—the (place of) safety, doubtless, is the heavenly world: in the heavenly world he thus finally establishes himself;—'May Agni raise for me abundant offspring,

'Two paths there are, so the Fathers have told me, passable for gods and men;' whilst Ludwig takes it in the way just referred to. The above interpretation is that of Mahîdhara, who refers to Sat.-Br. I, 9, 2, 3; whilst Sâyaṇa (on *Ṛ*ks.) seems to take the two paths to be that of the Fathers and gods, and that of men (pit*ṛ*ṇâṁ devânâṁ *k*otâpi martyânâṁ *k*a dve srutî dvau mârgau); though he afterwards calls them 'devayâna' and 'pit*ṛ*yâṇa.'

[1] That is to say, the milk which remains in the pot (ukhâ), from which the milk used for the oblation was taken.

and bestow ye upon us food, milk, and seed!' it is to those (priests) who offer for him that he thus says, 'Bestow ye all this upon me!' By means of gold they cleanse themselves[1]; for gold is immortal life: in immortal life they thus finally establish themselves.

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Pragâpati created the (Soma-)sacrifice. He took it and performed it. When he had performed it, he felt like one emptied out. He saw this sacrificial performance, the Sautrâmaṇî, and performed it, and then he was again replenished; and, indeed, he who performs the Soma-sacrifice is, as it were, emptied out, for his wealth, his prosperity is, as it were, taken from him.

2. Having performed a Soma-sacrifice one ought to perform the Sautrâmaṇî: as a cow that has been milked would replenish again, even so, indeed, does he replenish himself,—he replenishes himself by offspring and cattle; and, verily, he who, knowing this, performs the Sautrâmaṇî, or he who (even) knows this, establishes himself in this world, and wins the heavenly world.

3. As to this Suplan Sârñgaya asked Pratîdarśa Aibhâvata[2], 'Seeing that neither does one

[1] Kâty. Śr. XIX, 3, 27, 'Over the kâtvâla (pit) they cleanse themselves, with their wives, putting gold between;' that is to say, whilst the water is poured on their hands a piece of gold is held between, over which the water flows.

[2] Cf. II, 4, 4, 3–4, where the latter is called Pratîdarśa Śvaikna (king of the Śvikna), whilst the former, after studying with him, is said to have been called Sahadeva Sârñgaya.

become initiated, nor are Soma-shoots[1] thrown down (to be pressed), how then does the Sautrâmaṇî become a Soma-sacrifice?'

4. He replied, 'The observance of the fast, assuredly, is the head of the sacrifice, and the initiation its body. And the truth, doubtless, is of the form of the fast-observance, and faith of that of the initiation. And mind is of the form of the Sacrificer, and speech of that of the sacrifice.'

5. Thus, when he enters upon the fast-observance, he thereby restores the head to the body of the sacrifice, and he puts truth into faith, and the Sacrificer into the sacrifice.

6. Therefore at this sacrifice (the Sautrâmaṇi) the fast-observance[2] is the initiation. Now, the fast-observance is a male, and the initiation a female; and the truth is a male, and faith a female; and the mind is a male, and speech a female; and the Sacrificer is the male to his wife, whence wherever there is a husband there is a wife: and at the very outset of the sacrifice he thus sets up couples with a view to production.

7. 'And, indeed, those (materials) are the Soma-shoots at this sacrifice,' they say, 'to wit, the malted rice, the malted barley, and the fried rice.'

8. The malted rice[3], indeed, is of the form of the

[1] The 'Somâṁsava iva' would seem to have here the force of 'Soma-shoots proper,' only substitutes (milk and liquor) being used instead.

[2] That is to say, the observance of the fast—by which the Sacrificer during the four days of the performance of the Sautrâmaṇî, lives solely on the remains of the Agnihotra—takes the place of the ordinary initiation of the Soma-sacrifice, there being no Dîkshâ at the Sautrâmaṇî.

[3] The malted rice, malted barley, and fried rice, referred to in

morning-pressing, for the morning-pressing is this (terrestrial) world, and the latter relates to the Aśvins, and Âśvina milk he pours (into the Surâ-liquor) the first night: he thus provides him (the Sacrificer [1]) with the morning-pressing—with its own world, with its own deity, with its own form [2].

9. And the malted barley is of the form of the midday-pressing, for the midday-pressing is the air, and the latter relates to Sarasvatî [3], and the Sârasvata milk he pours (into the Surâ) the second night: he thus provides him with the midday-pressing—with its own world, with its own deity, with its own form.

10. And the fried rice is of the form of the evening-pressing, for the evening-pressing is the sky, and the latter relates to Indra, and Aindra milk he pours (into the Surâ) the third night: he thus provides him with the evening-pressing—with its own world, with its own deity, with its own form.

11. The milk of one (cow) he pours (into the Surâ) the first night, the milk of two the second

---

this and the next two paragraphs, refer to the remnants of these materials, not used at first in the preparation of the Surâ, and amounting to one-third of the original quantity of each; these being added successively during the three nights during which the Surâ has to mature; cf. p. 223, note 2.

[1] Or, he renders him, the Sacrificer (or, perhaps, it, the sacrifice), successful by means of the morning-pressing.

[2] The literal translation would seem to be,—he thus provides him with the respective (sva) world, with the respective deity, and with the respective form,—(hence) with the morning-pressing. It may be remarked, however, that the deities here connected with the three services (the Aśvins, Sarasvatî, and Indra) are not those elsewhere associated with them (Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas, IV, 3, 5, 1; or Agni, Indra, Viśve Devâḥ, XI, 5, 9, 7).

[3] Viz. inasmuch as it is full of moisture (saras).

night, and the milk of three the third night: he thus provides him with the pressings, in accordance with their forms, and in accordance with their deities.

12. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 2), 'Hereof pour ye to the juice,' he pours in (the milk) for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing;—'(to) the Soma who is the supreme offering,'—for this, to wit, Soma, is indeed the supreme offering (-material): he thus makes it[1] to be the supreme offering;—'the manly one who hath rushed into the waters,' for both with water and between it is he (Soma) indeed pressed out;—'I have pressed out Soma by stones,' for by means of stones Soma is indeed pressed out: it is thus by means of stones he presses it out for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing.

13. As to this they say, 'That Sautrâmaṇî, surely, is of the form of both effused (extracted) and infused[2] (Soma);—to wit, that essence of both water and plants, the milk, is of the form of the effused (Soma); and that essence of food, the liquor, is of the form of infused (Soma): by both (kinds of) pressings he thus expresses it, by both pressings he secures it.

14. As to this they say, 'Seeing that the Soma-juice is pressed out by stones, how as to the Sautrâmaṇi?' Let him reply, 'By the directions[3] and the

[1] The 'enam' must refer to the Surâ-liquor, treated as identical with Soma.

[2] I do not quite understand the distinction between 'suta' and 'âsuta'; cf. XII, 8, 1, 5; unless the former be the pure Soma-juice, and the latter that mixed with other ingredients.

[3] The 'praisha' are the directions by which the Maitrâvaruṇa calls on the Hotṛi to recite the offering-formulas (cf. part ii, p. 183, note 2). For the fore-offerings of the three victims, these directions are given, Vâg. S. XXI, 29–40. They all commence with 'Hotâ

Âprî-verses;' for the directions (praisha) are in the Brihatî (metre), and the pressing-stones are of bârhata nature: by means of stones the Soma-juice is indeed pressed out, and by means of stones he now presses it out for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing.

15. All (the praishas) contain (the word) 'payas' (milk), for in the form of milk Soma is (here) pressed[1]; they all contain (the word) 'Soma,' for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing; they all contain (the word) 'parisrut' (spirituous liquor), for in the form of spirituous liquor Soma is (here) pressed; they all contain (the word) 'ghrita' (ghee), for this—to wit, ghee—doubtless is manifestly a form of the sacrifice: he thus makes it to be manifestly a form of the sacrifice; they all contain (the word) 'madhu' (honey), for this—to wit, honey—is manifestly a form of Soma: he thus makes it to be manifestly a form of Soma.

16. They all refer to the Asvins[2], for the sake of healing-power[3]; they all refer to Sarasvatî, for the obtainment of food; they all refer to Indra, for the obtainment of energy, or vital power.

17. And, again, as to why they all refer to the Asvins, all of them to Sarasvatî, and all of them to Indra,—these, indeed, were the deities who first

yakshat' (may the Hotri worship!), and end with 'payah somah parisrutâ ghritam madhu vyantv âgyasya hotar yaga' (milk, Soma, with parisrut-liquor, ghee, honey,—may they partake of the butter, Hotri worship!).

[1] ? Literally, 'by (way of) milk'—or, perhaps, 'by the admixture of milk—Soma is (here, as it were) produced.'

[2] In all the directions referred to, the three deities are named.

[3] The two Asvins are the physicians of the gods. Cf. IV, 1, 5. 8 seqq.; XII, 7, 2, 3.

prepared this sacrifice (the Sautrâmaṇî): with the help of these deities he thus prepares it; and, besides, he also provides these deities with a share.

18. The invitatory and offering formulas are made continuous[1], and relate to the same deities,—for the sake of continuity and uninterruptedness of the race (offspring). All of them relate to the Aśvins, all of them to Sarasvatî, and all of them to Indra: the significance of this is the same as before.

19. The Âprî-formulas[2] are anushṭubh verses; for the Anushṭubh is speech, and with speech Soma is pressed: he thus presses it with speech, for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-sacrifice. All of them relate to the Aśvins, all of them to Sarasvatî, and all of them to Indra: the significance of this is the same as before.

20. The anupraishas[3] (after-directions) are in the

[1] This refers to the puro'nuvâkyâs and yâgyâs of the oblations of omentum (vapâ) of the three victims. For these formulas the three verses, Vâg. S. XX, 67–69, are used in such a way that verse 1 forms the anuvâkyâ, and verse 2 the yâgyâ, of the Aśvins' oblation; verse 2 the anuvâkyâ, and verse 3 the yâgyâ, of Sarasvatî's oblation; and verse 3 the anuvâkyâ, and verse 1 the yâgyâ, of Indra's oblation. In each of the three verses all the three deities are mentioned.—In exactly the same way the three verses, XX, 70–72, are used as the anuvâkyâs and yâgyâs of the three paśupuroḍâśas; and 73–75 as those of the chief oblations (havis) of meat-portions.

[2] The Âprîs (propitiatory verses, cf. part ii, p. 185) are the offering-formulas (yâgyâ) of the eleven (or twelve) fore-offerings (prayâga) of the animal sacrifice. Those used on the present occasion are the twelve verses given, Vâg. S. XX, 55–66; there being on this occasion (in the second and third places) fore-offerings both to Tanûnapât and Narâśaṁsa. In each of these verses, again, all three deities are referred to.

[3] I do not exactly know what formulas are thereby referred to.

gâgata metre; for the Gagatî is this (earth), and by means of her Soma is pressed: by means of her he thus presses it for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing. All of them relate to the Aśvins, all of them to Sarasvatî, and all of them to Indra: the significance of this is the same as before.

21. This Sautrâmaṇî, then, is manifestly a Soma-sacrifice; and were the Sacrificer alone to drink (the liquor), it would be either an ishṭi-offering, or an animal sacrifice; but, for the sake of conformity (of the liquor) to the Soma, all the priests drink thereof, for all the priests drink of the Soma-juice.

22. The Adhvaryus[1] drink (the contents of) the Âśvina (cup), for the Aśvins are the Adhvaryus of the gods: they thus consume each his own share in his own abode.

23. The Hotṛi, Brahman, and Maitrâvaruṇa (drink that) of the Sârasvata (cup), for the Hotṛi is the voice of the sacrifice, the Brahman its heart, and the Maitrâvaruṇa its mind: they thus consume each his own share in his own abode.

24. The Sacrificer drinks (that of) the Aindra (cup), for this sacrifice, the Sautrâmaṇî, belongs to Indra, and even now he who sacrifices has his abode along with Indra: he thus consumes his own share in his own abode.

25. The Âśvina cup, indeed, is the eye, the Sârasvata one the vital air, and the Aindra one

---

It can hardly be the praishas of the anuyâgas (Vâg. S. XXI, 48–58), as these are not in the gagatî, but in the (ârshi) trishṭubh metre; though certainly each of them contains the names of the three deities.

[1] Viz. the Adhvaryu, and his two assistants, the Pratiprasthâtṛi and Agnîdh. Cf. XII, 8, 1, 3 seqq.

speech. From the Âśvina (cup) he pours (the remains) into the Sârasvata one, whereby he combines his eye with the vital airs; from the Sârasvata (cup) into the Aindra one, whereby he combines his vital airs with his speech, and also establishes his vital airs in (the channel of) speech, whence all the vital airs are established on speech.

26. Three (men) drink the Âśvina (cup), to wit, the Adhvaryu, Pratiprasthâtṛi, and Agnîdh; for this eye is threefold—the white, the black, and the pupil: he thus bestows on him the eye in accordance with its form.

27. Three (drink) the Sârasvata (cup), the Hotṛi, Brahman, and Maitrâvaruṇa; for threefold divided is this vital air—the in (and out)-breathing, the up-breathing, and the through-breathing: he thus bestows on him the vital air in accordance with its form.

28. Singly the Sacrificer drinks the Aindra (cup), for single is that distinction of the vital airs, speech: singly and solely to himself does he take that distinction, speech; whence he who has performed the Sautrâmaṇî becomes singly and solely the most distinguished among his own people, and so does even he who knows this.

29. The officiating priests (ṛitvig), doubtless, are the seasons (ṛitu), and the draughts (of liquor) are the months;—six priests drink, for there are six seasons: by means of the priests he thus secures the seasons.

30. There are twelve draughts[1], and twelve

[1] Viz. inasmuch as three priests partake of each of the first two cups of milk, and of the first two cups of Surâ-liquor, and each priest drinks twice.

months: by means of the draughts he thus secures the months. The priests drink again and again by turns, whence the seasons and months succeed one another by turns.

31. The thirteenth draught the Sacrificer takes, for, indeed, that thirteenth month is manifestly the year itself: it is this he secures by obtaining (that draught). And, indeed, the Sautrâmaṇî is the same as the year, and by means of this he wins everything, and secures everything for himself.

32. There are three victims, for three in number are these worlds: it is these worlds he thereby secures,—to wit, this (terrestrial) world by that of the Aśvins, the air by that of Sarasvatî, and the sky by that of Indra: he thus wins and secures these worlds for himself in accordance with their (peculiar) form and deity.

33. There are three sacrificial cakes, for there are three seasons: it is the seasons he thereby secures,—to wit, the summer by that of Indra, the rainy season by that of Savitṛi, and the winter by that of Varuṇa: he thus wins and secures the seasons for himself in accordance with their (peculiar) form and deity.

34. There are six cups (of milk and liquor), for there are six seasons: it is the seasons he thereby secures,—to wit, the spring and summer by the two Âśvina (cups), the rainy season and autumn by the two Sârasvata ones, and the winter and dewy season by the two Aindra ones: he thus wins and secures the seasons for himself in accordance with their form and deity.

35. The invitatory and offering formulas are made continuous, and relate to the same deities—

for the sake of the continuity and uninterruptedness of the seasons. They are all of them invitatory formulas and all offering-formulas[1], whence all the seasons pass onwards, and all of them return. All (the formulas) are first, all of them intermediate, and all of them last, whence all the seasons are first, all of them intermediate, and all of them last. All the cups have two (formulas, an)-invitatory and (an) offering-formula,—this is of the form of day and night: it is the day and the night he thus secures for himself; whence both the seasons and the months are established on day and night.

36. The Sautrâmaṇî, truly, is the same as the year, and the same as the moon; and the Sacrificer is manifestly the sun: his vedi (altar-ground) is this earth, his uttara-vedi the air, his barhis the sky, his officiating priests the quarters, his fuel the trees, his ghee the waters, his oblations the plants, his fire Agni himself, his saṃsthâ (the particular form of sacrifice) the year—and, indeed, everything here, whatever there is, is the year; whence he who has performed the Sautrâmaṇî wins everything, and secures everything for himself.

Third Brâhmaṇa.

1. Tvash*ṭri*, seeing his son slain, brought Soma suitable for witchery, and withheld from Indra. Indra, committing a desecration of the sacrifice, by main force drank off his (Tvash*ṭri*'s) Soma-juice. He went asunder in every direction,—from his mouth and vital airs his excellence and fame passed

[1] See p. 244, note 1, where it is shown that each of the three verses serves successively as puro-nuvâkyâ and as yâgyâ.

away, and entered the cattle, whence cattle are one's fame: and famous, indeed, is he who, knowing this, is consecrated[1] by the Sautrâmaṇî.

2. The two Aśvins and Sarasvatî then prepared for him this sacrifice, the Sautrâmaṇî, for the purpose of healing him, and thereby consecrated him: thereby he became the highest of gods, and so does he who is consecrated by that (offering) become the highest among his own people.

3. He consecrates him on a black antelope skin; for the black antelope skin is the sacrifice[2]: it is at the sacrifice he thus consecrates him; on the hairy side (of the skin), for the hair is the metres: it is on the metres (or sacred writ) he thus consecrates him.

4. On a throne-seat he consecrates him, for imperial dignity is seated (established) on a throne-seat: by means of imperial dignity he thus causes him to attain imperial dignity.

5. It is made of udumbara wood, for the udumbara (ficus glomerata) is strength: for the sake of strength he thus is consecrated. It is knee-high, for knee-high is this (terrestrial) world, and it is for (the rule of) this world that the Kshatriya is consecrated; and the ruler (kshatra) indeed he becomes who is consecrated by the Sautrâmaṇî: therefore it is knee-high, and of unlimited size horizontally (in width and depth),—

6. For the throne-seat means royal dignity, and of unlimited prosperity is royal dignity. It is covered with plaited reed-work, for reed-grass is meet for sacrifice. Two of its feet stand on the

[1] Literally, sprinkled, i.e. anointed, with the 'vasâ,' or fat gravy obtained from the cooking of the sacrificial animals.

[2] See part i, p. 23, note 2.

northern, and two on the southern altar-ground[1], for the northern vedi is this (terrestrial) world, and the southern one the world of the Fathers: he thus consecrates him for both worlds.

7. Concerning this, Gaurîviti *Sâ*ktya, knowing this, once said, 'Like rulers[2], assuredly, we shall be in yonder world!' Perhaps[3] it was *Ri*shabha Yâg*ñ*atura, king of the *Sv*ikṇa, who had told him so.

8. He places the throne-seat, with (Vâg. S. XX, 1), 'Thou art the womb of the Kshatra, thou art the navel of the Kshatra!' for it indeed is the womb and navel of the Kshatra (ruling power).

9. He then spreads the black antelope skin thereon, with, 'May it not injure thee! do not

[1] For the two special Vedis, see p. 225, note 1.

[2] 'A kind of Kshatriyas,' Delbrück, Altind. Synt., p. 494.

[3] For this or some such meaning ('probably'—German, 'wohl' or 'vielleicht') which seems to me to suit best the use of '*sa*svat' in the Brâhma*ṇa*s, see part iii, p. 98, note 2.—Thus, at I, 2, 3, 2, I would now translate 'and perhaps it was Trita who slew him,—Indra at all events was exonerated from that (guilt), for he is a god.' Similarly, I, 8, 1, 4, 'perhaps it was a *gh*asha, for that (fish) grows best (fastest);' II, 2, 1, 2, 'If, on the other hand, that oblation were not offered up in him, he would perhaps burn either the Adhvaryu, or the Sacrificer.' Somewhat peculiar is the passage, I, 6, 3, 10, where *sa*svat occurs both in the relative and in the demonstrative clause, and where we can hardly translate otherwise than 'If, perchance, he had said, "Grow thou, the foe of Indra!" he (*Vri*tra) would perhaps have slain Indra.'—Hätte er vielleicht (etwa) gesagt: 'Wachse, du Feind Indras!' so würde er (*Vri*tra) vielleicht (? gewiss) Indra erschlagen haben.—If this be the right interpretation of these passages, they would have to be transferred, in the St. Petersb. Dict., from meaning b (?) to c, where 'vielleicht' would have to be added, as it certainly suits better than 'gewiss' (most likely) the last of the foregoing passages, at all events. The comm. explains '*sa*svat' by 'bahuk*ri*tva*h*.'

injure me!' for the black antelope skin is the sacrifice: (thus it is spread) for the safety of the sacrifice and his own self.

10. He then mounts it, with a verse to Varuṇa (Vâg. S. XX, 2), for Varuṇa is the king of the gods: by means of his own deity he thus consecrates him[1],—'He hath sat down, the upholder of the sacred law, Varuṇa, in the home-steads, for supreme rule, he the wise!'

11. He then throws down a gold and a silver plate (beneath his feet, the silver one beneath the left foot) with, 'Protect (me) from death!' (the gold one beneath the right foot[2] with,) 'Protect (me) from lightning!' The Virâg, doubtless, is the rain, and of this there are these two terrible forms, lightning and hail; of these the gold plate is of the form of lightning, and the silver one of that of hail: against these two deities he affords protection to him, whence he who has performed the Sautrâmaṇî has no fear of these two deities, as he also who thus knows this.

12. He consecrates him by sprinkling him with the fat gravy of the sacrificial animals, for the gravy of the animals means excellence: with that excellence, the essence of cattle, he thus sprinkles him. But that gravy is also the highest kind of food: with the highest kind of food he thus sprinkles him.

13. There are hoof-cups (of gravy), for on hoofs cattle support themselves: he thus causes him to obtain a support. There are thirty-three (such)

[1] Cf. V, 4, 4, 5, where the verse is explained.

[2] Or, on the head, according to others. The plates are of the usual round shape.

cupfuls, for thirty-three in number are all the deities: by means of all the deities he thus consecrates him. He offers them with *g*agatî verses, for animals are of *g*âgata (movable) nature: by means of the *G*agatî he thus secures cattle for him. With sixteen verses (Vâ*g*. S. XIX, 80–94) he offers, for animals are of sixteen parts: he thus bestows excellence (or prosperity) on him part by part.

14. 'With lead the wise, with wool and thread[1] the sages weave the web, the sacrifice: the Aśvins, Savitṛi, Sarasvatî, and Varuṇa healed the form of Indra[2].' Each time he has offered two (cupfuls) together, he pours the residue into a bowl (sata): he thereby establishes the days and nights, the half-months, the months, and the seasons in the year, and hence these days and nights, half-months, months, and seasons are established (contained) in the year.

15. The bowl is made of reed, for the reed has its birth-place in the waters, and the waters are all the deities: by means of all the deities he thus consecrates him.

16. A rubbing down (of the Sacrificer) with all manner of sweet-smelling substances takes place (before sprinkling him with fat), for such a rubbing down with all manner of sweet-smelling substances means supreme fragrance: with fragrance he thus consecrates (anoints) him.

17. He sprinkles him (with the fat gravy) in front while (himself) looking towards the back (west), for

[1] See p. 219, note 3.

[2] Only the first pâda of this, the first of the sixteen verses, is given in the text. Regarding the allusions in this verse, see XII, 7, 1, 10 seqq.; 2, 17; 7, 3, 3.

from the front food is visibly eaten. On every side (he sprinkles him) whilst moving round: he thus bestows food on him from all quarters, whence food is secured from all quarters by him who has performed the Sautrâmaṇî, or even by him who thus knows this.

18. With a formula to the Aśvins he sprinkles him first[1], then with one to Sarasvatî, then with one to Indra: it is by means of these deities he thus consecrates him. Now, some consecrate him by means both of these deities and those utterances, 'bhûḥ, bhuvaḥ, svar,' 'for,' say they, 'these utterances ("earth, air, heaven") mean all this (universe): it is by means of all this (universe) we thus consecrate him.' Let him, however, not do so, but let him only consecrate him by means of those deities, for those deities, indeed, are all this (universe).

19. He consecrates him prior to the Svishṭakṛit (offering), for the Svishṭakṛit is the Kshatra: he thus consecrates him by means of the Kshatra (or, by a Kshatriya). And he consecrates him between (the oblation to) the Lord of the Forest[2] and the

[1] According to Kâty. Śr. XIX, 4, 14–17, he sprinkles him up to the mouth, letting it flow down on all four sides; and with each sprinkling he pronounces one of the formulas, first, the Sâvitra one, Vâg. S. XX, 3, 'At the impulse of God Savitṛi (I consecrate) thee by the arms of the Aśvins, and the heads of Pûshan!' followed by the Âśvina one, 'with the healing medicine of the Aśvins I sprinkle thee for energy and holy lustre!' and the Sârasvata one, 'with the healing medicine of Sarasvatî I sprinkle thee for vigour and food!' Then a fourth time with a formula referring to all the deities (or with the three great utterances), or with the Aindra text, 'With Indra's power I sprinkle thee for strength, for excellence, and for fame!'

[2] For this oblation, see III, 8, 3, 33; IV, 5, 2, 11; in both cases it is followed immediately by the oblation to Agni Svishṭakṛit.

Svish*t*ak*ri*t, for the lord of the forest (or the tree) is Soma, and the Svish*t*ak*ri*t (maker of good offering) is Agni: he thus consecrates him after encompassing him by Agni and Soma; whence both those who know, and those who do not, say, 'A Kshatriya is the consecrator of a Kshatriya[1].'

20. They then lift him up[2] knee-high, then navel-high, then as high as the mouth; for the Vâgapeya doubtless is the same as the consecration, and the Sautrâma*ṇî* is a consecration; and even as there, at the Vâgapeya, he (the Sacrificer) mounts the sacrificial stake[3], like that is this rite.

21. As to this they say, 'But, surely, he who is consecrated by the Sautrâma*ṇî* moves away from this world.' Well, he descends again upon the black antelope skin, and, the black antelope skin being the sacrifice, he thus finally establishes himself on the sacrifice.

22. [He descends[4], with Vâg. S. XX, 10,] 'Firmly[5] I establish myself in the Kshatra (lordship), in royal sway,'—in lordship and royal sway he thus establishes himself so as not to lose lordship and royal sway;—'firmly in horses I establish

[1] Kshatriyo râgñoḥ bhishektâ bhavati, pûrva*m* hi râgaiva vr*i*ddha*ḥ* kumâra*m* kâbhishiñkatîty artha*ḥ*; comm.

[2] According to Kâty. Śr. XIX, 4, 19–21, the Adhvaryu first touches him, with (Vâg. S. XX, 4), 'Thou art Ka, thou art Katama, —to Ka thee!' and the Sacrificer replies, 'O thou of good fame! O most propitious one! O true king!' and touches his limbs one after another with XX, 5–9.

[3] See part iii, p. 32 (V, 2, 1, 9 seqq.).

[4] That is, when the throne-seat has been lowered again, he rises from it and stands on the deer-skin.

[5] The function of 'prati' here seems to be to strengthen the preposition in the verb 'prati-tish*th*âmi.'

myself, and in kine,'—in the midst of horses and kine he thus establishes himself so as not to lose horses and kine;—'firmly in the limbs I establish myself, and in the body,'—in the limbs and in the body he thus establishes himself so as not to lose his limbs and his body;—'firmly in the vital airs I establish myself, and in prosperity,'—in the vital airs and in prosperity he thus establishes himself so as not to lose the vital airs and prosperity;—'firmly in heaven and on earth I establish myself, and in the sacrifice,'—he thus establishes himself in these two, heaven and earth, within which is all this (universe).

23. He[1] then sings a Sâman (hymn-tune), for the Sâman means lordship (kshatra): with lordship he thus consecrates him; or the Sâman means imperial sway: by means of imperial sway he thus causes him to attain imperial sway. And, indeed, the Sâman is the essence of all the Vedas: he thus consecrates him with the essence of all the Vedas.

24. He sings it on a *bri*hatî verse[2], for established on the *Bri*hatî, as his excellence and foundation,

[1] According to the commentator on Kâty. XIX, 5, 1, the Brahman sings, whilst Lâ*ty*. V, 4, 16–19 gives directions from which the Udgâ*tri* would seem to be expected to perform this duty. When the Sacrificer is being anointed, the Udgâ*tri* is to step between the (northern and southern) fires and, as soon as he is called upon by the Adhvaryu, he is to commence the Sâman. It would probably depend on the Brahman's previous studies, whether or not he was sufficiently conversant with the complicated details of the hymnology.

[2] Viz. Vâg. S. XX, 30 (*Ri*ks. VIII, 89, 1), 'To Indra, O Maruts, sing ye the great (hymn), most destructive to *Vri*tra, whereby the promoters of sacred rites produced the light, the wakeful god for the god.'

that sun shines[1]: he thus establishes him on the Bṛihatî, as his excellence and foundation.

25. He sings it on a bṛihatî verse relating to Indra, for this sacrifice, the Sautrâmaṇî, belongs to Indra, and even now he who sacrifices has Indra for his support: he thus consecrates him on his own support (or resting-place).

26. And as to why (these hymns) are called 'bracers[2];' it is because by means of these Sâmans the gods braced Indra up to energy, or vital power: in like manner do the officiating priests, by means of these Sâmans, brace the Sacrificer up to energy, or vital power. 'Saṁśravase, viśravase, satyaśravase, śravase[3]'—these are the Sâmans: they proclaim

[1] Professor Weber, Ind. Stud. VIII, p. 42, refers to a parallel passage in Tâṇḍya-Br. VII, 4, 7—'By means of the Bahishpavamâna (of the morning service) the gods carried off Âditya, the sun, to heaven; but he did not stop there. At midday they then fixed him by means of the Bṛihatî, and for this reason the Bṛihatî metre is used for the Pavamâna-stotra at the midday service.'

[2] Literally, sharpeners or sharpenings (saṁsâna).

[3] These words—apparently meaning 'for fame all round, for fame far and wide, for true fame, for fame' (or, perhaps, 'for hearing, or, rather, being heard of all round,' &c.)—are used to form the *finales* (nidhana) in which all the priests are to join; cf. Sâmav., Calc. ed., I, pp. 533–4, where the figured text is given. According to Kâty. XIX, 5, 4–5; Lâṭy. V, 4, 19, the words, 'saṁgityai, vigityai, satyagityai, gityai' (for complete victory, victory far and wide, &c.), and 'sampush/yai, vipush/yai,' &c. (for complete prosperity, &c.), are to be used instead, in the case of a Kshatriya and Vaisya respectively, either optionally or necessarily. Though these four words are here, and elsewhere, spoken of as so many different Sâmans, only the last of them ('śravase') forms the *finale* of a Sâman in the ordinary sense of the word; the others being merely combined with certain musical ejaculations, or expletives (stobhas). All the four 'Sâmans' begin with the same phrase (varying only in the verb)—'saṁ tvâ hinvanti (riṇanti,

him in these worlds. There are four *finales*, for there are four quarters: they thus establish him in all the quarters. All (the priests) join in the *finale:* with one mind they thus bestow excellence upon him.

27. As to this they say, 'Seeing that this Sâman is sung, wherein then does the recitation (uktha) of this Sâman consist, and what is its foundation; for unsuccessful is what is chanted unless it be followed by a recitation?'

28. 'Thrice eleven are the gods;' this, indeed, is the recitation[1] belonging to that Sâman, this its foundation.

29. Or he (the Adhvaryu) takes a thirty-third cupful (of gravy), with (Vâg. S. XX, 11–12[1]), 'Thrice

tatakshur, *sisanti*) dhîtibhi*h*.' i.e. 'they make thee up (or urge thee on) with prayers,' serving as a kind of prelude (prastâva) the single words of which are given among the Stobhas (Sâmav., Calc. ed., II. p. 522, last line), as, indeed, the words 'sa*ms*ravase,' &c., themselves are (ib., p. 520). In the first three Sâmans this phrase is followed by the *finale* consisting of the respective characteristic word preceded by the Stobha 'auhovâ.' In the last Sâman, on the other hand, the introductory phrase is followed by the choral setting of the verse 'B*ri*had indrâya gâyata' (see p. 255, n. 2), which, in its turn, is followed again by the first phrase, with a slightly modified modulation, ending with 'auhovâ *s*ravase.' Whilst joining in the *finale*, the priests, according to Lâ*ty*. V, 4, 17, are to lay their hands on the head of the Sacrificer.

[1] According to Kâty. *Sr.* XIX, 4, 24; 5, 8 seq.; 7, 1 seq., the thirty-third libation of gravy is taken with the text, XX, 32, 'yo bhû*t*ânâm adhipati*h* (he who is the over-lord of creatures),' &c.; whilst, on the conclusion of the *Sastra*, or Hotri's recitation, the Sacrificer offers the libation from that last cup with XX, 11–12, and drinks the remainder with XX, 13. The *Sastra*, recited in response to the Sâman, consists of the section of eleven verses, Vâg. S. XX, 80–90, the first and last verses of which are recited thrice; whilst the 'âhâva' (*om*sâvom, 'let us praise, om!') is inserted by him before each triplet of the remaining nine verses. The two verses used whilst the Sacrificer offers (XX, 11–12) are likewise recited by the

eleven are the gods,'—for there are indeed thrice eleven gods;—'three-and-thirty, bountiful,'—for there are thirty-three gods;—'with Br*i*haspati for their Purohita,'—Br*i*haspati is the Brahman (n.): he thus means to say, 'With the Brahman for their Purohita (family-priest);'—'at the impulse (sava) of the god Savit*ri*,'—that is, 'impelled by the god Savit*ri*;'—'may the gods protect me through the gods!' for the gods indeed consecrate him through the gods.

30. 'The first with the second,'—for the first (gods, on earth) consecrate him along with the second ones (in the air);—'the second with the third,'—for the second ones consecrate him along with the third ones (in the sky);—'the third with[1] the truth,'—for the third ones consecrate him with the truth;—'the truth with the sacrifice,'—for the truth consecrates him with the sacrifice;—'the sacrifice with sacrificial texts,'—for the sacrifice consecrates him with sacrificial texts;—'sacrificial texts with hymn-tunes,'—for sacrificial texts (yagus) consecrate him along with hymn-tunes;—'hymn-tunes with hymn-verses,'—for hymn-tunes consecrate him along with hymn-verses (*rik*);—'hymn-verses with invitatory verses,'—for hymn-verses consecrate him along with invitatory verses;—'invitatory verses with offering-verses,'—for invitatory verses consecrate him along with offering-verses;—'offering-verses with Vasha*t*-calls,'—for offering-verses consecrate him

Hot*ri*, as a 'nivid,' being either added at the end of the Śastra, or inserted before the ninth or tenth verse; the whole recitation thus consisting of seventeen verses.

[1] Mahîdhara takes the instrumental throughout as a sociative (saha satyena).

along with Vashaṭ-calls;—'Vashaṭ-calls with oblations,'—for Vashaṭ-calls consecrate him along with oblations;—'May the oblations render successful my wishes! bhûḥ! svâhâ!'—having thus consecrated him by means of those deities from first to last, he thus, by means of oblations, renders all his wishes successful. Having then solicited an invitation from the officiating priests, he (the Sacrificer) drinks[1] (the remains of the cup of vasâ), for the officiating priests are the seasons: it is thus in the seasons that he solicits an invitation.

31. He drinks it, with (Vâg. S. XX, 13), 'My hair is endeavour[2], my skin submission and approach[3], my flesh inclination, my bone wealth, and my marrow submission,'—for he who is consecrated by the Sautrâmaṇî enters the worlds and among the deities; he now has himself invited amongst them[4], and thus he arises (in the other world) complete, with a whole body, and with (all) limbs.

NINTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Verily, from this sacrifice the man[5] is born;

[1] According to Kâty. XIX, 5, 9, the priests themselves first smell the remainder of the fat gravy, with the text (XX, 34), 'The protector of my breath thou art,' &c. Cf. also XIV, 2, 2, 42, with note.

[2] The use of 'prayati' in this sense (here and Vâg. S. XVIII, 1) is peculiar; being apparently derived from 'pra-yam,' one would expect it to have some such meaning as 'offer, gift.' This and the other predicates, according to Mahîdhara, are to show the state of feeling of beings towards the (royal) Sacrificer. The repetition of 'ânati' (bowing, prostration, submission) is strange. A strong alliterative cadence is noticeable in the verse.

[3] ? Hardly 'return' here; rather, perhaps, 'attaining to (the other worlds),' or, possibly, 'the turning to him, gathering round him (of the people).'

[4] ? Or, he now calls these to himself in the meantime.

[5] That is, the Purusha, Agni-Pragâpati; and the Sacrificer.

and whatever food a man consumes in this world, that (food), in return, consumes him in yonder world. Now this sacrifice is performed by means of spirituous liquor, and spirituous liquor (parisrut) is not to be consumed by a Brâhmaṇa: he thus is born from that which is not (to be) consumed, and the food does not, in return, consume him in yonder world. Therefore this (sacrifice), the Sautrâmaṇî, is a Brâhmaṇa's sacrifice [1].

2. The malted rice is the same as his (the man's) hair, the malted barley his skin, the fried rice his flesh, the filtering-cloth his bones, the mash his marrow, the raw liquor (parisrut) his life-sap (serum), the seasoning (and fermentative substances) his blood, the milk his seed, the mature liquor (surâ) his urine, and the impure matter the contents of the stomach.

3. Indra's cake is his heart, that of Savitṛi his liver, that of Varuṇa his lung, the aśvattha and udumbara vessels his kidneys, the nyagrodha one his bile, the pan (sthâlî) his intestines [2], the supernumerary (vessels) his bowels [2], the two eagle feathers [3] the milt, the throne-seat his navel, the pot his rectum, the (pan) perforated with a hundred holes, the male organ,—and inasmuch as that (pan) is much perforated, therefore that organ is much divided,—the bowl (sata) is his mouth, the strainer

[1] That is, because to a man of another caste the spirituous liquor would not be 'anâdyâ,' but consumable, and hence it would consume him in the other world.

[2] The two terms 'ântrâṇi' and 'gudâḥ' are usually taken as synonymous; the latter term probably means the lower or larger intestines; cf. Vâg. S. XIX, 86.

[3] See XII, 7, 3, 22.

his tongue, the dish (*ś*apya) his anus, the tail (whisk) his bladder.

4. And the sacrificial animal of the A*s*vins is his limbs, that of Sarasvatî his trunk, Indra's bull his form,—whence they say that man's form (wealth) is kine,—the gold (plate) is his vital strength; it is of the weight of a hundred (grains), whence man has a life of a hundred (years).

5. The two cups of the A*s*vins are his eyes, and the ground wheat and kuvala (jujubes) his eyelashes; the two cups of Sarasvatî are his nostrils, and the ground Indra-grain and badara (jujubes) the hair in his nostrils; the two cups of Indra are his ears, and the ground barley and karkandhu (jujubes) the hair of his ears and his eyebrows.

6. And the hairs of wolf are the hair on his abdomen and that below; and the hairs of tiger are the hair on his chest and that of his armpits; and the hairs of lion are the hair of his head and his beard.

7. There are three sacrificial animals, for this body of man consists of three parts: it is the body he thereby wins (in heaven) for him;—what is below the navel (he wins) by that of the A*s*vins, what is above the navel and below the head by that of Sarasvatî, and the head itself by that of Indra: both as to its (bodily) form and as to its deities he thus delivers his own self from death, and makes it immortal.

8. There are three sacrificial cakes, for this life of man consists of three parts: it is life he thereby wins for him;—the early life (he wins) by that of Indra, the middle (part of) life by that of Savit*ri*, and the last (part of) life by that of Varu*n*a: both as to its (bodily) form and as to its deities he thus delivers his life from death, and makes it immortal.

9. There are six cups (of milk and liquor), for there are these six (channels of) vital airs in the head: it is the vital airs he thereby wins for him;—his eyes (he wins) by the two (cups) of the Aśvins, his nostrils by those of Sarasvatî, and his ears by those of Indra: both as to its (bodily) form and as to its deities he thus delivers his own self from death, and makes it immortal.

10. The invitatory and offering-formulas are made continuous[1], and relate to the same deities—for the continuity and uninterruptedness of the vital airs. They are all of them invitatory formulas and all offering-formulas, whence all the vital airs pass onwards and all of them backwards. All (the formulas) are first, all of them intermediate, and all of them last, whence all the vital airs are first, all of them intermediate, and all of them last. All the cups have two (formulas, an) invitatory and (an) offering-formula,—this is of the form of the in (and out)-breathing and the up-breathing: it is the in-breathing and the up-breathing he thus secures for himself, and therefore all the vital airs are established on the in-breathing and the up-breathing.

11. Verily the Sautrâmaṇî is this body (of man): the Sacrificer is the mind, (that is) speech manifestly; the vedi (altar-ground) is the trunk, the uttara-vedi (high-altar) offspring, the barhis (grass-covering) cattle, the officiating priests the limbs, the fuel the bones, the ghee the marrow, the fire the mouth, the oblation is food, and the concluding rite is life, whence he who has performed the Sautrâmaṇî attains life.

[1] See p. 244, note 1.

12. And, verily, these two men that seem to be in the eyes, they belong to the Aśvins, and the black (in the eye) belongs to Sarasvatî, and the white to Indra; and in that, when the victim of the Aśvins is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

13. Indra, assuredly, is the mind, Sarasvatî speech, and the two Aśvins are the ears. Now, whatever one thinks in his mind of that he speaks with his speech, and what he speaks with his speech that one hears with one's ears: thus, in that, when the victim of Sarasvatî is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities together, thereby he puts these (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

14. Indra, assuredly, is the breath, Sarasvatî the tongue, and the two Aśvins the nostrils; and inasmuch as through (the channel of) the breath (prâṇa) one introduces (prâ-*nî*) food into himself that is the reason of its being (called) 'prâṇa.' By means of the tongue one distinguishes the essence (taste) of food, and the nostrils, indeed, are the path of the breath; and in that, when the victim of Indra is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

15. Indra, assuredly, is the heart, Savitṛi the liver, and Varuṇa the lung; and in that, when Indra's cake is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

16. Savitṛi, assuredly, is the breath, Varuṇa the

through-breathing, and Indra the generative organ; and whatever food one eats by means of (the channel of) the breath through that he breathes with his through-breathing, and by means of the generative organ he sheds the essence of food as seed; and in that, when Savitṛi's cake is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

17. Varuṇa, assuredly, is the womb, Indra the seed, and Savitṛi the generator of the seed; and in that, when Varuṇa's cake is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself. And whosoever thus knows this comes into being along with these deities, and is born again (so as to be) along with these deities; he increases in offspring and cattle; he becomes firmly established in this world, and wins the heavenly world, whosoever, knowing this, performs the Sautrâmaṇî, or whosoever thus knows this.

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Having performed the sacrifice they betake themselves to the purificatory bath; for after a Soma-sacrifice they do betake themselves to the purificatory bath, and the Sautrâmaṇî is the same as the Soma (sacrifice).

2. [He plunges the mash-pot into the water, with Vâg. S. XX, 14–18 [1],] 'Whatever contumely

[1] Of the first three verses the text quotes only the first pâda, the rest having been supplied in the translation.

against the gods, O divine gods, we have committed, from that sin may Agni deliver me; may he deliver me from all trouble!'—he thereby delivers him from the sin committed against the gods.—'Whether by day, whether by night we have committed sins, from that sin may Vâyu deliver me; may he deliver me from all trouble!'—he thereby delivers him from whatever sin he commits by day and night.—'Whether waking, whether in sleep we have committed sins, from that sin may Sûrya deliver me; may he deliver me from all trouble!'—what is awake is men, and what is asleep is the Fathers: he thus delivers him from guilt against men and Fathers.

3. 'Whatever sin we have committed in the village, in the forest'—for either in the village or in the forest sin is committed: therefrom he delivers him;—'whatever in the assembly'—from the sin of the assembly he thereby delivers him;—'whatever in our organs of sense'—from the sin against the gods he thereby delivers him;—'whatever against the Śûdra or the Arya, whatever against the right of any one, thereof thou art the expiation,'—from all that sin he thereby delivers him.

4. 'That we swear by the Inviolable Waters[1], by Varuṇa, therefrom deliver us, O Varuṇa!'—he thereby delivers him from sin against Varuṇa.—[He then immerses the pot, with Vâǵ. S. XII, 18;

[1] Cf. III, 8, 5, 10, where the text varies slightly—'That they say, we swear by the Inviolable (cows, or waters), by Varuṇa, therefrom deliver us, O Varuṇa!'

19.] 'O laving bath, laving thou glidest along,'—the bath, indeed, is that whirlpool (now produced) in the water, and that indeed is either Varuṇa's son or brother: it is him he thereby praises;—'with the help of the gods have I expiated[1] the sin committed against gods,'—he thereby expiates the sin committed against gods;—'with the help of mortals that committed against mortals,'—he thereby expiates the sin committed against mortals;—'preserve me, O God, from injury from the fiercely-howling (demon)!' whereby he means to say, 'Protect me against all inflictions!'

5. 'In the ocean, in the waters, is thy heart,'—for the ocean is the waters, and water is sap: with that sap he thus supplies him;—'may the plants and waters unite with thee!'—he thereby supplies him with both kinds of sap, that which is in plants, and that which is in water.—He goes two steps northward from out (of the water); for as much as the step is the briskness in man: with what briskness there is in him he thus leaves evil behind him.

6. With, 'May the waters and plants be friendly unto us!' he takes water in his joined hands; for water is a thunderbolt: he thus makes a covenant with the thunderbolt;—and with, 'May they be unfriendly unto him who hateth us, and whom we hate!' let him sprinkle it in whatever direction he who is hateful to him may be, and he thereby discomfits him.

7. With (Vâg. S. XX, 20), 'As one set free (is liberated) from the stake, as he who sweateth

[1] Cf. II, 5, 2, 47; IV, 4, 5, 22, where the formula has 'ava ayâsisham' (correct,—'with the help of the gods have I wiped out the sin committed against the gods') instead of 'ava yakshi.'

(is cleansed) from filth by bathing, as the ghee is purified by the strainer, so may the waters cleanse me from sin!' he causes his garment to float away: even as one would pluck out a reed from its sheath, so he plucks him from out all evil. He bathes, and (thereby) drives the darkness (of sin) from himself.

8. [He comes out[1], with Vâg. S. XX, 21,] 'From out of the gloom have we risen,'—gloom is evil: it is gloom, evil, he thus keeps away;—'beholding the higher light[2],'—this (terrestrial) world is higher than the water: it is on this world he thus establishes himself;—'God Sûrya, with the gods, the highest light,'—Sûrya, the highest light (*g*yotis), is the heavenly world: it is in the heavenly world he thus finally establishes himself. He walks along without looking back, and approaches the Âhavanîya,—

9. With (Vâg. S. XX, 22), 'Along the waters have I gone this day,'—the essence of the waters he thereby secures for himself;—'with their essence have we united,'—the essence of the waters he thus takes to himself;—'rich in sap, O Agni, have I come: do thou unite (supply) me with splendour, with offspring, and with wealth!' he thereby invokes a blessing.

10. With (Vâg. S. XX, 23), 'A kindler thou art:

[1] Having put on fresh garments, the Sacrificer and his wife are led out by the Unnetri, the mantra being muttered at the same time; and they then return with the priests to the offering-ground, whilst the Âmatrîyâ-hymn (on *Rig*-veda S. VIII, 48, 3, 'we have drunk Soma . . .') is sung: see part ii, p. 385, note 2; Kâty. Śraut. X, 9, 7.

[2] Mahîdhara takes 'svar' in the sense of 'svarga,' heaven; whilst the Brâhmaṇa seems rather to take it as referring to the earth or dry land on which the Sacrificer now steps.

may we prosper[1]!' he takes a kindling-stick, for a kindler of Agni (the fire) the kindling-stick indeed is. With, 'Enkindling thou art, fire thou art: lay thou fire into me!' he puts the kindling-stick on the Âhavanîya: he thereby kindles the fire, and, thus kindled, it kindles him with fire (energy)[2].

11. Being about to offer a pap to Aditi[3], he prepares it: Aditi being this (earth), he who offers Aditi's (pap) performs the sacrifice on this (earth), and by offering firmly establishes himself thereon. The sacrificial fee is a milch cow (with calf): the milch cow being this (earth), he milks out from the latter all his desires. The calf he gives away at the former (pap-offering to Aditi[4]), and the mother-cow at the latter; for when a calf sucks the mother-cow, the latter gives milk when she is given away, and from her, when given away, he thus milks all his desires.

12. As to this they say, 'Surely, he who goes down to the water for the purificatory bath falls away from this world!' Well, when he has come out from the bath, he offers a dish of curds to Mitra and Varuṇa; now Mitra is this (terrestrial) world,

---

[1] The text of the formula 'edho 'sy edhishîmahi' is evidently meant to suggest a connection (real or alliterative) between 'edha' (root 'indh') and the final verb (root 'edh').

[2] According to Kâty. XIX, 5, 20, and Mahîdhara, he now offers on the kindling-stick an oblation of ghee, with the text, Vâg. S. XX, 23, 'Hither come the earth, the dawn, the sun, and all this world.'

[3] See p. 213, note 2.

[4] This offering takes place at the beginning of the performance of the Sautrâmaṇî, cf. Kâty. Śr. XIX, 1, 5–10. The dish of curds which according to this paragraph is to follow the second pap to Aditi, may, according to Kâtyâyana, be offered before it.

Varuṇa yonder world, and the dish of curds is what there is here between (those two): thus, when he offers the dish of curds to Mitra and Varuṇa, he establishes himself in these worlds. And Mitra, indeed, is the in-breathing, Varuṇa the off-breathing, and the dish of curds the food: thus when he offers the dish of curds to Mitra and Varuṇa, he finally establishes himself in the vital air, in food.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, Dushṭarîtu Pauṃsâyana had been expelled from the kingdom which had come down to him through ten generations; and the Sṛiñgayas also expelled Revottaras Pâṭava Kâkra Sthapati.

2. He said to Dushṭaritu Pauṃsâyana, 'I will perform the Sautrâmaṇî for thee, and will confer upon thee that dominion over the Sṛiñgayas.'—'So be it!' he replied. So he performed it for him.

3. Now Balhika Prâtipiya, the Kauravya king, heard (people say) this—'There is that Dushṭaritu Pauṃsâyana who has been expelled from the kingdom which has come down to him through ten generations: for him that Kâkra Sthapati wants to perform the Sautrâmaṇî and to confer upon him the dominion over the Sṛiñgayas.'

4. He said, 'I will just tell him that if he wants to confer dominion upon him, he will indeed exclude him from dominion.' He came to him at that particular time (of the sacrifice) when the cups (of milk and liquor) are drawn.

5. He said, 'Sthapati Kâkra, they say, Surâ-liquor must not be offered in the Âhavaniya-fire, nor anywhere else than in the Âhavaniya: if thou offerest

Surâ-liquor in the Âhavanîya thou wilt cause social confusion and a repetition in the sacrifice [1], and if anywhere else than in the Âhavanîya thou wilt exclude him (the king) from dominion, and wilt neither place him in dominion, nor confer dominion upon him.'

6. He replied, 'I shall not offer Surâ-liquor in the Âhavanîya nor anywhere else than in the Âhavanîya: thus I shall not cause social confusion nor a repetition in the sacrifice, and shall not exclude him from dominion; I shall place him in dominion, and shall confer dominion upon him.'

7. He said, 'How, then, wilt thou do it?' He then told him this:—At first, indeed, that Yagña (sacrifice, m.), the Sautrâmaṇî, was with the Asuras. He went forth towards the gods. He came to the waters, and the waters welcomed him, whence people welcome a better man when he comes to them. They said to him, 'We pray thee, come, reverend sir!'

8. He said, 'Nay, I am afraid: lead ye me forward!'—'Whereof art thou afraid, reverend sir?' they asked.—'Of the Asuras,' he said.—'Be it, then!' they said. The waters led him forward, whence he who is the protector leads forward him who is afraid; and inasmuch as the waters led him forward (pra-ṇî) therefore the waters (themselves) are 'led forward:' this is the reason why they are (called) Praṇîtâḥ [2]; and, verily, firmly established is he who thus knows that nature of the Praṇîtâḥ.

[1] Probably inasmuch as the cups of milk are offered there previously.

[2] For this jarful of consecrated water, used at the sacrifice, see part i, pp. 9, note; 265.

9. Now, the fore-offerings had been performed, but the fire had not been carried round[1] (the oblations), when the Asuras came after him. By means of the circumambient fire the gods shut out their hostile rivals, the Asuras, from Yaǵña (the sacrifice); and in like manner does this one now, by means of the circumambient fire, shut out his spiteful enemy from the sacrifice.

10. Verily, that Âhavanîya is the womb (seat) of the gods, and those two fires[2] on either side thereof are its immortal wings: thus, when they perform the sacrifice on the Âhavanîya, they indeed perform the sacrifice for the gods in the womb of the gods; and, verily, the continued sacrifice inclines to him, and the sacrifice is not cut off from him who thus knows this, or for whom, knowing this, this sacrificial rite is performed.

11. On the northern fire they offer (libations from) the cups of milk, on the northern fire they cook the sacrificial animals: the sacrificial animals, whilst being mortal, he thus places in the immortal womb, and them that are mortal he causes to be born (again) from out of the immortal womb; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this, or he for whom, knowing this, this sacrificial rite is performed, wards off the recurring death of his cattle, and the sacrifice is not cut off from him.

12. On the southern fire they offer (libations from) the cups of Surâ-liquor, near the southern fire

[1] On the ceremony called 'paryagnikaraṇam,' see part i, p. 145, note; part ii, p. 187, note.

[2] See p. 225, note 1. Properly speaking, the two fires of the two special Vedis are in front (or, rather, north-east and south-east) of the Âhavanîya.

they purify (the liquor) with triple strainers: the Fathers, whilst being mortal, he thus places in the immortal womb, and them that are mortal he causes to be born (again) from out of the immortal womb; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this, or he for whom, knowing this, this sacrificial rite is performed, wards off the recurring death of the Fathers, and the sacrifice is not cut off from him.

13. Now, inasmuch as these two fires are taken from the Âhavanîya, they are Âhavanîyas (offering-fires), and inasmuch as they do not again reach the Âhavanîya, they are not Âhavanîyas: he thereby obtains both kinds of oblations, that which is (offered) on the Âhavanîya, and that which is (offered) on what is not an Âhavanîya—both what is offered and what is not offered.

He (Balhika Prâtipîya) then went home, and said, 'It is not so (as we had thought): that kingdom of the Sriñgayas now belongs to Dushtarîtu;—in such and such a manner has that Kâkra Sthapati this day performed at the sacrifice.'

14. On the northern fire they thus perform the rites of the sacrificial animals, the (animal) cakes, and the cups of milk, and what other (rite) there is: it is the gods, in the world of the gods, he thereby gratifies, and, thus gratified, they gratify him, and he wins the world of the gods.

15. In the southern fire they offer (libations from) the cups of Surâ-liquor, near the southern fire they purify (the liquor) with triple strainers: it is the Fathers, in the world of the Fathers, he thereby gratifies, and, thus gratified, they gratify him, and he wins the world of the Fathers.

16. Verily, the Sautrâmaṇi is the same as the

body, whence it is (clearly) defined, for defined is the body. And (Indra) Vayodhas (the bestower of strength) is the world, whence he is undefined[1], for undefined is the world. The Sautrâmaṇî is the body (trunk), and the Aindra (victim) and (the one to) Vayodhas[2] are the two arms; and inasmuch as there are those two animal offerings on both sides (of the Sautrâmaṇi), therefore these two arms are on both sides of the body. And as the sacrificial animal, so the sacrificial stake; and inasmuch as there are those two stakes on both sides of the stake of the Sautrâmaṇî (bull of Indra), therefore these two arms are on both sides of the body[3].

[1] The term 'vayodhas' is said to be undefined inasmuch as, though it is meant to apply to Indra, the name of this god is not mentioned along with it in the formulas.

[2] During the performance of the Sautrâmaṇî proper (on the fourth day) three victims are immolated, a he-goat to the Aśvins, a ram to Sarasvatî, and another bull to Indra. But at the beginning of the whole performance—either before or after the first pap to Aditi (cf. XII, 9, 2, 11)—a bull is sacrificed to Indra; and at the end—after the second pap to Aditi and the dish of curds to Mitra and Varuṇa (see p. 252, note 4)—another animal sacrifice is performed to Indra Vayodhas. The sacrificial stakes for the first and last of the three victims sacred to Indra, are to be placed north and south of that of Indra's second bull, the one sacrificed as part of the Sautrâmaṇî proper.

[3] The object of identifying different ceremonial acts and features with certain parts of the body is of course to impress upon the mind of the Sacrificer the efficacy of the Sautrâmaṇî in securing to him a new, complete body for the other life.

THIRTEENTH KÂṆḌA.

THE AṢVAMEDHA, OR HORSE-SACRIFICE.

PRELIMINARY CEREMONIES[1].

FIRST ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. He (the Adhvaryu) cooks the priests' mess of rice[2]: it is seed he thereby produces. Having greased a rope with the ghee which is left over[3], he takes it; for ghee is (a type of) fiery spirit, and the horse is sacred to Pragâpati[4]: he thus endows Pragâpati with fiery spirit. Impure, and unfit for sacrifice, indeed, is that (animal), to wit, the horse.

2. The rope consists of darbha grass (poa cynosuroides);—for darbha stalks[5] are a means of purification: he thus purifies that (horse), and immolates it as one purified and meet for sacrifice.

3. Now, when the horse[6] was immolated, its

[1] The ceremonies treated of in the first six chapters (brâhmaṇas) refer to the setting apart of the horse for its sacred office, a year before the sacrifice, and to the intervening period during which the horse is allowed to roam about, though under careful supervision.

[2] For further particulars regarding this opening ceremony of the sacrifice see XIII, 4, 1, 1 seqq.

[3] Viz. from the ghee used for greasing the four dishes of cooked rice.

[4] Or, the horse is of the nature of Pragâpati.

[5] See above, p. 195, note 1.

[6] That is, as would seem, Pragâpati in the form of a horse, see part iv, introd., p. xiv seqq.

seed went from it and became gold[1]: thus, when he gives gold (to the priests) he supplies the horse with seed.

4. Pragâpati produced the sacrifice[2]. His greatness departed from him, and entered the great sacrificial priests[3]. Together with the great priests he went in search of it, and together with the great priests he found it: when the great priests eat the priests' mess of rice, the Sacrificer thereby secures for himself the greatness of the sacrifice. Along with the priests' mess of rice he presents gold (to the priests); for the mess of rice is seed, and gold is seed: by means of seed he thus lays seed into that (horse, and Sacrificer). It (the gold[4]) weighs a hundred (grains); for man has a life of a hundred (years), and a hundred energies: it is life, and energy, vigour, he lays into his own self. At midday he takes Vasatîvarî[5] water of four kinds; it is brought together from the (four) quarters, for food is in (all) the (four) quarters, and water is food: by means of food he thus secures food for him.

---

[1] Pragâpati is Agni, and gold is Agni's seed, cf. II, 1, 1, 5; III, 3, 1, 3 &c.

[2] That is, the Aśvamedha sacrifice, and thus the immolation (or emptying out) of his own self, so to speak.

[3] That is, the four principal officiating priests, Brahman, Hotṛi, Adhvaryu, and Udgâtṛi. Cf. VIII, 4, 3, 1 seqq., where it is the vital airs that, in their capacity as *Ṛ*shis, assist Pragâpati in the first sacrifice.

[4] That is to say, each piece of gold weighs as much. According to Kâty. XX, 1, 6 he is to give to the priests 4000 cows and as many Śatamâna coins.

[5] For this water used for the Soma-sacrifice where, however, it is taken from a cistern, or some course of flowing water, see part ii, p. 222 seqq.

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, unsuccessful in the sacrifice, assuredly, is what is performed without a formula. (With Vâg. S. XXII, 2,) 'This rope did they take, at the first age of the truth, [the sages, at the rites: it hath been with us at this Soma-sacrifice, declaring the course in the-gaining of the truth],' he takes the halter of the horse in order to supply a formula for the success of the sacrifice. It (the rope) is twelve cubits long,—twelve months make a year: it is the year, the sacrifice[1], he secures.

2. Concerning this they say, 'Is the rope to be made twelve cubits long, or thirteen cubits long?' Well, that year is the bull among the seasons, and the thirteenth (or intercalary) month is an excrescence of the year; and this Aśvamedha is the bull among sacrifices; and inasmuch as the bull has an excrescence (hump), one may add on a thirteenth cubit to the rope as an excrescence to this (Aśvamedha): even as the bull's hump is attached[2] (to his back), suchlike would this be.

3. [He puts the halter on the horse, with Vâg. S. XXII, 3, 4,] 'Encompassing[3] thou art,'—

[1] Or, possibly, it is for the space of a year that he secures the sacrifice, but see part iv, introduction, p. xxiii.

[2] Lit., spread out.

[3] Some such meaning as this (or perhaps 'encompassed, encircled') seems to be assigned by the author to 'abhidhâh,' with evident reference to 'abhidhânî,' 'halter,' from 'abhi-dhâ,' 'to fasten, enclose.' The St. Petersburg Dict., on the other hand, takes it in the sense of 'naming, denoting' (? inasmuch as the horse gives the name to the horse-sacrifice); whilst Mahîdhara explains it by 'that which is named or praised.'

therefore the offerer of the Aśvamedha conquers all the quarters[1];—'the world thou art,'—the world he thus conquers;—'a ruler thou art, an upholder,'—he thus makes him a ruler and upholder;—'go thou unto Agni Vaiśvânara,'—he thus makes him go to Agni Vaiśvânara (the friend of all men);—'of wide extent,'—he thus causes him to extend in offspring and cattle;—'consecrated by Svâhâ (hail!),'—this is the Vashaṭ-call[2] for it;—'good speed (to) thee for the gods!'—he thus makes it of good speed for the gods;—'for Pragâpati,'—the horse is sacred to Pragâpati: he thus supplies[3] it with his own deity.

4. But, verily, he who fetters the horse without announcing it to the Brahman and the gods is liable to incur injury. He addresses the Brahman (the superintending priest) by saying, 'O Brahman, I will fetter the horse for the gods, for Pragâpati: may I prosper therewith!' and having made the announce-

[1] In epic times the Aśvamedha is commonly performed by kings who have been successful in the 'digvigaya,' or conquest in all quarters.

[2] 'Vashaṭ' is the sacrificial call uttered by the Hotṛi at the end of the 'yâgyâ,' or offering-verse of a regular oblation (âhuti) as distinguished from minor libations, such as homas and âghâras, which require no 'yâgyâ,' and for which the sacrificial call—marking the pouring out of the libation into the fire—is 'svâhâ!' The meaning of 'vashaṭ' is doubtful; but it would seem to be connected either with the root 'vaksh,' to grow, to wax, or with 'vah,' to bear; and would thus mean either 'may it prosper!' or 'may he (Agni) bear it (to the gods)!' By the mention of the Svâhâ in our formula the horse is, as it were, marked as dedicated to the gods.

[3] Or, perhaps, he causes it to succeed by means, or with the help, of its own deity.

ment to the Brahman, he ties up the horse, and thus incurs no injury. 'Fetter it for the gods, for Pragâpati: prosper thou therewith!' thus the Brahman urges him, and supplies it (the horse) with its own deity. He then sprinkles it (with water): the (symbolic) meaning of this is the same as before[1].

5. He sprinkles[2] it, with (Vâg. S. XXII, 5), 'I sprinkle thee (so as to be) acceptable to Pragâpati,'—for Pragâpati is the most vigorous of the gods: it is vigour he bestows on it, whence the horse is the most vigorous of animals.

6. 'I sprinkle thee, acceptable to Indra and Agni,'—for Indra and Agni are the most powerful of the gods: it is power he bestows on it, whence the horse is the most powerful of animals.

7. 'I sprinkle thee, acceptable to Vâyu,'—for Vâyu is the swiftest of gods: it is speed he bestows on it, whence the horse is the swiftest of animals.

8. 'I sprinkle thee, acceptable to the All-gods,'—for the All-gods are the most famous of gods: it is fame he bestows on it, whence the horse is the most famous of animals.—'I sprinkle thee, acceptable to all the gods.'

9. Concerning this they say, 'Seeing that the horse is sacred to Pragâpati, wherefore (does he say), "I sprinkle thee" for other deities also?' Well, all the gods are concerned in the horse-sacrifice;

[1] For the sprinkling of (the material for) oblations see I, 1, 3, 6 seq.; and an animal victim in particular, III, 7, 4, 3.

[2] According to Kâty. XX, 1, 37, he goes with the horse to stagnant water, and there sprinkles it. It would seem that the horse stands in the water during this ceremony.

when he says, 'I sprinkle thee for all the gods,' he makes all the gods take a concern in the horse-sacrifice; whence all the gods are concerned in the horse-sacrifice. But his wicked enemy seeks to lay hold of him who performs the horse-sacrifice, and the horse is a thunderbolt;—having killed the four-eyed dog, he—with 'Undone[1] is the man! undone is the dog!'—plunges[2] it under the horse's feet: it is by means of the thunderbolt

[1] Mahîdhara explains 'para*ḥ*' by 'parâbhûta*ḥ*, adhaspada*m* nîta*ḥ*,' i.e. defeated, laid low. Perhaps it may mean, 'Away is the man, away the dog!' As given in the Vâg. Sa*m*h., this is only the last part of the formula, pronounced by the Sacrificer; whilst during the killing of the dog, he is made to say, 'Whosoever seeketh to slay the steed, him Varu*n*a besetteth.'—According to Kâty. XX, 1, 38 seqq., the priest says to an Âyogava (the offspring of a *Ś*ûdra father and a Vai*ś*yâ mother)—or, to a lewd man, according to others—'Kill the four-eyed dog!' whereupon the man kills a dog by means of a club of Sidhraka wood; and (the priest?), by means of a rattan hoop (? or mat, ka*ṭ*a, comm. ka*ṭ*aka), makes the dead dog float beneath the horse. According to the comment. on Kâty. XX, 1, 38, in case a four-eyed dog—i.e. a (two-faced) one 'yasya dve mukhe' and hence looking in the four (intermediate) directions (vidi*ś*), Sây.—is not available (!), a dog with marks about the eyes should be used. The mention of the 'four-footed' dog in the formula is, however, doubtless meant merely symbolically, as representing evil threatening the Sacrificer from every quarter.

[2] Harisvâmin seems to connect this with the sprinkling of the horse itself—prokshaṇa*m* *ś*una upaplâvanam u*ḳ*yate—perhaps in the sense that the water flowing down from the sprinkled horse would soak the dog, in which case the horse would apparently be supposed to stand on the dry ground. See, however, comm. on Kâty. XX, 2, 2, '*Ś*vânam a*ś*vasyâdha*ḥ*pradeśe *g*alamadhye plâvayati târayati.' The 'offerings of drops' to be performed immediately after this ceremony might seem to be offered with reference to the drops of water flowing from the horse, and as it were falling outside the sacrifice; but see paragraph 5.

he thus stamps him down; and the wicked enemy does not lay hold of him.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Even as some of the havis (offering-material) may be spilled before it is offered, so also (part) of the victim is here spilled in that they let loose the sprinkled (horse) before it is slain. When he offers the Stokîyâs (oblations of drops), he offers that (horse) as a complete offering[1]—so as to make good any spilling[2]; for unspilled is any (part) of the offered (material) that is spilled. A thousand (oblations of drops) he offers for the obtainment of the heavenly world, for the heavenly world is equal in extent to a thousand.

2. Concerning this they say, 'Were he to offer measured (a specified number of oblations), he would gain for himself something limited:' he offers unspecified (oblations) for the obtainment of the unlimited. And indeed Praǵâpati spake, 'Verily, upon the oblations of drops I establish the Aśvamedha, and by it, when established, I pass upward from hence.'

3. [He offers, with Vâǵ. S. XXII, 6,] 'To Agni, hail!'—to Agni he thus offers it (the horse[3]);—'to Soma, hail!'—to Soma he thus offers it;—'to the joy of the waters, hail!'—to the waters he thus offers it;—'to Savitṛi, hail!'—to Savitṛi

[1] Cf. I, 1, 4, 3; 3, 3, 16 seqq.; IV, 2, 5, 1 seqq.

[2] Lit., for non-spilling, i.e. to neutralise any spilling that may have taken place.

[3] Harisvâmin seems rather to lay the stress on the direct object:—agnaye param evâśvaṁ ǵuhoti na kevalam âǵyam. The context, however, does not admit of this interpretation.

he thus offers it;—'to Vâyu, hail!'—to Vâyu (the wind) he thus offers it;—'to Vish*ṇ*u, hail!'—to Vish*ṇ*u he thus offers it;—'to Indra, hail!'—to Indra he thus offers it;—'to B*ṛ*ihaspati, hail!'—to B*ṛ*ihaspati he thus offers it;—'to Mitra, hail!'—to Mitra he thus offers it;—'to Varu*ṇ*a, hail!'—to Varu*ṇ*a he thus offers it:—so many, doubtless, are all the gods: it is to them he offers it. He offers them straight away[1] for the obtainment of the heavenly world, for straight away, as it were, is the heavenly world.

4. But, verily, he who offers the oblations straight away, would be liable to fall (pass) right away[2]: he turns back again[3], and establishes himself in this (terrestrial) world. And this[4] indeed he (Pragâpati) has declared to be the perfection of the sacrifice, so as to prevent falling away (spilling), for unspilled is what is spilled of the offered (material).

5. And even as some of the offering-material may be spilled before it is offered, so also (part) of the

[1] According to Kâty. XX, 2, 3–5, he offers either a thousand oblations, or as many as he can offer till the dripping of the water from the horse has ceased. For every ten oblations he uses the formulas here given, after which he begins again from the beginning. The 'straight on' apparently means that he is neither to break the order of the deities, nor to offer more than one oblation at a time to the same deity.

[2] That is, he would die; 'praitîty artha*ḥ*,' Comm. The St. Petersburg Dict., on the other hand, takes 'îsvara*ḥ* pradagha*ḥ*' in the sense of 'liable to fall down headlong' (abstürzen).

[3] That is, by commencing the ten oblations again from the beginning.

[4] Viz. repetition of performance,—etâm eva *k*a sa pragâpatir âv*ṛ*ittimattâ*m* yag*ñ*asya sa*m*sthitim (uvâ*k*a). On repetitions in the chanting of stotras, see III, 2, 5, 8; cf. also XII, 2, 3, 13.

victim is here spilled in that they let loose the sprinkled (horse) before it is slaughtered. When he offers (the oblations relating to) the Forms[1] (rûpa), he offers that (horse) as one that is wholly offered, so as to make good any spilling; for unspilled is what is spilled of the offered (material). With (Vâg.S. XXII, 7–8[2]), 'To the Hiṅ-call, hail! to the (horse) consecrated by Hiṅ, hail!...'

[1] These forty-nine oblations performed after the letting loose of the horse, are called Prakramas (i.e. steps, or movements); cf. XIII, 4, 3, 4; Kâty. XX, 3, 3.—Harisvâmin remarks, aśvarûpâṇâṁ hiṅkârâdînâṁ nishkramaṇâtmikâ (!) rûpâkhyâ âhutaya ukyante, tâ evâtra prakramâ iti vakshyante.

[2] These (rather pedantic) formulas, all of them ending in 'svâhâ,' occupy two Kaṇḍikâs of the Saṁhitâ, consisting of 24 and 25 formulas respectively:—1. To the hiṅkâra, svâhâ! 2. To the one consecrated by 'hiṅ,' hail! 3. To the whinnying one, hail! 4. To the neighing, hail! 5. To the snorting one, hail! 6. To the snort, hail! 7. To smell, hail! 8. To the (thing) smelled, hail! 9. To the stabled one, hail! 10. To the resting one, hail! 11. To the clipped one, hail! 12. To the prancing one, hail! 13. To the seated one, hail! 14. To the lying one, hail! 15. To the sleeping one, hail! 16. To the waking one, hail! 17. To the groaning one, hail! 18. To the awakened one, hail! 19. To the yawning one, hail! 20. To the untethered one, hail! 21. To the upstarting one, hail! 22. To the standing one, hail! 23. To the starting one, hail! 24. To the advancing one, hail!—25. To the trotting one, hail! 26. To the running one, hail! 27. To the bolting one, hail! 28. To the flighty one, hail! 29. To the geeho, hail! 30. To the one urged on by geeho, hail! 31. To the prostrate one, hail! 32. To the risen one, hail! 33. To the swift one, hail! 34. To the strong one, hail! 35. To the turning one, hail! 36. To the turned one, hail! 37. To the shaking one, hail! 38. To the shaken one, hail! 39. To the obedient one, hail! 40. To the listening one, hail! 41. To the looking one, hail! 42. To the one looked at, hail! 43. To the out-looking one, hail! 44. To the winking one, hail! 45. To what it eats, hail! 46. To what it drinks, hail! 47. To the water it makes, hail! 48. To the working one, hail! 49. To the wrought one, hail!

(he offers them); for these are the forms (qualities) of the horse: it is them he now obtains.

6. Concerning this they say, 'The Forms are no offering: they should not be offered.' But, indeed, they also say, 'Therein assuredly the horse-sacrifice becomes complete that he performs (the oblations relating to) the Forms: they should certainly be offered.' And, indeed, one puts that (Sacrificer) out of his resting-place, and raises a rival for him when one offers for him oblations elsewhere than in the fire [1], where there is no resting-place.

7. Prior to the (first) oblation to Savitṛi [2], he (the Adhvaryu) offers, once only, (the oblations relating to) the Forms [3] in the Âhavanîya, whilst going rapidly over (the formulas): he thus offers the oblations at his (the Sacrificer's) resting-place, and raises no rival for him. He offers at each opening of sacrifice [4], for the continuity and uninterrupted performance of the sacrifice.

8. Concerning this they say, 'Were he to offer

[1] According to Kâty. XX, 3, 3, the Prakramas are to be offered in the Dakshiṇâgni; but our Brâhmaṇa, whilst mentioning, at XIII, 4, 3, 4, both that fire, and the horse's footprint as optional places of offering, there as well as here decides in favour of the Âhavanîya; whence Harisvâmin remarks:—anyatrâgner iti anvâhâryapakṣane vâsvapade vâ parilikhite vakshyamâṇakalpântaranindâ.

[2] See XIII, 1, 4, 2.

[3] That is to say, without repeating them, when he has come to the end, as he did in the case of the 'oblations of drops.' Nor are they to be repeated day after day throughout the year, as some of the other offerings and rites are.

[4] Viz., according to Harisvâmin, at (the beginning of) the dîkshaṇîyâ, prâyaṇîyâ, âtithyâ, pravargya; the upasads, agnîshomîya, sutyâ, avabhṛitha, udayanîyâ, and udavasânîyâ offerings (iṣhṭi). This view is, however, rejected by the author.

at each opening of sacrifice, he would be deprived of his cattle, and would become poorer.' They should be performed once only: thus he is not deprived of his cattle, and does not become poorer. Forty-eight (oblations) he offers;—the Gagatî consists of forty-eight syllables, and cattle are of Gâgata (movable) nature: by means of the Gagatî he (the Adhvaryu) thus wins cattle for him (the Sacrificer). One additional (oblation) he offers, whence one man is apt to thrive amongst (many) creatures (or subjects).

Fourth Brâhmaṇa.

1. Pragâpati poured forth the life-sap of the horse (aśva-medha)[1]. When poured forth, it went straight away from him and spread itself over the regions. The gods went in quest of it. By means of offerings (ishṭi) they followed it up, by offerings they searched for it, and by offerings they found it. And when he performs ishṭis, the Sacrificer thereby searches for the horse (aśva) meet for sacrifice[2] (medhya).

2. They (the ishṭis[3]) belong to Savitṛi; for Savitṛi is this (earth): if any one hides himself thereon, if any one goes elsewhere[4], it is on this

[1] Or, as it might also be translated, Pragâpati produced (created) the Aśvamedha.

[2] Or, for the horse full of life-sap; or, simply, the sacrificial horse.

[3] Viz. three oblations of cakes on twelve kapâlas to Savitṛi Prasavitṛi, Savitṛi Âsavitṛi, and Savitṛi Satyaprasava respectively. For particulars see XIII, 4, 2, 6 seqq.

[4] Harisvâmin seems to take this in the sense of 'who moves about elsewhere (in another sphere),' and mentions, as an instance, a bird which flies in (? up into) the air—pakshyâdir antarikshe gakkhati—but is ultimately caught on earth.

(earth) that they find him; for no one (creature), whether walking erect or horizontally (like an animal), is able to go beyond it. Their belonging to Savitṛi thus is in order to find the horse.

3. Concerning this they say, 'Surely the horse disappears when it goes straight away; for they do not turn (drive) it back[1].' Now when he performs the Dhṛiti offerings[2] in the evening—dhṛiti (keeping) meaning peaceful dwelling, and the night also meaning peaceful dwelling—it is by means of peaceful dwelling that he keeps it; whence both men and beasts rest peacefully at night. And when he performs offerings in the morning, he seeks that (horse); whence it is in daytime that one goes to seek for what is lost. And again when he offers the Dhṛitis in the evening, and the (Savitṛi) ishṭis in the morning, it is security of possession the Sacrificer thereby brings about, whence security of possession is brought about for the subjects where this sacrifice is performed.

Fifth Brâhmaṇa.

1. But, indeed, distinction, royal sway, departs from him who performs the horse-sacrifice; and when a man attains to distinction, the lute is played to him. Two Brâhmaṇical lute-players sing (and play) for a year; for that—to wit, the lute—is a form (attribute) of distinction: it is distinction they thus confer upon him.

---

[1] See XIII, 4, 2, 16.

[2] The four Dhṛitis are performed on the Âhavaniya after sunset on the first day; cf. XIII, 4, 3, 5. For the four formulas used with these oblations ('here is joy,' &c.), see XIII, 1, 6, 2.

2. Concerning this they say, 'Were both to be Brâhmaṇas who sing, noble rank (or political power) would depart from him; for he—to wit, a Brâhmaṇa—is a form of the priestly office; and the nobility takes no delight in the priestly office (or priesthood).

3. 'And were both to be Râganyas (nobles), spiritual lustre would depart from him; for he—to wit, the Râganya—is a form of noble rank, and spiritual lustre takes no delight in noble rank.' One of those who sing is a Brâhmaṇa, and the other a Râganya; for the Brâhmaṇa means priestly office, and the Râganya noble rank: thus his distinction (social position) comes to be guarded on either side by the priesthood and the nobility.

4. Concerning this they say, 'Were both to sing by day, his distinction would be apt to fall away from him: for that—to wit, the day—is a form of the priestly dignity; and when the king chooses he may oppress (despoil) the Brâhmaṇa, but he will fare the worse (or, become the poorer) for it.

5. 'And if both (were to sing) at night, spiritual lustre would fall away from him; for that—to wit, the night—is a form of the nobility, and spiritual lustre takes no delight in the nobility.' The Brâhmaṇa sings by day[1], and the Râganya at night[2]; and thus, indeed, his distinction comes to be guarded on either side by the priesthood and the nobility[3].

6. 'Such sacrifices he offered,—such gifts he gave!' such (are the topics about which) the

[1] Viz. at the fore-offerings of the three cake-offerings (ishṭis) to Savitṛi, whilst staying in the south part of the sacrificial ground.

[2] Viz. during the performance of the Dhṛitis after sunset.

[3] The 'iti' at the end belongs to the following paragraph.

Brâhmaṇa sings[1]; for to the Brâhmaṇa belongs the fulfilment of wishes[2]: it is with the fulfilment of wishes he (the Brâhmaṇa) thus endows him (the Sacrificer). 'Such war he waged,—such battle he won!' such (are the topics about which) the Râganya sings; for the battle is the Râganya's strength: it is with strength he thus endows him. Three stanzas the one sings, and three stanzas the other, they amount to six,—six seasons make up a year: he thus establishes (the Sacrificer) in the seasons, in the year. To both of them he presents a hundred; for man has a life of a hundred (years), and a hundred energies: it is vitality and energy, vital power, he confers upon him.

Sixth Brâhmaṇa.

1. [The Adhvaryu and Sacrificer whisper in the right ear of the horse, Vâg. S. XXII, 19[3],] 'Plenteous by the mother, strengthful by the father,'—its mother, doubtless, is this (earth), and its father yonder (sky): it is to these two he commits it;—'a horse thou art, a steed thou art,'—he thereby instructs it, whence clever subjects (or children) are born to him;—'a courser (atya) thou art, a charger thou art,'—he therewith leads it beyond (ati), whence the horse goes beyond (surpasses) other animals, and whence the horse attains to pre-eminence among animals;—'a runner thou art, a racer thou art, a prize-winner thou

[1] Cf. XIII, 4, 2, 8.

[2] The author apparently takes 'ishṭâpûrta' in the sense of either 'sacrifice and fulfilment,' or 'the fulfilment of (the objects of) sacrifice.' Cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 319; X, p. 96.

[3] See XIII, 4, 2, 15.

art,'—in accordance with the text is (the meaning of) this;—'a male thou art, well-disposed towards man thou art,'—this is with a view to its (or, his) being supplied with a mate;—'Speedy thou art called, Child thou art called,'—this is the horse's favourite name: by its favourite name he thus addresses it; whence even if two enemies [1], on meeting together, address one another by name, they get on amicably together.

2. 'Go thou along the way of the Âdityas!'—to the Âdityas he thus makes it go.—'Ye divine guardians of the quarters, protect this horse, sprinkled for sacrifice to the gods!'—the guardians of the quarters are a hundred princes born in wedlock: to them he commits it;—'here is joy: here let it rejoice! here is safe keeping, here is its own safe keeping, hail!' For a year he offers the (four Dhṛiti) oblations [2]—(amounting to) sixteen nineties, for they are the horse's chain [3], and it is therewith alone that he chains it; whence the horse when let loose returns to its chain: (they amount to) sixteen nineties [4]; for these (oblations of safe keeping) are the horse's chain, and it is therewith alone that he chains it, whence the horse, when let loose, does not (entirely) abandon its chain.

3. Verily, the Aśvamedha means royal sway: it is after royal sway that these strive who guard the horse. Those of them who reach the end become

[1] Harisvâmin, perhaps rightly, takes 'âmitrau' in the sense of 'amitrayoḥ putrau,' 'the sons of two enemies.'

[2] See note on XIII, 4, 3, 5.

[3] Or, place of confinement, stable,—'bandhanasthânam.' Harisv.

[4] That is, four times 360.

(sharers in) the royal sway, but those who do not reach the end are cut off from royal sway. Wherefore let him who holds royal sway perform the horse-sacrifice; for, verily, whosoever performs the horse-sacrifice, without possessing power, is poured (swept) away.—Now, were unfriendly men to get hold of the horse, his sacrifice would be cut in twain, and he would become the poorer for it. A hundred men clad in armour guard it for the continuity and uninterrupted performance of the sacrifice; and he will not become the poorer for it; (but if it be lost) they should fetch another (horse), and sprinkle it: this is the expiation in that case.

Seventh Brâhmaṇa.

The Initiation of the Sacrificer.

1. Praǵâpati desired, 'Might I perform a horse-sacrifice[1]?' He toiled and practised fervid devotion. From the body of him, when wearied and heated, the deities departed in a sevenfold way: therefrom the Dîkshâ (initiation) was produced. He perceived those Vaiśvadeva[2] (oblations). He offered

[1] Or, 'might I make offering with the life-sap of the horse?' the natural, as well as the technical, meaning of the term 'aśvamedha' being generally understood in these speculations.

[2] The oblations offered prior to the initiation—here, as at any Soma-sacrifice—are called Audgrabhaṇa (elevatory) oblations. On the present occasion he, in the first place, performs, on each of the first six days of the Dîkshâ, the four oblations of this kind offered at the ordinary Soma-sacrifice (for which see III, 1, 4, 1 seqq.); whilst on the seventh day he offers, instead of these, the six corresponding oblations of the Agnikâyana (which forms a necessary element of the Aśvamedha), see VI, 6, 1, 15–20; for a further and final oblation offered on all these occasions, see p. 292, note 1. He then performs on each day three additional oblations

them, and by means of them he gained the Dîkshâ: and when the Sacrificer offers the Vaiśvadeva (oblations) it is the Dîkshâ he thereby gains. Day after day he offers them: day after day he thus gains the Dîkshâ [1]. Seven of them he offers; for seven were those deities that departed (from Praǵâpati); it is by means of them that he (the priest) gains the Dîkshâ for him.

2. But, indeed, the vital airs depart from those who exceed (the duration of) the Dîkshâ. For

(increased to four on the last day) which are peculiar to the Aśvamedha, and vary from day to day in respect of the deities to whom they are offered. But whilst, in the Śrautasûtras, these special oblations are likewise called Audgrabhaṇa (Kâty. XX, 4. 2–10), the author here applies to them the term Vaiśvadeva, owing apparently to the fact of their being offered, not to the Viśve Devâḥ properly speaking, but to different deities. In the dogmatic explanation of the Audgrabhaṇas of the ordinary sacrifice, reference was also made (at III, 1, 4, 9) to the Viśve Devâḥ, but only incidentally. Harisvâmin, indeed, points out that the designation Vaiśvadeva refers in the first place to the invocations (Vâǵ. S. XXII, 20) used with these special oblations (as is, indeed, evident from paragraph 2; cf. also part ii, p. 20, note 1); and the total of seven applied to them does not therefore refer here (as it does in paragraph 4) to the four ordinary and the three special Audgrabhaṇa oblations, but to the series of dedicatory formulas relating to the latter oblations, as explained p. 291, note 1; and, of course, by implication, to the oblations themselves.

[1] Though the Initiation only becomes perfect by the Sacrificer being girded with a hempen zone, whilst kneeling on a double black-antelope skin, and by a staff being handed to him (III, 2, 1, 1–32); on the present occasion, the Sacrificer is on each day, after the performance of the Audgrabhaṇa oblations, at least to sit down on the antelope skin; whilst on the seventh and last day of the Dîk-haṇîyeshṭi, the remaining ceremonies take place, after which those of the Agnikâyana, viz. the placing of the Ukhâ, or fire-pan, on the fire and the putting of thirteen fire-sticks in the pan (VI, 6, 2, 1 seqq.), &c.

seven days they observe it; for there are seven (outlets of) vital airs in the head, and the Dîkshâ is the vital airs: it is by means of the vital airs he gains the Dîkshâ, the vital airs, for him. He makes offering by dividing (each) deity into three parts[1]; for the gods are of three orders[2], and of three orders are these worlds: he thus establishes himself in these worlds in prosperity and vital power.

3. They amount to one and twenty (single invocations and oblations),—there are twelve months, five seasons, these three worlds, and yonder sun as the twenty-first,—that is the divine ruling-power, that is the glory: that supreme lordship, that summit of the fallow one (the Sun), that realm of light he attains.

4. Thirty Audgrabhaṇas[3] he offers,—of thirty syllables the Virâg (metre) consists, and the Virâg means all food: thus (he offers) for the obtainment of all food. Four Audgrabhaṇas he offers (on each day), and three Vaiśvadevas;—they amount to seven; for there are seven vital airs of the head, and the Dîkshâ is the vital airs: by means of the vital airs he thus gains the Dîkshâ, the vital airs.

[1] The kaṇḍikâ XXII, 20 is made up of seven parts, each of which consists of three distinct invocations addressed to the same deity; the seven deities addressed in the whole formula being Ka, Pragâpati, Aditi, Sarasvatî, Pûshan, Tvashṭri, and Vishṇu; whilst the three invocations to Ka, for instance, are 'Kâya svâhâ! Kasmai svâhâ! Katamasmai svâhâ!' Cf. XIII, 1, 8, 2 seqq.

[2] Viz. either the Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas (cf. IV, 5, 7, 2); or those of the sky, the air, and the earth, headed by Sûrya, Vâyu, and Agni respectively.

[3] That is, the four Audgrabhaṇas of the ordinary Soma-sacrifice offered on each of the seven days of the Dîkshâ, and two more added thereto on the seventh day.

for him. A full (-spoon)-oblation[1] he offers last for the sake of invigoration and union.

EIGHTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Pragâpati poured forth the life-sap of the horse[2]. When poured forth, it weighed down the *ṛik* (hymn-verse) and the sâman (hymn-tune). The Vaiśvadeva (offerings) upheld that (Aśvamedha): thus, when he offers the Vaiśvadevas, it is for the upholding of the Aśvamedha.

2. With (Vâg. S. XXII, 20), 'To Ka hail! To the Who hail! To the Whoever hail!' he makes the one relating to Pragâpati the first (or chief one), and thus upholds (the Aśvamedha) by means of the deities with Pragâpati as their chief.

3. 'Hail, meditation (we give) unto him meditated upon! Hail, the mind unto the Lord of creatures! Hail, thought unto him, the known[3]!' what the mystic sense of the former (utterances[4]) was that it is here.

[1] For a full discussion of this final Audgrabhaṇa oblation, the only one, it would seem, offered with the regular offering-spoon (*guhû*) filled by means of the dipping-spoon (sruva), see III, 1, 4, 2; 16–23; cf. also VI, 6, 1, 21.

[2] See p. 289, note 1. It is here taken to be represented by the Yagus:—aśvamedhaṃ yagurâtmakavigrahavantaṃ śrîśh/avân, Harisv.—the larger number of sacrificial formulas used at the performances being too heavy for the recited and chanted texts.

[3] Mahîdhara takes 'âdhim âdhîtâya' in the sense of 'âdhânaṃ prâptâya' (who has obtained a consecrated fire); and 'manaḥ pragâtaye' in the sense of 'manasi vartamânâya p.' (to P. who is in our mind); and '*k*ittaṃ vigñâtâya' in the sense of 'sarveshâṃ *k*ittasâkshiṇe' (to the witness, or knower, of all men's thoughts).

[4] Harisvâmin probably is right in supplying 'vyâhṛ*i*tînâm;' though possibly 'devatânâm' (deities) may be understood.

4. 'To Aditi hail! To Aditi, the mighty, hail! To Aditi, the most merciful, hail!' Aditi, doubtless, is this (earth): it is by her that he upholds it.

5. 'To Sarasvatî hail! To Sarasvatî, the pure, hail! To Sarasvatî, the great, hail!' Sarasvatî, doubtless, is speech: by speech he thus upholds it.

6. 'To Pûshan hail! To Pûshan, the protector of travellers, hail! To Pûshan, the watcher of men, hail!' Pûshan, doubtless, is cattle: by means of cattle he thus upholds it.

7. 'To Tvash*tri* hail! To Tvash*tri*, the seminal, hail! To Tvash*tri*, the multiform, hail!' Tvash*tri*, doubtless, is the fashioner of the couples of animals: by means of forms he thus upholds it.

8. 'To Vish*ṇ*u hail! To Vish*ṇ*u, the protector of what grows[1], hail! To Vish*ṇ*u, the bald[2], hail!' Vish*ṇ*u, doubtless, is the sacrifice: by sacrifice he thus upholds it. With (Vâg. XXII, 21), 'Let every mortal espouse the friendship of the divine guide, . . .[3],' he offers last of all a full (-spoon)-oblation; for the full-offering is this (earth): he thus finally establishes himself on this (earth).

---

[1] The meaning of 'nibhûyapa' is doubtful; Mahîdhara explains it by 'nitarâm bhûtvâ matsyâdyavatâra*m* kṛitvâ pâti.' Perhaps it may mean 'condescending protector,' though one expects a direct object with 'pa.'

[2] The word '*s*ipivish*ṭ*a,' as applied to Vish*ṇ*u, is likewise of doubtful meaning. The native dictionaries assign both the meaning 'bald' and 'leprous' (or, affected with skin-disease) to it; whilst the first part '*s*ipi' is taken variously by commentators as meaning 'cattle,' or 'ray,' or 'water,' or 'living being.'

[3] See III, 1, 4, 18; VI, 6, 1, 21; and p. 294, note 1.

NINTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. [Vâg. S. XXII, 22 [1]], 'In the priestly office (brahman) may the Brâhmaṇa be born, endowed with spiritual lustre (brahmavarkasa):' on the Brâhmaṇa he thereby bestows spiritual lustre, whence of old the Brâhmaṇa was born as one endowed with spiritual lustre [2].

2. 'In the royal order may the Râganya be born, heroic, skilled in archery, sure of his mark, and a mighty car-fighter:' on the Râganya he thereby bestows the grandeur of heroism [3], whence of old the Râganya was born as one heroic, skilled in archery, certain of his mark, and a mighty car-fighter.

3. 'The milch cow:' on the cow he thereby bestows milk: whence of old the cow was born as one yielding milk.

4. 'The draught ox:' on the ox he thereby bestows strength, whence of old the ox was born as a draught (animal).

5. 'The swift racer:' on the horse he thereby bestows speed, whence of old the horse was born as a runner.

6. 'The well-favoured woman:' on the woman

[1] These formulas are muttered after the thirteen samidhs have been put in the ukhâ, or fire-pan. See p. 290, note 1.

[2] 'Whence formerly a Brâhmaṇa was at once born as Brahmavarkasin (whilst now he must study),' Delbrück, Altindische Syntax, p. 287. Perhaps, however, 'purâ' has here (as it certainly has in the following paragraphs) the force of 'agre'—at the beginning, from the first, from of old.

[3] I take 'sauryam mahimânam' here (and 'gaitram mahimânam' in paragraph 7) to stand in apposition to one another, with something of the force of a compound word. See above, p. 66, note 4.

he thereby bestows beautiful form, whence the beautiful maiden is apt to become dear (to men).

7. 'The victorious warrior:' on the Râǵanya he thereby bestows the grandeur of victoriousness [1], whence of old the Râǵanya was born as one victorious.

8. 'The blitheful youth:' he, indeed, is a blitheful (or, sociable) youth who is in his prime of life; whence one who is in his prime of life is apt to become dear to women.

9. 'May a hero be born unto this Sacrificer!' on the Sacrificer's family he thereby bestows manly vigour, whence of old a hero was born to him who had performed the (Aśvamedha) sacrifice.

10. 'May Parǵanya rain for us whensoever we list!'—where they perform this sacrifice, there Parǵanya, indeed, rains whenever they list;—'may our fruit-bearing plants ripen!'—there the fruit-bearing plants indeed ripen where they perform this sacrifice;—'may security of possession be assured for us!'—where they perform this sacrifice there security of possession indeed is assured; whence wherever they perform this (Aśvamedha) sacrifice, security of possession becomes assured to the people.

Second Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

The First Soma-day (Agnishṭoma) [2].

1. Praǵâpati assigned the sacrifices to the gods; the Aśvamedha he kept for himself. The gods

[1] See note 3, p. 294.

[2] There are three Sutyâs, or Soma-days, at the Aśvamedha—viz. an Agnishṭoma, an Ukthya, and an Atirâtra—the most im-

said to him, 'Surely, this—to wit, the Aśvamedha—is a sacrifice: let us have a share in that also.' He contrived these Anna-homas (food-oblations) for them: thus when he performs the Annahomas, it is the gods he thereby gratifies.

2. With ghee he makes offering, for ghee is fiery mettle: by means of fiery mettle he thus lays fiery mettle into him (the horse and Sacrificer). With ghee he offers; for that—to wit, ghee—is the gods' favourite resource: it is thus with their favourite resource he supplies them.

3. With parched groats he makes offering; for that—to wit, parched groats—are a form of the gods[1]: it is the gods he thus gratifies.

4. With grain he makes offering; for this—to wit, grain—is a form of the days and nights[2]: it is the days and nights he thus gratifies.

5. With parched grain he makes offering; for this—to wit, parched grain—is a form of the Nakshatras[3] (lunar asterisms): it is the Nakshatras

portant of which is the central day. The first day offers no special features, as compared with the ordinary Agnishṭoma; except that the stotras are chanted on the 'ḳatushṭoma' model (see note to XIII, 3, 1, 4); and that the animal sacrifice of this day requires twenty-one sacrificial stakes, with twice eleven victims, two of which are tied to the central stake; see note on XIII, 2, 5, 2. The offerings referred to in the present Brâhmaṇa, are performed, not during the day itself, but during the following night, as a preliminary to the important features of the second Soma-day.

[1] Viz., according to the commentary, because of the (particles of) groats being connected with each other.

[2] The commentary does not explain this comparison. It would seem to suit better the parched grain.

[3] Viz. on account of the capability (samarthatvât) of the (raw) grains; but whether this is meant to refer to their power of germinating and growing is not explained.

he thus gratifies. He offers whilst mentioning names, with (Vâg. XXII, 23-33), 'To the in- (and out-) breathing hail! to the off-breathing hail[1]!' . . . he thus gratifies them by mentioning their names. [Vâg. S. XXII, 34], 'To one hail! to two hail! . . . to a hundred hail! to a hundred and one hail!' He offers in the proper order: in the proper order he thus gratifies them (the gods). He performs oblations successively increasing by one[2], for single, indeed, is heaven: singly he thus causes him (the Sacrificer) to reach heaven. Straight away[3] he offers in order to the winning of heaven; for straight away, as it were, is heaven.

6. But, verily, he who offers the oblations straight

[1] These eleven anuvâkas consist of altogether 149 such short dedicatory formulas—addressed to the vital airs, the regions, the waters, wind, fire, &c.—each ending with 'svâhâ (hail).' These are followed, in anuvâka 34, by formulas addressed to the cardinal numbers from 1 to 101; succeeded by two formulas addressed to the dawn and to heaven respectively,—all of these again ending with 'svâhâ.' The Annahomas themselves, offered by the Adhvaryu's assistant, the Pratiprasthâtṛi, are not, however, limited to any number; but their performance is to be continued throughout the night in such a way that each of the four three-hours' watches of the night is to be taken up with as many oblations of one of the four kinds of offering materials—in the order in which they are enumerated in the text—as can be got into the space of three hours. The formulas addressed to the cardinal numbers—(which are on no account to extend beyond 101)—are apparently supposed amply to suffice to fill up the time till dawn, when the Adhvaryu makes an oblation of ghee to the Dawn, followed by one to Heaven (or the realm of light) after sunrise.

[2] That is, in offering with the formulas addressed to the cardinal numbers.

[3] That is to say, without repeating any formula, or commencing again from the beginning, when the whole series is exhausted.

away[1], is liable to fall (pass) right away. He does not go beyond a hundred and one: were he to go beyond a hundred and one, he would deprive the Sacrificer of his vital power. He offers a hundred and one, for man has a life of a hundred (years), and his own self is the one hundred and first: he thus establishes himself in a self (or body), in vital power. With 'To the Dawn hail! to Heaven hail!' he offers the two last oblations; for the dawn is the night, and heaven (the realm of light) is the day: it is day and night he thus gratifies.

7. As to this they say, 'Were he to offer both either by day or by night, he would confound day and night with one another[2].' With 'To the Dawn hail!' he offers before the sun has risen, and with 'To Heaven hail' when it has risen, to avoid confusion between day and night.

Second Brâhmaṇa.

The Second Soma-day (Ukthya).

1. Verily, this—to wit, the Aśvamedha—is the king of sacrifices. But, indeed, the Aśvamedha is the Sacrificer, (for) the sacrifice is the Sacrificer: when he (the priest) binds victims to the horse (or, at the horse-sacrifice), he then, indeed, takes hold[3] of the sacrifice at the sacrifice.

2. 'A horse, a hornless he-goat, and a Gomṛiga[4]'

[1] That is, without stopping.

[2] There is no 'iti' here; and the quotation, therefore, may perhaps extend to the end of the paragraph.

[3] Ârabhate prâpnoti, comm.; it might also be rendered by 'he enters upon the sacrifice.'

[4] This (and the identical passage XIII, 5, 1, 13) looks like a quotation, as if quoted from Vâg. S. XXIV, 1; where are

these they bind to the central stake: thereby, indeed, he (the priest) sharpens the front of his (the Sacrificer's) army [1], whence the front of the king's army is sure to become terrible.

3. A black-necked (he-goat), sacred to Agni, in front (of the horse) to its forehead [2]: the original (hall) fire he makes it, whence the king's hall-fire is sure to be (efficient) [3].

---

likewise found the references to the other victims and their places, in paragraphs 2–9. Possibly, however, the 'iti' may be used here with a kind of 'deiktic' force (cf. the similar use in XIII, 2, 8, 1); if, indeed, it does not simply refer to 'gomṛiga,' i.e. 'the animal called Gomṛiga' (lit. 'bovine deer'), regarding which see note on XIII, 3, 4, 3.—Though the victims to be immolated on this day are first dealt with in this and the following Brâhmaṇas, their slaughter only takes place at the usual time at every Soma-sacrifice, viz. after the Sarpaṇam (XIII, 2, 3, 1 seqq.), the chanting of the Bahishpavamâna Stotra, and the drawing of the Âśvina-graha. On the present occasion these ceremonies are preceded by the drawing of the Mahiman cups of Soma (see XIII, 2, 11, 1 seqq.); whilst the chant is followed by the driving up of the victims, and the putting to of the horse, and the driving to the water, treated of in XIII, 2, 6, 1 seqq.

[1] Harisvâmin takes this to mean that he makes the (sacrificial) horse, i.e. the king, alone the head of the army,—râgabhûtam apy aśvaṃ senâmukham ekaṃ karotîty arthaḥ.

[2] According to the comments on Vâg. S. XXIV, 1, and Kâty. XX, 6, 4, a rope is wound round the horse's body in the same way as it is done with a bottle-gourd (lagenaria vulgaris), and it is to this rope that these so-called 'paryaṅgyâḥ (circumcorporal),' or victims surrounding the (horse's) body, would then be tied.

[3] The commentator explains 'bhâvuka' by 'sâdhur bhavati;' and he adds that this is important inasmuch as numerous magic rites, such as rites for insuring success and averting evil (śântika-paushṭika), and incantations (âbhiḳârika) are performed thereon. It is the name here assigned to this, the Âvasathya, fire, viz. 'pûrvâgni' or, original fire—with its secondary meaning 'front-fire'—which is seized upon by the author for symbolically identifying it with the victim fastened in front (or to the front) of the horse.

4. An ewe, for Sarasvatî, beneath the (horse's) jaws: he thereby makes women to be dependent, whence women are sure to be attendant upon man.

5. Two (he-goats), black on the lower part of the body [1], for the Aśvins, (he ties) to the front legs: he thereby lays strength into the front legs, whence the king is sure to be strong in the arm [2].

6. A dark-grey (he-goat) for Soma and Pûshan at the (horse's) navel: a foothold he makes this one; for Pûshan is this (earth): it is thereon he establishes himself.

7. A white one and a black one, for Sûrya and Yama, on the flanks: a suit of armour he makes those two; whence the king, clad in mail, performs heroic deeds.

8. Two, with shaggy hind thighs, for Tvash*ṭri*, to the hind legs: he lays strength into the thighs, whence the king is sure to be strong in his thighs.

9. A white one, for Vâyu, to the tail,—an elevation he makes this one, whence people in danger betake themselves to an elevated place [3];—a cow wont to cast her calf, for Indra, the ever active, in order to associate the sacrifice with Indra;—a dwarfish one for Vish*ṇu*; for Vish*ṇu* is the sacrifice: it is in the sacrifice he (the Sacrificer) thus finally establishes himself.

10. These, then, are the fifteen 'paryaṅgya' (body-encircling) [4] animals,—for fifteenfold is the

[1] Mahîdhara takes 'adhorâma' to mean 'white-coloured on the lower part of the body.'

[2] The word 'bâhu' means both 'arm' and 'front leg.'

[3] That is, a mountain, a palace, high ground, &c., comm. ('vâyur hi skandhasyo*kkh*rita ity abhiprâya*h*').

[4] Here the encircled horse itself, and the other two victims

thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt means manly vigour: with that thunderbolt, manly vigour, the Sacrificer now repels evil from in front[1] (of the sacrifice).

11. And fifteen (victims), indeed, are (bound) to each of the other (stakes);—for fifteenfold is the thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt means manly vigour: with that thunderbolt, manly vigour, the Sacrificer now repels evil on both sides[2] (of the sacrifice).

12. As to this they say, 'Does he really repel evil by these?' And, indeed, he does not make up the complete Praǵâpati, and does not here gain everything.

13. Let him rather bind seventeen animals to the central stake[3]; for seventeenfold is Praǵâpati, and the Aśvamedha is Praǵâpati,—thus for the

tied directly to the central stake, are improperly included in the term 'paryaṅgya.'

[1] Viz. inasmuch as the sacrificial stake to which the horse is tied (and hence the victims fastened thereto) is the so-called 'agnish*th*a' stake, or the one standing opposite to (directly in front of) the Âhavanîya fire.

[2] Viz. inasmuch as these other stakes stand in a line to the north (left) and south (right) of the central stake. Whilst, in the case of a simple 'ekâdaśinî' (cf. III, 7, 2, 1 seqq.) there would be five stakes on each side of the central one, at the Aśvamedha there are to be twenty-one stakes, or ten on either side of the central stake. See XIII, 4, 4, 5 seqq.

[3] These seventeen victims do not include the twelve paryaṅgyas which are tied to different parts of the horse's body, but only to those which are actually tied to the central stake,—viz. the horse and its two immediate neighbours (paragraph 2), then twelve victims (enumerated Vâǵ. S. XXIV, 2, beginning with three victims of different shades of red, rohita), and lastly two beasts belonging to two sets of eleven victims finally superadded to the sets of fifteen victims tied in the first place to the stakes. Cf. note on XIII, 2, 5, 2.

obtainment of the Aśvamedha. And sixteen (victims he binds) to each of the other (stakes), for of sixteen parts (kalâ) consists all this[1] (universe); all this (universe) he thus gains.

14. 'How is he to appease[2] these?' they ask. 'Let him appease them with the Bârhaduktha verses[3], "Enkindled, anointing the lap of the faithful (f.) ...;" for Bṛihaduktha, the soñ of Vâmadeva, or Aśva, son of Samudra, saw these very (verses) to be the âprî-verses of the horse: it is by means of these we appease it,' so they say. But let him not do so; let him appease it with the Gâmadagna verses; for Gamadagni is Pragâpati, and so is the Aśvamedha: he thus supplies it with its own deity;—let him therefore appease (the victims) with the Gâmadagna verses[4].

15. Now some make the invitatory-formulas and the offering-formulas (to be pronounced) separately for the 'paryaṅgyas,' saying, 'For these we find (formulas)—for the others, on account of not finding any, we do not use them[5].' Let him not do so;

[1] Regarding this division into sixteen parts, as applied to man, the animal, and the universe, see Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 111 with note.

[2] Or, 'what Âprîs (appeasing verses) is he to pronounce over them?' These verses are pronounced as the offering-formulas (yâgyâ) at the fore-offerings of the animal sacrifice. See part ii, p. 185, note 1.

[3] Viz. Vâg. S. XXIX, 1–11.

[4] Viz. Vâg. S. XXIX, 25–36, beginning, 'Enkindled in the house of man this day, a god, thou worshippest the gods, O Gâtavedas.'

[5] The commentator takes this to mean that, inasmuch as these paryaṅgyas—here improperly including the horse itself and the two other victims of Pragâpati at the central stake—are assigned to commonly invoked deities, formulas relating to these would easily

for the horse is the nobility (chieftain), and the other animals are the peasantry (clan); and those who do this really make the peasantry equal and refractory to the nobility; and they also deprive the Sacrificer of his vital power. Therefore the horse alone belongs to Pragâpati [1], and the others are sacred to the gods: he thus, indeed, makes the peasantry obedient and subservient to the nobility; and he also supplies the Sacrificer with vital power.

16. The slaughtering-knife of the horse is made of gold, those of the 'paryaṅgyas' of copper, and those of the others of iron; for gold is (shining) light, and the Asvamedha is the royal office: he thus bestows light upon the royal office. And by means of the golden light (or, by the light of the gold), the Sacrificer also goes to the heavenly world; and he, moreover, makes it a gleam of light shining after him, for him to reach the heavenly world.

17. But, indeed, the horse is also the nobility; and this also—to wit, gold—is a form (symbol) of

---

be found; whilst in the case of the other twelve victims tied to the central stake (see p. 301, note 3), as well as those of the other stakes—though they, too, are assigned to definite deities—some of their deities (as in the case of three a year and a half old heifers assigned to Gâyatrî, Vâg. S. XXIV, 21), are such as to make it difficult to find suitable formulas for them:—eteshâm asvâdînâm pragâpatyâdikâ yâgyânuvâkyâs tâh kim iti na prithak kurmah; itareshâm rohitâdînâm na vindâmah, tryavayo gâyatryâdayo devatâs taddevatyâs ka durlabhâ lakshanopetâ yâgyânuvâkyâ ity abhiprâyah.

[1] The invitatory-formula and offering-formula are, however, pronounced once for the 'paryaṅgyas' (including the horse) in common, whilst a second pair of formulas are used for the other victims in common.

the nobility: he thus combines the nobility with the nobility.

18. And as to why there are copper (knives) for the 'paryaṅgyas,'—even as the non-royal king-makers, the heralds and headmen, are to the king, so those 'paryaṅgyas' are to the horse; and so, indeed, is this—to wit, copper—to gold: with their own form he thus endows them.

19. And as to why there are iron ones for the others,—the other animals, indeed, are the peasantry, and this—to wit, iron—is a form of the peasantry: he thus combines the peasantry with the peasantry. On a rattan mat (lying) north (of the Âhavanîya) they cut the portions of the horse(-flesh); for the horse is of anush*ṭ*ubh nature, and related to the Anush*ṭ*ubh is that (northern) quarter: he thus places that (horse) in its own quarter. And as to (his doing so) on a rattan mat,—the horse was produced from the womb of the waters[1], and the rattan springs from the water: he thus causes it to be possessed of its own (maternal) womb.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, the gods did not know the Pavamâna[2] at the Aśvamedha to be the heavenly world, but the horse knew it. When, at the Aśvamedha,

[1] See VI, 1, 1, 11 (V, 1, 4, 5).

[2] Pavamâna is the name of the pressed Soma while it is 'clarifying.' Hence the first stotra of each of the three Savanas of a Soma-day—chanted after the pressing of the Soma and the drawing of the principal cups—is called Pavamâna-stotra. Whether by the term 'Pavamâna' here the clarifying Soma is alluded to, as well as the stotra—which alone the commentator takes it to mean, and to which the second mention certainly refers—must remain

they glide along[1] with the horse for the Pavamâna (-stotra), it is for getting to know (the way to) the heavenly world; and they hold on to the horse's tail, in order to reach the heavenly world; for man does not rightly know (the way to) the heavenly world, but the horse does rightly know it.

2. Were the Udgâtṛi to chant the Udgitha[2], it would be even as if one who does not know the country were to lead by another (than the right) way. But if, setting aside the Udgâtṛi, he chooses

doubtful. The commentator, it would seem, accounts for this identification of the Pavamâna-stotra with heaven by the fact that the second day of the Asvamedha is an ekavi*m*sa day (see XIII, 3, 3, 3; Tâ*nd*ya-Br. XXI, 4, 1), i.e. one on which all the stotras are performed in the twenty-one-versed hymn-form; and that the Sun is commonly called 'ekavi*m*sa,' the twenty-first, or twenty-one-fold. The particular chant intended is that of the morning pressing, viz. the Bahishpavamâna, or outside-Pavamâna-stotra, so-called because at the ordinary one-day's Soma-sacrifice, it is chanted outside the Sadas. But, on the other hand, in the case of Ahîna-sacrifices, or those lasting from two to twelve days, that stotra is chanted outside only on the first day, whilst on the others it is done inside the Sadas. An exception is, however, made in the case of the Asvamedha, which requires the morning Pavamâna, on all three days, to be performed in its usual place on the north-eastern part of Vedi, south of the *K*âtvâla.

[1] For the noiseless way of sliding or creeping from the Sadas, and returning thither, and approaching the different Dhish*n*yas, or fire-hearths, see part ii, p. 299, note 2. As has already been stated, it is only after the chanting of the Bahishpavamâna that the victims are driven up to the offering place.

[2] It is from this, the principal part of the Sâman, or chanted verse (cf. part ii, p. 310, note), that the Udgâtṛi takes his name; this particular function of his being, on the present occasion, supposed to be performed by the whinnying of the horse. After this they make the horse step on the chanting-ground, apparently either as a visible recognition of the part it has been made to play, or because the horse thereby is made to go to heaven with which the Bahishpavamâna was identified.

the horse for (performing) the Udgîtha, it is just as when one who knows the country leads on the right way: the horse leads the Sacrificer rightly to the heavenly world. It makes 'Hiṅ[1],' and thereby makes the Sâman itself to be 'hiṅ': this is the Udgîtha. They pen up mares, (and on seeing the horse) they utter a shrill sound: as when the chanters sing, such like is this. The priests' fee is gold weighing a hundred (grains): the mystic import of this has been explained[2].

Fourth Brâhmaṇa.

1. Pragâpati desired, 'Would that I might gain both worlds, the world of the gods, and the world of men.' He saw those beasts, the tame and the wild ones; he seized them, and by means of them took possession of these two worlds: by means of the tame beasts he took possession of this (terrestrial) world, and by means of the wild beasts of yonder (world); for this world is the world of men, and yonder world is the world of the gods. Thus when he seizes tame beasts he thereby takes possession of this world, and when wild beasts, he thereby (takes possession) of yonder (world).

2. Were he to complete (the sacrifice) with tame ones, the roads would run together[3], the village-

[1] On the mystic significance of this ejaculation (here compared with the neighing of the horse) in the sacrifice, and especially in the Sâman, see I, 4, 1, 1 seqq.; II, 2, 4, 12.

[2] XII, 7, 2, 13.

[3] The commentary remarks that by 'roads' here is meant those walking on them—as, in that case, peace and security would reign, men would range all the lands:—adhvabhir atrâdhvasthâ lakshyante; ksheme sati manushyâḥ sarvân desân saṁkareyur ity abhiprâyaḥ.

boundaries of two villages would be contiguous[1], and no ogres[2], man-tigers, thieves, murderers, and robbers would come to be in the forests. By (so doing) with wild (beasts) the roads would run asunder[3], the village-boundaries of two villages would be far asunder[4]; and there would come to be ogres, man-tigers, thieves, murderers, and robbers in the forests.

3. As to this they say, 'Surely that—to wit, the forest (beast)—is not a beast (or cattle), and offering should not be made thereof: were he to make offering thereof, they would ere long carry away the Sacrificer dead to the woods, for forest (or wild) beasts have the forest for their share; and were he not to make offering thereof, it would be a violation of the sacrifice.' Well, they dismiss them after fire has been carried round them[5]: thus, indeed, it is

[1] Harisvâmin takes 'samantikam' in the sense of 'near' and construes it with 'grâmayoḥ' (as he does 'vidûram' in the next paragraph)—'the two village-boundaries would be near (far from) the two villages;' but see I, 4, 1, 22, where samantikam (and IX, 3, 1, 11, where 'samantikataram') is likewise used without a complement; as is 'vidûram' in I, 4, 1, 23.

[2] Harisvâmin takes 'ṛikshikâ' to mean 'a bear,'—ṛikshâ eva ṛikshikâḥ.

[3] Hardly, as the commentary takes it, 'they would become blocked up,' and people would have to stay in their own country:—adhvânaḥ pûrvadeśâdayo vikrameyur viruddhaṃ krâmayeyuḥ (!), svadeśa eva manushyâḥ saṃkareyur na deśântare 'py antarâlânâm .. bhinnatvâd akshematvâḥ ka vidûraṃ grâmayor grâmântau syâtâm.

[4] Viz. because, for want of security and peace, the villages would be few and far between,—aksheme hi sati praviralâ grâmâ bhavanti, comm.

[5] On the 'paryagnikaraṇam' or circumambulation of an oblation in accordance with the course of the sun, whilst holding a fire-brand in one's hand, see part i, p. 45, note; part ii, p. 187, note.

neither an offering nor a non-offering, and they do not carry the Sacrificer dead to the forest, and there is no violation of the sacrifice.

4. He completes (the sacrifice) with tame (beasts), —father and son part company[1], the roads run together, the village-boundaries of two villages become contiguous, and no ogres, man-tigers, thieves, murderers, and robbers come to be in the forests.

Fifth Brâhmaṇa.

1. Pragâpati poured forth the life-sap of the horse (aśva-medha); when poured forth it went from him. Having become fivefold[2], it entered the year, and they (the five parts) became those half-months[3]. He followed it up by means of the fifteenfold (sets of victims[4]), and found it; and having found it, he took possession of it by means of the fifteenfold ones; for, indeed, they—to wit, the fifteenfold (sets)—are a symbol of the half-months, and when he seizes the fifteenfold ones, it is the

[1] Or, they exert themselves in different directions,—that is, as the commentator explains, because in peace they would not be forced to keep together, as they would have to do in troublous times. He, however, seems somehow to connect 'vy avaśyata*h*' with the root 'vas':—kśheme hi sati pitâputrâv atra vi *pri*thag vasata*h*; akśheme tu sambaddhâv apy etâv atra vasata*h*.—Whilst in this passage the verb would hardly suggest an estrangement between father and son, this is distinctly the case in the parallel passage, Taitt. Br. III, 9, 1, 2, where, however, this contingency is connected with the completion of the sacrifice, not, as here, with tame, but with wild beasts.

[2] Or the Paṅkti metre, consisting of five octosyllabic pâdas.

[3] Viz. as consisting of thrice five days.

[4] See above, XIII, 2, 2, 11.

half-months the Sacrificer thereby takes possession of.

2. Concerning this they say, 'But, surely, the year is not taken possession of by him who spreads out (performs sacrifice for) a year in any other way than by means of the Seasonal sacrifices[1].' The Seasonal sacrifices, doubtless, are manifestly the year; and when he seizes the Seasonal victims[2], he then manifestly takes possession of the year. 'And, assuredly, he who spreads out the year in any other way than with the (victims) of the set of eleven[3] (stakes) is deprived of his offspring (or

[1] On this point, cp. II, 6, 3, 1.—'Verily, imperishable is the righteousness of him who offers the Seasonal sacrifices; for such a one gains the year, and hence there is no cessation for him. He gains it in three divisions, he conquers it in three divisions. The year means the whole, and the whole is imperishable (without end). Moreover, he thereby becomes a Season, and as such goes to the gods; but there is no perishableness in the gods, and hence there is imperishable righteousness for him.'

[2] The Âturmâsyas are the victims enumerated Vâg. S. XXIV, 14–19. The first six of them are the last (of the set of fifteen) bound to the thirteenth stake; whilst the remaining victims make up all the seven sets of fifteen victims bound to remaining stakes (14–21) —thus amounting to 121 domesticated animals, cf. XIII, 5, 1, 13, seq. In counting the stakes the central one is the first, then follows the one immediately south, and then the one immediately north of it, and thus alternately south and north. The reason why the name 'Âturmâsya' is applied to the victims here referred to is that the deities for whose benefit they are immolated are the same, and follow the same order, as those to whom (the chief) oblations are made at the Seasonal sacrifices (viz. the constant ones—Agni, Soma, Savitṛi, Sarasvatî, Pûshan, and special ones, see II, 5, 1, 8–17; 5, 2, 7–16; 5, 3, 2–4; 5, 4, 2–10; 6, 1, 4–6; 6, 2, 9; 6, 3, 4–8).

[3] That is to say, he who seeks to gain the year by immolating only the Seasonal victims, and the sets of fifteen victims, and does not offer likewise the victims of the set (or rather two sets) of eleven

subjects) and cattle, and fails to reach heaven.' This set of eleven (stakes), indeed, is just heaven [1], and the set of eleven (stakes) means offspring (or people) and cattle; and when he lays hands on the (victims) of the (two) sets of eleven (stakes) he does not fail to reach heaven, and is not deprived of his offspring and cattle.

3. Pragâpati created the Virâg;—when created, it went away from him, and entered the horse meet for sacrifice. He followed it up with sets of ten [2]

---

stakes. These two sets of eleven victims, tied to the twenty-one stakes (two being tied to the central stake), are to constitute the regular 'savanîyâḥ paśavaḥ' of the pressing-days of the Aśvamedha; and in XIII, 5, 1, 3, and 5, 3, 11, the author argues against those who (on the first, and third days) would immolate only twenty-one such victims, all of them sacred to Agni. As regards the second day, the author does not mention these particular victims, but this can scarcely be interpreted as an approval of twenty-one such victims, even though the number twenty-one certainly plays an important part on that day—seeing that Kâtyâyana, XX, 4, 25, makes the two sets of eleven victims the rule for all three days. For the third day, on the other hand, the author of the Brâhmaṇa (XIII, 5, 3, 11) actually recommends the immolation of twenty-four bovine victims as 'savanîyâḥ paśavaḥ.' The deities of the first set of eleven victims (as perhaps also of the second set of the first day) are the same as those of the ordinary 'ekâdaśinî' (see III, 9, 1, 6–21; and Vâg. S. XXIX, 58), whilst the second set (of the second day, at all events) has different deities (Vâg. S. XXIX, 60). On the central day these victims are added to the sets of fifteen victims bound there to each of the twenty-one stakes; the mode of distribution being the same as on the other two days, viz., so that the first victim of each set—that is the one devoted to Agni—is bound to the central stake, whilst of the remaining twenty victims one is assigned to each stake.

[1] Viz. inasmuch as the stakes stand right in front (to the east) of the sacrificial fire and ground, and the Sacrificer would thus miss the way to heaven if he were not to pass through the 'ekâdaśinî.'

[2] The Virâg metre consists of (three) decasyllabic pâdas.

(beasts). He found it, and, having found it, he took possession of it by means of the sets of ten: when he seizes the sets of eleven (beasts), the Sacrificer thereby takes possession of the Virâg. He seizes a hundred, for man has a life of a hundred (years) and a hundred energies: vital power and energy, vigour, he thus takes to himself.

4. Eleven decades[1] he seizes, for the Trish/ubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trish/ubh means energy, vigour: thus it is for the obtainment of energy, vigour. Eleven decades he seizes, for in an animal there are ten vital airs, and the body (trunk) is the eleventh: he thus supplies the animals with vital airs. They belong to all the gods for the completeness of the horse (sacrifice), for the horse belongs to all the gods. They are of many forms, whence beasts are of many forms; they are of distinct forms, whence beasts are of distinct forms.

SIXTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. [He puts the horse to the chariot[2], with Vâg. S. XXIII, 5], 'They harness the ruddy bay,

[1] After the (349) domesticated animals have been secured to the stakes, sets of thirteen wild beasts are placed on the (twenty) spaces between the (twenty-one) stakes, making in all 260 wild beasts. From the 150th beast onward (enumerated Vâg. S. XXIV, 30–40) these amount to 111 beasts which here are called eleven decades; the odd beast not being taken into account, whilst in paragraph 3 above the first ten decades are singled out for symbolic reasons. These beasts are spread over the twelfth (only the last seven beasts of which belong to the first decade) and following spaces.

[2] Along with the sacrificial horse three other horses are put to the chariot, with the formula Vâg. S. XXIII, 6. Previously to this, however, the Hotri recites eleven verses in praise of the horse (cf. XIII, 5, 1, 16). Both the horses and the chariot are decorated

moving (round the moveless: the lights shine in the heavens);'—the ruddy bay, doubtless, is yonder sun: it is yonder sun he harnesses for him, for the gaining of the heavenly world.

2. Concerning this they say, 'Surely, the sacrifice goes from him whose beast, when brought up, goes elsewhere than the vedi (altar-ground).' [Let him, therefore, mutter Vâg. S. XXIII, 7,] 'Singer of praise, make that horse come back to us by that path!'—the singer of praise, doubtless, is Vâyu (the wind): it is him he thereby places for him (the Sacrificer) on the other side, and so it does not go beyond that.

3. But, indeed, fiery mettle and energy, cattle, and prosperity depart from him who offers the Aśvamedha.

4. With (Vâg. S. XXIII, 8), 'May the Vasus anoint thee with the Gâyatra metre!' the queen consort anoints (the forepart of the unharnessed horse);—ghee is fiery mettle, and the Gâyatrî also is fiery mettle: two kinds of fiery mettle he thus bestows together on him (the Sacrificer).

5. With, 'May the Rudras anoint thee with the Traish/ubha metre!' the (king's) favourite wife anoints (the middle part):—ghee is fiery mettle, and the Trish/ubh is energy: both fiery

with gold ornaments. The Adhvaryu then drives with the Sacrificer to a pond of water to the east of the sacrificial ground (an indispensable feature in choosing the place of sacrifice), and having driven into the water he makes him pronounce the formula XXIII, 7, 'When the wind hath entered the waters, the dear form of Indra, do thou, singer of praise, make that horse come back to us by that path;' whereupon they return to the sacrificial ground.

mettle and energy he thus bestows together on him.

6. With, 'May the Âdityas anoint thee with the *Gâgata* metre!' a discarded wife[1] (of the king) anoints (the hindpart);—ghee is fiery mettle, and the *Gagatî* is cattle: both fiery mettle and cattle he thus bestows together on him.

7. It is the wives[2] that anoint (the horse), for they—to wit, (many) wives—are a form of prosperity (or social eminence): it is thus prosperity he confers on him (the Sacrificer), and neither fiery spirit, nor energy, nor cattle, nor prosperity pass away from him.

8. But even as some of the offering-material may get spilled before it is offered, so (part of) the victim is here spilled in that the hair of it when wetted comes off. When they (the wives) weave pearls (into the mane and tail) they gather up its hair. They are made of gold: the significance of this has been explained. A hundred and one pearls they weave into (the hair of) each part[3]; for man has a life of a hundred (years), and his own self (or body) is the one hundred and first: in vital power, in the self, he establishes himself. They weave them in (each) with (one of) the (sacred utterings) relating to Pragâpati, 'Bû*ḥ*! bhuva*ḥ*! svar (earth, air,

[1] That is, a former favourite, but now neglected; or, according to others, one who has borne no son.

[2] The fourth and lowest wife of the King the Pâlâgalî (cf. XIII. 4, 1, 8; 5, 2, 8), though present at the sacrifice, does not take part in this ceremony, probably on account of her low-caste origin, as the daughter of a messenger, or courier.

[3] Viz. either the mane on both sides, and the tail, or the hair of the head, the neck (mane) and the tail; each of the ladies apparently taking one of these parts.

heaven)!' for the horse is sacred to Pragâpati: with its own deity he thus supplies it. With, 'Parched grain, or parched groats?—in grain-food and in food from the cow'—he takes down the remaining food[1] (from the cart) for the horse: he thereby makes the (king's) people eaters of food (prosperous);—'eat ye, gods, this food! eat thou, Pragâpati, this food!' he thereby supplies the people with food.

9. Verily, fiery spirit and spiritual lustre pass away from him who performs the Aśvamedha. The Hotṛi and the Brahman engage in a Brahmodya[2] (theological discussion); for the Hotṛi relates to Agni, and the Brahman (priest) to Bṛihaspati, Bṛihaspati being the Brahman (n.): fiery spirit[3] and spiritual lustre he thus bestows together on him. With the (central) sacrificial stake between them, they discourse together; for the stake is the Sacrificer[4]: he thus encompasses the Sacrificer on both sides with fiery spirit and spiritual lustre.

10. [The Brahman asks, Vâg. S. XXIII, 9,] 'Who is it that walketh singly?'—it is yonder sun, doubtless, that walks singly[5], and he is spiritual

[1] Viz. the material left over after what was taken for the Annahomas, XIII, 2, 1, 1 seqq.

[2] For a similar discussion between the four priests, prior to the offering of the omenta, see XIII, 5, 2, 11 seq.

[3] 'Tegas' is pre-eminently the quality assigned to Agni.

[4] It must be remembered that the sacrificial horse here represented by the stake is identified with both Pragâpati and the Sacrificer.

[5] The actual replies to the questions in Vâg. S. XXIII, 9 and 11, are contained in the corresponding verses ten and twelve; being given here in an expository way, with certain variations and

lustre: spiritual lustre the two (priests) thus bestow on him.

11. 'Who is it that is born again?'—it is the moon, doubtless, that is born again (and again): vitality they thus bestow on him.

12. 'What is the remedy for cold?'—the remedy for cold, doubtless, is Agni (fire): fiery spirit they thus bestow on him.

13. 'And what is the great vessel?'—the great vessel, doubtless, is this (terrestrial) world: on this earth he thus establishes himself.

14. [The Hotṛi asks the Brahman, Vâg. S. XXIII, 11,] 'What was the first conception?'—the first conception, doubtless, was the sky, rain: the sky, rain, he thus secures for himself.

15. 'Who was the great bird[1]?'—the great bird, doubtless, was the horse: vital power he thus secures for himself.

16. 'Who was the smooth one?'—the smooth one (pilippilâ), doubtless, was beauty (śrî[2]): beauty he thus secures for himself.

---

occasional explanatory words (such as 'vṛishṭi,' rain, in paragraph 14). The answers to the first four questions are supposed to be given by the Hotṛi, and the last four by the Brahman.

[1] This is the meaning assigned here to 'vayas' by Mahîdhara; but the other meaning of 'vayas,' viz. 'youthful vigour, or age, (generally),' would seem to suit much better, or at least to be implied. And Harisvâmin accordingly takes it in the sense of 'vârdhakam' (old age, or long life). Mahîdhara, moreover, identifies the horse with the horse-sacrifice, which, in the shape of a bird, carries the Sacrificer up to heaven. On this notion cp. part iv, introduction, pp. xxi–xxii.

[2] Instead of 'śriḥ,' the answer given to this question in Vâg. S. XXIII, 12 was 'aviḥ' which would either mean 'the gentle, kindly one,' or 'the sheep (f.),' but which Mahîdhara (in the former sense)

17. 'Who was the tawny one?'—the two tawny ones, doubtless, are the day and the night[1]: in the day and night he thus establishes himself.

SEVENTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. When the victims have been bound (to the stakes), the Adhvaryu takes the sprinkling-water in order to sprinkle the horse. Whilst the Sacrificer holds on to him behind, he (in sprinkling the horse) runs rapidly through the formula used at the Soma-sacrifice[2], and then commences the one for the Aśvamedha.

2. [Vâg. S. XXIII, 13,] 'May Vâyu favour thee with cooked kinds of food[3],'—Vâyu (the wind) indeed cooks it[4];—'the dark-necked one with he-goats,'—the dark-necked one, doubtless,

takes as (an epithet of) the earth which he also takes 'śrî' to mean in the above passage of the Brâhmaṇa; whilst to the ἅπαξ λεγόμενον 'pilippilâ' he assigns the meaning 'slippery' (*k*ikkaṇa) as applying to the earth after rain (? deriving it from the root 'lip,' to smear, anoint). Harisvâmin, on the other hand, takes 'pilippilâ' to be an onomatopoetic word, in the sense of '(glossy), beautiful, shining':—rûpânukaraṇaśabdo 'yaṁ bahurûpâvilâ (? bahurûpânvitâ) uddyotavatî; and he adds:—śrîmîṁtratuḥ (? śrîr mantre tu) aviḥ pippaloktau (?) sâ tu śrîr eveti brâhmaṇe vivṛitaṁ, katham, iyaṁ vâ aviḥ pṛithivî, sâ *k*a śrîḥ, śrîr vâ iyam iti va*k*anât. Cf. VI, 1, 2, 33.

[1] Here the original text in Vâg. S. XXIII, 12, has simply 'the piśaṅgilâ was the night.' Mahîdhara explains 'piśaṅgilâ' by 'piśaṁgila,' 'beauty-devouring,' inasmuch as the night swallows, or conceals, all beauty (or form). Neither this nor the other explanation (=piśaṅga, ruddy-brown) suits the day; but Harisvâmin, who does not explain the name, remarks that the night here is taken to include the day. Cf. XIII, 5, 2, 18.

[2] Viz. Vâg. S. VI, 9; see III, 7, 4, 4–5.

[3] The author seems to take 'pa*k*ataiḥ' in the sense of 'cooking.'

[4] Viz. inasmuch as it causes the fire to blaze up, comm.

is Agni (the fire); and the fire indeed cooks it (the horse) together with the he-goats.

3. 'The Nyagrodha with cups,'—for when the gods were performing sacrifice, they tilted over those Soma-cups, and, turned downwards, they took root, whence the Nyagrodhas (ficus indica), when turned downwards (nyaṅ), take root (roha [1]).

4. 'The cotton-tree with growth,'—he confers growth on the cotton-tree (salmalia malabarica), whence the cotton-tree grows largest amongst trees [2].

5. 'This male, fit for the chariot,'—he supplies the chariot with a horse, whence the horse draws nothing else than a chariot.

6. 'Hath come hither on his four feet,'—therefore the horse, when standing, stands on three feet, but, when harnessed, it pulls with all its feet at one and the same time.

7. 'May the spotless Brahman protect us!'—the spotless [3] Brahman (m.), doubtless, is the moon:

[1] Or, whence the Nyagrodhas grow downwards. This refers to the habit of the Indian fig-tree, of sending down from the branches numerous slender roots which afterwards become fresh stems. Cp. the corresponding legend in Ait. Br. VII, 30, told there by way of explaining why Kshatriyas, being forbidden to drink Soma, should drink the juice extracted from the descending roots of the Indian fig-tree. Another reason why the Indian fig-tree (also called 'vaṭa') is here connected with the priests' Soma-cups (ḳamasa), is that this is one of the kinds of wood used in making those cups (cf. Kâty. I, 3, 36 comm.).

[2] According to Stewart and Brandis, Forest Flora, p. 31, the cotton-tree (or silk-cotton tree) is a very large tree of rapid growth, attaining a height of 150 ft., and a girth of 40 ft.

[3] Lit. 'the non-black Brahman,' explained as one who has no black spots; though it is difficult to see why the moon should be favoured with this epithet.

to the moon he thus commits it;—'Reverence to Agni!'—to Agni he thus makes reverence.

8. [Vâg. S. XXIII, 14,] 'Trimmed up is the car with the cord,'—with cord one indeed completes the car[1], whence a car, when enveloped (with cords[2]), is very handsome.

9. 'Trimmed up is the steed with the rein,'—with the rein one indeed completes the horse, whence the horse, when curbed by the rein, looks most beautiful.

10. 'Trimmed up in the waters was the water-born,'—the horse, indeed, has sprung from the womb of the waters[3]: with its own (mother's) womb he thus supplies it;—'Brahman (m.), with Soma for his leader,'—he thus makes it go to heaven with Soma for its leader.

11. [Vâg. S. XXIII, 15,] 'Thyself, fit out thy body, O racer,'—'Take thyself the form which thou wishest,' he thereby says to him;—'make offering thyself,'—sovereign rule (independence) he thereby confers on it;—'rejoice thou thyself,'—'enjoy (rule) thou thyself the world as far as thou wishest,' he thereby says to him;—'thy glory is not to be equalled by any one!'—with glory he thereby endows the horse.

12. [Vâg. S. XXIII, 16[4],] 'Thou shalt not die

[1] In Indian vehicles the different parts are held together by cords. For a drawing see Sir H. M. Elliot, The Races of the N.W. Provinces of India. II, p. 342. The word for 'cord' and 'rein' is the same in Sanskrit.

[2] Paryuta*h*=pariveshṭito ragg*u*bhi*h*, comm.; hardly 'hung all round (with ornaments),' as the St. Petersb. Dict. takes it.

[3] See V, 1, 4, 5; VI, 1, 1, 11.

[4] The first two pâdas of this verse form the first half-verse of *Rig*-veda S. I, 162, 21.

here, neither suffer harm,'—he thereby cheers it;—'on easy paths thou goest to the gods,'—he thereby shows him the paths leading to the gods;—'where dwell the pious, whither they have gone,'—he thereby makes it one who shares the same world with the pious;—'thither the god Savitṛi shall lead thee,'—it is, indeed, Savitṛi that leads him to the heavenly world.—Whilst whispering[1] 'I sprinkle thee, acceptable unto Pragâpati,' he then holds (the sprinkling water) under (its mouth).

13. [Vâg. S. XXIII, 17.] 'Agni was an animal; they sacrificed him, and he gained that world wherein Agni (ruleth): that shall be thy world, that thou shalt gain,—drink thou this water!'—'As great as Agni's conquest was, as great as is his world, as great as is his lordship, so great shall be thy conquest, so great thy world, so great thy lordship,' this is what he thereby says to him.

14. 'Vâyu was an animal; they sacrificed him, and he gained that world wherein Vâyu (ruleth): that shall be thy world, that thou shalt gain,—drink thou this water!'—'As great as Vâyu's conquest was, as great as is his world, as great as is his lordship, so great shall be thy conquest, so great thy world, so great thy lordship,' this is what he thereby says to him.

[1] Cp. I, 4, 5, 12: 'Hence whatever at the sacrifice is performed for Pragâpati, that is performed in a low voice (under the breath): for speech would not act as oblation-bearer for Pragâpati.' Pragâpati, as representing generation, is often spoken of as 'undefined' or 'unexpressed (secret)'; and so is what is muttered in a low voice.

15. 'Sûrya was an animal; they sacrificed him, and he gained that world wherein Sûrya (ruleth): that shall be thy world, that thou shalt gain,—drink thou this water!'—'As great as Sûrya's conquest was, as great as is his world, as great as is his lordship, so great shall be thy conquest, so great thy world, so great thy lordship,' this is what he thereby says to him. Having satisfied the horse, and consecrated again the sprinkling water, he sprinkles the other victims: thereof hereafter.

EIGHTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now the gods, when going upwards, did not know (the way to) the heavenly world, but the horse knew it: when they go upwards with the horse, it is in order to know (the way to) the heavenly world. 'A cloth, an upper cloth, and gold,' this[1] is what they spread out for the horse[2]:

[1] The 'iti' seems superfluous; Harisvâmin explains it by 'etat trayam.' For a similar use of the particle, see XIII, 2, 2, 1.

[2] That is, they spread them on the ground for the horse to lie upon. Differently St. Petersb. Dict., 'they spread over the horse;' but see Kâty. XX, 6, 10 comm.; and Harisvâmin:—vâso yad antardhânâyâlam, adhivâso yad âkkhâdanâyâlam, tak ka vâsasa upari staraṇîyam, tayor upari hiraṇyam nidheyam, tasmiṃs traye enam adhi upari saṃgñapayanti; and he then remarks that these three objects here do not take the place of the stalk of grass which, in the ordinary animal sacrifice, is thrown on the place where the victim is to be killed and cut up (III, 8, 1, 14; Kâty. VI, 5, 15–16), but that the stalk is likewise put down on this occasion. Similarly the comm. on Kâtyâyana, where it is stated that the stalk of grass (or straw) is first laid down, and then the others thereon. Indeed, as was the case in regard to the stalk of grass—representing the barhis, or layer of sacrificial grass on the vedi—so here the fourfold underlayer is intended to prevent any part of the sacrificial material (havis)—the victim in this case—from being spilt. The

thereon they quiet (slay) it, as (is done) for no other victim; and thus they separate it from the other victims.

2. When they quiet a victim they kill it. Whilst it is being quieted, he (the Adhvaryu) offers (three) oblations[1], with (Vâg. S. XXIII, 18), 'To the breath hail! to the off-breathing hail! to the through-breathing hail!' he thereby lays the vital airs into it, and thus offering is made by him with this victim as a living one[2].

3. With, 'Ambâ! Ambikâ! Ambâlikâ[3]! there is no one to lead me,'—he leads up the (four)

---

upper garment (or cloth) must be sufficiently large to allow its being afterwards turned up so as to cover the horse and the queen consort.

[1] Prior to these, however, he offers the two 'Paripaśavya,' i. e. 'oblations relating to the victim,'—or, perhaps, 'oblations performed in connection with the carrying of fire round the victim,' for this last ceremony is performed for all the victims (whereupon the wild beasts placed between the stakes are let loose) before the killing of the horse. See III, 8, 1, 6–16.

[2] For the symbolic import of this, see III, 8, 2, 4.

[3] These are just three variants used in addressing a mother (Mutter, Mütterchen, Mütterlein), or, indeed, as here, any woman (good lady! good woman!). Acc. to Kâty. XX, 6, 12, this is the formula which the assistant priest (the Neshṭri, or, according to others, the Pratiprasthâtṛi, cf. Kâty. VI, 5, 27–28) makes the king's wives say whilst leading them up to the slain horse to cleanse it. It is, moreover, to be preceded by the formula used, at this juncture, at the ordinary animal sacrifice, viz. 'Homage be to thee, O wide-stretched one, advance unresisted unto the rivers of ghee, along the paths of sacred truth! Ye divine, pure waters, carry ye (the sacrifice) to the gods, well-prepared! may ye be well-prepared preparers!' (III, 8, 2, 2–3). The words 'Ambâ!' &c. are, according to Mahîdhara, addressed by the women to one another. The latter part of the formula as given in the Vâg. Saṃh. (viz. 'the horse sleeps near Subhadrikâ, dwelling in Kâmpîla') is apparently

wives[1]: he thereby has called upon them (to come), and, indeed, also renders them sacrificially pure.

4. With (Vâg. S. XXIII, 19), 'We call upon thee, the host-leader of (divine) hosts, O my true lord!' the wives walk round[1] (the horse), and thus make amends to it for that (slaughtering[2]): even thereby they (already) make amends to it; but,

rejected (? as antiquated, or inauspicious) by the author of the Brâhmaṇa. The ceremony of lying near the dead horse being looked upon as assuring fertility to a woman, the formula used here is also doubtless meant to express an eagerness on the part of the women to be led to the slaughtered horse, representing the lord of creatures, Pragâpati. On this passage compare the remarks of Professor Weber (Ind. Stud. I, p. 183), who takes the formula to be spoken by the queen consort to her three fellow-wives; and who also translates the words 'na mâ nayati kas *k*ana' (nobody leads me) by 'nobody shall lead me (by force to the horse; but if I do not go) the (wicked) horse will lie near (another woman such as) the (wicked) Subadhrâ living in Kâmpîla.'—Harisvâmin's commentary on this passage is rather corrupt, but he seems at all events to assume that each of the four wives apostrophizes the others with the above formula (probably substituting their real names for the words 'ambâ,' &c.):—lepsam (? lipsâ*m*) tâvad esha patnîvaktraka*h* (? patnîvaktrata*h*) prâpnoti, katham, ekaikâ hi patnî itarâs tisra âmantrya *s*eshâ*h* paridevayamânâ d*r*i*s*yate, he ambe he ambike he ambâlike yûyam apu*n*yâ nîshpâdotv asya (?) samîpa*m*, sa *k*a pakshapâtî kutsito 'svako mayi yushmâka*m* sasasti meva (!) subhadrikâ*m* kâmpîlavâsinîm ida (? iha) surûpâ*m* na tu mâ*m* kas*k*it tatra nayatîti; sasastîty eva vartamânasâmîpye vartamânavad (Pâ*n*. III, 3, 131) ity âsannasevane drash*t*avya*h*.—This barbarous ceremony was evidently an old indigenous custom too firmly established in popular practice to be easily excluded from the sacrificial ritual. That it had nothing to do with Vedic religion and was distasteful to the author of the Brâhmaṇa is evident from the brief way in which he refers to it, and from the far-fetched symbolic explanations attached to the formulas and discourses.

[1] Viz. from their ordinary place near the Gârhapatya he leads them whilst holding jars of water in their hands.

[2] Apahnuvate vismaranty evâsmai etat pradakshi*n*âvartanena sa*mg*ñapanam unnayanti, comm.

indeed, they also fan[1] it. Thrice they walk round[2]; for three (in number) are these worlds: by means of these worlds they fan it. Thrice again they walk round[3],—that amounts to six, for there are six seasons: by means of the seasons they fan it.

5. But, indeed, the vital airs depart from those who perform the fanning at the sacrifice. Nine times they walk round[4]; for there are nine vital airs: vital airs they thus put into their own selves, and the vital airs do not depart from them. 'I will urge the seed-layer, urge thou the seed-layer!' (the Mahishî says[5]);—seed, doubtless, means offspring and cattle: offspring and cattle she thus secures for herself. [Vâg. S. XXIII, 20.] 'Let us stretch our feet,' thus in order to secure union. 'In heaven ye envelop yourselves' (the Adhvaryu says),—for that is, indeed, heaven where they immolate the victim: therefore he

[1] Thus Harisvâmin:—dhuvate dhûnane(na) upavâgayanti, evam asvam râgânam iva vyaganair etat,—'they shake themselves,' St. Petersb. Dict.; and, indeed, it is doubtless by the flutter of the garments produced in walking round first one way and then another, that the fanning is supposed to be produced.

[2] Viz. in sunwise fashion (pradakshiṇâ), that is so as to keep the object circumambulated on one's right side.

[3] Viz. in the opposite, the 'apradakshiṇam' way, as is done in the sacrifice to the departed ancestors. They do so with the text, 'We call upon thee, the dear Lord of the dear ones, O my true lord!'

[4] Viz. another three times in the sunwise way. Having completed their circumambulation, the king's wives cleanse the horse's apertures of the vital airs (mouth, nostrils, eyes, &c.), as the Sacrificer's wife did at the ordinary animal sacrifice (III, 8, 2, 4), which they do with the text, 'We call upon thee, the treasure-lord of treasures, O my true lord!'

[5] Cf. III, 5, 2, 1 seqq.

speaks thus.—'May the vigorous male, the layer of seed, lay seed!' she says in order to secure union.

NINTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. But, indeed, that glory, royal power, passes away from him who performs the Aśvamedha.

2. [The Udgâtṛi[1] says concerning the king's favourite wife, Vâg. S. XXIII, 26,] 'Raise her upwards[2],'—the Aśvamedha, doubtless, is that glory, royal power: that glory, royal power, he thus raises for him (the Sacrificer) upward.

3. 'Even as one taking a burden up a mountain,'—glory (pomp), doubtless, is the burden of royal power: that glory, royal power, he thus fastens on him (as a burden); but he also endows him with that glory, royal power.

4. 'And may the centre of her body prosper,'—the centre of royal power, doubtless, is glory: glory (prosperity), food, he thus lays into the very centre of royal power (or, the kingdom).

5. 'As one winnowing in the cool breeze,'—the cool of royal power, doubtless, is security of

[1] The colloquy between the men and women, referred to in paragraphs 1–8, would seem to go on simultaneously. The verse addressed by the Hotṛi to the king's discarded wife, Vâg. S. XXIII, 28, is omitted by the Brâhmaṇa, as are also the verses spoken in reply by the women (with their attendants), and closely resembling those of the men in tone and wording. According to some authorities it is the attendant women alone who reply, not the king's wives. Kâty. XX, 6, 20.

[2] Mahîdhara takes the objective pronoun to refer to the Vâvâtâ, whilst Harisvâmin, on the other hand, supplies some such word as '*sâśikâm*.'

possession: security of possession he procures for him.

6. [The Adhvaryu addresses one of the attendant maids, Vâg. S. XXIII, 22,] 'That little bird,'—the little bird, doubtless, is the people (or clan),—'which bustles with (the sound) "ahalak,"'—for the people, indeed, bustle for (the behoof of) royal power,—'thrusts the "pasas" into the cleft, and the "dhârakâ" devours it,'—the cleft, doubtless, is the people, and the 'pasas' is royal power; and royal power, indeed, presses hard on the people; whence the wielder of royal power is apt to strike down people.

7. [The Brahman addresses the queen consort, Vâg. S. XXIII, 24,] 'Thy mother and father,'—the mother, doubtless, is this (earth), and the father yonder (sky): by means of these two he causes him to go to heaven;—'mount to the top of the tree,'—the top of royal power, doubtless, is glory: the top of royal power, glory, he thus causes him to attain;—'saying, "I pass along," thy father passed his fist to and fro in the cleft,'—the cleft, doubtless, is the people; and the fist is royal power; and royal power, indeed, presses hard on the people; whence he who wields royal power is apt to strike down people[1].

8 [The chamberlain addresses the king's fourth wife, Vâg. S. XXIII, 30,] 'When the deer eats the corn,'—the grain (growing in the field), doubtless, is the people, and the deer is royal power: he

[1] The Mahishî: Thy mother and father are playing on the top of the tree like thy mouth when thou wilt talk: do not talk so much, Brahman!

thus makes the people to be food for the royal power, whence the wielder of royal power feeds on the people;—'it thinks not of the fat cattle,'—whence the king does not rear cattle;—'when the Śûdra woman is the Arya's mistress, he seeks not riches that he may thrive[1],'—hence he does not anoint the son of a Vaiśya woman.

9. But, indeed, the vital airs pass from those who speak impure speech at the sacrifice. [The queen consort having been made to rise by her attendants, the priests and chamberlain say, Vâg. S. XXIII, 32, *Rig*-v. S. IV, 39, 6,] 'The praises of Dadhikrâvan have I sung, (the victorious, powerful horse: may he make fragrant our mouths, and prolong our lives!),'—thus they finally utter a verse containing the word 'fragrant': it is (their own) speech they purify[2], and the vital airs do not pass from them.

Tenth Brâhmaṇa.

1. When they prepare the knife-paths, the Sacrificer makes for himself that passage across, a bridge, for the attainment of the heavenly world.

2. They prepare them by means of needles; the needles, doubtless, are the people[3] (clans), and the Aśvamedha is the royal power: they thus supply him with people and royal power combined. They are made of gold: the meaning of this has been explained.

[1] Mahîdhara interprets,—then he (her husband), the Śûdra, does not wish for wealth, but is unhappy.

[2] That is to say, they make amends for any breaches of decorum committed in the preceding colloquy.

[3] Viz. because of the large number and the small size (insignificance) of the needles, or wires, (and the common people), comm.

3. Three kinds of needles are (used), copper ones, silver ones, and gold ones;—those of copper, doubtless, are the (principal) regions (of the compass), those of silver the intermediate ones, and those of gold the upper ones: it is by means of these (regions) they render it fit and proper. By way of horizontal and vertical (stitches [1]) they are many-formed, whence the regions are many-formed; and they are of distinct form, whence the regions are of distinct form.

Eleventh Brâhmaṇa.

1. Pragâpati desired, 'Would that I were great, and more numerous!' He perceived those two Mahiman (greatness) cups of Soma at the Aśvamedha; he offered them; and thereby, indeed, became great and more numerous: hence whosoever should desire to become great, and more numerous, let him offer up those two Mahiman cups of Soma at the Aśvamedha; and he indeed becomes great and more numerous.

2. He offers them on both sides (before and after) the omentum;—the Aśvamedha, doubtless, is the Sacrificer, and that Mahiman (cup) is the king: it is with royal dignity he thus encompasses him on both sides. Some gods have the svâhâ-call ('hail') in front, and the other gods have the svâhâ-call behind [2]: it is them he thus gratifies. With 'Hail

[1] It is doubtful what word, if any, has to be supplied here,—perhaps it means, by way of their being (in sewing) horizontal and vertical. The commentary is silent on this passage.

[2] The formula uttered whilst the first Mahiman cup is offered runs thus (Vâg. S. XXIII, 2): 'What greatness of thine there hath

to the gods!' and 'To the gods hail!' he makes offering by means of the king (Soma) on both sides of the omentum: he thereby gratifies those gods who are in this world, and those who are in the other, and thus gratified, both these kinds of gods lead him to the heavenly world.

THIRD ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Pragâpati's eye swelled; it fell out: thence the horse was produced; and inasmuch as it swelled (asvayat), that is the origin and nature of the horse (asva). By means of the Asvamedha the gods restored it to its place; and verily he who performs the Asvamedha makes Pragâpati complete, and he (himself) becomes complete; and this, indeed, is the atonement for everything, the remedy for everything. Thereby the gods redeem all sin, yea, even the slaying of a Brahman[1] they thereby redeem; and he who performs the Asvamedha redeems all sin, he redeems the slaying of a Brahman.

2. It was the left eye of Pragâpati that swelled: hence they cut off the (meat) portions from the left

been in the day and the year; what greatness of thine there hath been in the wind and the air; what greatness of thine there hath been in the heavens and the sun, to that greatness of thine, to Pragâpati, hail, to the gods!' whilst that of the second Mahiman cup runs thus (XXIII, 4): 'What greatness of thine there hath been in the night and the year; what greatness of thine there hath been in the earth and the fire; what greatness of thine there hath been in the Nakshatras (lunar asterisms) and the moon, to that greatness of thine, to Pragâpati, to the gods, hail!' cf. XIII, 5, 2, 23; 3, 7.

[1] See XIII, 3, 5, 3 seq.

side of the horse, and from the right side of other victims.

3. There is a rattan mat, for the horse was produced from the womb of the waters, and the rattan springs from the water: he thus brings it in connection with its own (maternal) womb.

4. The Ka̍tush/oma[1] is the form of chanting (on

[1] The term Ka̍tush/oma originally apparently means a sacrificial performance, or succession of chants, in which four different Stomas, or hymn-forms, are used. Hence, in Tâṇḍya-Br. VI, 3, 16, the name is applied to the ordinary Agnish/oma, for its twelve Stotras, or chants, require the first four normal Stomas (Trivṛ̍it, Pañkadaśa, Saptadaśa, Ekaviṃśa). The term has, however, assumed the special meaning of a hymnic performance, the different Stomas of which (begin with the four-versed one, and) successively increase by four verses (cf. XIII, 5, 1, 1). In this sense, two different forms of Ka̍tush/oma are in use, one being applicable to an Agnish/oma, the other to a Sho/daśin, sacrifice. Whilst this latter form requires only four different Stomas (of 4, 8, 12, 16 verses resp.) and thus combines the original meaning of 'katush/oma' with its special meaning, the Agnish/oma form, used on the first of the three days of the Aśvamedha, requires six Stomas, ascending from the four-versed up to the twenty-four-versed one. In regard to this latter occasion, Sâyaṇa on Tâṇḍya-Br. XXI, 4, 1, curiously enough, seems to take 'katush/oma' in its original senses, since he speaks of this first day of the Aśvamedha as an Agnish/oma with four Stomas, beginning with Trivṛ̍it; whilst on ib. XIX, 5, 1 seq. he gives the correct explanation. As to the distribution of the six Stomas over the chants of the first day, see XIII, 5, 1, 1. The katush/oma has, however, another peculiarity, which, in Lâṭy. S. VI, 8, 1 (or at least by the commentator Agnisvâmin thereon), is taken as that which has given its name to this form of chanting, viz. that each stotra performed in it is chanted in four, instead of the ordinary three, paryâyas or turns of verses (see part ii, p. 310 note). The Bahishpavamâna-stotra is to be performed on three anush/ubh verses (consisting each of four octosyllabic pâdas) which, however, by taking each time three pâdas to make up a verse, are transformed into four verses, constituting at the same time the four paryâyas of the Stotra. As regards the exact

the first day); for a bee tore out[1] (a piece of) the horse's thigh, and by means of the *K*atush*t*oma form of chanting the gods restored it: thus when there is the *K*atush*t*oma mode of chanting, it is for the completeness of the horse. The last day is an Atirâtra with all the Stomas[2]—with a view to his obtaining and securing everything, for an Atirâtra with all the Stomas is everything, and the Aśvamedha is everything.

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now this (Sacrificer), having conquered by means of the supreme Stoma—the *K*atush*t*oma, the K*ri*ta among dice[3],—on the next day establishes

text to be used there seems to be some doubt, Sâmav. S. II, 366–8 (pavasva vâgasâtaye) being mentioned by Sâya*ṇ*a on Tâ*ndy*a-Br. XXI, 4, 5; whilst on XIX, 5, 2 he gives S. V. II, 168–70 (ayam pûshâ rayir bhaga*h*) as the text to be used—but apparently only when the performance is that of an ekâha (one day's sacrifice) proper, instead of one of the days of an âhîna sacrifice, as is the case in the three days' Aśvamedha. As regards the Âgya-stotras to be chanted on the eight-versed Stoma, the text of each of them consists of three gâyatrî-verses: these are to be chanted in four turns (paryâya) of two verses each, viz. either 1 and 2, 2 and 3, 1 and 2, 2 and 3;—or 1 and 1, 1 and 2, 2 and 2, 3 and 3;—(or 1 and 1, 1 and 1, 2 and 2, 3 and 3;—or 1 and 1, 2 and 2, 2 and 2, 3 and 3). By similar manipulations the subsequent Stomas are formed.

[1] Or, wounded, as Sâya*ṇ*a takes 'á br*i*hat,' on Tâ*ndy*a-Br. XXI, 4, 4 (vra*ṇ*am *k*akâra).

[2] The Atirâtra sarvastoma is arranged in such a way that the six principal Stomas are used successively first in the ascending, and then again in the descending, or reversed, order as is explained in XIII, 5, 3, 10.

[3] For this and the other names of the dice, see part iii, p. 106, note 1.

himself on the Ekavi*m*sa[1], as a firm foundation: from the Ekavi*m*sa, as a firm foundation, he subsequently ascends to the next day, the seasons; for the P*r*ish*th*a (-stotras) are the seasons, and the seasons are the year: it is in the seasons, in the year, he establishes himself.

2. The Sakvarî[2] (verses) are the P*r*ish*th*a (-stotra of the second day): there is a different metre for each (verse), for different kinds of animals, both domestic and wild ones, are immolated here on each (day). As to the Sakvarî (verses) being the P*r*ish*th*a, it is for the completeness of the horse (sacrifice)[3]; and different kinds of animals are immolated on different (days), because different stomas are performed on the different (days of the Asvamedha).

---

[1] Though applying in the first place to the second day of the Asvamedha, as an Ukthya sacrifice which is at the same time an Ekavi*m*sa day, i. e. one the stotras of which are all chanted in the twenty-one-versed hymn-form, Ekavi*m*sa, the twenty-first or twenty-one-fold, as is clear from XIII, 3. 3. 3, here also refers to the sun, of which it is a common epithet (cf. part iii, p. 265, note 2, also XIII, 4, 4, 11). This solar name seems to be derived from the fact that the sun is also identified with the central day of the year, the Vishuvant day, which is considered the central day of a twenty-one days' sacrificial performance—having one p*r*ish*th*ya-sha*d*aha, an Abhigit (or Visvagit day resp.) and three svarasâman days before and after it;—see p. 139, note; and A. Hillebrandt, Die Sonnwendfeste in Alt-Indien, p. 6 seqq.

[2] That is to say, the so-called Mahânâmnî verses (Sâm. V. ed. Bibl. Ind. II, p. 371), chanted on the *s*âkvara-sâman (see part iii, of this transl., introd. p. xx, note 2), are to be used for the Hotri's P*r*ish*th*a-stotra. For this purpose the Rathantara-sâman is ordinarily used in the Agnish*t*oma, and the B*r*ihat-sâman in the Ukthya, form of sacrifice.

[3] The commentator takes this as an allusion to the 'potent' (*s*akvara=*s*akta) nature of the verses.

3. As to this they say, 'These—to wit, goats and sheep and the wild (beasts)—are not all animals[1]; but those—to wit, the bovine (victims)—are indeed all animals.' On the last day he immolates bovine (victims), for they—to wit, bovine (victims)—are all animals: he thus immolates all animals. They are sacred to the All-gods[2], for the completeness of the horse, for the horse is sacred to the All-gods. They are many-formed (or, many-coloured), whence animals are many-formed; and they are of distinct forms (or colours), whence animals are of distinct forms.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Inasmuch as there are three Anush*ṭ*ubh verses[3] (on the first day), therefore the horse, when standing, stands on three (feet); and inasmuch as (they are made into) four Gâyatri verses, therefore the horse, when stepping out, scampers off on all (four) feet. For that Anush*ṭ*ubh, doubtless, is the highest metre, and the horse is the highest of animals; and the *K*atush*ṭ*oma is the highest of Stomas: by means of what is highest he thus causes him (the Sacrificer) to reach the highest position.

2. The *S*akvarî verses are the (Hotri's) P*r*ish*ṭh*a (of the second day): there is a different metre for

[1] That is to say, they do not fitly represent all kinds of animals, as the highest kind of animals, the bovine cattle, may be said to do. The argument as to the 'sarve paśava*ḥ*' is, of course, suggested by the 'aśvasya sarvatvâya' of the preceding paragraph; and to bring out the parallelism, one might translate,—these . . . . are not complete animals.

[2] See XIII, 5, 3, 11.

[3] That is, for the Bahishpavamâna-stotra of the *K*atush*ṭ*oma, see p. 329, note.

each (verse), for different Stomas are performed on each (day). And as to the Śakvarî verse being the Pṛishṭha (-stotra), it is for the completeness of the horse (sacrifice).

3. The central day is an Ekaviṁśa one, for the Ekaviṁśa is yonder sun, and so is the Aśvamedha: by means of its own Stoma he thus establishes it in its own deity.

4. The Vâmadevya is the Maitrâvaruṇa's Sâman[1]; for the Vâmadevya is Pragâpati, and the horse is of Pragâpati's nature: he thus supplies it with its own deity.

5. The Pârthuraśma is the Brahma-sâman[2]; for the horse is restrained by means of reins[3] (raśmi), but when unrestrained, unchecked, and unsteadied, it would be liable to go to the furthest distance: thus when the Pârthuraśma is the Brahma-sâman, it is for the safe keeping of the horse.

6. The Saṁkṛiti[4] is the Akhâvâka's Sâman;—

---

[1] That is, the hymn-tune of the second Pṛishṭha-stotra chanted for the Maitrâvaruṇa (who responds thereto by the recitation of the second Nishkevalya-śastra): the Mahâ-Vâmadevya on the text 'kayâ naś ćitra â bhuvat' (S. V. II, 32–34; figured for chanting in Bibl. Ind. ed. III, p. 89) is ordinarily used for this stotra both in the Agnish/oma, and in the Ukthya, form of sacrifice.

[2] That is, the tune of the third, or Brâhmaṇâkhaṁsin's, Pṛishṭha-stotra. For the sâmans commonly used for this stotra see part ii, p. 434, note 1. The Pârthuraśma-sâman may be chanted on either of the texts Sâmav. II, 352–4 (figured ed. Bibl. Ind. vol. V, p. 395) or II. 355–7 (figured vol. V, p. 483). It is the latter text which is to be used on the present occasion. On the legendary origin of this sâman (which is said to represent 'strength,' and therefore to be appropriate to a Râganya) see Tândya-Br. XIII, 4, 17.

[3] Or, is fastened by means of a rope.

[4] The Saṁkṛiti-sâman is used with the texts Sâmav. II, 663–4 (figured ed. Bibl. Ind. V, p. 407), II, 669–70 (ib. p. 482, wrongly

that Aśvamedha, indeed, is, as it were, a disused sacrifice, for what is performed thereof, and what is not[1]? When the Saṁkṛiti is the Akhâvâka's Sâman, it is for (bringing about) the completeness of the horse (sacrifice). The last day is an Atirâtra with all the (six) Stomas, in order to his (the Sacrificer's) obtaining everything, for an Atirâtra with all the Stomas is everything, and the Aśvamedha is everything.

7. The fire-altar is the twenty-one-fold one[2], the Stoma the twenty-one-fold one, and there are twenty-one sacrificial stakes; even as bulls or stallions[3] would clash together, so do these Stomas[4], the

called Saṁgati), and II, 679–81 (ib. p. 515). It is probably the second of these texts that is to be used here, as it is also used for the same stotra on the second day of the Garga-trirâtra.

[1] Cp. the corresponding passage, Taitt. S. V, 4, 12, 3, 'that Aśvamedha, indeed, is a disused sacrifice, for, say they, who knows if the whole of it is performed or not?' Perhaps, however, 'utsanna-yagña' rather means 'a decayed sacrifice,' i. e. one which has lost (or in the usual performance is apt to lose) some of its original elements; whence the 'Saṁkṛiti' tune is to be used for the purpose of 'making up' the lost parts. Part of the commentary in this passage is not clear to me:—ukkaikalâpagrâmâdau siddhasthâne satrasthito granthato 'rthataś ka yat yagña utsannayagña esha yaḥ aśvamedhaḥ katham utsanna ity ata âha, kiṁ vâ hîti, yasya dharmâḥ pûrvayonau (? pûrvayuge) prayugyante teshâṁ kiṁkit kalau kriyate kiṁkin na kriyate, tataś ka saṁkṛitir akhâvâkasâma bhavati.

[2] That is, an altar measuring twenty-one man's lengths on each of the four sides of its body.

[3] The commentary seems to take both 'ṛishabha' and 'vṛishan' here in the sense of 'bulls,' but cp. Taitt. Br. III, 8, 21, 1, 'yathâ vâ aśvâ varshabhâ vâ vṛishâṇaḥ saṁ sphureran'—'even as if male horses or bulls were to clash together.'

[4] That is, not only the twenty-one-fold Stoma, but also the other two twenty-one-fold objects, looked upon as Stomas (lit. 'means of praise').

twenty-one-versed, run counter to one another: were he to bring them together, the Sacrificer would suffer harm, and his sacrifice would be destroyed.

8. There may, indeed, be a twelvefold altar, and eleven stakes. When the altar is a twelvefold one—twelve months being a year—it is the year, the sacrifice, he obtains. When there are eleven stakes, then that Virâg (metre), the Ekâdaśinî [1], is contrived; and that which is its eleventh (stake) is its teat: thereby he milks it.

9. As to this they say, 'If there were a twelvefold altar, and eleven stakes, it would be as if one were to drive on a cart drawn by one beast.' There are the twenty-one-fold altar, the twenty-one-fold Stoma, and twenty-one stakes: that is as when one drives with side-horses.

10. That twenty-one-fold one, indeed, is the head of the sacrifice; and, verily, he who knows three heads on the Aśvamedha, becomes the head of kings. There are the twenty-one-fold altar, the twenty-one-fold Stoma, and twenty-one stakes: these are the three heads on the Aśvamedha; and, verily, he who thus knows them becomes the head of kings. And, indeed, he who knows the three tops on the Aśvamedha, becomes the top of kings;—there are the twenty-one-fold altar, the twenty-one-fold Stoma, and twenty-one stakes: these, indeed, are the three tops on the Aśvamedha; and, verily, he who thus knows them becomes the top of kings.

[1] Viz. the set of eleven (stakes), here represented as a cow; but in order to assimilate it to the Virâg, or metre consisting of ten syllables, the eleventh stake is made the teat or udder of the cow.

FOURTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Verily, the horse is slaughtered for all the deities: were he to make it one belonging to Pragâpati (exclusively), he would deprive the deities who are co-sharers of their share. Having made ghee (to take the part of) portions (of the horse's body) he makes oblations[1] to the deities in mentioning them one by one with (Vâg. S. XXV, 1–9), 'The Grass (I gratify) with the teeth, the Lotus with the roots of the hair, ...:' the deities who are co-sharers he thus supplies with their share. When he has offered the Araṇye 'nûkya (oblations)[2], he offers the last oblation to

[1] These oblations of ghee, apparently amounting to 132, are made, after the principal flesh-portions have been offered, viz. in the interval between the ghee oblation to Vanaspati (the lord of the forest, or the plant, Soma) and the Svishṭakṛt oblation, for which see part ii, pp. 208–9; each formula, as a rule, containing the name of some divinity, and that of some part of the body of the horse supposed to be represented by the ghee (by four ladlings of which the offering spoon is filled each time). Mahîdhara, apparently in accordance with the Brâhmaṇa, supplies 'prîṇâmi (I gratify)' with each (complete) formula which then concludes with 'svâhâ (hail)!' According to other authorities, however, these formulas are each to be divided into two separate dedicatory formulas:—'To the Grass hail! To the Teeth hail!' &c.—The last of the 132 oblations (with the formula, 'To Gumbaka, hail!') is, however, withheld for the present to be offered (or perhaps the formula alone is to be muttered) at the end of the purificatory bath (avabhṛtha) towards the end of the sacrifice on the third day.

[2] The term 'araṇye'nûkya' ('to be recited in the forest') we met before (IX, 3, 1, 24) as applying to the last of seven cakes offered to the Maruts immediately after the installation of Agni (the sacred fire) on the newly-built altar. The formula used for that cake is the so-called Vimukha-verse, Vâg. S. XXXIX, 7. This

Heaven and Earth: for all the gods are established in heaven and on earth: it is them he thereby gratifies. Now the gods and the Asuras were contending together.

2. They (the gods) spake, 'We are the Agnayaḥ Svishṭakṛitaḥ[1] of the horse (sacrifice); let us take out for ourselves a special share: therewith we shall overcome the Asuras.' They took the blood for themselves in order to overcome their rivals: when he offers the blood to the Svishṭakṛits, it is in order to overcome (his own) rivals; and the spiteful rival of him who knows this is undone by himself.

3. The first oblation (of blood) he offers[2] in the

verse is followed in the Saṃhitâ by a series of twenty formulas (ib. 8–9) of a similar nature to those referred to in the preceding note (i. e. consisting each of a deity and a part of the body of the horse—'Agni I gratify with the heart,' &c.), and these again by forty-two expiatory formulas ('To the hair, hail!' &c., ib. 10–13), ending with, 'To Yama, hail! To Antaka (the Ender), hail! To Death, hail! To (the) Brahman, hail! To Brahman-slaying, hail! To the All-gods, hail! To Heaven and Earth, hail!' These sixty-two formulas are used with as many ghee-oblations, which are to be performed immediately after the 131st of the previous set of oblations. Prior, however, again to the last of the forty-two expiatory oblations, (viz. the one made with 'To Heaven and Earth, hail!') there is another set of sixteen oblations (XIII, 3, 6, 1 seqq.), the so-called 'Aśvastomîyâ âhutayaḥ' or 'oblations relating to the Stomas of the horse (sacrifice),' each of which has a complete couplet for its offering-formula (Vâg. S. XXV, 24–39). To all these three sets of oblations the term 'araṇye 'nûkya' is here extended by the author. At the end of the third set this succession of ghee-oblations is concluded with the last expiatory oblation, that to Heaven and Earth; whereupon the ordinary flesh-oblation to Agni Svishṭakṛit is performed.

[1] I. e. the (three) fires, the makers of good offering.

[2] The formula for each of these three special blood-oblations—

throat (gullet) of the Gomṛiga[1]; for Gomṛigas are cattle, and the Svishṭakṛiṭ is Rudra: he thus

offered immediately after the ordinary Svishṭakṛiṭ oblation, and being, in fact, the special Svishṭakṛiṭ of the Aśvamedha—is 'Agnibhyaḥ svishṭakṛidbhyaḥ svâhâ, i.e. to the (three) Agnis, the makers of good offering, hail!'

[1] 'Gomṛiga' is usually taken by the commentators, and in our dictionaries, as another name of the 'Gavaya,' variously called Gayâl, Bos Gavaeus, Bos frontalis, or Bos cavifrons, a species of wild cattle found in various mountain districts of India (especially on the eastern boundaries of Bengal, and in Malabar, as also in Ceylon), and frequently domesticated amongst the hill-tribes, by whom it is valued for its flesh and milk (cf. Colebrooke's paper, As. Res. VIII, p. 511 seqq.). The Gavaya itself is, however, as Colebrooke remarks, confounded by some Sanskrit writers with the 'Ṛiśya,' which he takes to be the buck of the painted, or white-footed (or slate-coloured) Antelope, the Portax pictus (or Antelope picta), also called by the vernacular names of Nîlgau or (Mahr.) Nîlgây, whilst the female is called 'rohit' in Sanskrit. All these three animals occur amongst the wild animals to be used as quasi-victims, but ultimately released on the second day of the Aśvamedha; and I am inclined to think that they are three different animals. To show that the *Ṛiśya* and the Gavaya cannot be the same animals, Colebrooke already refers to the fact that three *Ṛiśya*s (consecrated to the Vasus) and three Gavayas (to Bṛihaspati) occur as victims side by side in Vâgasaneyi-saṃhitâ XXIV (27 and 28); and in the same way a Gomṛiga, sacred to Pragâpati and Vâyu, is mentioned immediately after, ib. 30; whilst another, sacred to Pragâpati, was, as we saw, one of the two animals tied along with the horse to the central stake (see XIII, 2, 2, 2). Taitt. S. II, 1, 10, 2, treating of the sacrifice of a Gomṛiga to Vâyu, remarks that it is neither a domestic animal (or cattle, paśu) nor a wild one; and Sâyaṇa explains it as a cross between a female deer (or antelope, mṛigî) and a bull that has gone with his cows to graze in the forest; whilst, on Taitt. Br. III, 8, 20, 5, he leaves one to choose between its being a vicious bull (dhûrto balîvardaḥ), dangerous to men, or an animal 'of mixed breed, sprung from a cow and a male gazelle or antelope (gohariṇayoḥ, or possibly, from parent beasts of the bovine and antelope species).' In this latter passage, the editor

shields the cattle from Rudra, whence Rudra does not prowl after the cattle where this oblation is offered at the Asvamedha.

4. The second oblation[1] he offers on a horse-hoof; for the one-hoofed (animals) are cattle, and the Svish*ṭ*ak*ṛ*it is Rudra: he thus shields the cattle from Rudra, whence Rudra does not prowl after the cattle where this oblation is offered at the Asvamedha.

5. The third oblation he offers in an iron bowl; for the people (subjects) are of iron[2], and the Svish*ṭ*ak*ṛ*it is Rudra: he thus shields the people from Rudra, whence Rudra does not prowl after the cattle where this oblation is offered at the Asvamedha.

Fifth Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, there are deaths[3] connected with all the worlds; and were he not to offer oblations to them, Death would get hold of him in every world:

---

of the Brâhmaṇa (in the list of contents, p. 53) takes it to mean 'wild cattle (Nîlagâo gom*ṛ*iga, erroneously explained as a cross between a deer and a cow).' which would be a probable enough explanation, if the *Ris*ya were not the Nîlgau; whilst otherwise the animal might belong to some other species of bovine antelopes no longer found in India.

[1] Whilst the first of these oblations must take place immediately after the ordinary Svish*ṭ*ak*ṛ*it of the animal sacrifice, the second may be postponed till after the 'after-offerings'; and the third till after the 'Patnîsaṃyâgas.' See also XIII, 5, 3, 8 seq.

[2] That is, their value—as compared with that of the king or nobles, and the Brâhmaṇas—is that of iron, compared with that of gold and silver; cp. XIII, 2, 2, 19.

[3] That is, according to Sâyaṇa, on Taitt. Br. III, 9, 15, 1, causes of death, such as diseases, &c.

when he offers oblations to the Deaths[1], he wards off Death in every world.

2. Concerning this they say, 'If, in offering, he were to name them all, saying, "To such[2] (a death) hail! To such (a death) hail!" he would make that manifold death his enemy[3], and would give himself over to Death.' Only one oblation he offers to one of them, with, 'To Death, hail!' for there is indeed but one Death in yonder world, even Hunger[4]: it is him he wards off in yonder world.

3. A second oblation he makes with, 'To Brahman-slaying, hail!' for, doubtless, a murder other than the slaying of a Brahman is no murder; but that—to wit, the slaying of a Brahman—is manifestly murder: he thus manifestly wards off Death[5].

---

[1] The oblations referred to in this Brâhmaṇa (§§ 1–4) occur towards the end of the second set of 'araṇye-nûkya' oblations mentioned above, p. 336, note 2, where the formulas are given. According to Taitt. Br., l. c., however, these final oblations are to be performed—like that to Gumbaka (Varuṇa)—at the time of the purificatory bath, which, indeed, may also be intended by our Brâhmaṇa, though Kâtyâyana and Mahîdhara seem to offer no indications to that effect. It is clear that these final oblations must have formed the subject of considerable discussion among the early ritualists.

[2] That is, according to Sâyaṇa (Taitt. Br.), 'To death in the shape of disease, to death in the shape of poverty, &c.' Harisvâmin, on our passage, has merely, 'Amushmai pitṛilokâya mṛityave'—'To death (in the shape of) the world of the Fathers,' which is not very clear.

[3] Or, perhaps, he would make himself many a death-enemy (bahum mṛityum amitram kurvîta), the two nouns being taken as in apposition to each other; cf. p. 146, note 1.

[4] See X, 6, 5, 1.

[5] Or, he thus wards off what is manifestly Death (Death in person).

4. Mu*ṇḍ*ibha Audanya[1] it was who discovered this atonement for the slaying of a Brahman; and when one offers the oblation to the Brahmahatyâ he prepares a remedy for the slayer of a Brahman by satisfying Death himself with an oblation, and making a protection[2] for him (the slayer). At whosoever's Aśvamedha, therefore, this oblation is offered, even if in after-times[3] any one in his family kills a Brahman, he thereby prepares a remedy (expiation) for him.

Sixth Brâhmaṇa.

1. When the horse was slaughtered, the life-sap[4] went out of it; it became the Aśvastomîya (set of oblations[5]): when he offers the Aśvastomiya (oblations) he indeed supplies the horse with life-sap.

2. He performs it with ghee; for ghee is life-sap, and the Aśvastomiya is life-sap: by means of life-

[1] That is, according to Harisvâmin, the son of Udanya (Odana, St. Petersb. Dict.), Taitt. Br. III, 9, 15, 3, has Mu*ṇḍ*ibha Audanyava (i.e. the son of Udanyu, Sây.) instead. The Taitt. Br., besides, makes the crime to be expiated here to be, not 'brahmahatyâ,' but 'bhrû*ṇ*ahatyâ,' the killing of an embryo. Sâya*ṇ*a, however, there allows to 'bhrû*ṇ*a' optionally its later meaning of 'a Brâhma*ṇ*a versed in the three Vedas and the sacrificial art (kalpa),' and the Taitt. Br. itself, at all events, takes this oblation to 'bhrû*ṇ*ahatyâ' to atone likewise for the slaying of a Brâhma*ṇ*a.

[2] Harisvâmin explains 'paripâ*ṇ*am' by 'parisish*ṭ*am vânantam pânam' (?); whilst Sâya*ṇ*a, in Taitt. Br., takes it in the sense of 'sarvata*ḥ* pâtram,' i.e. having made the Sacrificer 'a thoroughly worthy person.'

[3] Harisvâmin here unwarrantably takes 'aparî-hû' in the sense of 'in past times.'

[4] Or, sacrificial essence.

[5] See p. 336, note 2.

sap he thus puts life-sap into it. He performs with ghee, for that—to wit, ghee—is the favourite resource of the gods: he thus supplies them with their favourite resource.

3. Having performed the Aśvastomîya (set of) oblations, he offers the Dvipadâs[1]; for the Aśvastomîya is the horse, and the Dvipadâ is man, for man is two-footed (dvipâd), supported on two (feet): he thus supplies him with a support.

4. Concerning this they say, 'Is the Aśvastomîya to be offered first, or the Dvipadâ?' The Aśvastomîya, surely, is cattle, and the Dvipadâ is man: inasmuch as he performs the Dvipadâs after performing the Aśvastomîya, man subsequently establishes himself amongst cattle.

5. Sixteen Aśvastomîya oblations he performs, for animals (cattle) consist of sixteen parts[2]: that is the measure of cattle, and he thus supplies cattle with their (right) measure. Were he to offer either less or more, he would deprive cattle of their (right) measure. Sixteen he offers, for cattle consist of sixteen parts: that is the measure of cattle, and he thus supplies cattle with their (right) measure. He offers no other as a final oblation[3]: were he to offer another as a final oblation, he would lose

[1] The formulas of the six dvipadâs—i.e. (verses) consisting of two pâdas—are found Vâg. S. XXV, 46-47.

[2] See XII, 8, 3, 13; for a highly artificial explanation of the sixteen parts of the man Pragâpati, probably intended here, X, 4, 1, 17. Elsewhere those of animals are explained as including head, neck, trunk, tail, the four legs and eight claws; see Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 111, note.

[3] This would seem to be directed against the practice of performing the oblation to Heaven and Earth immediately after the Aśvastomîyâs, see p. 336, note 2.

his support. The Dvipadâs he offers last, for Dvipadâs are a support: he thus finds a support (establishes himself). With, 'To Gumbaka hail!' he offers, at the purificatory bath, the last oblation [1]; for Gumbaka is Varuṇa: by sacrifice he thus manifestly redeems himself from Varuṇa. He offers it on the head of a white-spotted [2], bald-headed (man) with protruding teeth [3] and reddish brown eyes; for that is Varuṇa's form: by (that) form (of his) he thus redeems himself from Varuṇa.

6. Having stepped out (of the water) he prepares twelve messes of cooked rice for the priests, or performs twelve ishṭis. Concerning this they say, 'These—to wit, ishṭis—are a form of sacrifice: were he to perform ishṭis, the sacrifice would be ready to incline towards him; but he would become the worse for it, for, surely, of exhausted strength now are the metres (offering formulas) of him who has performed the Soma-sacrifice;—how could he make use of them so soon? For when the sacrifice is complete, Vâk (speech and sacred writ [4]) is wholly gained, and, being gained, it now is exhausted in strength, and, as it were, wounded and mangled; but sacrifice is speech: hence he should not make use of it.'

[1] See p. 336, note 1.

[2] ? Or, pale. Sâyaṇa, on Taitt. Br. III, 9, 15, 3, explains 'śukla' by 'kitrin' (? having white spots, or affected with white leprosy). Harisvâmin does not explain the word.

[3] Harisvâmin explains 'viklidha' by 'dantura,' i.e. one who has projecting teeth; whilst Sâyaṇa, l.c., explains it by either 'given to perspiring (svedanaśîlaśarîra),' or 'moist-bodied (? leprous, or, old, in bodily decay, viklinnadeha).'

[4] Cf. V, 5, 5, 12 'that triple Veda is the thousandfold progeny of Vâk.'

7. Having stepped out (of the water) he should certainly prepare twelve messes of rice for the priests; for cooked rice is Pragâpati, and Pragâpati is the year, Pragâpati is the sacrifice: it is the year, the sacrifice, he thus gains, and the sacrifice becomes ready to incline towards him, and he does not become the worse for it.

Seventh Brâhmaṇa.

1. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Strengthful: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes strong.

2. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Plenteous: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes plentiful.

3. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Obtainment: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes obtained.

4. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Distinction: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes distinct[1].

5. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Severance: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes severed[2].

6. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Food-abounding: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes abounding in food.

7. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Sapful:

[1] Svakarmasu bhâgena sthâpitam (? confined respectively to its own functions), comm.

[2] Harisvâmin supplies 'akâryebhya*h*'—is kept away from what it is forbidden to do, or from what is not one's business.

wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes rich in sap (or drink).

8. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Abounding in holiness: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, the Brâhmaṇa is born as one rich in holiness.

9. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Excelling in hitting: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, the Râganya is born as one excelling in hitting (the mark).

10. Verily, this is the sacrifice called the Long (wide) one: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, a wide tract of forest-land will be provided [1].

11. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Fitness: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes fit and proper.

12. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Support (foundation): wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes supported (firmly established).

Eighth Brâhmaṇa.

Expiatory Offerings.

1. Now, then, of the expiations. If the sacrificial horse were to couple with a mare, let him in addition prepare a milk (oblation) to Vâyu;—Vâyu doubtless is the transformer of seeds, for Vâyu (the wind) is the vital air, and the vital air is the transformer

[1] That is, as would seem, either as a protection from neighbouring countries, or as room for spreading, and as pasture-land. Cf., however, XIII, 2–4, 2, 4, where, as in Ait. Br. III, 44; VI, 23, such a belt of jungle is referred to as a source of danger to the inhabitants of a country.

of seeds: by means of seed he thus puts seed into it.

2. And if disease were to befal it, let him in addition prepare a pap to Pûshan, for Pûshan rules over beasts (cattle); and, indeed, he thereby gratifies him who owns cattle and rules over cattle; and it (the horse) thereby indeed becomes free from disease.

3. And if sickness without (visible) injury[1] were to befal it, let him in addition prepare for (Agni) Vaiśvânara a cake on twelve potsherds, with the earth serving for potsherds[2]; for Vaiśvânara is this (earth): he thereby gratifies this (earth), and it (the horse) becomes free from disease.

4. And if an eye-disease were to befal it, let him in addition prepare a pap to Sûrya;—the Sun, doubtless, is the eye of creatures, for when he rises everything here moves: by means of the eye (of the world) he thus bestows the eye upon it. And as to why it is a pap (*k*aru), it is because by means of the eye this self (body or mind) moves (*k*ar).

5. And if it were to die in water, let him in addition prepare a barley pap to Varu*ṇ*a, for Varu*ṇ*a seizes him who dies in water: he thereby thus gratifies that very deity who seizes it, and, thus gratified, he approves his slaughtering another (horse), and he slaughters it as one approved by that (deity). And as to why it is (prepared) of barley, it is because barley belongs to Varu*ṇ*a.

6. And if it were to get lost, let him in addition

[1] Viz. such as fever, comm.

[2] That is, spreading them on the earth, or on clods of earth, comm.

perform an ish*ṭ*i with three sacrificial dishes—a cake on one potsherd for Heaven and Earth, a milk (oblation) for Vâyu, and a pap for Sûrya;—for whatsoever is lost, is lost within heaven and earth; and the wind blows upon it, and the sun shines upon it; and nothing whatever is lost out of (the reach of) these deities. And even by itself[1] this (ish*ṭ*i) is the recoverer of what is lost; and even if any other thing of his were to get lost let him perform this very offering, and he verily finds it. And if enemies were to obtain the horse, or if it were to die (either in any other way) or in water[2], let them bring another (horse) and consecrate it by sprinkling: this, indeed, is the expiation in that case.

FOURTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Pragâpati desired, 'Would that I obtained all my desires! would that I attained all attainments!' He beheld this three days' Soma-sacrifice, the Aśvamedha, and took possession of it, and sacrificed with it: by sacrificing therewith he obtained all his desires, and attained all attainments; and, verily, whosoever performs the Aśvamedha sacrifice obtains all his desires, and attains all attainments.

2. Concerning this they say, 'In what season is the beginning (to be made)?'—'Let him begin it in summer,' say some, 'for summer is the Kshatriya's season, and truly this—to wit, the Aśvamedha—is the Kshatriya's sacrifice.'

3. But let him rather begin it in spring; for

[1] That is, even independently of the horse-sacrifice.

[2] That is to say, if it were to die by getting drowned, or in any other way.

spring is the Brâhmaṇa's season, and truly whosoever sacrifices, sacrifices after becoming, as it were, a Brâhmaṇa: let him therefore by all means begin it in spring.

4. And six days, or seven days, before that full-moon of Phâlguna, the officiating priests meet together—to wit, the Adhvaryu, the Hotṛi, the Brahman, and the Udgâtṛi; for under these[1] the other priests are.

5. The Adhvaryu prepares for them a priest's mess of rice sufficient for four persons: the meaning of this has been explained[2]. Four bowlfuls, four double handfuls, four handfuls: twelvefold this is—twelve months are a year, and the year is everything, and the Aśvamedha is everything—thus it is in order to his gaining and securing everything.

6. Those four priests eat it: the meaning of this has been explained. He (the Sacrificer) gives to them four thousand (cows) in order to his gaining and securing everything, for a thousand means everything, and the Aśvamedha is everything. And (he gives them) four gold plates weighing a hundred (grains): the meaning of this has been explained[3].

7. The Adhvaryu then, hanging a gold ornament (nishka) round him, makes him mutter (Vâg. S. XXII, 1), 'Fire thou art, light and immortality,'—for gold, indeed, is fire, light[4], and

[1] Or, along with these, included in them (are the assistant priests).

[2] See XIII, 1, 1, 1; 4 (cf. II, 1, 4, 4).

[3] XII, 7, 2, 13.

[4] Perhaps Mahîdhara is right in taking 'śukram' here in the sense of 'seed' (Agner vîryam); cf. II, 1, 1, 5; XIII, 1, 1, 4.

immortality: fire (fiery mettle), light (brilliance), and immortality he thus bestows upon him;—'protector of life, protect my life!' he thereby bestows life (vital strength) upon him. With a view to commencing the sacrifice, he then says to him, 'Restrain thy speech!' for the sacrifice is speech.

8. Four (of the king's) wives are in attendance—the consecrated queen, the favourite wife, a discarded wife, and the Pâlâgalî [1], all of them adorned and wearing gold ornaments (neck-plates)—with the view of the completeness of conjugal union. With them he enters the hall of the sacrificial fires—the Sacrificer by the eastern, the wives by the southern, door.

9. When the evening-offering [2] has been performed, he lies down with his favourite wife behind the Gârhapatya hearth, with his head towards the north. At the same place [3] the other (wives) also lie down. He lies in her lap without embracing her [4], thinking, 'May I, by this self-restraint, reach successfully the end of the year!'

10. When the morning offering has been performed, the Adhvaryu performs a full-offering [5] with a view to his (the Sacrificer's) gaining and securing everything, for the full means everything, and the Aśvamedha is everything. At this (offering) he releases speech by (bestowing) a boon,

[1] See p. 313, note 2.

[2] That is the evening performance of the Agnihotra.

[3] Tad eva tatraiva, comm.

[4] So 'ntarorû asaṃvartamânaḥ śete.

[5] For particulars regarding the 'pûrṇâhuti,' or oblation of a spoonful of ghee, see part i, p. 302, note 2.

saying, 'I grant a boon to the Brahman (priest):' (this he does) with a view to his gaining and securing everything, for a boon is everything, and the Aśvamedha is everything.

11. The gold ornament which is attached to his (neck) he then gives to the Adhvaryu: in giving it to the Adhvaryu he secures to himself immortal life, for gold means immortal life.

12. For the object of (gaining) the road, and in order not to lose the mouth (mukha) of the sacrifice, he then prepares an ishṭi-offering[1] to Agni. For, indeed, all the deities have Agni for their mouth, and in the Aśvamedha are (contained) all objects of desire: 'Having, at the outset (mukhataḥ), gratified all the gods, may I obtain all my desires!' so he thinks.

13. For this (offering) there are fifteen kindling-verses[2]; for fifteenfold is the thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt means vigour: with the thunderbolt (of) vigour the Sacrificer thus from the first repels evil. The two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vṛitra[3], with a view to the repelling of evil, for

[1] Viz. a cake (on eight kapâlas) to Agni Pathikṛit, 'the path-maker'—or, according to Âśv. Śr. X, 6, 3, to Agni Mûrdhanvat ('forming the head,' so called from the formulas used containing the word 'head).' For a similar special offering to the same deity see XII, 4, 4, 1 (cf. XI, 1, 5, 3).

[2] See part i, p. 95 seqq. (especially I, 3, 5, 5–7).

[3] The two Âgyabhâgas, or butter-portions to Agni and Soma, are said to be 'Vṛitra-slaying' (vârtraghna), or to relate to the slaying of Vṛitra, when their anuvâkyâs, or invitatory formulas, are the two verses *Ṛig*-veda VI, 16, 34 (agnir vṛitrâṇi gaṅghanat, 'May Agni slay the Vṛitras'), and I, 91, 5 (tvaṃ somâsi satpatis tvaṃ râgota vṛitrahâ. 'Thou, O Soma, art the true lord, thou art the king and the slayer of Vṛitra,' &c.). This is the case at the Full-moon sacrifice, whilst at the New-moon sacrifice the two butter-

Vṛ*i*tra is evil. [The verses, Vâg. S. XIII, 14, 15,] 'Agni, the head, the summit of the sky . . .[1],' and 'Be thou the leader of the sacrifice and the realm of space (whither thou strivest with auspicious teams: thy light-winning head hast thou raised to the sky, and thy tongue, O Agni, hast thou made the bearer of the offering),' pronounced in a low voice, are the anuvâkyâ and yâgyâ of the chief oblation. The one contains (the word) 'head,' the other (the verb) 'to be,'—for the head, assuredly, is he that shines yonder: thus it is in order to secure him (the Sun); and as to why (the other) contains (the verb) 'to be,'—he thereby secures that which is (the real, truly existent). The Sa*m*yâgyâs[2] are two virâg-verses[3]; for that—to wit, the Virâg—is the metre

portions are said to be 'vṛ*i*dhanvant,' or 'relating to growth,' because the anuvâkyâs used on that occasion are two verses containing forms of the root vṛ*i*dh, 'to grow,' viz. VIII, 44, 12 (agni*ḥ* pratnena manmanâ . . . kavir vipre*n*a vâvṛ*i*dhe, 'Agni has grown strong by the old hymn,—as the wise one by the priest') and I. 91, 11 (Soma gîrbhish *ṭ*vâ vaya*m* vardhayâmo va*k*ovida*ḥ* . . ., 'O Soma, we magnify thee (make thee grow) by our songs, skilful in speech'). In the same way the one or the other form is used in different ish*ṭ*is. At I, 6, 2, 12, the translation, 'the two butter-portions should be offered to the Vṛ*i*tra-slayer (Indra)' should therefore be altered to 'the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vṛ*i*tra' (or, 'are Vṛ*i*tra-slaying').

[1] See VII, 4, 1, 41.

[2] That is, the two formulas used with the oblation to Agni Svish*ṭ*akṛ*i*t.

[3] Whilst the normal performance of an ish*ṭ*i requires two trish*ṭ*ubh-verses (*Ṛ*ig-veda X, 2, 1; VI, 15, 14; cf. part i, p. 202, notes 2 and 3) for the invitatory and offering formulas of the oblations to Agni Svish*ṭ*akṛ*i*t, two virâg-verses are frequently prescribed, certain verses of the Virâg-hymn *Ṛ*ig-veda VII, 1, being chiefly used for this purpose; e. g. v. 3 as the anuvâkyâ, and v. 18 as the yâgyâ for the Svish*ṭ*akṛ*i*t of the oblation to Aditi at the

belonging to all the gods, and all objects of desire are (contained) in the Aśvamedha: 'Having gratified all the gods, may I obtain all my desires!' so he thinks. The sacrificial fee is gold weighing a hundred (grains): the meaning of this has been explained.

14. He then prepares a (pap) for Pûshan, for Pûshan is the overlord of roads: he thus secures successful progress to the horse. But Pûshan is also this (earth): he thus makes this (earth) its guardian, for neither injury nor failure befals him whom this (earth) guards on the way; and this (earth) he thus makes its guardian.

15. For this (offering) there are seventeen kindling-verses[1], for the obtainment of the Aśvamedha, for Pragâpati is seventeenfold, and the Aśvamedha is Pragâpati. The two butter-portions are possessed of 'growth[2],' even for the growth of the Sacrificer. [The verses, Vâg. S. XXXIV, 41, 42,] 'Pûshan, in thy sway we [shall never suffer harm, we (who) here are singers of thy praises],' and 'The hymn (?) lovingly composed by desire of praise hath reached

Âdhâna (see part i, p. 307, note 3), and the Dîkshaṇîyesh/i; and vv. 14, 15 as yâgyâ and anuvâkyâ of the Svish/akṛit of the Prâyaṇîyesh/i. It is doubtless the two former verses, commonly employed at special ish/is (cf. part i, p. 164, note 3), which are to be used on the present occasion.

[1] See part i, p. 112, note 1.

[2] That is, they are performed with two invitatory formulas containing the verb 'to grow,' see p. 350, note 3. Whilst our Brâhmaṇa thus prescribes the two invitatory formulas used for the butter-portions of the New-moon sacrifice, Âśvalâyana (Śr. X, 6, 6) prescribes two verses containing the verb 'as' (or 'bhû'), viz. *Ṛig*-veda V, 13, 4, tvam agne saprathâ asi; and I, 91, 9, soma yâs te mayobhuva ûtayaḥ santi dâśushe tâbhir no 'vitâ bhava.

the guardian of every path: (may he, Pûshan, grant unto us draughts of light (?), and fulfil our every prayer!'), pronounced in a low voice, are the anuvâkyâ and yâgyâ of the chief oblation. The one contains (the word) 'sway,' the other (the word) 'path'; for sway is vigour: (thus it is) in order to his gaining and securing vigour; and as to why (the other) contains (the word) 'path,' he thereby secures successful progress to the horse. The invitatory and offering formulas of the Svishṭakṛit are two anushṭubh verses[1]; for the Anushṭubh is speech, and Pragâpati is speech, and the Aśvamedha is Pragâpati: thus it is for the obtainment of the Aśvamedha. The priests' fee consists of a hundred garments, for that—to wit, the garment—is man's outward appearance, whence people (on seeing) any well-clad man, ask, 'Who can this be?' for he is perfect in his outward appearance: with outward appearance he thus endows him. There are a hundred of them, for man has a life of a hundred (years), and a hundred energies: life, and energy, vigour, he thus gains for himself.

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Whilst this (offering to Pûshan) is being performed, the horse, having been cleansed, is led up—being one which is marked with all colours, or which is perfect in speed, worth a thousand (cows), in its prime, and without its match under the right-side yoke[2].

[1] Viz. according to Âśv. Śr. X, 6, 7,—*Ṛig*-veda I, 45, 6 (tvâṁ *k*itraśravastama) and V, 25, 7 (yad vâsish*ṭ*ham yad agnaye).

[2] Thus Harisvâmin,—'anyebhyo dakshiṇadhuryebhya utkṛish-

2. And as to its being one marked with all colours, it is for the sake of his (the Sacrificer's) obtaining and securing everything, for colour (outward appearance) is everything, and the Aśvamedha is everything. And as to its being perfect in speed, it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing vigour, for speed is vigour. And as to its being worth a thousand (cows), it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing everything, for a thousand means everything, and the Aśvamedha is everything. And as to its being in its prime, it is for the sake of his obtaining unlimited vigour, for such a one that is in the prime (of youth) increases to unlimited vigour. And as to its being without its match under the right-side yoke, it is for the sake of his obtaining yonder (sun), for that (horse) indeed is he that shines yonder, and assuredly there is no one to rival him.

3. As to this, Bhâllaveya, however, said, 'That horse should be of two colours, black-spotted[1], for that (horse) was produced from Pragâpati's eye, and this eye is of two colours, white and black: he thus endows it with its own colour.'

4. But Sâtyayagñi said, 'That horse should be of three colours, its forepart black, its hindpart white, with a wain for its mark in front;—when its forepart is black it is the same as this black of the eye; and when its hindpart is white it is the same as this white of the eye; and when it has a wain for its mark in front, that is the pupil: such

---

ṭah;' hardly 'one which finds no (worthy) yoke-fellow' (St. Petersb. Dict.).

[1] Or, black with some other colour.

a one, indeed, is perfect in colour[1].' Whichever of these, then, should be ready at hand, either a many-coloured one, or one of two colours, or one of three colours with a wain for its mark, let him slaughter it: but in speed it should certainly be perfect.

5. In front (of the sacrificial ground) there are those keepers of it ready at hand,—to wit, a hundred royal princes, clad in armour; a hundred warriors armed with swords; a hundred sons of heralds and headmen, bearing quivers filled with arrows[2]; and a hundred sons of attendants[3] and charioteers, bearing staves;—and a hundred exhausted, worn out horses[4] amongst which, having let loose that (sacrificial horse), they guard it.

6. He then prepares an (ishṭi) offering to Savitṛi[5] —a cake on twelve potsherds to Savitṛi Prasavitṛi—thinking, 'May Savitṛi impel this my sacrifice!' for Savitṛi (the sun), indeed, is the impeller (prasavitṛi).

7. For this (offering) there are fifteen kindling-

[1] One would expect an 'iti' here.

[2] Or, furnished with bundles of arrows,—ishuparshiṇaḥ, for which Kâty. XX. 2, 11, has 'kalâpinaḥ' (=sarâvapanabhastrâvantaḥ schol.). Harisvâmin explains it as if it were equivalent to 'ishuvarshiṇaḥ,' 'showering arrows.'

[3] Harisvâmin takes 'kshâttra' as the body of revenue-officers (tax-gatherers, &c.), 'âyavyayâdhyakshasamûhaḥ.'

[4] That is, according to Harisvâmin, over twenty-four years old; his explanation being based on the etymology of 'nirashṭam' as 'outside the eight' (viz. characteristics of age in horses, each of which is supposed to hold good for three years).

[5] The three ishṭis to Savitṛi, treated of in paragraphs 6–17, as well as the proceedings subsequent thereto, are repeated every day during the twelvemonth during which the sacred horse is allowed to roam about.

verses; and the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vritra[1]. [The verses, *Rig*-veda V, 82, 9; VII, 45, 1], 'He who calleth forth all these beings (with his call, may he, Savitri, quicken us)!' and 'May the divine Savitri come hither, treasure-laden, (filling the air whilst driving with his steeds; holding in his hand many things meet for man; and laying to rest and awakening the world),' pronounced in a low voice, are the invitatory and offering formulas of the chief oblation. Those of the Svishṭakṛit are two virâg-verses[2]. The priests' fee is gold weighing a hundred (grains): the meaning of this has been explained.

8. Whilst the fore-offerings of this (ishṭi) are being performed, a Brâhman lute-player, striking up the uttaramandrâ (tune[3]), sings three strophes composed by himself (on topics[4] such as), 'Such a sacrifice he offered,—Such gifts he gave:' the meaning of this has been explained[5].

9. He then prepares a second (offering)—a cake on twelve potsherds to Savitri Âsavitri—thinking, 'May Savitri propel this my sacrifice!' for Savitri, indeed, is the propeller (âsavitri).

---

[1] See p. 350, note 3. [2] See p. 351, note 3.

[3] Or, touching the uttaramandrâ lute,—literally, the 'upper deep' one, i.e. perhaps one the chords of which are pitched in the upper notes of the lower key. Cf. Scholl. on Kâty. XX, 2, 8 uttaramandrâ *ka* gâyanaprasiddhâ; — uttaramandrâ-sa*mgñâyâm* vî*nâyâm*. Harisvâmin does not explain the term.

[4] Taitt. Br. III, 9, 14, 3 mentions three topics—one for each stanza,—viz. '*thus* (such and such gifts) thou gavest, *thus* (by such and such sacrifices) thou didst sacrifice, *thus* thou didst cook (i.e. with such and such food thou didst regale the priests).'

[5] See XIII, 1, 5, 6.

10. For this (offering) there are seventeen kindling-verses; and the two butter-portions are possessed of that which is[1]: the (truly) existent he thereby obtains. [The verses, *Rig*-veda V, 82, 5; VII, 45, 3,] 'All troubles, O divine Savit*ri*, (keep from us, do thou send us that which is good)!' and 'May that mighty god Savit*ri* (the lord of treasure, send us treasure; shedding wide-spread lustre, may he bestow upon us the joys of mortal life)!' pronounced in a low voice, are the invitatory and offering formulas of the chief oblation. Those of the Svish*ṭ*ak*ri*t are two anush*ṭ*ubh verses[2]. Silver is the priests' fee,—for the sake of variety of colour, and also for the sake of (the horse's) going outside[3] and not going away. It weighs a hundred (grains), for man has a life of a hundred (years), and a hundred energies: it is life, and energy, vigour, he thus secures for himself.

11. Whilst the fore-offerings of this (ish*ṭ*i) are being performed, a Brâhman lute-player, striking up the uttaramandrâ (tune), sings three strophes composed by himself (on topics such as), 'Such a sacrifice he offered,—Such gifts he gave:' the meaning of this has been explained.

12. He then prepares a third (offering)—a cake

---

[1] That is, their anuvâkyâs contain forms of the root 'as' (or 'bhû'), to be; cf. p. 352, note 2.

[2] See XIII, 4, 1, 15, p. 353, note 1.

[3] Viz. going outside the sacrificial ground, and yet not running away from its keepers,—this, according to the text, would be symbolically expressed by the gold (which was given as the priests' fee for the first offering) giving place to silver at the second offering, but coming in again at the third.

on twelve potsherds to Savitṛi Satyaprasava ('of true impulse'); for that, indeed, is the true impulse which is Savitṛi's: 'May he impel with true impulse this my sacrifice!' so he thinks.

13. For this (ishṭi) there are again seventeen kindling-verses. The two butter-portions are possessed of 'wealth [1],' with a view to his obtaining and securing vigour, for wealth is vigour (strength). [The verses, *Ṛig*-veda V, 82, 7; IV, 54, 4,] 'The all-divine, true lord (we hope to gain this day by our hymns, Savitṛi of true impulsion),' and 'Indestructible is that (work) of the divine Savitṛi, (that he will ever sustain the whole world: whatever he, the fair-fingered, bringeth forth over the extent of the earth and the expanse of the sky, that is truly his own),' pronounced in a low voice, are the invitatory and offering formulas of the chief offering. Those of the Svishṭakṛit (he makes) the regular ones [2], thinking, 'Lest I should depart from the path of sacrifice:' he thus finally establishes himself in the well-ordered sacrifice. Triṣhṭubh-verses they are for the sake of his gaining and securing (Indra's) energy, vigour, for the Triṣhṭubh is the vigour in Indra. The priests' fee is gold weighing a hundred (grains): the meaning of this has been explained [3].

14. Whilst the fore-offerings of this (ishṭi) are

[1] That is, their invitatory formulas contain the word 'rayi' (wealth). What particular verses are intended here, I do not know.

[2] Viz. the triṣhṭubh-verses *Ṛig*-veda X, 2, 1; VI, 15, 14; see p. 351, note 3.

[3] XII, 7, 2, 13.

being performed, a Brâhman lute-player, striking up the uttaramandrâ (tune), sings three strophes composed by himself (on topics such as), 'Such a sacrifice he offered,—Such gifts he gave:' the meaning of this has been explained.

15. When this (offering) is completed, the Adhvaryu and the Sacrificer rise, and whisper in the horse's right ear (Vâg. S. XXII, 19), 'Plenteous by thy mother, strengthful by thy father . . .!' the meaning of this has been explained[1]. They then set it free towards the north-east, for that—to wit, the north-east—is the region of both gods and men: they thus consign it to its own region, in order to its suffering no injury, for one who is established in his own home suffers no injury.

16. He says, 'O ye gods, guardians of the regions, guard ye this horse, consecrated for offering unto the gods!' The (four kinds of) human guardians of the (four) regions have been told, and these now are the divine ones, to wit, the Âpyas, Sâdhyas, Anvâdhyas[2] and Maruts; and both of these, gods and men, of one mind, guard it for a year without turning (driving) it back. The reason why they do not turn it back, is that it is he that shines yonder,—and who, forsooth, is able to turn him back? But were they to turn it back, everything here assuredly would go backward (go to ruin): therefore they guard it without turning it back.

17. He says, 'Ye guardians of the quarters, those who go on to the end of this (horse-sacrifice) will

[1] See XIII, 1, 6, 1 seqq., 3, 7. 1–2 seqq.

[2] On these divine beings see Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 6, note.

become (sharers of) the royal power, they will become kings worthy of being consecrated; but those who do not go on to the end of this (sacrifice) will be excluded from royal power, they will not become kings, but nobles and peasants, unworthy of being consecrated: do not ye therefore be heedless, and keep it (the horse) from water suitable for bathing and from mares! And whenever ye meet with any kind of Brâhmaṇas, ask ye them, "O Brâhmaṇas, how much know ye of the Aśvamedha?" and those who know naught thereof ye may despoil; for the Aśvamedha is everything, and he who, whilst being a Brâhmaṇa, knows naught of the Aśvamedha, knows naught of anything, he is not a Brâhmaṇa, and as such liable to be despoiled. Ye shall give it drink, and throw down fodder for it; and whatever prepared food there is in the country all that shall be prepared for you. Your abode shall be in the house of a carpenter of these (sacrificers [1]), for there is the horse's resting-place.'

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Having set free the horse, he (the Adhvaryu) spreads a cushion wrought of gold (threads) south of the Vedi: thereon the Hotṛi seats himself. On the right (south) of the Hotṛi, the Sacrificer on a gold stool [2]; on the right of him, the Brahman

[1] Thus Harisvâmin,—teshâṃ ka yagamânânâṃ madhye rathakâro yas tasya gṛihe yushmâkaṃ vasataḥ. The plural is probably meant as including the subjects of the king (cf. XI, 8, 4, 1), and the villages within reach of which the horse will roam.

[2] At XI, 5, 3, 4; 7 'kûrka' seems to mean a bunch or pad of grass, used as a seat. In the present instance it is explained as

and Udgâtṛi on cushions wrought of gold; in front of them, with his face to the west, the Adhvaryu on a gold stool, or a slab of gold.

2. When they are seated together, the Adhvaryu calls upon (the Hotṛi), saying, 'Hotṛi, recount the beings: raise thou this Sacrificer above the beings[1]!' Thus called upon, the Hotṛi, being about to tell the Pâriplava[2] Legend, addresses (the Adhvaryu), 'Adhvaryu!'—'Havai[3] hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.

3. 'King Manu Vaivasvata,' he says;—'his people are Men, and they are staying here[4];'—

a seat with feet (sapâdam âsanam, Schol. on Kâty. XX, 2, 19), or as a seat or stool which has the appearance of a pad (pîṭham kûrkâkṛiti, ? i.e. with a pad on it). According to Âsv. Śr. X, 6, 10 the king is surrounded by his sons and ministers.

[1] Or, perhaps, 'raise this Sacrificer above (or, up to) the things of the past;' but see paragraph 15.

[2] That is, the 'revolving, recurrent, or cyclic legend,' so called because it is renewed every ten days during the year.

[3] Harisvâmin explains this interjection, as if it were 'hvayai'= pratihvayai, 'I will respond, I am ready to respond;' and, though this is probably a fanciful explanation, the arrangements made on this occasion are clearly such as to suggest a studied resemblance to the call and counter-call of the two priests on all occasions of a solemn utterance of sacrificial formulas, or the recitation of hymns, as at the Prâtaranuvâka (part ii, p. 226 seqq.). Kâty. XX, 3, 2, accordingly, calls it the Adhvaryu's 'pratigara,' or response. Âsv. Śr. X, 6, 13 makes the Adhvaryu's answer 'ho hotar'; and Śâṅkh. Śr. XVI, 1 'hoyi hotar.'

[4] The Hotṛi's utterances on the ten days of the revolving period (as set forth in passages 2–14) occur also, with some variations of detail, in the manuals defining the Hotṛi's duties, viz. the Âśvalâyana (X, 7) and Śâṅkhâyana (XVI, 2) Sûtras (whilst the works of the Taittirîyakas seem to have nothing corresponding to this performance). Both Sûtras omit 'râgâ' each time. Âśvalâyana, moreover, omits also the 'iti' along with it, because he does not interrupt the formula by an insertion, as is done here (ity âha)

householders, unlearned in the scriptures, have come thither[1]: it is these he instructs;—'The *Rik* (verses) are the Veda[2]: this it is;' thus saying, let him go over a hymn of the *Rik*, as if reciting it[3]. Masters of lute-players have come

and in the *Sâṅkh.* S. (iti prathame, &c.). Gârgya Nârâya*ṇa*, on Â*sv.* X, 7, 1, takes the opening words 'prathame (&c.) ahani' to form part of the formulas:—'on the first day Manu Vaivasvata (is king); but it is clear from the other two authorities that this cannot have been intended by the author of that Sûtra.—The commentator on *Sâṅkh.* S. XVI, 2 remarks, 'Manur Vaivasvato râgety-evam-âdikam âkhyâna*m* pariplavâkhya*m* prathamâhany âkash*ṭe* . . . tasya râg*ño* manushyâ visa*ḥ* pragâs ta ima âsate 'dyâpi svadharmân na *k*alanti,' thus apparently taking 'râgâ' to form part of the formula, or rather of the topic of which the legend to be recited was to treat. This commentary thus apparently assumes that the legend begins with 'Manur Vaivasvato râgâ'; and that the subsequent clause leads on to the recitation of the Vedic text that is to follow (cf. note on paragraph 8);—though possibly this latter clause (as Professor M. Müller seems to take it) may only be an argumentative one, giving the reason why the householders are to be instructed. Cf. M. Müller, Hist. of Anc. Sansk. Lit., p. 37 seqq.

[1] 'Householders should be brought thither' (i. e. should be made to join this performance); Â*sv.*-sûtra. *Sâṅkh.* has merely 'thereby he instructs householders.' *Gri*hamedhina*ḥ* are those who regularly perform the five great domestic sacrifices (mahâya*gñ*a).

[2] Or, more closely, the Veda is the, or consists of, *Rik* (verses). *Sâṅkh.* S. reads '*rik*o veda*ḥ*' (the Veda of the *Rik*, gen. sing.) instead of '*rik*a*ḥ*' (nom. pl.), and in the subsequent paragraph also, it repeats the word 'veda' (Yagurveda, Atharvaveda, Aṅgiraso veda*ḥ*).

[3] That is, as would seem,—as if he were to recite it (or, as when he recites it) in the course of the ordinary sacrificial performance—as in *Sâ*stras, the Prâtaranuvâka, &c. The text would, however, also admit of the translation—'thus saying, let him go over (the legend) as if he were reciting a hymn of the *Rik*,' but it is not quite easy to see how a similar interpretation would suit subsequent paragraphs (11–14). Moreover, both Â*sv.* and *Sâṅkh.* omit 'vyâ*k*akshâ*ṇ*a iti,' and read 'nigadet,' 'let him recite (a hymn),'

thither: these he calls upon, 'Masters of lute-players,' he says, 'sing ye of this Sacrificer along with righteous kings of yore[1]!' and they accordingly sing of him; and in thus singing of him, they make him share the same world with the righteous kings of yore.

4. Having called (on the masters of lute-players), the Adhvaryu performs the Prakrama oblations[2], either on the southern fire, or on a footprint of the horse, after drawing lines round it—whichever is the practice there; but the former[3] is the established rule.

instead of 'anudravet (let him run, or go, over=anupûrvam u*kk*ârayet, Harisv.).' Yet, the commentary on Sâṅkh. supplies the 'iva,' explaining as he does, 'sûkta*m* ki*mk*id â*k*akshâ*n*a ivânuvadet;' from which (if it is not simply quoted from our Brâhma*n*a) it would almost seem as if he, too, thought of the legend rather than a hymn of the *Rik*. The verb 'vyâ-*k*aksh,' as against 'ni-gad,' seems to imply a clear articulation—perhaps even with all the stops or pauses, at the end of every half-verse, or pâda, as the case might be. Sâya*n*a (on Taitt. Br. II, 2, 1, 4; 2, 6) explains 'vyâ*k*akshîta' by 'vispash*t*am u*kk*ârayet (or, pa*th*et).' The available MS. of Harisvâmin's commentary on our text is, as usual, incorrect, but as far as it goes, it seems to favour the recitation of the legend at this place,—'vyâ*k*akshâ*n*a iti vâkya*s*as *k*idan (r. *kh*indan) agai*s* *k*âbhidad (?) ity artha*h*,'—which I take to mean that he is to pause after each sentence, as he would do when reciting a hymn.

[1] That is, according to Harisvâmin,—'Compare this Sacrificer in song with the old righteous kings.' Kâty. XX, 3, 8 refers to these latter as 'râgarshis,' or royal sages—in which case the recitation of the legend itself would only come in here.

[2] For the formulas used with this series of forty-nine oblations, see XIII, 1, 3, 5 with notes thereon.

[3] That is to say, according to Harisvâmin, the course of procedure laid down in XIII, 1, 3, 7, according to which these oblations are to be made on the Âhavanîya, and not either on the southern fire, or on a footprint of the horse.

5. Prior to the (first) offering to Savitṛi he offers, once only, the (oblations relating to the) Forms[1] in the Âhavanîya fire, whilst going rapidly over (the formulas). And in the evening, whilst the Dhṛitis[2] (oblations for the safe keeping of the horse) are being offered, a Râǵanya lute-player, striking up the uttaramandrâ (tune) south (of the vedi), sings three stanzas composed by himself (on topics[3] such as), 'Such war he waged,—Such battle he won:' the meaning of this has been explained.

6. And on the morrow, the second day, after those (three) offerings to Savitṛi have been performed in the same way, there is that same course

[1] That is to say, the Prakramas which are only performed on the first day of the year, whilst the three oblations to Savitṛi are repeated each day.

[2] See XIII, 1, 4, 3; 6, 2. These oblations are made just prior to the evening performance of the Agnihotra, when the Âhavanîya has been got ready for the latter. The Taittirîyakas seem to make these four oblations on the horse's feet at the place where the keepers pass the night (viz. the carpenter's house) during the greater part of the year; and only in the last month, when a stable of Aśvattha wood has been put up for the horse near (or on) the offering-ground, these oblations take place on the Âhavanîya. See comm. on Taitt. Br. III, 8, 12 (p. 609; cp. p. 700). At III, 9, 14 (p. 703), on the other hand, it is stated that the Râǵanya's singing is to take place in the evening at the time of the Dhṛiti-homas.

[3] Taitt. Br. III, 9, 14, 4, again mentions three topics, one for each stanza—viz. 'thus (i. e. in the same way as Pṛithu, Bharata, Bhagîratha, Yudhish*th*ira &c., comm.) didst thou overpower (the enemies), thus (i. e. surrounded by heroic warriors, fighting on elephants, steeds, chariots, and on foot, with bows and arrows, spears, swords, &c.) didst thou battle, thus didst thou fight such and such battle (i. e. like Yudhish*th*ira, Dushyanta, &c., having engaged in a battle attended by thousands of great heroes, thou, armed only with thy sharp sword, didst slay the king of Kashmîr, Magadha, Pu*nd*ra, &c., comm.).'

of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Yama Vaivasvata[1],' he (the Hotṛi) says, 'his people are the Fathers, and they are staying here;'—old men have come thither: it is these he instructs;—'The Yagus-formulas are the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him go over a chapter (anuvâka) of the Yagus[2], as if reciting it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

7. And on the third day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is that same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Varuṇa Âditya,' he says; 'his people are the Gandharvas, and they are staying here;'—handsome youths have come thither: it is these he instructs;—'The Atharvans are the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him go over one section (parvan) of the Atharvan[3], as if reciting

[1] When the comm. on Sâṅkh. S. remarks, 'Yamo Vaivasvato râgety âheti divitîya evâhani Śatapathe darśanât,' this would seem to refer to the addition of either 'râgâ,' or 'ahani,' but not to any legend of Y. V., since such a one does not occur in this work; though various passages in the *Rik* might no doubt have sufficed to construct some such legend as would have served on this occasion.

[2] The same commentator refers to the 'Âśvamedhika' as the section to be recited,—'prakaraṇât,' because of the treatment (therein of this subject).

[3] Instead of 'atharvaṇâm ekaṃ parva,' the Sâṅkh. S. has 'bheshagam (medicine).' which the commentator—against the opinion of those who take it to mean the hymn *Rig*-veda X, 97 (treating of the magic powers of herbs)—makes a special work of the Âtharvaṇikas; whilst the Âśv. S. reads 'yad bheshagaṃ nisântaṃ

it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

8. And on the fourth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Soma Vaishṇava[1],' he says; 'his people are the Apsaras, and they are staying here;'—handsome maidens have come thither: it is these he instructs[2];—'The Aṅgiras are the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him go over one section of the Aṅgiras[3], as if reciting it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

9. And on the fifth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the

---

syât tan nigadet'—'let him tell some approved medicine (i. e. some specific, or charm against disease).'

[1] The comm. on Śâṅkh. S. remarks, 'Somo Vaishṇava iti katurthe; Somo Vaishṇavo râgeti Śatapathaśrutek; pratîka-grahaṇâny etâni.' This seems to show clearly that he takes this as merely the opening words of the legend. Here, again, his words can hardly be taken to refer to a legend regarding Soma in the Śatapatha-Brâhmaṇa.

[2] 'Yuvatîḥ śobhanâ upadiśati, tasyaitâḥ (? tasyaitâbhyaḥ) sabhâ-yâm anyâsâm apraveśât,' comm. on Śâṅkh. S.,—? because no other (Apsaras) but these come to his court.

[3] The Śâṅkh. S. has 'let him recite the Ghora'—which the commentator again takes to be the title of a special work of the Atharvans—whilst the Âśv. S. reads 'let him recite some approved ghora (magic spell or operation).'

Adhvaryu.—'King Arbuda Kâdraveya[1],' he says; 'his people are the Snakes, and they are staying here;'—both snakes and snake-charmers[2] have come thither: it is these he instructs;—'The Sarpavidyâ (science of snakes) is the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him go over one section of the Sarpavidyâ[3] as if reciting it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

10. And on the sixth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotri) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Kubera Vaiśravaṇa,' he says; 'his people are the Rakshas, and they are staying here;'—evil-doers, robbers[4], have come thither: it

[1] 'Arbudaḥ Kâdraveyo râgety âheti śruteḥ (thus also on the name of the next king),' comm. on Śâṅkh. S.

[2] Lit. '(men) knowing about snakes'—which the comm. on Âśv. S. explains by 'those knowing the Kâśyapîya and other treatises (tantra) on venoms.' Instead of the conjunctive double 'ka,' the Śâṅkh. S. has a single 'vâ'—the snakes, or (rather) snake-charmers—and Âśv. S. an explanatory 'iti'—the snakes, i. e. snake-charmers.

[3] The Śâṅkh. S. has, 'let him recite the Sarpavidyâ' (i. e. either the Gârudâ or Kaṅkanîyâ sarpavidyâ, as the comm. explains); the Âśv. S. 'let him recite the Vishavidyâ (science of venoms).'

[4] The etymology and exact meaning of 'selaga' is doubtful:—here, again, whilst 'pâpakṛitaḥ' is added either appositionally, or attributively (wicked selagas), the Śâṅkh. S. adds it by means of 'vâ,' and the Âśv. S. by 'iti'—both apparently meant in an explanatory sense. The Ait. Br., on the other hand, has VII, 1, 'selagâ vâ pâpakṛito vâ;' and VIII, 11, 'nishâdâ vâ selagâ vâ pâpakṛito vâ.' The comm. on Âśv. S. explains 'selaga' by 'maddened by a snake;' the comm. on Śâṅkh. S. by 'selagâḥ seṇyâgâyanyaḥ (?) pâpakṛito vâ mlekhâḥ.'

is these he instructs;—'The Devaganavidyâ[1] (demonology) is the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him go over one section of the Devaganavidyâ, as if he were reciting it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

11. And on the seventh day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Asita Dhânva[2],' he says; 'his people are the Asura; and they are staying here;'—usurers have come thither: it is these he instructs;—'Magic[3] is the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him perform some magic trick. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

12. And on the eighth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the

[1] That is, the science, or knowledge of the divine (or supernatural) beings. The Sâṅkh. S. has, 'the Rakshovidyâ is the Veda, ... let him recite the Rakshovidyâ'—on which the commentator remarks 'prasiddhaiva kuhukurûpâ rakshovidyeti.' (?='kuhakarûpâ,' cheats, or deceitful imps). Âśv. S. has 'yat kiṁkit piśâkasaṁyuktaṁ nisántam,' 'some approved (spell or operation?) connected with the Piśâkas, or demons.'

[2] Sâṅkh. S. has 'Asita Dhânvana.'

[3] The two Sûtras read 'Asuravidyâ'—asuravidyendragâlâdinâ tannirdesân mâyâm api kâṁkit kuryâd aṅgulinyâsarûpâm ('a trick by sleight of hand,' M. Müller), comm. on Sâṅkh. S. On 'indragâlavidyâ' ('magic art, trickery'), cf. Daśakum., p. 25, l. 12. The association of the black art with the usurer or money-lender (kusîdin) is rather curious.

Adhvaryu.—'King Matsya Sâmmada[1],' he says; 'his people are the water-dwellers, and they are staying here;'—both fish and fishermen[2] have come thither: it is these he instructs;—'the Itihâsa[3] is the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him tell some Itihâsa. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

13. And on the ninth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Târkshya Vaipaśyata[4],' he says; 'his people are the Birds, and they are staying here;'—both birds and bird-catchers[5] have come thither: it is these he instructs;—'the Purâṇa[3] is the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him tell some Purâṇa[6]. The Adhvaryu calls

[1] 'Matsyaḥ Sâmmada ity ashṭame, Matsyaḥ Sâmmado râgeti śruteḥ pratîkagrahaṇam etat,' comm. on Sâṅkh. S.

[2] 'Gâtisambandhena matsyavido vâ, mainikân | âṭhînâdiviśeshavikalpân vidanti ye tân vâ,' comm. on Sâṅkh. S.

[3] Regarding the Itihâsa (cosmogonic account) and Purâṇa (ancient legend), see p. 98, note 4. The Âśv. S. connects the Itihâsa with the ninth, and the Purâṇa with the eighth day. 'Itihâsam âkakshîta, itihâsavedasya pṛithagbhâvena darśanât,' comm. on Sâṅkh. S.

[4] Âśv. S. has Târkshya Vaipaśkita.—'Târkshyo Vaipaśyato râgety âheti pratîka(m) śruteḥ,' comm. on Sâṅkh. S.

[5] Lit., men acquainted with the science of birds (vâyovidyika). The two Sûtras, on the other hand, here identify the birds with 'brahmakâriṇaḥ,' or religious students.

[6] According to the comm. on Sâṅkh. S., it is the Vâyupurâṇa (purâṇam vâyuproktam) that is to be recited (from), and not the hymn Ṛigveda X. 130 ('tasya vedaikadeśatvât'). This hymn is probably referred to in this connection chiefly on account of the passage 'yagñe gâte purâṇe' in verse 6.

in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

14. And on the tenth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Dharma Indra[1],' he says, 'his people are the Gods, and they are staying here;'—learned śrotriyas (theologians), accepting no gifts[2], have come thither: it is these he instructs; 'the Sâman (chant-texts) are the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him repeat[3] a decade of the Sâman. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

15. [In telling] this revolving (legend), he tells all royalties, all regions, all Vedas, all gods, all beings; and, verily, for whomsoever the Hotṛi, knowing this, tells this revolving legend, or whosoever even knows this, attains to fellowship and communion with these royalties, gains the sovereign rule and lordship over all people, secures for himself all the Vedas, and, by gratifying the gods, finally establishes himself on all beings. This very same legend revolves again and again for a year; and inasmuch as it revolves again and again, therefore

[1] 'Dharma Indra iti daśame, Dharma Indro râgety âheti Śatapathe pratîkadarśanât,' comm. on Śâṅkh. S.

[2] The two Sûtras still further qualify them as 'young śrotriyas who accept no gifts,' 'manu(shya)devâ hi ta ity abhiprâyât,' comm. on Śâṅkh.; cp. Śat. Br. II, 2, 2, 6, 'ye brâhmaṇâḥ suśruvâṁso 'nûkânâs te manushyadevâḥ.'

[3] The text has 'brûyât,' 'let him say;' whilst the two Sûtras read 'sâma gâyât,' 'let him sing a Sâman' ('yat kiṁkid anindyam evâśvâmedhikaṁ vâ prakaraṇât,' comm. on Śâṅkh. S.).

it is (called) the revolving (legend). For thirty-six ten-days' periods he tells it,—the Bṛihatî (metre) consists of thirty-six syllables, and cattle are related to the Bṛihatî metre: by means of the Bṛihatî he thus secures cattle for him.

FOURTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. When the year has expired[1], the Dîkshâ (initiation) takes place. After the slaughtering of the victim sacred to Pragâpati[2], the (ishṭi) offerings[3] come to an end. Some, however, say, 'Let him offer (them) on the fires of his Purohita (court-chaplain). But why should one who is initiated make offering? There are twelve Dîkshâ (days), twelve Upasad (days) and three Sutyâs (Soma-days), that amounts to the thrice-ninefold (stoma); but the thrice-ninefold, indeed, is a thunderbolt, and the horse is the nobility (kshatra), and the Râganya is the nobility; and political power (kshatra) is won by the thunderbolt: thus he wins[4] political power by means of the thunderbolt.

2. When the Initiation-offering has been completed, and Speech released in the evening, masters

[1] Viz. from the day of the setting free the horse, not from that of the mess of rice cooked for the four priests.

[2] That is, according to the comm., the he-goat offered to Pragâpati (along with one, or five, to Vâyu) in connection with the building of the fire-altar (which is required for the Asvamedha), see part iii. pp. 165 seqq., 171 seqq. The building of the altar, generally occupying the space of a year, is apparently compressed on this occasion within the time of the Dîkshâ and Upasads.

[3] Viz. the three ishṭis to Savitṛi performed daily throughout the year.

[4] One would expect here the middle (sprinute) instead of the active (sprinoti); cf. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 259.

of lute-players have come thither: these the Adhvaryu calls upon, 'Masters of lute-players,' he says, 'sing ye of this Sacrificer along with the gods!' and they accordingly sing of him in that manner—

3. Day by day, after speech has been released, when, on the completion of the Agnîshomîya (animal sacrifices), the Vasatîvarî (water) has been carried round[1] (the sacrificial ground). The reason why they thus sing of him along with the gods is that they thereby make him share the same world with the gods.

4. On the Sutyâ-days (they sing of him) along with Pragâpati in the same way day by day, after the Vasatîvarî (water) has been carried round[2], and the Udavasânîyâ (offering) has been finally completed. The reason why they thus sing of him

[1] See part ii, p. 222 seqq. Whilst there the offering of a he-goat to Agni and Soma took place on the Upavasatha, or day before the Sutyâ or Soma-day, on the present occasion these preliminary animal sacrifices would also seem to be performed on each day from the completion of the Dîkshâ up to the Upavasatha day inclusive (? i.e. on the Upasad days, cf. Kâty. Śr. XX. 3, 9; 4, 21). Moreover, though technically called Agnîshomîya, the sacrifice—on the Upavasatha day, at all events (XIII, 4, 4, 11)—is not one of a single he-goat sacred to Agni and Soma, but a set of eleven victims distributed over the central eleven stakes (of which twenty-one are required on the Soma-days) in the manner explained in III, 9, 1, 1 seqq.

[2] That is, at the end of each of the three Soma-sacrifices, see part ii, p. 454. The Udavasânîyâ (completing offering) takes place before the carrying round of the sacred water (ib. p. 389 seqq.). According to Kâty. XX, 3, 10–11, however, this singing of the Sacrificer's praises along with those of Pragâpati is to take place not only at the juncture specified in the text, but also at the beginning of the animal sacrifice of the Soma-days, that is, as would seem, prior to the slaying of the victims, at the morning pressing. The wording of our text seems hardly to admit of this interpretation.

along with Praǵâpati is that they thereby finally make him share the same world with Praǵâpati.

5. There are twenty-one sacrificial stakes, all of them twenty-one cubits long. The central one[1] is of raggudâla[2] wood; on both sides thereof stand two[3] pitudâru (deodar) ones, six of bilva wood (Aegle Marmelos)—three on this side, and three on that,—six of khadira (Acacia Catechu) wood—three on this side, and three on that,—six of palâśa (Butea frondosa) wood—three on this side, and three on that.

6. Then as to why these stakes are suchlike. When Praǵâpati's vital airs had gone out of him, his body began to swell; and what phlegm there was in it that flowed together and burst forth from inside through the nose, and it became this tree, the raggudâla, whence it is viscid, for it originated from phlegm: with that form (quality) he thus endows it (the stake). And as to why it is the (stake) standing by the fire, it is because that one is the centre of the stakes, and that nose is the centre of the (channels of the) vital airs: he thus puts it in its own place.

7. And what watery (liquid) fire, and what fragrance there was, that flowed together and

[1] That is, the so-called 'agnishṭha,' 'standing by (or opposite) the (Âhavanîya) fire.' Cp. p. 301, note 1.

[2] The raggudâla (or râggudâla, Sây. on Taitt. Br. III, 8, 19, 1) or 'sleshmâtaka' is the Cordia Myxa or C. latifolia, from the bark of which (according to Stewart and Brandis, Forest Flora of N.W. and Centr. India) ropes (raggu) are made, whence doubtless the above, as well as its scientific name, is derived; whilst 'the adhesive viscid pulp is used as bird-lime.'

[3] That is, one on each side, right and left.

burst forth from the eye, and became that tree, the pîtudâru; whence that (wood) is sweet-smelling, since it originated from fragrance, and whence it is inflammable, since it originated from fire: with that quality he thus endows it. And because these two (pîtudâru stakes) are on the two sides of the central one, therefore these two eyes are on the two sides of the nose: he thus puts those two in their own place.

8. And what 'kuntâpa [1],' what marrow there was, that flowed together, and burst forth from the ear, and became that tree, the bilva; whence all the fruit of that (tree) is eatable [2] inside, and whence it (the tree, or wood) is yellowish, for marrow is yellowish: with that quality he thus endows it. The two (sets of) pîtudâru (stakes) stand inside, and the bilva ones outside, for the eyes are inside, and the ears outside: he thus puts them in their own place.

9. From his (Pragâpati's) bones the khadira was produced, whence that (tree) is hard and of great strength [3], for hard, as it were, is bone: with that quality he thus endows it. The bilva (stakes) are

[1] See p. 164, note 1. It would certainly seem to be something connected with the spinal cord.

[2] According to Stewart and Brandis, the Aegle Marmelos is cultivated throughout India, and valued for its fruit, which is 'globose, oblong, or pyriform, 2 to 5 in. diam., with a smooth, grey or yellow rind, and a thick, orange-coloured, sweet aromatic pulp.' The flowers are stated to be greenish white, and 'the wood light-coloured, mottled with darker wavy lines and small light-coloured dots.'

[3] The wood of Acacia Catechu is described as dark red, and extremely hard and durable, and hence not liable to be attacked by white ants, and not touched by Teredo navalis; being much used for pestles, seed-crushers, cotton-rollers, wheel-wright's work, ploughs, bows, spear and sword-handles.

inside, and the khadira ones outside, for inside is the marrow, and outside the bones: he thus puts them in their own place.

10. From his flesh the palâśa was produced, whence that (tree) has much juice, and (that) red juice[1], for red, as it were, is flesh: with that quality he thus endows it. The khadira (stakes) are inside, and the palâśa ones outside, for inside are the bones, and outside is the flesh: he thus puts them in their own place.

11. And as to why there are twenty-one (stakes), twenty-one cubits long,—twenty-one-fold, indeed, is he that shines yonder[2]—there are twelve months, five seasons, these three worlds, and yonder sun is the twenty-first, and he is the Aśvamedha, and this Praǵâpati. Having thus completely restored this Praǵâpati, the sacrifice, he therein seizes twenty-one Agnîshomîya victims: for these there is one and the same performance, and this is the performance of the day before (the first Sutyâ).

Fifth Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

The Stotras and Śastras of the Soma-days.

1. Then, on the morrow, there is (used) Gotama's Stoma (form of chanting) successively increasing by four (verses)[3]: the Bahishpavamâna thereof is on four, the Âǵya (stotras) on eight, the Mâdhyandina Pavamâna on twelve, the Pṛishṭha (stotras) on

[1] 'From natural fissures and incisions made in the bark (of Butea frondosa) issues during the hot season a red juice, which soon hardens into a ruby-coloured, brittle, astringent gum, similar to kino, and sold as Bengal kino.' Stewart and Brandis.

[2] See p. 331, note 1.

[3] Regarding the Ǩatushṭoma, see p. 329, note 1.

sixteen, the Ârbhava Pavamâna on twenty, and the Agnish*t*oma-sâman on twenty-four (verses).

2. Now, some make its Agnish*t*oma-sâman a Sâman of four (verses), saying, 'It is neither an Agnish*t*oma, nor an Ukthya[1].' If they do so, let him (the Hot*ri*),

[1] According to the practice here referred to, the Agnish*t*oma-sâman would not consist merely of the one triplet (usually Sâmav. II, 53–4, i. e. the so-called ya*gñ*âya*gñ*îya triplet) ordinarily used for it, but of four different Sâmans, inasmuch as three of the triplets which may be used for the Uktha-stotras (of the Ukthya and other sacrifices) are added to that ya*gñ*âya*gñ*îya triplet. In that case, however, the latter is not chanted to its own 'ya*gñ*âya*gñ*îya' tune, but the Vâravantîya tune is used for all the four triplets. This practice is somewhat vaguely referred to in Tâ*nd*ya-Br. XIX, 5, 10–11. 'One Sâman (tune), many metres (texts): therefore one (man) feeds many creatures. Verily, the Agnish*t*oma (sâman) is the self, and the metres (hymn-texts) are cattle: he thus secures cattle for his own self. It is neither an Ukthya nor an Agnish*t*oma (sacrifice), for cattle are neither (entirely) domestic nor wild (viz. because though kept "in the village," they also freely graze "in the forest")." Here the passage 'One Sâman, many metres,' according to the commentary, refers to the Vâravantîya tune as being employed, on this occasion, for the texts of the Ya*gñ*âya*gñ*îya, the Sâkamas*v*a (II, 55–57, here the Calc. ed., by mistake, calls the second tune figured for chanting, like the first, Sâkamas*v*a, instead of Vâravantîya), the Saubhara (II, 230–2, where the Calc. ed., by mistake, omits the name Vâravantîya), and the Tairas*k*a (II, 233–5; curiously enough, the Tairas*k*a is not mentioned, in Lâ*ty*. *Ś*r. VIII, 9–10, amongst the Sâmans that may be used for the third—or the A*kkh*âvâka's—Uktha, but Sâya*n*a, on Sâmav. II, 233, states distinctly, 'tairas*k*am *t*ri*t*îyam uktham'). Whilst, as Uktha-stotras, the last three texts would usually be chanted in the ekavi*ms*a, or twenty-one-versed form, in the present instance, as part of the *k*atush*t*oma, they would be chanted (along with the Ya*gñ*âya*gñ*îya) in the twenty-four-versed form. Thus, though an Agnish*t*oma sacrifice, inasmuch as it has twelve stotras, yet it is not a regular one; neither is it an Ukthya, because the Ukthas are not chanted as so many Stotras, followed by the recitation of separate *Ś*astras. In the Âśv. *Ś*r. X, 6, different alternatives are proposed for the chanting of the Agnish-

after reciting the Stotriya [1] (strophe) together, recite the Anurûpa (strophe) together: the Rathantara Pṛishṭha-sâman [2], the Śastra containing the Rathantara (text), and the Agnishṭoma sacrifice—thereby he makes sure of this world.

3. 'There are twenty-one Savanîya [3] victims, all of them sacred to Agni: for these there is one and the same performance,' so say some; but, indeed, he should immolate two sets of eleven (victims), with the view of his obtainment of whatever desired object there may be in (victims) belonging to a set of eleven.

4. When the Agnishṭoma is completed, and the Vasatîvarî water carried round, the Adhvaryu performs the Annahomas [4] (oblations of food): the import of these has been explained. With twelve

---

ṭoma-sâman in the 'Gotamastoma (i. e. Ḳatushṭoma) antarukthya' and the corresponding Śastra, including apparently the employment of the Yaggâyaggîya-sâman either for all the four triplets, or for the Yaggâyaggîya triplet alone with the respective Sâmans used for the other triplets; different modes of recitation being thereby implied with regard to the Stotriya and Anurûpa pragâthas.

[1] For the Âgnimâruta-śastra, recited by the Hotṛi after the chanting of the Agnishṭoma-sâman, and containing, amongst various hymns and detached verses, the triplet which forms the text of the Stotra, i. e. the 'Stotriya pragâtha,' as well as a corresponding antistrophe, the 'Anurûpa pragâtha,' see part ii, p. 369 note. On the present occasion, however, this constituent element of the Śastra would have to include the triplets of all the four Sâmans, as well as four 'antistrophes' which are thus 'recited together.'

[2] Or, Pṛishṭha-stotra, viz. the first stotra of that name at the midday-service, for which that Sâman is used in the Agnishṭoma sacrifice (part ii, p. 339, note 2).

[3] That is, victims sacrificed on the Sutyâs, or Soma-days. Two complete sets of eleven such victims are, however, required on each of the three days, see p. 309, note 2.

[4] See XIII, 2, 1, 1 seqq., and p. 297, note 1.

Anuvâkas (Vâg. S. XXII, 23–34), 'To the in-breathing hail! To the off-breathing hail!' . . . (he offers)—twelve months are a year, and the year is everything, and the Aśvamedha is everything: thus it is for his obtaining and securing everything.

5. The central day is an ekaviṁśa day[1]; for the twenty-one-fold is yonder sun, and he is the Aśvamedha: by means of his own Stoma he thus establishes him in his own deity,—therefore it is an ekaviṁśa day.

6. And, again, as to why it is an ekaviṁśa day;—man is twenty-one-fold—ten fingers, ten toes, and the body (self) as the twenty-first: by means of that twenty-one-fold self he thus establishes him in the twenty-one-fold (day) as on a firm foundation,—therefore it is an ekaviṁśa day.

7. And, again, as to why it is an ekaviṁśa day;—the ekaviṁśa, assuredly, is the foundation of Stomas, and manifold is that ever-varying performance which takes place on this day,—and it is because he thinks that that manifold and ever-varying performance which takes place on this day, shall take place so as to be established on the ekaviṁśa as a firm foundation, that this is an ekaviṁśa day.

8. Now, as to the morning-service of this day. The Hotṛi, having recited as the Âgya (hymn[2]) in the Paṅkti (metre) 'Agni I think on, who is good . . .,' recites thereto the one of a one-day's

[1] That is one on which all Stotras are chanted in the 'ekaviṁśa' Stoma, or twenty-one-versed hymn-form.

[2] Viz. *Ṛig*-veda V, 6, forming the special feature of the Âgyaśastra at the Aśvamedha.

Soma-sacrifice[1]. And the Bârhata Praüga and the Mâdhukhandasa one he recites both together[2] in triplets—(this being done) for the obtainment of the objects of desire which (may be contained) both in the Bârhata and the Mâdhukhandasa Praüga. The morning-service is (thus) set right.

9. Then as to the midday-service. For the obtainment of the Aśvamedha, the atikhandas (verse, II, 22, 1), 'In the three troughs the buffalo drank the barley-draught,' is the opening verse of the Marutvatîya (śastra); for outstanding, indeed, is this atikhandas (hypercatalectic verse) amongst metres, and outstanding is the Aśvamedha amongst sacrifices. This (verse), being recited thrice, amounts to a triplet, and thereby he obtains the object of desire which (may be contained) in the triplet. 'Here, O good one, is the pressed plant' (*Ṛig*-veda VIII, 2, 1–3) is the 'anukara' (sequent triplet): this same (triplet) is the constant

[1] Viz. the Âgya-sûkta, *Ṛig*-veda III, 13, forming the chief part of the Hotṛi's Âgya-śastra, or first Śastra of the Agnishṭoma, for which see part ii, p. 327 note.

[2] The Bârhata Praüga, or Praüga-śastra in the Bṛihatî metre,—being the one recited on the fifth day of the Pṛishṭhya-shaḍaha (Âśv. Śr. VII, 12, 7), and consisting of the seven different triplets, addressed to as many different deities,—is to be recited also on this occasion; and along with it (or rather, intertwined with it, triplet by triplet) the ordinary Praüga-śastra of the Agnishṭoma, made up of the two hymns *Ṛig*-veda I, 2 and 3 which are ascribed to Madhukhandas, and consist of nine and twelve verses, or together seven triplets. I do not understand why Harisvâmin mentions 'Vâyur agregâḥ' (? Vâg. S. XXVII, 31) as being the first triplet of the Mâdhukhandasa Praüga, instead of I, 2, 1–3 'vâyav â yâhi darśata.'—The Praüga is the Hotṛi's second Śastra of the morning-service, being preceded by the chanting of the first Âgya-stotra; see part ii, p. 325.

connecting link of the one-day's sacrifice[1]. Having recited both the paṅkti (verses, I, 80, 1–16) 'Here in the Soma-draught alone (the Brahman gave thee strength),' and the six-footed ones (VIII, 36, 1–7) 'The patron thou art of the offerer of Soma,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn) of the one-day's sacrifice. Thus as to the Marutvatîya (-śastra).

10. Then as to the Nishkevalya (-śastra[2]). The Mahânâmnî (verses) are the Pṛishṭha (-stotra); and he recites them along with the anurûpa (verses) and pragâtha (-strophes), for the obtainment of all the objects of his desire, for in the Mahânâmnîs, as well as in the Aśvamedha, are contained all objects of desire. Having recited the paṅkti verses (I, 81, 1–9) 'Indra hath grown in ebriety and strength,' and the six-footed ones (VIII, 37, 1–7) 'This sacred work didst thou protect in

[1] See part ii, p. 337, where the same triplet forms the anuśara of this Śastra at the Agnishṭoma. It is followed there by the Pragâthas VIII, 53, 5–6; I, 40, 5–6 (read thus! each two counting as one triplet); three Dhâyyâ verses, and the Marutvatîya Pragâthas VIII, 89, 3–4 (!). These are to be followed up, on the present occasion, by the two hymns I, 80, and VIII, 36, after which the Indra hymn X, 73, the chief part of the normal Marutvatîya Śastra, is to be recited, with the Nivid formula inserted after the sixth verse.

[2] That is, the Śastra succeeding the chanting of the first, or Hotṛi's, Pṛishṭha-stotra (see part ii, p. 339). Whilst, however, in the one-day's sacrifice, the Rathantara (or the Bṛihat) sâman is used for that stotra, the Mahânâmnî verses (see part iii, introd. p. xx, note 2), with the Śâkvara tune, are to be used as the Stotriyâs on this occasion, and are therefore likewise to be recited by the Hotṛi as Stotriya-pragâthas (cf. Âśv. VII, 12, 10 seqq.), to be followed up by the antistrophe (anurûpa)—here consisting of the triplets I, 84, 10–12; VIII, 93, 31–3; I, 11, 1–3—and the Sâma-pragâtha, VIII, 3, 1–2.

fights with Vritra,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn) of the one-day's sacrifice[1]. The midday-service is (thus) set right.

11. Then as to the evening-service. The atîkhandas verse (Vâg. S. IV, 25), 'Unto that god Savitri within the two bowls (do I sing praises[2]),' is the opening verse[3] of the Vaiśvadeva (-śastra[4]): the mystic import thereof is the same as of the former (atikhandas verse). The Anukara[5] (Rig-veda I, 24, 3–5), 'Unto (abhi) thee, (the lord of treasures), O god Savitri, (ever helpful we come for our share . . .),' contains (the word) 'abhi,' as a form (sign) of victory (abhibhûti). Having recited the Sâvitra (triplet, VI, 71, 4–6), 'Up rose this god Savitri, the friend of the house . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn) of the one-day's sacrifice[6]. Having recited the four verses to Heaven and Earth (IV, 56, 1–4), 'The mighty Heaven and Earth, the most glorious, here . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn I, 159) of the one-day's sacrifice. Having recited the Ârbhava (hymn, IV, 34), 'Ribhu, Vibhvan, Indra, Vâga, come ye to this our sacrifice . . .,'

[1] Viz. after the eighth verse of the hymn Rig-veda I, 32, the chief part of the normal Nishkevalya-śastra.

[2] For the complete verse see III, 3, 2, 12.

[3] This verse is again recited thrice, and thus takes the place of the ordinary opening triplet.

[4] For this Śastra, recited after the Ârbhava-Pavamâna-stotra, see part ii, p. 361.

[5] Âśv. Śr. X, 10, 6 prescribes the ordinary anukara V, 82, 4–7; whence Sâyaṇa on I, 24, 3 (–5) offers no indication of the ritualistic use of that triplet on this occasion.

[6] Viz. IV, 54, before the last verse of which the Nivid is inserted.

he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, I, 111) of the one-day's sacrifice. Having recited the (hymn, V, 41) to the All-gods, 'Who is there righteous unto you, Mitra and Varuṇa? . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, I, 89) of the one-day's sacrifice. Thus as to the Vaiśvadeva (-śastra).

12. Then as to the Âgnimâruta[1]. Having recited the (hymn, VI, 7) to (Agni) Vaiśvânara, 'The head of the sky, and the disposer of the earth . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, III, 3) of the one-day's sacrifice. Having recited the (hymn, V, 57) to the Maruts, 'Hither, O Rudras, come ye united with Indra . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, I, 87) of the one-day's sacrifice. Having recited the nine verses (VI, 15, 1–9) to Gâtavedas, 'This guest of yours, the early-waking . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, I, 143) of the one-day's sacrifice. And as to why the (hymns) of the one-day's sacrifice are used for inserting the Nivid, it is for the sake of his (the Sacrificer's) not being deprived of a firm foundation, for the Gyotishṭoma is a foundation.

13. For this (day) there are those sacrificial animals—'A horse, a hornless he-goat, and a Gomṛiga[2],' fifteen 'paryaṅgyas': the mystic import of these has been explained. Then these wild ones—for spring he seizes (three) kapiñgalas[3], for summer sparrows, for the rainy season partridges: of these

[1] Viz. the final Śastra of the evening-service, preceded by the chanting of the Agnishṭoma-sâman; see part ii, p. 369.

[2] See p. 298, note 4; p. 338, note 1.

[3] The 'Kapiñgala' is a kind of wildfowl, apparently of the quail or partridge species—a hazel-cock, or francoline partridge. Some of the later authorities, however, identify it with the 'kâtaka'

(wild animals) also (the mystic import) has been told [1].

14. Then those (victims) for the twenty-one (stakes). He seizes twenty-one animals for each of the (eleven) deities of the Seasonal offerings [2]; for as many as there are gods of the Seasonal offerings so many are all the gods; and all objects of desire are in the Aśvamedha: 'by gratifying all the deities I shall gain all my desires,' so he thinks. But let him not proceed in this way.

15. Let him seize seventeen victims for the central stake [3], in order that he may gain and secure every-

('cuculus melanoleucus'). With regard to some of the wild animals referred to in the corresponding section of the Vâg. S., the commentator Mahîdhara significantly remarks (Vâg. S. XXIV, 20; cf. Kâty. XX, 6, 6 scholl.) that the meaning of such names as are not understood must be made out with the help of quotations (nigama), Vedic vocabularies (nighaṇṭu) and their comments (nirukta), grammar (vyâkaraṇa), the Uṇâdivṛitti, and dictionaries.

[1] Viz. XIII, 2, 4, 1 seqq. It is not easy to see why the text should break off abruptly with the birds representing the rainy season. For autumn there are to be (three) quails, for winter 'kakara,' and for the dewy season 'vikakara.' Then follow, to the end of the 260 wild animals, a long series of divinities to each of which (or sometimes to allied deities) three animals are consigned. Thirteen of these wild animals are placed on each of the twenty spaces between the twenty-one stakes.

[2] Or, perhaps, for the (eleven) deities of the Seasonal offerings he seizes twenty-one animals for each (stake); which would certainly simplify the distribution of those animals. Regarding the victims actually consecrated to the deities of the Kâturmâsya offerings, see p. 309. note 2.

[3] This does not include the twelve 'paryaṅgyas' tied to the horse's limbs, but only the horse and two other victims sacred to Pragâpati, and twelve of a long series of beasts, of which three are dedicated to each successive deity (or allied group of deities). To these are afterwards added Agni's two victims belonging to the two sets of eleven victims (of the other twenty of which one is assigned to each of the other stakes).

thing, for the seventeenfold is Pragâpati, and the seventeenfold (stoma) is everything, and the Asvamedha is everything;—and sixteen at each of the other (stakes) in order that he may gain and secure everything, for everything here consists of sixteen parts, and the Asvamedha is everything. Thirteen wild (beasts) he seizes for each intermediate space, in order that he may gain and secure everything, for the year consists of thirteen months, and the Asvamedha is everything.

16. Now, prior to the (chanting of the) Bahishpavamâna, they (the assistants of the Adhvaryu) bring up the horse, after cleansing it; and with it they glide along for the Pavamâna: the mystic import of this has been explained[1]. When the Bahishpavamâna has been chanted, they make the horse step on the place of chanting: if it sniffs, or turns away, let him know that his sacrifice is successful. Having led up that (horse), the Adhvaryu says, 'Hotri, sing praises!' and the Hotri sings its praises[2] with eleven (verses, *Rig*-veda I, 163, 1–11)—

17. 'When, first born, thou didst neigh ...'—thrice (he praises) with the first, and thrice with the last (verse), these amount to fifteen,—fifteenfold is the thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt means vigour: with that thunderbolt, vigour, the Sacrificer thus from the very first repels evil: thus[3], indeed, it is to the Sacrificer that the thunderbolt is given in

[1] XIII, 2, 3, 1.

[2] The mode of recitation is similar to that of the kindling-verses (likewise eleven, brought up, by repetitions of the first and last, to fifteen), viz. by making a pause after each half-verse, but without adding the syllable 'om' thereto. Âsv. Śr. X, 8, 5.

[3] Harisvâmin explains 'tad vai' as standing for 'sa vai' (liṅga-vyatyayena)—viz. that fifteenfold thunderbolt.

order to smite for him whoever is to be smitten.—[*Rig*-veda I, 163, 12. 13], 'The swift racer hath gone forward to the slaying . . .'—'The racer hath gone forward to the highest place . . .'—

18. Having omitted these two (verses), he inserts the hymn (I, 162), 'Never (shall forget us) Mitra, Varuṇa, Aryaman, Âyu . . .,' in the Adhrigu[1] (litany). Some, however, insert this verse (I, 162, 18), 'Thirty-four (ribs) of the steed, akin to the gods, (doth the knife hit) . . .,' before the (passage,—'twenty-six are its) ribs,' thinking lest they should place the holy syllable 'om' in the wrong place[2], or lest they should suggest the plural by a singular[3]. Let him not proceed thus, but let him insert the hymn as a whole.—'The swift racer hath gone forward to the slaying . . .'—The racer hath gone forward to the highest place . . .'—

[1] On this recitation, consisting of a lengthy set of formulas, addressed to the slaughterers, see part ii, p. 188, note 2. The whole of the formulas are given Ait. Br. II, 6–7. The hymn, according to Âsv. X, 8, 7, is to be inserted either before the last formula of the litany, or somewhat further back—viz. before the formula 'shaḍvimśatir asya vaṅkrayas,' 'twenty-six are its ribs'—whilst our Brâhmaṇa rather allows the alternative of the eighteenth verse of I, 162 being inserted at the latter place,—unless, indeed, the insertion in that case is to be made immediately before the word 'vaṅkrayaḥ' which is scarcely likely.

[2] Harisvâmin seems to take this to mean that as this verse is of the same nature as the formulas of the Adhrigu litany, he is to treat it as such, as otherwise, in reciting he would have to pronounce 'om' after that verse, which is not done after those formulas.

[3] Or, the plurality by the individual. Owing to the corrupt state of the MS., the commentator's explanation of this passage is not clear. He seems, however, at any rate, to take the 'plural' to refer to the formula 'shaḍvimśatir asya vaṅkrayas,' where apparently 'eshâm' has to be substituted for 'asya' on this occasion, as many victims are immolated, and the ribs of a plurality of beasts are thus indicated, whilst in verse eighteen of the hymn, on the

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Having uttered these two (verses), he pronounces what remains of the Adhrigu. 'A cloth, an upper cloth, and gold,' this is what they spread out for the horse[1]: thereon they 'quiet' (slaughter) it. When the victims have been 'quieted,' the (king's) wives come up with water for washing the feet,—four wives, and a young maiden as the fifth, and four hundred female attendants.

2. When the foot-water is ready, they cause the Mahishî to lie down near the horse, and cover her up with the upper cloth, with 'In heaven ye envelop yourselves,'—for that indeed is heaven where they immolate the victim . . . , 'May the vigorous male, the layer of seed, lay seed!' she says[2] for the completeness of union.

3. Whilst they are lying there, the Sacrificer addresses the horse (Vâg. S. XXIII, 21), 'Utsakhyâ ava guda*m* dhehi!' No one replies to him, lest there should be some one to rival the Sacrificer.

4. The Adhvaryu then addresses the maiden, 'Hey hey maiden, that little bird . . .'—The maiden replies to him, 'Adhvaryu! that little bird . . .'

5. And the Brahman addresses the Mahishî, 'Mahishî, hey hey Mahishî, thy mother and father mount to the top of the tree . . .'—She has a hundred daughters of kings attending upon her: these

contrary, only the ribs of one horse (thus forming a kind of unit) are referred to; and if that verse were recited, along with the whole hymn, before the final formula which refers to all the victims, the necessary connection would be interrupted.

[1] See XIII, 2, 8, 1.

[2] Nirâyatyâsvasya *sisna*m mahishy upasthe nidhatte 'v*ri*shâ vâgî retodhâ reto dadhâtv' iti mithunasyaiva sarvatvâya.

reply to the Brahman, 'Brahman, hey hey Brahman, thy mother and father play on the top of the tree...'

6. And the Udgâtṛi addresses the favourite, 'Vâvâtâ, hey hey Vâvâtâ, turn upwards!' She has a hundred noble-women (râǵanyâ) attending upon her: these reply to the Udgâtṛi, 'Hey hey Udgâtṛi, turn upwards!'

7. And the Hotṛi says to the discarded wife, 'Parivṛiktâ, hey hey Parivṛiktâ, when large meets small in this aṁhubhedî...'—She has a hundred daughters of heralds and head-men of villages attending upon her: these reply to the Hotṛi, 'Hotṛi, hey hey Hotṛi, when the gods favoured the lalâmagu...'

8. Then the chamberlain addresses the fourth wife, 'Pâlâgalî, hey hey Pâlâgalî, when the deer eats the corn, one thinks not of the fat cattle...'—She has a hundred daughters of chamberlains and charioteers attending upon her: these reply to the chamberlain, 'Chamberlain, hey hey chamberlain, when the deer eats the corn, one thinks not of the fat cattle...'

9. These speeches, the derisive discourses, indeed are every kind of attainment, and in the Aśvamedha all objects of desire are contained: 'By every kind of speech may we obtain all objects of our desire' thus thinking, they cause the Mahishî to rise. Those (women) then walk back in the same way as they had come; and the others finally utter the verse containing (the word) 'fragrant' (*Ṛig*-v. IV, 39, 6), 'To Dadhikrâvan have I sung praises...'

10. For, indeed, life and the deities depart from those who at the sacrifice speak impure speech: it is their speech they thereby purify so that the deities may not depart from the divine service.

Now (some) put the omentum of the Gomṛiga and that of the hornless he-goat upon the horse and then take it (to the Âhavanîya), saying, 'The horse has no omentum.' Let him not do so: of the horse he should certainly take the fat; the (omenta of the) others are normal.

11. When the omenta have been roasted, and when they have performed (the oblations) with the Svâhâs[1], and returned to the back (of the sacrificial ground), they hold a Brahmodya[2] (theological discussion) in the Sadas. Having entered by the front door, they sit down at their several hearths.

12. The Hotṛi asks the Adhvaryu (Vâg. S. XXIII, 45), 'Who is it that walketh singly[3]?...' He replies to him (ib. 46), 'Sûrya (the sun) walketh singly...'

13. The Adhvaryu then asks the Hotṛi (Vâg. S. XXIII, 47), 'Whose light is there equal to the sun?...' He replies to him (ib. 48), 'The Brahman (n.) is the light equal to the sun...'

14. The Brahman then asks the Udgâtṛi (Vâg. S. XXIII, 49), 'I ask thee for the sake of knowledge, O friend of the gods [if thou hast applied thy mind thereto: hath Vishṇu entered the whole world at those three places at which offering is made unto him?]' and he replies (ib. 50), 'I too am at those three places [at which he entered the whole world:

[1] See III, 8, 2, 21–23.

[2] For a similar discussion between the Brahman and Hotṛi, prior to the binding of the victims to the stakes, see XIII, 2, 6, 9 seqq.

[3] For the complete verse, comprising four questions, see XIII, 2, 6, 10–13; the answers being given there in the form of explanations.

daily do I, with the one body[1], go round the earth, the sky, and the back of yonder sky].'

15. The Udgâtṛi then asks the Brahman (Vâg. S. XXIII, 51), 'Into what (things) hath the Spirit[2] entered, [and what (things) are established in the spirit? this, O Brahman, we crave of thee: what answer dost thou give unto us thereon?]' and he replies (ib. 52), 'Into five (things) hath the spirit entered, and they are established in the spirit: this I reply unto thee thereon; not superior in wisdom art thou (to me).'

16. When this (verse) has been uttered, they rise and betake themselves from the Sadas eastwards to the Sacrificer. Having come to him, seated in front of the Havirdhâna[3] (shed), they sit down in their several places.

17. The Hotṛi then asks the Adhvaryu (Vâg. S. XXIII, 53), 'What was the first conception[4]?...' and he replies (ib. 54), 'The sky was the first conception...'

18. The Adhvaryu then asks the Hotṛi (ib. 55), 'Who, pray, is the tawny one (piśaṅgilâ)? [who is the kurupiśaṅgilâ? who moveth in leaps? who creepeth along the path?]' and he replies (ib. 56), 'The tawny one is the uncreated (night)[5]; [the kurupiśaṅgilâ is the porcupine; the hare

[1] Or, with the one limb (ekenâṅgena) which Mahîdhara takes to mean 'with the mind, in mind.' Possibly 'asya' may have to be taken together with it—'with the one body of his (Vishṇu's).'

[2] Or, man (purusha). The five things, according to Mahîdhara, are the vital airs, or breathings.

[3] That is, behind the uttaravedi, according to Kâty. XX, 7, 12.

[4] See XIII, 2, 6, 14 seqq.

[5] Mahîdhara takes 'agâ' (the eternal) here as meaning either the

moveth in leaps; the snake creepeth along the path].'

19. The Brahman then asks the Udgâtṛi (Vâg. S. XXIII, 57), 'How many kinds are there of this (sacrifice), how many syllables?—[how many oblations? how often is (the fire) enkindled? The ordinances of sacrifice have I now asked of thee: how many priests offer in due form?]' and he replies (ib. 58), 'Six kinds there are of this (sacrifice), a hundred syllables, [eighty oblations, and three kindling-sticks; the ordinances of sacrifice do I declare unto thee: seven priests offer in due form].'

20. The Udgâtṛi then asks the Brahman (Vâg. S. XXIII, 59), 'Who knoweth the navel of this world? [who heaven and earth and the air? who knoweth the birth-place of the great Sun? who knoweth the Moon, whence it was born?]' and he replies (ib. 60), 'I know the navel of this world, [I know heaven and earth and the air; I know the birth-place of the great Sun, and I know the Moon, whence it was born].'

21. The Sacrificer then asks the Adhvaryu (Vâg. S. XXIII, 61), 'I ask thee about the farthest end of the earth, [I ask where is the navel of the world; I ask thee about the seed of the vigorous steed; I ask thee about the highest seat of speech];' and he replies (ib. 62), 'This altar-ground is the farthest end of the earth; [this sacrifice is the navel of the world; this Soma-juice is the seed of the vigorous

night, or Mâyâ; cf. XIII, 2, 6, 17. Perhaps, however, 'agâ' may mean 'goat' here.

steed; this Brahman (priest) is the highest seat of speech].'

22. Verily, this is the complete attainment of speech, to wit the Brahmodya, and in the Asvamedha all desires are contained: 'By means of all speech may we obtain all our desires!' so (they think).

23. When the colloquy has been held, the Adhvaryu enters the (Havirdhâna), and draws Pragâpati's (first) Mahiman cup (of Soma) in a gold vessel. The Puroruk formula[1] thereof is (Vâg. S. XXIII, 1; *Rig*-v. X, 121, 1), 'The golden germ was first produced ...' And its Puro-nuvâkyâ is (Vâg. S. XXIII, 63), 'Of good nature, self-existent at first (within the great ocean: I verily place the right germ whence is born Pragâpati).'—'May the Hotri offer to Pragâpati: [of the Mahiman Soma (cup); may he relish, may he drink the Soma! Hotri, utter the offering-formula!]' is the Praisha (ib. 64). The Hotri utters the offering-formula (ib. 65), 'O Pragâpati, none other than thee hath encompassed all these forms[2] ...;' and as the Vashat is pronounced, he (the Adhvaryu) offers with (Vâg. S. XXIII, 2), 'What greatness of thine there hath been in the day, and the year, [what greatness of thine there hath been in the wind and the air; what greatness of thine there hath been in the heavens and the sun, to that greatness of thine, to Pragâpati, hail, to the gods[3]!]' He does not repeat the Vashat, for he offers the cup of Soma all at once.

[1] That is, the preliminary formula, or formulas, preceding the 'upayâma' ('Thou art taken with a support ...').

[2] See V, 4, 2, 9.

[3] See XIII, 2, 11, 2 with note.

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

THE VAPÂ-OFFERINGS.

1. Now as to the offering of the omenta. 'They should proceed with them singly up to the omentum of the Vaiśvadeva (victim)[1]; and when the omentum of the Vaiśvadeva has been offered, they should thereupon offer the others,' said Satyakâma *G*âbâla; 'for, doubtless, the All-Gods (Viśve Devâ*ḥ*) are all (sarve) the gods: it is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.'

2. 'When the omentum of the Aindrâgna (victim) has been offered, they should thereupon offer the others,' said the two Saumâpa Mânutantavya; 'for, doubtless, Indra and Agni are all the gods: it is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.'

3. 'When the omentum of the (victim) sacred to Ka has been offered, they should thereupon offer

[1] Whilst there are amongst the victims immolated on the second day, several others consecrated to the Viśve Devâ*ḥ*, Indra and Agni, and Ka,—the Vaiśvadeva, Aindrâgna, and Kâya victims, referred to in this and the following two paragraphs, belong to the *K*âturmâsya, or Seasonal victims, being amongst those tied to the fourteenth and sixteenth stakes. Though the text speaks only of one Vaiśvadeva &c. victim, there are really three such victims in each case. According to the views referred to in these paragraphs (cf. comm. on Kâty. XX, 7, 23), the omenta of all the preceding victims (from the 'paryaṅgya' onwards) up to the beginning of the *K*âturmâsyas, would be offered together after (or along with) the vapâs of those of the respective victims (Vaiśvadeva &c.) specified in these paragraphs; and along therewith the vapâs of all the subsequent Seasonal victims. The deities to which this heap of omenta would be offered, would thus be either the Viśve Devâ*ḥ*, or Indra and Agni, or Ka, as representing all the deities. Âśv. S. X, 9, 7, assigns the omenta of all the victims, except the three Prâ*g*âpatya ones, to the Viśve Devâ*ḥ*.

the others,' said Śailâli; 'for, doubtless, Ka is Pragâpati, and behind Pragâpati are all the gods: it is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.'

4. 'Having gone through the twenty-one deities of the Seasonal[1] (victims), let them proceed by dividing (the omenta) into twenty-one parts[2],' said Bhâllaveya; 'for as many as there are Seasonal deities so many are all the gods: it is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.'

5. 'Let them proceed (with the omenta) singly and not otherwise,' said Indrota Śaunaka; 'why, indeed, should they hasten? It is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.' This, then, is what these have said, but the established practice is different therefrom.

6. Now Yâgñavalkya said, 'They should proceed simultaneously with the (omenta) of Pragâpati's[3] (victims), and simultaneously with those consecrated to single gods: it is in this way that he gratifies them deity after deity, that he goes straightway to the completion of the sacrifice, and does not stumble.'

7. When the omenta have been offered, the Adhvaryu enters (the Havirdhâna shed) and draws

---

[1] See p. 309, note 2.

[2] According to this view, the omenta of all the victims after the three first (Prâgâpatya) ones,—i. e. beginning from the 'paryaṅgya' animals (see p. 299, note 2) up to the end of the Kâturmâsya, or Seasonal victims, which are the last of the domesticated animals—would be put together in one heap and divided into twenty-one portions, which would then be offered to the first twenty-one deities of the Seasonal offerings, that is to say, to those of the Vaiśvadeva, Varuṇapraghâsa, Sâkamedha, and Mahâhavis offerings, thus omitting the deities of the Pitryeshṭi and the Śunâsîrîya offerings.

[3] That is the first three victims, viz. the horse, the hornless he-goat, and the Gomṛiga.

Pragâpati's second Mahiman cup of Soma in a silver vessel. The Puroruk thereof is (Vâg. XXIII, 3), 'He who by his greatness hath become the one king of the breathing and blinking world, [and who here ruleth over the two-footed and the four-footed: to the god Ka (Who?) will we pay homage by offering].' The Anuvâkyâ and Yâgyâ are interchanged so as to (ensure) unimpaired vigour[1], and the Praisha (direction to Hotri) is the same (as that of the first cup). As the Vashat is uttered, he offers with (Vâg. S. XXIII, 4), 'What greatness of thine there hath been in the night, and the year, [what greatness of thine there hath been in the earth and the fire; what greatness of thine there hath been in the Nakshatras and the moon, to that greatness of thine, to Pragâpati, to the gods, hail[2]].' He does not repeat the Vashat: the significance of this has been explained.

8. Of the blood of the other victims they make no sacrificial portions; of (that of) the horse they do make portions[3]. Of (the blood of) the others[4] they make portions[4] on the south side, of (that of) the horse on the north side (of the altar); of (the blood of) the others he makes portions on (a mat of) plaksha (ficus infectoria) twigs, of (that of) the horse on rattan twigs.

[1] By simple repetition this would be impaired.

[2] See XIII, 2, 11, 2 with note. [3] See XIII, 3, 4, 2–5.

[4] This would be an alternative view. According to the scholl. on Kâty. XX, 8, 1–3, this would seem to refer to the other Prâgâpatya victims, in which case one would, however, expect the dual here, as there are only two of them besides the horse.

9. But concerning this, Sâtyayagñi said, 'They may indeed do it in either way, only one must not depart from the (right) path.' But the former, indeed, is the established practice. The sacrifice (of the second day) is an Ukthya: thereby he causes the air-world to prosper. The last day is an Atirâtra with all the Stomas, for him to obtain and secure everything, for the Atirâtra with all the Stomas is everything, and the Asvamedha is everything.

10. Its Bahishpavamâna (stotra) is in the Trivṛit (9-versed Stoma), the Âgya (stotras) in the Pañkadasa (15-versed), the Mâdhyandina-pavamâna in the Saptadasa (17), the Pṛishthas in the Ekavimsa (21), the Tṛitîya Pavamâna in the Trinava (27), the Agnishṭoma-sâman in the Trayastrimsa (33), the Ukthas in the Ekavimsa (21), the Shodasin in the Ekavimsa, the night (chants) in the Pañkadasa, the Sandhi (twilight chant) in the Trivṛit (9). Whatever Sastra is (recited) for the second day of the Pṛishthya Shaḍaha that is (used at) the Atirâtra sacrifice[1]; thereby he causes yonder (heavenly) world to prosper.

11. 'There are twenty-one Savanîya victims, all of them consecrated to Agni, and there is one and the same performance for them,' so say some; but let him rather immolate those twenty-four bovine (victims[2]) for twelve deities,—twelve months are a year, and the year is everything, and the Asva-

[1] In the same way Âsv. S. X, 4, 8 lays down the rule that the Sastras of the second day are those of the fifth day of the Vyûḍha Pṛishthya-shaḍaha; cf. above, XIII, 5, 1, 7 seqq.

[2] See XIII, 3, 2, 3.

medha is everything: thus it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing everything.

FOURTH BRÂHMAṆA.

DIFFERENT ARRANGEMENTS OF THE CHANTS OF THE ASVAMEDHA.

1. Now, Indrota Daivâpa Śaunaka once performed this sacrifice for Ganamegaya Pârikshita, and by performing it he extinguished all evil-doing, all Brahman-slaughter; and, verily, he who performs the Asvamedha extinguishes (the guilt incurred by) all evil-doing, all Brahman-slaughter.

2. It is of this, indeed, that the Gâthâ (strophe) sings,—'In Âsandîvat[1], Ganamegaya bound for the gods a black-spotted, grain-eating horse, adorned with a golden ornament and with yellow garlands.'

3. [There are] those same first two days[2], and a Gyotis[3] Atirâtra: therewith (they sacrificed) for Bhîmasena;—those same first two days, and a Go Atirâtra: therewith (they sacrificed) for Ugrasena;—those same first two days, and an Âyus Atirâtra: therewith (they sacrificed) for Śrutasena. These are the Pârikshitîyas[4], and it is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—'The righteous Pârikshitas, performing horse-sacrifices, by their righteous work did away with sinful work one after another.'

---

[1] Lit., (in the city, nagare, Harisvâmin) possessed of a throne. Cf. Ait. Br. VIII, 21.

[2] Viz., as stated before, an Agnishṭoma and an Ukthya.

[3] As to the difference between the Gyotis, Go, and Âyus forms of the Agnishṭoma sacrifice, see part iv, p. 287, note 2.

[4] That is, according to Harisvâmin (and the Gâthâ), the brothers of (Ganamegaya) Pârikshita, though one would rather have thought of his sons, the grandsons of Parikshit.

4. Those same first two days, and an Abhigit[1] Atirâtra,—therewith Para Âtnâra, the Kausalya king, once sacrificed: it is of this that Gâthâ sings, —'Atnâra's son, the Kausalya Para, Hairaṇyanâbha, caused a horse, meet for sacrifice, to be bound, and gave away the replete regions.'

5. Those same first two days, and a Visvagit[1] Atirâtra,—therewith Purukutsa, the Aikshvâka king, once on a time performed a horse(daurgaha)-sacrifice, whence it is of this that the *Ri*shi sings (*Rig*-v. IV, 42, 8),—'These, the seven *Ri*shis, were then our fathers when Daurgaha[2] was bound.'

6. Those same first two days, and a Mahâvrata[3] Atirâtra, — therewith Marutta Âvikshita, the Âyogava king, once performed sacrifice; whence the Maruts became his guards-men, Agni his chamberlain, and the Visve Devâḥ his counsellors: it is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—'The Maruts dwelt as guards-men in Marutta Âvikshita's house, Agni as his chamberlain, and the Visve Devâḥ as his counsellors.' And, verily, the Maruts become the guards-men, Agni the chamberlain, and the Visve Devâḥ the counsellors of him who performs the horse-sacrifice.

7. Those same first two days, and an Aptoryâma[4] Atirâtra,—it was therewith that Kraivya, the Pâñkâla king, once performed sacrifice, — for Krivis they formerly called the Pañkâlas: it is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—'At Parivakrâ, the

[1] Regarding the Abhigit and Visvagit, see part iv, p. 320, note 2.

[2] Sâyaṇa, differently from our Brâhmaṇa, takes Daurgaha as the patronymic of Purukutsa (son of Durgaha).

[3] See part iv, p. 282, note 5.

[4] See part iii, introd. p. xx.

Pâñkâla overlord of the Krivis seized a horse, meet for sacrifice, with offering-gifts of a hundred thousand (head of cattle).'

8. And a second (Gâthâ),—'A thousand myriads there were, and five-and-twenty hundreds, which the Brâhmaṇas of the Pañkâlas from every quarter divided between them.'

9. The Agnishṭoma in the Trivṛit (stoma); the Ukthya in the Pañkadaśa; and the third day, with the Uktha (stotras), in the Saptadaśa; the Shoḍaśin (stotra) in the Ekaviṃśa, the night (stotras) in the Pañkadaśa, and the Sandhi (stotra) in the Trivṛit,—this is the (sacrifice) resulting in the Anushṭubh [1]: it is therewith that sacrifice was performed by Dhvasan Dvaitavana, the king of the Matsyas, where there is the lake Dvaitavana; and it is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—'Fourteen steeds did king Dvaitavana, victorious in battle, bind for Indra Vṛitrahan, whence the lake Dvaitavana (took its name).'

10. The (three) Pavamâna (stotras) in the Katurviṃśa (stoma), and (those performed) by repetitions [2] in the Trivṛit; the Pavamânas in the Katuṣkatvâriṃśa (44-versed stoma), and (those performed) by repetition [3] in the Ekaviṃśa; the Pavamânas in

[1] Viz. inasmuch as, according to Harisvâmin, all the Stotras amount together to 798 verses, which make twenty-five anushṭubh verses (of 32 syllables each) or thereabouts.

[2] That is to say, all the remaining nine stotras of this, the Agnishṭoma, day, the so-called Dhuryas, viz. the Âgya-stotras, the Pṛishṭha-stotras, and the Agnishṭoma-sâman, in all of which the respective Stoma is obtained by repetitions of the three stotriyâ-verses.

[3] In this, the Ukthya, day, this includes also the three Uktha-stotras, as being, as it were, the Dhuryas of the Hotṛi's assistants

the Ashṭâkatvârimśa (48), and (those performed) by repetition in the Trayastrimśa (33) up to the Agnishṭoma-sâman, the Uktha (stotras) in the Dvâtrimśa (32), the Shoḍasin in the Ekavimśa, the night (stotras) in the Pañkadaśa, and the Sandhi (stotra) in the Trivṛit:

11. Suchlike is Vishṇu's striding[1],—it was therewith that Bharata Dauḥshanti once performed sacrifice, and attained that wide sway which now belongs to the Bharatas: it is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—'Seventy-eight steeds did Bharata Dauḥshanti bind for the Vṛitra-slayer on the Yamunâ, and fifty-five near the Gaṅgâ.'

12. And a second (Gâthâ),—'Having bound a hundred and thirty-three horses, meet for sacrifice, king Saudyumni, more shifty, overcame the other shiftless ones.'

13. And a third,—'At Nâḍapit[2], the Apsaras Śakuntalâ conceived Bharata, who, after conquering the whole earth, brought to Indra more than a thousand horses, meet for sacrifice.'

14. And a fourth[3],—'The greatness of Bharata neither the men before nor those after him attained, nor did the five (tribes of) men, even as a mortal man (does not touch) the sky with his arms.'

15. With the Ekavimśa-stoma[4] Ṛishabha Yâgña-

(cf. part iii, introd. p. xiv seqq.); whilst in the directions regarding the next day they are not included, as requiring a different Stoma.

[1] Just as there are here wide intervals between the Stomas, so Vishṇu, in his three strides, passes over wide distances, comm.

[2] This, according to Harisvâmin, is the name of Kaṇva's hermitage. Cf. Leumann, Zeitsch. d. D. M. G., XLVIII, p. 81.

[3] Cf. Ait. Br. VIII, 23; Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 202.

[4] That is, using the 21-versed form throughout the three days.

tura, king of the Sviknas, performed sacrifice: it is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—'When Rishabha Yâgñatura was sacrificing, the Brahman-folk, having received wealth at the Asvamedha, divided the offering-gifts between them.'

16. With the Trayastrimsa-stoma Sona Sâtrâsâha, the Pâñkâla king, performed sacrifice: it is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—'When Sâtrâsâha performs the horse-sacrifice, the Trayastrimsa (stomas) come forth as (Taurvasa) horses, and six thousand mail-clad men [1].

17. And a second (Gâthâ),—'At the sacrifice of thee, Koka's father, the Trayastrimsa (stomas) come forth, each as six times six thousand [2] (horses), and six thousand mail-clad men.'

18. And a third,—'When Sâtrâsâha, the Pâñkâla king, was sacrificing, wearing beautiful garlands, Indra revelled in Soma, and the Brâhmaṇas became satiated with wealth.'

19. Satânîka Sâtrâgita performed the Govinata (form of Asvamedha), after taking away the

[1] This seems to be Harisvâmin's interpretation of the verse:—torvasâ asvâ gyeshthe tam api srigyeran iti (?) trayastrimsâ stomâ udgakkhanti, sa hi Sonas trayastrimsân eva stomân trishv api divaseshu prayuṅkte nânyân iti te udgakkhantîty âha, shat tu sahasrâṇi varmiṇâm râgaputrâṇâm kavakinâm asvapâlânâm udîrata iti vartate varshe prâptâ eva drashtavyâh. The St. Petersb. Dict., on the other hand, construes 'trayastrimsâh' along with 'shat sahasrâṇi'=6033 (? horses of mail-clad men). This interpretation seems to me to involve serious difficulties. The use of those Stomas doubtless is supposed to result in the advantages here enumerated.

[2] Koko nâma nâthah, ke te asvâ udîrata iti prathamâyâm gâthâyâm uktam tad atrâpy anuvartate; teshâm tatra parimâṇam noktam atra shattrimsad asvasahasrâṇi rakshiṇâm anukarabhûtâny udgakkhantîty âha; trayastrimsâs kodîrate shad dhi(?) varmiṇâm padânetâsu (?) gakkhantîti. Harisvâmin.

horse of the Kâśya (king); and since that time the Kâśis do not keep up the (sacrificial) fires, saying, 'The Soma-drink has been taken from us.'

20. The mode (of chanting) for this (Govinata form) is:—the Pavamâna (stotras) in the Katurviṁśa (stoma), and (those chanted) by repetitions in the Trivṛit;—the Pavamânas in the Katuśkatvâriṁśa, the Âgya (stotras) in the Ekaviṁśa, the Ukthas[1] in the Triṇava, the Pṛishṭhas in the Ekaviṁśa;—the Pavamânas in the Shaṭtriṁśa (36-versed), and (those chanted) by repetitions in the Trayastriṁśa (33) up to the Âgnishṭoma-sâman, the Ukthas in the Ekaviṁśa, the Shoḍaśin in the Ekaviṁśa, the night (stotras) in the Paṅkadaśa, and the Sandhi (stotra) in the Trivṛit.

21. It is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—'Śatânîka Sâtrâgita seized a sacrificial horse, in the neighbourhood, the sacrifice of the Kâśis, even as Bharata (seized that) of the Satvats.'

22. And a second,—'The mighty Śatânîka, having seized, in the neighbourhood, Dhṛitarâshṭra's white sacrificial horse, roaming at will in its tenth month, Śatânîka[2] performed the Govinata-sacrifice.'

23. And a fourth[3],—'The greatness of the Bharatas neither the men before nor those after them attained, nor did the seven (tribes of) men, even as a mortal man (does not touch) the sky with his flanks.'

[1] Why these are here put before the Pṛishṭhas, is not clear.

[2] Perhaps we ought here to read 'Sâtrâgita.'

[3] Unless the Gâthâ in the preceding paragraph (being in the Triṣṭubh metre) is really counted as two, the author seems here purposely to have omitted a verse. Possibly, however, it may mean, 'the fourth,' viz. referring to paragraph 14.

24. Now as to the sacrificial gifts. Whatever there is towards the middle of the kingdom other than the land, the men, and the property of the Brâhmaṇa, of that the eastern region belongs to the Hotṛi, the southern to the Brahman, the western to the Adhvaryu, the northern to the Udgâtṛi; and the Hotṛikas share this along with them.

25. When the Udayanîyâ (completing offering) is finished, he seizes twenty-one barren cows, sacred to Mitra-Varuṇa, the Visve Devâḥ, and Bṛihaspati, with the view of his gaining those deities. And the reason why those sacred to Bṛihaspati come last is that Bṛihaspati is the Brahman (n.), and he thus establishes himself finally in the Brahman.

26. And as to their being twenty-one of them,—the twenty-one-fold is he who shines yonder: twelve months, five seasons, these three worlds, and yonder sun as the twenty-first—this consummation (he thereby obtains).

27. When the Udavasânîyâ (closing offering) is completed, they give, for a sacrificial gift, four women, with a maiden as the fifth, and four hundred female attendants according to agreement.

28. And during the following year he performs the animal sacrifices of the seasons,—six (victims) sacred to Agni in the spring, six to Indra in the summer, six to Parganya, or to the Maruts, in the rainy season, six to Mitra and Varuṇa in the autumn, six to Indra and Vishṇu in the winter, and six to Indra and Bṛihaspati in the dewy season,—six seasons are a year: in the seasons, in the year, he thus establishes himself. These amount to thirty-six animals,—the Bṛihatî (metre) consists of thirty-six syllables, and the heavenly world is established

upon the Bṛihatî: and thus he finally establishes himself, by means of the Bṛihatî metre, in the heavenly world.

SIXTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMANA.

THE PURUSHAMEDHA, OR HUMAN SACRIFICE.

1. Purusha Nârâyaṇa desired, 'Would that I overpassed all beings! would that I alone were everything here (this universe)!' He beheld this five-days' sacrificial performance, the Purushamedha, and took it[1], and performed offering therewith; and having performed offering therewith, he overpassed all beings, and became everything here. And, verily, he who, knowing this, performs the Purushamedha, or who even knows this, overpasses all beings, and becomes everything here.

2. For this (offering) there are twenty-three Dîkshâs, twelve Upasads, and five Sutyâs (Soma-days). This, then, being a forty-days' (performance), including the Dîkshâs and Upasads, amounts to a Virâǵ[2], for the Virâǵ consists of forty syllables: [Vâǵ. S. XXXI, 5.] 'Thence[3] Virâǵ (f.) was born, and from out of Virâǵ the Pûrusha.'

[1] That is, according to Harisvâmin, he brought its powers into play, and accomplished all his desires:—tatsâdhanâny upâpâdayat, tenâyaṃ yaǵanena samîhitaṃ sakalaṃ sâdhitavân ity arthaḥ.

[2] The Virâǵ-verse consists of decasyllabic pâdas, the most common form of the verse being one of three pâdas (or thirty syllables), whilst here the one consisting of four pâdas is alluded to, and Virâǵ-verses of one and two pâdas likewise occur. There is also a parallel form of the Virâǵ-metre consisting of (usually three) hendeca-syllabic pâdas.

[3] That is, from the Purusha; cf. *Rig*-v. S. X, 90, 5.

This, then, is that Virâg, and from out of that Virâg he (the Sacrificer) generates the Purusha, the Sacrifice.

3. Now these (forty days) are four decades; and as to there being these four decades, it is for the obtainment of these worlds, as well as of the regions: by the first decade they[1] obtained even this (terrestrial) world, by the second the air, by the third the sky, and by the fourth the regions (quarters); and in like manner does the Sacrificer, by the first decade, obtain even this (terrestrial) world, by the second the air, by the third the sky, and by the fourth the regions—and, indeed, as much as these worlds and the regions are, so much is all this (universe); and the Purushamedha is everything: thus it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing everything.

4. On the Upavasatha[2] (day) there are eleven victims sacred to Agni and Soma: the performance for these is one and the same. There are eleven stakes,—the Trishṭubh (verse) consists of eleven syllables, and the Trishṭubh is a thunderbolt, and the Trishṭubh is vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus from the first repels evil.

5. On the Sutyâ (days) there are the (Savanîya) victims of the set of eleven[3] (stakes),—the Trishṭubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trishṭubh is a thunderbolt, and the Trishṭubh is vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus from the first repels evil.

[1] Harisvâmin supplies 'pûrve purushâḥ' (? former men, or the first seven purushâḥ, the seven *Ṛ*shis).

[2] That is, the day before the Soma-sacrifice.

[3] See III, 7, 2, 1 seqq.

6. And, again, as to why there are (the victims) of the set of eleven (stakes): it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing everything, for the set of eleven (stakes) is everything, since the set of eleven (stakes) is Pragâpati, and Pragâpati is everything, and the Purushamedha is everything.

7. Now this Purushamedha is a five-days' sacrificial performance—the sacrifice is fivefold, the victim is fivefold, and five seasons are a year: whatsoever of five kinds there is, either concerning the deity or the self (body), all that he thereby obtains.

8. The first day thereof is an Agnish*t*oma; then (follows) an Ukthya, then an Atirâtra, then an Ukthya, then an Agnish*t*oma: this (sacrifice) thus has light (*g*yotis[1]) on both sides, and an Ukthya on both sides (of the central Atirâtra).

9. It is a five-days' (sacrifice), like a barley-corn in the middle[2]; for the Purushamedha is these worlds, and these worlds have light on both sides—through Agni (the sacrificial fire) on this side, and through Âditya (the Sun) on the other: therefore it has light on both sides. And the Ukthya is food, and the Atirâtra the body (self); and because there are these Ukthyas on both sides of the Atirâtra, therefore this body is surrounded by food. And that Atirâtra which is the largest of them is in the middle, it is thereby that it (the body, or sacrifice) is like a barley-corn (yava) in the middle; and, verily,

[1] Viz. an Agnish*t*oma form of the Gyotish*t*oma order of sacrifice. Cf. part iv, p. 287, note 2.

[2] That is, becoming larger towards the middle, inasmuch as the Ukthya is—as far as Stotras and Śastras, and cups of Soma are concerned—a larger sacrifice than the Agnish*t*oma; and the Atirâtra is the largest form of all.

whosoever knows this repels (yu) his hateful enemy: 'He alone exists, not his hateful enemy,' thus they say of him.

10. The first day is for it this same (terrestrial) world, and the spring season[1] also is this its (terrestrial) world; and the second day is what there is above this (terrestrial) world and below the air, and the summer season also is that (part) of it; and the central day is its air, and the rainy and autumn seasons also are its air; and the fourth day is what is above the air, and below the sky, and the winter season also is that (part) of it; and its fifth day is the sky, and the dewy season also is its sky: thus as to the deities.

11. Then as to the body[2]. The first day is its feet, and the spring season also is its feet; and the second day is what is above the feet, and below the waist, and the summer season also is that (part) of it; and the central day is its waist, and the rainy and autumn seasons also are its waist; the fourth day is what is above the waist and below the head, and the winter season also is that (part) of it; and the fifth day is its head, and the dewy season also is its head:—thus these worlds, as well as the year and the (sacrificer's) self, pass into the Purushamedha for the obtainment and securing of everything, for, indeed, these worlds are everything, and the year is everything, and the self is everything, and the Purushamedha is everything.

[1] It should be borne in mind here that the sacrifice (Pragâpati) is identical with the Sacrificer on the one hand, and with the year on the other.

[2] Or, as to the self, viz. of Pragâpati (and the Sacrificer), which the sacrifice is supposed to reproduce.

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. And as to why it is called Purushamedha:—The stronghold (pur) doubtless is these worlds, and the Purusha (spirit) is he that blows here (the wind), he bides (*śî*) in this stronghold (pur): hence he is the Purusha. And whatever food there is in these worlds that is its 'medha,' its food; and inasmuch as this is its 'medha,' its food, therefore (it is called) Purushamedha. And inasmuch as at this (sacrifice) he seizes[1] men (purusha) meet for sacrifice (medhya), therefore also it is called Purushamedha.

2. He seizes them on the central day, for the central day is the air, and the air is the abode of all beings; and, indeed, these victims are also food, and the central day is the belly: he thus puts food in the belly.

3. He seizes them by decades[2] for the obtainment

---

[1] That is, he (symbolically) immolates them.

[2] The statement in paragraphs 3 and 4, according to which there are eleven decades of human victims, does not refer to the actual distribution of victims over the eleven stakes, but it is apparently made purely for symbolical reasons (viz. with reference to the Virâg and Trish*ṭ*ubh metres), and is probably based on the way in which the victims are enumerated in the Vâgasaneyi-sa*ṃ*hitâ, XXX, 5–22 (see the Translation at the end of this chapter, where they are, however, numbered according to the stakes). There the first eleven Ka*ṇḍ*ikâs (5–15) are made up of the names and deities of ten victims each, hence together of eleven decades; whilst of the subsequent Ka*ṇḍ*ikâs—k. 16 consists of twelve, ks. 17–21 of ten each, and k. 22 of twelve victims. The actual mode of distribution over the several stakes is that referred to in paragraphs 5–8, viz. the first forty-eight victims are tied to the central stake, after which eleven victims are tied to each of the other ten stakes. After these, amounting to 158 victims, the Sa*ṃ*hitâ

of all food, for the Virâg consists of ten syllables, and the Virâg is all food[1].

4. Eleven decades[2] he seizes;—the Trish*t*ubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trish*t*ubh is the thunderbolt, and vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus repels evil from within him.

5. Forty-eight he seizes at the central stake;—the Gagatî consists of forty-eight syllables, and cattle are of Gâgata (movable) nature: by means of the Gagatî he (the priest) secures cattle for him.

6. Eleven at each of the others;—the Trish*t*ubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trish*t*ubh is the thunderbolt, and vigour: with the thunderbolt,

enumerates twenty-six additional victims, which, according to Mahîdhara (cf. Kâty. XXI, 1, 10), are to be added to the eleven victims of the second stake,—viz. fourteen victims dedicated to various so-called deities; eight victims, sacred to Pragâpati and belonging neither to the Śûdra nor to the Brâhmaṇa castes; and finally four more victims, characterised in exactly the same way as the eight preceding ones. It will be seen that of these twenty-six victims only the first set of (eight) Prâgâpatya victims are referred to in the Brâhmaṇa, and that as the victims seized last of all. This circumstance clearly characterises the last four victims of the Saṃhitâ as not recognised by the Brâhmaṇa; and seeing that all four of these are such as have already occurred amongst the previously enumerated victims (though there assigned to different divinities) they must be considered (as they are by Prof. Weber, Ind. Streifen, I, p. 68) as having been added to the list of the Saṃhitâ subsequently to the composition of the Brâhmaṇa. A similar inference will probably apply to the fourteen victims preceding the eight Prâgâpatya ones, though all that can be urged against them is that they are not referred to in the Brâhmaṇa.

[1] Hardly,- and all food is virâg (widely ruling or shining). In double clauses with a middle term, such as this, the position of subject and predicate seems often reversed in the second clause (cf. for instance, XIII, 8, 1, 4).

[2] See note 2 on p. 407.

with vigour, the Sacrificer thus repels evil from about him.

7. Last of all he seizes eight;—the Gâyatrî consists of eight syllables, and the Gâyatrî is the Brahman (n.): he thus makes the Brahman to be the ultimate thing of this universe, whence they say that the Brahman is the ultimate thing of this universe.

8. These (eight) are sacred to Pragâpati,—Pragâpati assuredly is the Brahman, for Pragâpati is of the nature of the Brahman[1]: therefore they are sacred to Pragâpati.

9. When about to bring up the victims, he offers those three oblations to Savitri, with (Vâg. S. XXX, 1–3), 'God Savitri, (speed the sacrifice, speed the lord of sacrifice unto his share)!'—'May we obtain that glorious light of the God Savitri, (who shall inspire our prayers)!'—'All troubles remove thou from us, O God Savitri; bestow unto us what is auspicious!' He thus pleases Savitri, and thus pleased with him, he (Savitri) impels (speeds) those (sacrificial) men, and he seizes them impelled by that (Savitri).

10. For the priesthood he seizes a Brâhmaṇa, for the Brâhmaṇa is the priesthood: he thus joins priesthood to priesthood[2];—for the nobility he seizes a Râganya, for the Râganya is the nobility: he thus joins nobility to nobility;—for the Maruts (he seizes) a Vaisya, for the Maruts are the clans (peasants): he thus joins peasantry to peasantry;—

[1] That is, of the divine spirit, the world-soul, of which Pragâpati is, as it were, the personification, or phenomenal representative.

[2] Or, he perfects, completes, the priesthood by (adding to it a member of) the priesthood.

for (religious) toil (he seizes) a *Sû*dra, for the *Sû*dra is toil: he thus joins toil to toil;—according to their particular form he thus supplies these divinities with victims, and, thus supplied, they supply him with all his objects of desire.

11. He makes offering with ghee, for ghee is fiery mettle: by means of fiery mettle he thus endows him (the Sacrificer) with fiery mettle. He makes offering with ghee, for that—to wit, ghee—is the dear resource of the gods: he thus supplies them with their dear resource, and, thus supplied, they supply him with all his objects of desire.

12. By means of the Purusha Nârâya*ṇa* (litany), the Brahman priest (seated) to the right (south) of them, praises the men bound (to the stakes) with this sixteen-versed (hymn, *Ṛig*-v. X, 90, Vâ*g*. S. XXXI, 1–16), 'The thousand-headed Purusha, thousand-eyed, thousand-footed[1] . . .;'—thus (he does) for the obtainment and the securing of everything, for everything here consists of sixteen parts, and the Purushamedha is everything: in thus saying, 'So and so thou art, so and so thou art,' he praises and thereby indeed magnifies him (Purusha); but he also thereby speaks of him, such as he is. Now, the victims had had the fire carried round them, but they were not yet slaughtered,—

13. Then a voice[2] said to him, 'Purusha, do not

[1] For a complete translation of this hymn, the Purusha-sûkta, see J. Muir, Orig. Sanskrit Texts, vol. i, p. 9 seqq. Cp. also part iv, introduction, p. xiv.

[2] 'A bodiless voice,' comm.; cf. XI, 4, 2, 16 where likewise 'an invisible voice' is introduced censuring the priest who burns the oblations. Perhaps, however, Vâ*k* may be intended from whom Pragâpati, in the beginning, produced the waters; cf. VI, 1, 1, 9.

consummate (these human victims[1]): if thou wert to consummate them, man (purusha) would eat man.' Accordingly, as soon as fire had been carried round them, he set them free, and offered oblations to the same divinities[2], and thereby gratified those divinities, and, thus gratified, they gratified him with all objects of desire.

14. He makes offering with ghee, for ghee is fiery mettle: with fiery mettle he thus bestows fiery mettle upon him.

15. He concludes with those of the set of eleven (stakes),—the Trish*ṭ*ubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trish*ṭ*ubh is the thunderbolt, and vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus repels evil from within.

16. The Udayanîyâ (concluding oblation) having been completed, he seizes eleven barren cows, sacred to Mitra-Varu*ṇ*a, the Vi*ś*ve Devâ*ḥ*, and B*ṛi*haspati[3], with the view of winning these deities. And as to those of B*ṛi*haspati being last,—B*ṛi*haspati truly is the Brahman (n.), and thus he finally establishes himself in the Brahman.

[1] Thus (i. e. do not go through with this human sacrifice) the commentator, probably correctly, interprets 'sa*ṃ*sthâpaya' (instead of 'do not kill,' St. Petersb. Dict., though, practically, it would, of course, come to the same thing),—Purusha, etân purusha-pasûn mâ sa*ṃ*tish*ṭ*ipa*ḥ*, udaṅnayâdikâny aṅgâny eshâ*ṃ* mâ k*ṛ*thâ ity artha*ḥ*; yadi sa*ṃ*sthâpayishyasi tata*ḥ* *ś*eshabhakshânukâre*ṇ*a loke 'pi purusha*ḥ* purusham bhakshayishyati ta*ḳ* *ḳ*âyuktam ity abhiprâya*ḥ*. In the same way the verse ought accordingly to have been translated in III, 7, 2, 8.

[2] That is, he offers with the formulas 'To the Brahman, hail! to the Kshatra, hail! &c., running through the whole series of so-called divinities of the released victims.

[3] Viz. three for each of the first two deities, and five for B*ṛi*haspati.

17. And as to why there are eleven of them,—the Trishṭubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trishṭubh is the thunderbolt, and vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus repels evil from within. The Traidhâtavî is the final offering (Udavasânîyâ): the mystic import is the same (as before[1]).

18. Now as to the sacrificial fees. What there is towards the middle of the kingdom other than the land and the property of the Brâhmaṇa, but including the men, of that the eastern quarter belongs to the Hotṛi, the southern to the Brahman, the western to the Adhvaryu, and the northern to the Udgâtṛi; and the Hotṛikas share this along with them.

19. And if a Brâhmaṇa performs the sacrifice, he should bestow all his property in order to obtain and secure everything, for the Brâhmaṇa is everything, and all one's property is everything, and the Purushamedha is everything.

20. And having taken up the two fires within his own self[2], and worshipped the sun with the Uttara-Nârâyaṇa (litany, viz. Vâg. S. XXXI, 17–22), let him betake himself to the forest without looking round; and that (place), indeed, is apart from men. But should he wish to live in the village, let him take up again the two fires in the churning-sticks, and having worshipped the sun with the Uttara-Nârâyaṇa (litany) let him dwell at his home, and let him offer such sacrifices as he may

[1] Viz. as set forth V, 5, 5, 6 seqq.

[2] Viz. by thrice inhaling the heat (or smoke) emitted by the fires. Cf. Mânava-Dh. VI, 38; Baudhâyana-Dharmas. II, 17, 26.

be able to afford. But, indeed, this (sacrifice) is not to be imparted to any and every one, lest one should impart everything to any and every one, for the Purushamedha is everything; but one may only impart it to one who is known to him, and who is versed in sacred writ, and who may be dear to him, but not to any and every one.

The (Symbolical) Victims of the Purushamedha[1].

I. 1. To the priesthood (he consecrates) a Brâhmaṇa—2. To the nobility a Kshatriya—3. To the Maruts a Vaiśya—4. To penance (hardship, tapas) a Śûdra—5. To darkness a thief—6. To hell a man-slayer—7. To evil a eunuch—8. To barter an unchaste woman (ayobhû[2])—9. To desire a harlot (puṁśkalû)—10. To the shriek (atikrushṭa) a minstrel (mâgadha)—11. To dancing a herald (bard, sûta)—12. To singing an actor (śailûsha)—13. To the law a counsellor (sabhâkara)—14. To joking a timorous man—15. To fun (narma) a chatterer—16. To laughter (hasa) an artizan (kâri, ? singer of praises)—17. To pleasure (ânanda) a woman's friend—18. To enjoyment a maiden's son—19. To skill a wheelwright—20. To perseverance a carpenter—21. To heat (tapas) a potter—22. To craft a mechanic—23. To handsome form a jeweller—24. To beauty a barber[3]—25. To the arrow-shot an arrow-maker—26. To the weapon a bow-maker—27. To work a bowstring-maker—28. To fate a rope-maker—29. To death a huntsman—30. To the end (antaka) a dog-keeper—31. To rivers a fisherman (pauñgishṭha)—32. To the ogress (of waste lands) a

[1] Comp. Prof. Weber's German translation (Zeitschr. D. M. G., XVIII, p. 262 seqq.; Indische Streifen, I, p. 76 seqq.), where the variants from the Taitt. Br. and the explanations of the commentaries are given. Not a few of the terms used (some of which are, indeed, explained in a different way by the commentators) are, however, still of doubtful meaning. Vâg. S. XXX, 5–22.

[2] ? The patronymic, or matronymic, of this, 'âyobhava' is said to be the son of a Śûdra from a Vaiśya woman.

[3] Or, as Mahîdhara takes 'subhe vapam,' to well-being the seed-sower—einen Sämann dem Gedeihen, Weber.

Nishâda[1]—33. To the man-tiger (? werwolf) a mono-maniac—34. To the Gandharvas and Apsaras a roving outcast (vrâtya)—35. To the teams (? prayug) a madman—36. To serpents and demons a blockhead (? apratipad)—37. To dice a gambler—38. To impassibility[2] a non-gambler—39. To the devils (piśâkas) a female cane-worker (basket-maker)—40. To the hobgoblins (yâtudhâna) a female worker in thorns—41. To intercourse a gallant—42. To the house a paramour—43. To trouble an unmarried elder brother whose younger brother is married—44. To calamity a younger brother married before his elder brother—45. To failure[3] the husband of a younger sister whose elder sister is unmarried—46. To reparation an artiste in embroidery—47. To agreement a female practiser of love-spells—48. To garrulity (prakâmodya) an attendant.

II. 1. To colour a devoted adherent—2. To strength a giver of gifts—3. To excrescences[4] a hunchback—4. To merriment a a dwarf—5. To the doors a lame one[5]—6. To sleep a blind one—7. To injustice a deaf one—8. To the means of purification (? purging) a physician—9. To knowledge a star-gazer—10. To desire of learning one who asks questions—11. To the desire of adding to one's knowledge one given to ask questions about (everything).

III. 1. To the bounds (of land or propriety) an arbitrator—2. To ruins an elephant-keeper—3. To speed a groom—4. To thrift a cowherd—5. To vigour a shepherd—6. To fiery mettle a goatherd—7. To refreshment (? food) a cultivator of the soil—8. To the sweet beverage (? nectar) the distiller of liquor—9. To happiness the guardian of a house—10. To prosperity a possessor of wealth—11. To superintendence an assistant doorkeeper[6].

IV. 1. To the light a gatherer of fire-wood—2. To brilliance

[1] One of the wild aboriginal tribesmen.

[2] ? îryatâ, lit. the state of one requiring to be roused.

[3] ? 'envy' St. Petersb. Dict. (arâddhi).

[4] The meaning of 'utsâda' is doubtful; it might be 'removal,' only the etymological meaning of 'ut-sad' having probably suggested the combination.

[5] Mahîdhara takes 'srâma' in the sense of one affected with ophthalmia (cf. srâva): in both senses the association of ideas is intelligible, though apparently (as in other cases) of a jocular nature.

[6] Or, the assistant of a charioteer, according to Mah. and Sây. (cf. V, 3).

a fire-kindler—3. To the sun's sphere a sprinkler (anointer of a king) —4. To the highest heaven a distributer (of portions)—5. To the world of the gods a carver (of portions)—6. To the world of men a scatterer (? seasoner [1])—7. To all the worlds a pourer out (of drink [2]) —8. To decay and murder a churner [3]—9. To the (animal) sacrifice (or, sacrificial essence) a washer-woman—10. To concupiscence a female dyer—11. To quarrelling one of a thievish disposition.

V. 1. To manslaughter an informer—2. To discrimination a doorkeeper—3. To oversight an assistant doorkeeper [4]—4. To strength (cf. II, 2) an attendant—5. To plenty a servant—6. To the pleasant one speaking pleasantly—7. To security one mounted on a horse—8. To heaven (svarga loka) a dealer out of portions (cf. IV, 5)—9. To the highest heaven a distributer (of portions; cf. IV, 4)—10. To wrath one who makes iron red-hot—11. To anger an absconder (? a yielder, coward).

VI. 1. To application a yoker—2. To grief one ready to attack—3. To peaceful dwelling an unyoker—4. To up-hills and down-hills one standing on three legs (of firm character)—5. To bodily form a haughty one (?)—6. To virtue a woman who prepares unguents—7. To calamity (cf. I, 44) a woman who makes scabbards —8. To Yama (the god of death) a barren woman—9. To Yama [5] one who bears twins—10. To Atharvan one who has miscarried—11. To the sa*m*vatsara (the first year of the five years' cycle) one in her courses.

VII. 1. To the parivatsara (the second year) one who has not yet borne children—2. To the idâvatsara (the third year) one who transgresses (the matrimonial bonds)—3. To the idvatsara (the fourth year) one who oversteps (the bounds of propriety)—4. To the vatsara (the fifth year) one who is worn out—5. To the year a gray-haired one—6. To the *Ri*bhus a furrier—7. To the Sâdhyas a tanner—8. To the lakes a fisherman (dhaivara)—9. To stagnant (waters) a boatsman—10. To pools a Bainda [6]—11. To reed-marshes one living on dried meat (or fish).

[1] Mahîdhara takes 'prakarit*ri*' in the sense of 'viksheptṛi'; Sây. in that of 'sower of discord.'

[2] ? Sây. makes 'upasekt*ri*' a composer of feuds (!).

[3] ? 'a stirrer up of discord,' Sây.

[4] Thus also Mahîdhara; charioteer, Sây.; cf. III, 11.

[5] Yamî, Taitt. Br.

[6] According to Mahîdhara, a wild tribesman (inhabitant of the jungle); 'one living by the net,' Sây.

VIII. 1. To the opposite bank a 'mârgâra[1]'—2. To the near bank a fisherman (kevarta)—3. To shallows an Ânda[2]—4. To uneven (? deep) places a fisher (mainâla)—5. To sounds (svana) a Parṇaka[3]—6. To caverns a Kirâta (woodman)—7. To mountain-ridges a Gambhaka[4]—8. To the mountains a Kimpurusha[5]—9. To loathing a Paulkasa[6]—10. To colour a worker in gold (cf. I, 23)—11. To the balance (pair of scales) a merchant.

IX. 1. To the latter part of the evening one exhausted—2. To all beings (spirits) a leper (sidhmala)—3. To good fortune a wakeful one—4. To ill-fortune a sleepy one—5. To trouble (cf. I, 43) a newsmonger—6. To adversity a spiritless one—7. To collapse a waster[7]—8. To the king of dice a gambler (cf. I, 37)—9. To the Kṛita (-die) one who takes advantage of mistakes in the game[8]—10. To the Tretâ (-die) one who plays on a (regular) plan[9]—11. To the Dvâpara (-die) one who plans to over-reach[9] (his fellow-player).

X. 1. To the Âskanda[10] (-die) a post of the gaming-room[11]—2. (cf. I, 29) one who 'approaches' a cow—3. To the end (antaka, cf. I, 30) a cow-slayer—4. To hunger one who goes begging of one cutting up a cow—5. To evil-doing a Karaka-teacher—6. To evil (cf. I, 7) a robber—7. To the echo a reviler—8. To the noise a

[1] 'The son of a mṛigâri (? huntsman),' Mahîdhara; 'one who catches fish with his hands,' Sây.

[2] According to Mahîdhara, the maker of 'bandhanâni (? strings, or dams);'—according to Sây., one who catches fish by means of dikes.

[3] ? A Bhilla (Bheel, mountaineer, woodman);—one catching fish by means of feathers (parṇa), Sây.

[4] Apparently a man of a voracious, flesh-eating tribe.

[5] Apparently a low, despicable man.

[6] Explained as one of very low birth, or more particularly, as the son of a Nishâda from a Kshatriya woman.

[7] Lit. a cutter away (? a spendthrift).

[8] Thus Mahîdhara explains 'âdinavadarśa'; 'one who works for his fellow-player's ruin,' St. Petersb. Dict.

[9] The terms 'kalpin' and 'adhikalpin' are of doubtful meaning—'arranger' and 'head-arranger,' Weber.

[10] Lit. 'the assailer,' apparently another name for the die usually called Kali. On these dice see part iii, p. 106, note 1.

[11] Explained as a jocular expression for the habitual frequenter of the gambling-house.

growler—9. To the end (anta) a babbler—10. To the endless a dumb one—11. To articulate sound (śabda) a drum-beater.

XI. 1. To festive joy a lute-player—2. To the cry a flute-player—3. To the confused (noise) a conch-blower—4. To the forest a forester—5. To broken woodlands one who watches woods on fire—6. To fun (narma I, 15) a harlot (I, 9)—7. To laughter an artizan (I, 16)—8. To the sea-monster (?) a mottled woman [1] (?)—9-11. To power a village-headman, an astrologer, and a herald (? abhikrośaka).

XII. (Added to those at the second post):—1-3. To dancing (I, 11) a lute-player (XI, 1), a hand-clapper, and a flute-player (XI, 2)—4. To pleasure (I, 17) a musician—5. To fire a fat man—6. To the earth a cripple—7. To the wind a *Kâṇḍâla* (outcast)—8. To the air a staff-dancer [2]—9. To the sky a bald-headed one—10. To the sun a yellow-eyed one—11. To the stars one of variegated colour—12. To the moon a leprous one (kilâsa, cf. IX, 2)—13. To the day a light-coloured one with yellow eyes—14. To the night a black one with yellow eyes.—He then seizes these eight misshapen ones—15. One who is too tall—16. One too short—17. One too stout—18. One too lean—19. One too light-coloured—20. One too black—21. One too bald—22. One with too much hair:—these (are to be) neither Śûdras nor Brâhmaṇas, and are sacred to Pragâpati;—23. A minstrel (mâgadha, I, 10)—24. A harlot (puṃśkalî, cf. I, 9)—25. A gambler (I, 37)—26. A eunuch (I, 7):—these (also are to be) neither Śûdras nor Brâhmaṇas, and are sacred to Pragâpati.

Seventh Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

The Sarvamedha, or All-Sacrifice.

1. Brahman Svayambhu (the self-existent, n.) was performing austerities [3]. He said this much,—

[1] St. Petersb. Dict. conjectures 'To lust a sportive woman (? dancer or singer).'

[2] 'Vaṃśanartin' explained by Mahîdhara as one who practises dancing by means of a bamboo-staff (vaṃśena nartanaśîla); by Sây. as one who makes his living by dancing on the top of a bamboo-staff (vaṃśâgranṛittagîvin); hardly a 'family-dancer,' Monier-Williams.

[3] Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sanskrit Texts, vol. v, p. 372.

'Verily, there is no perpetuity in austerities; well, then, I will offer up mine own self in the creatures, and the creatures in mine own self.' And, accordingly, by offering up his own self in the creatures, and the creatures in his own self, he compassed the supremacy, the sovereignty, and the lordship over all creatures; and in like manner does the Sacrificer, by thus offering all sacrificial essences [1] in the Sarvamedha, compass all beings, and supremacy, sovereignty, and lordship.

2. Now this Sarvamedha is a ten-days' (Soma-) sacrifice, for the sake of his gaining and winning every kind of food, for the Virâg consists of ten syllables, and the Virâg is all food. At this (sacrifice) he builds the greatest possible fire-altar, for this—to wit, the Sarvamedha—is supreme amongst all sacrificial performances: by means of the supreme (sacrifice) he thus causes him (the Sacrificer) to attain supremacy.

3. The first day thereof is an Agnishṭut Agnishṭoma [2], for the sake of his gaining and winning all the gods, for the Agnishṭut Agnishṭoma is Agni; and all the gods have Agni (the sacrificial fire) for their mouth. The cups of Soma thereat pertain to Agni, and so do the Puroruk [3] formulas pertain to Agni, in order that everything should pertain to Agni.

[1] Or, all kinds of victims (medha).

[2] That is, a one-day's Soma-sacrifice (ekâha) of the Agnishṭoma order, arranged so as specially to promote the praise of Agni. In the same way the next three ekâhas are intended to honour special deities.

[3] That is, the formulas preceding the 'upayâma' ('Thou art taken with a support, &c.,' cf. part ii, p. 259, note 1) or formula with which the cup of Soma is drawn.

4. The second day is an Indrastut Ukthya, for the sake of his gaining and winning all the gods, for Indra is all the gods. The cups of Soma thereat pertain to Indra, and so do the Puroruk formulas pertain to Indra, in order that everything should pertain to Indra.

5. The third day is a Sûryastut Ukthya, for the sake of his gaining and winning all the gods, for Sûrya is all the gods. The cups of Soma pertain to Sûrya, and so do the Puroruk formulas pertain to Sûrya, in order that everything should pertain to Sûrya.

6. The fourth day is a Vaiśvadeva, for the sake of his gaining and winning all the gods, for the All-gods (Viśve Devâḥ) are all the gods. The cups of Soma pertain to the All-gods, and so do the Puroruk formulas pertain to the All-gods, in order that everything should pertain to the All-gods.

7. The fifth day is a central Âśvamedhika[1] one: at this (sacrifice) he seizes a horse meet for sacrifice, for the sake of his gaining the sacrificial essence of the horse.

8. The sixth day is a central Puruṣha-medhika[2] one: at this (sacrifice) he seizes men meet for sacrifice, for the sake of his gaining the sacrificial essence of man.

9. The seventh day is an Aptoryâma, for the sake of his gaining all kinds of Soma-sacrifices: at this (sacrifice) he seizes all kinds of (victims) meet for sacrifice, both what is animate and what is

[1] That is, an Ukthya sacrifice, cf. p. 259, note 2; XIII, 5, 1, 5 seqq.

[2] That is, an Âtirâtra, cf. XIII, 6, 1, 9.

inanimate. Of those with omenta he offers the omenta, and of those without omenta they throw down pieces cut out of the skin[1], and of herbs and trees they do so after cutting them up,—every kind of food of both the dry and the fresh he offers, in order to gain every kind of food. Everything he offers, and to every one he offers in order to gain and to win everything. The omenta having been offered at the morning-service, and in the same way the oblations at the evening-service,—

10. The eighth day is a Trin*a*va one[2], for the Trin*a*va (stoma) is the thunderbolt, and by means of the thunderbolt, indeed, lordship (kshatra) is gained: by means of the thunderbolt he thus gains lordship.

11. The ninth day is a Trayastrim*s*a one[3], for the sake of his gaining a foothold, for the Trayastrim*s*a (stoma) is a foothold.

12. The tenth day is a Visvagit Atirâtra with all the Pr*i*shth*a*s[4], for the sake of his gaining and winning everything, for the Visvagit Atirâtra with all the Pr*i*shth*a*s is everything, and the Sarvamedha is everything.

13. Now as to the sacrificial fees: whatever there is towards the middle of the kingdom other than the property of the Brâhman*a*, but including land and

[1] Lit., 'after cutting (pieces) out of the skin they throw down.'

[2] That is, one on which the Trin*a*va (thrice-nine-versed) Stoma is used in chanting.

[3] That is, one on which the thirty-three-versed hymn-form is used.

[4] For a Soma-sacrifice with all the Pr*i*shth*a*-sâmans, see part iii, introd. p. xx seqq. On the two kinds of Visvagit ekâhas, the Agnish*t*oma and the Atirâtra Visvagit, see part iv, p. 320, note 2.

men, of that the eastern quarter belongs to the Hotṛi, the southern to the Brahman, the western to the Adhvaryu, and the northern to the Udgâtṛi; and the Hotṛikas share this along with them.

14. Viśvakarman Bhauvana once performed this sacrifice, and having performed it he overpassed all beings, and became everything here; and verily he who, knowing this, performs the Sarvamedha, or who even knows this, overpasses all beings, and becomes everything here.

15. It was Kaśyapa who officiated in his sacrifice, and it was concerning this that the Earth [1] also sang the stanza;—'No mortal must give me away; thou wast foolish, Viśvakarman Bhauvana: she (the earth) will sink into the midst of the water; vain is this thy promise unto Kaśyapa.'

Eighth Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

Funeral Ceremonies.

1. They now [2] do what is auspicious for him. They now prepare a burial-place (śmaśâna [3]) for him,

[1] Or, the ground, which Viśvakarman Bhauvana gave away as sacrificial fee. On this legend cp. Ait. Br. VIII, 21; J. Muir, Orig. Sanskrit Texts, vol. i, p. 456; vol. iv, p. 369.

[2] The commentator is at pains to show that 'atha' here has not the force of 'thereupon'—that is after the performance of the Sarvamedha—but that of introducing a new topic ('Now, they do . . .'); and that therefore the directions about to be given are by no means intended to apply only to one who has performed the Sarvamedha, or even to the Agnikit, or builder of a fire-altar, but also to others.

[3] Yâska (Nir. III, 5) resolves this word into 'śman' (body) + 'śayana' (couch); whilst Prof. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 189, proposes 'aśman' (stone) + 'śayana' (couch). The śmaśâna, or burial-place, sepulchre, is constructed in the form of a tumulus, or grave-mound.

(to serve him) either as a house or as a monument; for when any one dies, he is a corpse (*ś*ava), and for that (corpse) food (anna) is thereby prepared, hence '*ś*avânna,' for, indeed, '*ś*avânna' is what is mystically called '*ś*maśâna.' But '*ś*maśâ*ḥ*' also are called the eaters amongst the Fathers, and they, indeed, destroy in yonder world the good deeds of him who has had no sepulchre prepared for him: it is for them that he prepares that food, whence it is '*ś*maśânna,' for '*ś*maśânna' is what is mystically called '*ś*maśâna.'

2. Let him[1] not make it too soon (after the deceased man's death) lest he should freshen up his sin; but let him make it a long time after, as thereby he obscures the sin;—and when people do not even remember the years (that have passed[2]), as thereby one causes the sin to pass into oblivion. If they do remember[3],—

[1] Viz. the Sacrificer, the performer of the funeral rites, being the next of kin.

[2] This is the way in which the scholiasts interpret the corresponding rule, Kâty. *Ś*r. XXI, 3, 1 (pit*ṛi*medha*ḥ* sa*m*vatsarâsm*ṛi*tau), instead of 'when they do not remember it (even once) for years, he brings it about that the sin is forgotten, even in case they should remember it,' as Prof. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 351 translates the passage. For the subject of the verb 'they remember it,' Prof. Delbrück supplies 'pitara*ḥ*,' i. e. the dead man's deceased ancestors, instead of the living people, which seems rather improbable. The comment is very corrupt, but it makes at least some allusion to 'people's talk':—na *ś*ruti*ḥ* *ś*rutyabhâvas (tâ*m*) tena *k*irakara*ṇ*ena agha*m* pâpakara*ṇa**m* gamayati, *k*irât *ś*maśâna*m* kurva*ś*rara*ṇa**m* (? kurvata*ḥ* *ś*rava*ṇa**m*) *g*anavâdo 'pi na *śri*notîty (!) artha*ḥ*.

[3] In this way Harisvâmin, as well as the scholiasts on Kâty. XXI, 3, 2, construes the clause with the next paragraph, and it is difficult to see how otherwise any satisfactory sense could be extracted from it. At the same time, it can evidently only qualify the first specification of time, as the others will apply in any case.

3. Let him make it in uneven years, since the uneven belongs to the Fathers; and under a single Nakshatra [1], since the single Nakshatra belongs to the Fathers; and at new-moon, since the new-moon is a single Nakshatra;—for he (the Sacrificer) is a single (person); and in that all the beings dwell together during that night, thereby he obtains that object of desire which is (contained) in all Nakshatras.

4. Let him make it in autumn, for the autumn is the Svadhâ, and the Svadhâ is the food of the Fathers: he thus places him along with food, the Svadhâ;—or in (the month of) Mâgha, thinking, 'Lest (mâ) sin (agha) be in us;'—or in summer (nidâgha), thinking, 'May thereby be removed (nidhâ) our sin (agha)!'

5. Four-cornered (is the sepulchral mound). Now the gods and the Asuras, both of them sprung from Pragâpati, were contending in the (four) regions (quarters). The gods drove out the Asuras, their rivals and enemies, from the regions, and, being regionless, they were overcome. Wherefore the people who are godly make their burial-places four-cornered, whilst those who are of the Asura nature, the Easterns and others [2], (make them)

[1] That is, a lunar mansion consisting of a single star, such as Kṛittikâ and Pushya (in contradistinction to such in the dual, as Punarvasû and Visâkhe, and to those in the plural number, as the Kṛittikâs). As regards the symbolic connection of the uneven number with the deceased ancestors, the commentator reminds us of the fact that it is the father, grandfather, and great-grandfather who represent the Fathers.—The only available MS. of the commentary (Ind. Off. 149) terminates at this place.

[2] Yâ âsuryaḥ prâkyâs tvad ye tvat parimaṇḍalâni (smasânâni kurvate),—Prof. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 189, takes this in the sense of 'part of the prâkya, the âsuryaḥ pragâḥ of them (hence probably

round, for they (the gods) drove them out from the regions. He arranges it so as to lie between the two regions, the eastern and the southern [1], for in that region assuredly is the door to the world of the Fathers: through the above he thus causes him to enter the world of the Fathers; and by means of the (four) corners he (the deceased) establishes himself in the regions, and by means of the other body [2] (of the tomb) in the intermediate regions: he thus establishes him in all the regions.

6. Now as to the choosing of the ground. He makes it on ground inclining towards the north, for the north is the region of men: he thus gives him (the deceased) a share in the world of men; and in that respect, indeed, the Fathers share in the world of men that they have offspring; and his (the deceased man's) offspring will, indeed, be more prosperous.

7. 'Let him make it on ground inclining towards the south,' they say, 'for the world of the Fathers inclines towards the south: he thus gives him a share in the world of the Fathers.' Let him not do so, however, for, indeed, such a one is an opening tomb, and certainly another of these (members of the dead man's family) quickly follows him in death.

---

the non-Âryan portion of them), have round *s*maśâna.' J. Muir, Orig. Sansk. Texts, vol. ii, p. 485, takes no account of the words 'tvad ye tvat.' For our rendering of these words, cp. V, 3, 2, 2 *s*ûdrâ*m*s tvad yâ*m*s tvat, '*S*ûdras and others,' or '*S*ûdras and suchlike people.'

[1] That is to say, its front side is towards the south-east. Cp. p. 428, note 4.

[2] That is, by means of the sides of the grave which are to face the intermediate points of the compass.

8. And some, indeed, say, 'Let him make it on a counter-cutting [1] in ground inclined towards the south, for such (a tomb) indeed becomes rising sin [2].' But one must not do so, for indeed such (a burial place) alone becomes rising sin which one makes on ground inclining towards the north.

9. On any level (ground) where the waters, flowing thither from a south-easterly direction [3], and coming to a stand-still, will, on reaching that (north-westerly) quarter, without pressing forward [4], join imperishable water [5], on that (ground) one may make (the tomb); for, water being food, one thereby offers food to him from the front towards the back; and, water being the drink of immortality, and that region between the rising of the seven *Ri*shis [6] and the setting of the sun being the quarter of the living, one thereby bestows the drink of immortality upon the living:—and such a one, indeed, is a closing tomb; and verily what is good for the living that is also good for the Fathers.

[1] This is meant as a literal rendering of 'pratyarsha.' What is intended thereby would seem to be either a cutting made into southward sloping ground, in such a way as to make the cut piece of ground rise towards the south, or perhaps such a part of the southward inclined ground as naturally rises towards the south. The St. Petersburg Dict. suggests 'steep bank (escarpment), or side (of a hill).' Kâty. XXI, 3, 15 (kakshe) seems also to imply some kind of hollow ground, surrounded by bushes and trees.

[2] That is, apparently, lightened, or improving, sin.

[3] It might also mean, in a south-easterly direction, but the comparison with food introduced into the mouth from the front (east) and the specification of the opposite direction evidently point to the above meaning.

[4] That is, without urging forward the standing water which they join, but quickly flowing into it.

[5] That is, apparently, such a lake as never dries up.

[6] That is, *Ursa major*, the Great Bear, or Charles's Wain.

10. Let him make it in a pleasant (spot), in order that there should be pleasure for him; and in a peaceful (spot), in order that there should be peace for him. He must not make it either on a path, or in an open space, lest he should make his (the deceased's) sin manifest.

11. Whilst being secluded it should have the sun shining on it from above[1]: in that it is secluded one hides his sin; and in that it has the sun shining on it from above—yonder sun being the remover of evil—he, indeed, removes the evil from him, and he also causes him to be endowed with the radiance of the sun.

12. Let him not make it where it would be visible from here[2], for assuredly it is beckoning, and another of these (members of his family) quickly follows (the deceased) in death.

13. Let there be beautiful objects[3] at the back,—for beautiful objects mean offspring: beautiful objects, offspring, will thus accrue to him. If there be no beautiful objects, let there be water either at the back or on the left (north) side, for water is indeed a beautiful object; and beautiful objects, offspring, will indeed accrue to him.

14. He makes it on salt (barren) soil, for salt means seed; the productive thus makes him partake in productiveness, and in that respect, indeed, the

[1] That is, it should be in a place where at midday the rays of the sun do not fall obliquely on it, Kâty. XXI, 3, 15 comm.

[2] That is, from the village, cf. Kâty. XXI, 3, 18.

[3] Or, beautiful ground (*kitra*). According to the comments on Kâty. XXI, 3, 23 this means that the site of the grave should be so chosen that there are at the back (or west) of it, either woods of various kinds, or ground diversified by woods, hills, temples (!) &c.

Fathers partake in productiveness that they have offspring: his offspring assuredly will be more prosperous.

15. On such (ground) as is filled with roots, for to the Fathers belongs the (sod) filled with roots;—it is (sod) of vîriṇa (Andropogon muricatus) and other grasses, for thus the Fathers' share in this (earth) is not excessive [1]; and he also thereby makes (the deceased's) sin to be restricted [2].

16. Let him not put it near (where grows) Bhûmipâsa [3], or reeds, or Aśmagandhâ [4], or Adhyâṇḍâ, or Pṛiśniparṇî ('speckled-leaf,' Hemionitis cordifolia); nor let him make it near either an Aśvattha (Ficus religiosa), or a Vibhîtaka (Terminalia bellerica), or a Tilvaka (Symplocos racemosa), or a Sphûrgaka (Diospyros embryopteris), or a Haridru (Pinus deodora), or a Nyagrodha (Ficus indica), or

[1] Whilst their share would have been excessive, if all the ground covered with vegetation were assigned to them. It is also worthy of note that Kâty. Śr. XXV, 7, 17, in enumerating the plants which are to be removed from the site of the funeral pile, mentions (apparently in the place of our Bhûmipâsâ) the Viśâkha, explained by the commentator as identical with 'dûrvâ'; and Sir H. M. Elliott, Races of the N. W. Province of India, II, p. 303, remarks, on the Dûb grass (Agrestis linearis, or Cynodon dactylon), that 'its tenacity whenever it once fixes its roots has caused it to be used in a common simile when the attachment of Zamîndârs to their native soil is spoken of.'

[2] Apparently lit. 'binding (itself),' ? i. e. either restricted in quantity, or limited to his own person, not transmitted to his son. Cf. XIII, 8, 3, 10. It can hardly be taken in the sense of 'binding the sin.'

[3] Literally, 'Earth-net,' apparently some troublesome creeping plant corresponding to our rest-harrow (Ononis arvensis or spinosa), or couch-grass (Triticum repens), but of tropical dimensions.

[4] Lit. 'rock-smell,' perhaps identical with Aśvagandhâ (lit. 'horse-smell,' Physalis flexuosa).

any other (trees) of evil name[1], so as to avoid (such) names from a desire of good luck.

17. Now as to the order of procedure. For an Agnikit (builder of a fire-altar) one makes the tomb after the manner of the fire-altar; for when a Sacrificer builds a fire-altar he thereby constructs for himself by sacrifice a (new) body for yonder world; but that sacrificial performance is not complete until the making of a tomb; and when he makes the tomb of the Agnikit after the manner of the fire-altar, it is thereby he completes the Agnikityâ.

18. One must not make it (too) large lest he should make the sin (of the deceased) large. 'Let him make it as large as the fire-altar without wings and tail,' say some, 'for like that of the fire-altar is this his (the Sacrificer's) body.'

19. But let him rather make it just of man's size: he thus leaves no room for another;—broader (varîyas) behind[2], for what is (left) behind is offspring: he thus makes the (dead man's) offspring more excellent[3] (varîyas);—and broader on the left (north[4] or higher, uttara) side, for the later (uttara)

[1] The commentator, on Kâty. XXI, 3, 20, and Vâg. S. XXXV, 1, instances the śleshmântaka ('antiphlegmatic,' i. e. Cordia latifolia or myxa) and the kovidâra ('bad for splitting,' Bauhinia variegata; which, according to Stewart and Brandis, shows vertical cracks in the bark).

[2] The grave being constructed in such a way that the four corners lie in the direction of the four quarters, the back, or west side of the grave would really mean the side facing the north-west.

[3] Or, perhaps, more extended, more numerous or prosperous.

[4] In reality, the north means here the side facing the north-east. The side of the tumulus is to form a quadrilateral, of which the two sides intersecting each other at the north corner, are to be longer than the two which intersect at the south corner; viz. each of the

are offspring: he thus makes the offspring more excellent. Having attended to this, he encloses it with cords twisted (and extended) in the non-sunwise way[1]; for the (sacrificial) performance connected with the Fathers is done in the non-sunwise way.

20. He then bids them cut out (the earth). He should cut it out to whatever extent he intends to raise (the sepulchral mound), but let him rather cut it out so as to be just of man's size: he thus leaves no room for another. For, on the one hand[2], the Fathers are the world of plants, and amongst the roots of plants they (are wont to) hide; and, on the other[2], (he does so) lest he (the deceased) should be separated from this (earth).

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. Now, some bank up (the sepulchral mound) after covering up (the site). The gods and the Asuras, both of them sprung from Pragâpati, were contending for (the possession of) this (terrestrial) world. The gods drove out the Asuras, their rivals and enemies, from this world; whence those who

former is to measure one man's length plus 9¼ aṅgulas (thumb's breadths), and each of the latter one man's length minus 9¼ aṅgulas. See comm. on Vâg. S. XXXV, 1.

[1] That is, by twisting or spinning the strands from right to left, or contrary to the sun's course. The cord is extended round the grave from right to left (east, north, west, south) by means of pegs driven into the ground at the four corners; see XIII, 8, 4, 1.

[2] I do not see how the usual force of 'atho'—viz. that of introducing a new element or argument either analogous, or not quite conformable, to what precedes (cf. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 513)—can apply to this double use of the particle. The two 'atho' seem to introduce the reasons for his digging up the ground, and for his not digging up more than a man's size.

are godly people make their sepulchres so as not to be separate (from the earth), whilst those (people) who are of the Asura nature, the Easterns and others, (make their sepulchral mounds) so as to be separated (from the earth), either on a basin[1] or on some such thing.

2. He then encloses it by means of enclosing-stones: what those enclosing-stones (round the fire-hearths) are, that they are here[2]. With a formula he sets up those, silently these: he thus keeps separate what refers to the gods and what refers to the Fathers. With (an) undefined (number of stones he encloses it), for undefined is yonder world.

3. He then sweeps that (site) with a palâśa (Butea frondosa) branch—what the sweeping (signified) on that occasion[3], that (it does) here—with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 1), 'Let the niggards avaunt from hence, the perverse scorners of the gods!'—he thereby expels from this world the niggards, the perverse haters of the gods, the Asura-Rakshas; —'it is the place of this Soma-offerer,' for he who has performed a Soma-sacrifice is a Soma-offerer;—'(an abode) distinguished by lights, by days, by nights,'—he thereby makes him to

[1] I take the 'kamû' to be a shallow stone basin or trough, either solid or consisting of masonry (bricks) in the manner of our stone-lined graves.

[2] Cf. VII, 1, 1, 12 seq. 'The enclosing-stones are the womb: he thus encloses the seed here sown in a womb... And, again, the Gârhapatya hearth is this (terrestrial) world, and the enclosing-stones are the waters: he thus surrounds this world with water.'

[3] Viz. in building the Gârhapatya hearth (VII, 1, 1, 11 seqq.); no such sweeping taking place in preparing the site for the Âhavanîya (VII, 3, 1, 7).

be of the world of the seasons, the days and nights;—

4. 'May Yama grant him an abode;'—for Yama has power over the abode in this (earth), and it is him he solicits for an abode therein for this (dead man). He throws out this (branch) to the right (south), the other[1] to the left (north) side: he thus keeps the divine separate from what belongs to the Fathers.

5. He (the Adhvaryu) then yokes (the team) to the plough on the south side,—some say on the north side: he may do as he chooses. Having given the order, saying, 'Yoke!' he (the Sacrificer) utters the formula (Vâg. S. XXXV, 2), 'May Savitri vouchsafe for thy bones a place in the earth!'—Savitri now indeed vouchsafes a place in the earth for his (the deceased man's) bones;—'Let the oxen be yoked therefore!' for it is indeed for this work that the oxen are yoked.

6. It is (a team) of six oxen,—six seasons are a year: on the seasons, on the year, as a firm foundation, he thus establishes him. Having turned round (the plough) from right to left[2], he ploughs the first furrow with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 3), 'May Vâyu purify!' along the north side (along the cord) towards the west[3]; with, 'May

[1] Viz. that used in sweeping the Gârhapatya, VII, 7, 1, 5.

[2] That is, having driven the plough round from the south side to the north, in the non-sunwise direction (i.e. keeping the sepulchral site on the left hand side).

[3] In ploughing the site of the fire-altar, the first furrow was drawn along the south side from west to east; and then, in sunwise fashion, from the south-west corner round along the west, north, and east sides; see VII, 2, 2, 9 seqq.

Savitṛi purify!' along the west side towards the south; with, 'With Agni's lustre!' along the south side towards the east; with, 'With Sûrya's brilliance!' along the front side towards the north.

7. Four furrows he ploughs with a formula: he thereby establishes him in whatever food there is in the four quarters. And (as to why it is done) with a formula,—certain, assuredly, is the sacrificial formula (yagus), and certain are these quarters.

8. He then ploughs across the body (of the sepulchral site)—he thereby establishes him in whatever food there is in the year[1]—silently with (an) undefined (number of furrows), for undefined is yonder world.

9. Having performed the work for which he has put the team to that (plough), he now unfastens it: 'Let the oxen be unyoked!' he says, for it is for that work that the oxen were yoked. To the right (south) side[2] he removes this (plough and team), to the left (side) any other: he thus keeps the divine separate from what belongs to the Fathers.

Third Brâhmaṇa.

1. He then sows (seed) of all (kinds of) herbs: what the all-herb (seed signified) on that occasion[3], that (it does) here. With many (verses[4]) he sows

[1] The Sacrificer's body (trunk) or self, like that of Pragâpati, is as usual identified with the year (Father Time).

[2] Or rather to the south-west side, whilst at the Agnikayana (VII, 2, 2, 21) it was done towards the north-east.

[3] Viz. that it means food of every kind, see VII, 2, 4, 14.

[4] Viz. with fifteen verses (VII, 2, 4, 15 seqq.) of which the one here used formed part (part iii, p. 340, note 2, verse 5).

that (former seed), with a single one this,—he thus keeps the divine separate from what belongs to the Fathers,—with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 4), 'On the Asvattha tree is your abode, on the Parṇa dwelling is made for you, (possessed of cattle shall ye be, when ye save the Man):' for long life he thereby prays for these (the Sacrificer's family), and accordingly each subsequent one of them dies of old age[1].

2. He then pours out that (jarful of bones[2]); for this earth is the foundation: on this (earth), as a foundation, he thus establishes him. Before sunrise (he does so), for, in secret, as it were, are the Fathers, and in secret, as it were, is the night;—in secret, indeed, he does this, (but) so that (the sun) should rise over him doing it: on both day and night he thus establishes him.

3. [He does so, with Vâg. S. XXXV, 5–6,] 'May Savitri deposit thy bones in the mother's lap,'—Savitri thus deposits his bones in the lap of the mother, this earth;—'O Earth, be thou propitious unto him!' he thus says this in order that this (earth) may be propitious to him.—'In the deity Pragâpati I place thee, in the world nigh unto the water[3], O N. N.,' therewith he mentions the name (of the deceased); for nigh to

[1] That is, they die of old age, just as do the herbs now sown to which the verse is, of course, addressed in the first place. Cf. Mahîdhara on Vâg. S. XII, 79.

[2] On burning the dead body, immediately after death, the calcined bones were carefully collected and kept in an earthen vessel; cf. p. 117, note 3.

[3] Or, in a place near water. The Saṃhitâ adds (either before or after the dead man's name), 'May he (Pragâpati) burn away our sin!'

the water, indeed, is this (terrestrial) world: he thus places him in the deity Pragâpati, in the world nigh unto the water.

4. He then says to some one, 'Proceed in that (southern) direction without drawing breath, and, having thrown down the jar, return hither without looking behind thee!' He then mutters (Vâg. S. XXXV, 7), 'O Death, go away another way, what second way there is of thine other than the path of the gods[1]; I call unto thee that hast eyes and hearest: hurt not our family nor our men!' for long life he thereby prays for these, and accordingly each subsequent one of them dies of old age.

5. He then arranges him (the dead man) limb by limb, with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 8–9), 'Propitious be the wind unto thee, propitious the heat of the sun; propitious be the bricks; propitious be the fires unto thee, and may the earthly ones not scorch thee!—May the regions fit themselves to thee, and may the waters be most kind unto thee, and the rivers; and kind also the air: may all the regions fit themselves to thee!'—he thereby makes everything fit itself to him, and be auspicious for him.

6. Now thirteen unmarked[2] bricks, measuring a foot (square), have been made: they are just like those bricks in the fire-altar. Those (altar bricks) he lays down with a formula, silently these: he thus keeps the divine separate from what belongs to the Fathers.

[1] Viz. the 'pitṛiyâna,' or path of the Fathers. See I, 9, 3, 2.

[2] That is, not marked with lines, as those of the fire-altar are. As to the use of pebbles, instead of bricks, in the case of one who has not performed the Agnikayana, see XIII, 8, 4, 11.

7. There are thirteen of them,—thirteen months are a year: on the seasons, on the year, he thus establishes him, as on a firm foundation.

8. They measure a foot (square),—the foot is a foundation: a foundation he thus prepares for him. Unmarked they are, for in secret, as it were, are the Fathers, and in secret, as it were, is what is unmarked: he thus secretes what is in secret.

9. One of them he places in the middle, with the front side towards the east: this is the body (trunk);—three in front, fitted to (the position of) the head: that is the head;—three on the right: that is the right wing (side);—three on the left: that is the left wing;—three behind: that is the tail. Thus this his body, furnished with wings and tail, is just like that of Agni (the fire-altar).

10. He then bids them bring some soil from a cleft in the ground, for thus the Fathers' (share) in this (earth) is not excessive; and he also thereby makes the (dead man's) sin to be restricted[1]. And some, now, dig in that intermediate (south-eastern) quarter, and fetch it from there; and others, again, do so towards the south-west, and fetch it northwards from there: he may do as he chooses.

11. Let him not make it (the sepulchral mound) too large, lest he make the (deceased's) sin large. For a Kshatriya he may make it as high as a man with upstretched arms, for a Brâhmaṇa reaching up to the mouth, for a woman up to the hips, for a Vaiśya up to the thighs, for a Śûdra up to the knee; for suchlike is their vigour.

12. But let him rather make it so as to reach

[1] See XIII, 8, 1, 15.

below the knee: he thus leaves no room for another. While that (mound) is being made, they hold a bundle (of reed grass) to the left (north, uttarataḥ) of it,—that is offspring: they thus hold the (deceased's) offspring upwards (uttarataḥ). Do not let him throw it down either after holding it up, or after bringing it; but let him set it up in the house[1]: he thus sets up offspring in the house.

13. Having prepared it, he sows barley grain (yava), thinking, 'May they ward off (yavaya) sin from me!' He covers it over with Avakâ-plants[2] in order that there may be joy (or moisture, ka) for him; and with Darbha grass (Poa cynosuroides) he covers it for the sake of softness.

Fourth Brâhmaṇa.

1. They now fix pegs round it[3],—a Palâśa (Butea frondosa) one in front,—for the Palâśa is the Brahman (n.): he thus makes him go to the heavenly world with the Brahman for his leader;—a Śamî (Prosopis spicigera) one on the left (north corner), in order that there may be peace (śam) for him;—a Varaṇa (Crataeva Roxburghii) one behind, in order that he may ward off (vâraya) sin from him;—

[1] That is, fix it so as to stand upright, by means of a bambû stick to which it is tied. Cf. Kâty. XXI, 3, 27 comm.

[2] Blyxa (or Vallisneria) octandra (Roxburghii), a grass-like plant with sword-shaped leaves (A. K. Nairne, The Flowering Plants of Western India, p. 318), growing freely on the margins of tanks. Cf. VII, 5, 1, 11; IX, 1, 2, 22 (where read 'Avakâ-plant' instead of 'lotus-flower').

[3] According to Kâty. Śr. XXI, the pegs are driven in immediately after the measuring, and prior to the sweeping, of the site of the tumulus; and this must certainly be the case, seeing that the cords by which the site is enclosed (XIII, 8, 1, 19) are fastened to the pegs.

and a Vritra-peg [1] on the right (south corner) for sin not to pass beyond.

2. On the right (south) side they then dig two somewhat curved (furrows [2]), and fill them with milk and water,—these, indeed, are two inexhaustible streams (that) flow to him in the other world;—and seven (they dig) on the left (north) side, and fill them with water, for sin not to pass beyond, for indeed sin cannot pass beyond seven rivers [3].

3. They [4] throw three stones each (into the northern furrows), and pass over them, with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 10; *Rig*-v. X, 53, 8): 'Here floweth the stony one: hold on to each other, rise, and cross over, ye friends: here will we leave behind what unkind spirits there be, and will cross over to auspicious nourishments;' —as the text so its import.

4. They cleanse themselves with Apâmârga plants [5]—they thereby wipe away (apa-marg) sin—

[1] The exact meaning of 'vritra-sanku' is doubtful. Kâty. Śr. XXI, 3, 31 has 'deha-sanku' instead, to which the commentary assigns the rather improbable meaning of 'stone-pillar,' in favour of which he refers to IV, 2, 5, 15 of our Brâhmaṇa—'Soma, in truth, was Vritra: the mountains and stones are his body;' whence he makes 'vritra'='asman' (stone).

[2] Or narrow trenches or ditches—kutile karshû, Kâty. XXI, 4, 20. They are apparently semicircular, probably with their open part towards the grave.

[3] These seven furrows are straight, running from west to east; thus separating the grave from the north, the world of men.

[4] That is, the Adhvaryu and the members of the Sacrificer's family.

[5] Lit. 'cleansing-plants' or 'wiping-plants,' Achyranthes aspera; also called the burr-plant (Birdwood), a common hairy weed found all over India, and much used for incantations and sacrificial purposes.

with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 11), 'O Apâmârga, drive thou away from us sin, away guilt, away witchery, away infirmity, away evil dreams!' —as the text so its import.

5. They bathe at any place where there is water. With (Vâg. S. XXXV, 12), 'May the waters and plants be friendly unto us!' he takes water with his joined hands,—for water is a thunderbolt: with the thunderbolt he thus makes friendship,—and with, 'Unfriendly may they be unto him who hateth us, and whom we hate!' he throws it in the direction in which he who is hateful to him may be, and thereby overthrows him.

6. And if it be standing water, it makes their (the bathers') evil stop; and if it flows, it carries away their evil. Having bathed, and put on garments that have never yet been washed, they hold on to the tail of an ox [1], and return (to their home),—for the ox is of Agni's nature: headed by Agni they thus return from the world of the Fathers to the world of the living. And Agni, indeed, is he who leads one over the paths (one has to travel), and it is he who leads these over.

[1] That is to say, one of them takes hold of the tail, whilst the others follow in single file, each holding on to the one walking in front of him. Prof. Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 21, note, refers to the somewhat analogous practice of tying to the left arm of a dead man the tail of the anustaraṇî-cow slain at the funeral sacrifice, whereby the deceased is supposed to be led safely—across the river Vaitaraṇî (Styx); see Sây. on Shaḍv. Br., as quoted Ind. Stud. I, p. 39; cf. also Colebrooke, Misc. Essays, second ed., p. 192—to the world of the Fathers. According to Kâty. XXI, 4, 24 the ceremony of taking hold of the tail is performed with the verse, Vâg. S. XXXV, 13, 'For our well-being we hold on to the ox, sprung from Surabhi: even as Indra to the gods, so be thou a saving leader unto us!'

7. They proceed (towards the village) muttering this verse (Vâg. S. XXXV, 14), 'From out of the gloom have we risen[1] . . .'—from the gloom, the world of the Fathers, they now indeed approach the light, the sun. When they have arrived, ointments for the eyes and the feet are given them: such, indeed, are human means of embellishment, and therewith they keep off death from themselves.

8. Then, in the house, having made up the (domestic) fire, and laid enclosing-sticks of Varaṇa wood round it, he offers, by means of a sruva-spoon of Varaṇa wood, an oblation to Agni Âyushmat[2], for Agni Âyushmat rules over vital power: it is of him he asks vital power for these (the Sacrificer's family). [Vâg. S. XXXV, 16,] 'Thou, Agni, causest vital powers to flow: (send us food and drink, and keep calamity far from us),' serves as invitatory formula.

9. He then offers, with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 17), 'Long-lived be thou, O Agni, growing by offering, ghee-mouthed, ghee-born: drinking the sweet, pleasant cow's ghee, guard thou these, as a father does his son, hail!' he thus says this so that he (Agni) may guard and protect these (men).

10. The sacrificial fee for this (ceremony) consists of an old ox, old barley, an old arm-chair with head-cushion—this at least is the prescribed Dakshiṇâ, but he may give more according to his inclination. Such, indeed, (is the performance) in the case of one who had built a fire-altar.

---

[1] See XII, 9, 2, 8.

[2] I. e. imbued with vital power, long-lived.

11. And in the case of one who has not built a fire-altar, there is the same mode of selecting the site (for the sepulchral mound) and the same performance save that of the fire-altar. 'Let him use pebbles (instead of bricks [1]) in the case of one who keeps up a sacrificial fire,' say some, 'they are just what those pebbles used at the Agnyâdheya are [2].' 'Let him not use them,' say others; 'surely they would be liable to weigh heavily upon one who has not built a fire-altar.' Let him do as he pleases.

12. Having fetched a clod from the boundary, he [3] deposits it (midway) between (the grave and the village), with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 15), 'This I put up as a bulwark for the living, lest another of them should go unto that thing: may they live for a hundred plentiful harvests, and shut out death from themselves by a mountain!'—he thus makes this a boundary between the Fathers and the living, so as not to commingle; and therefore, indeed, the living and the Fathers are not seen together here.

[1] See XIII, 8, 3, 6. [2] See II, 1, 1, 8 seqq.

[3] Viz. the Adhvaryu, according to Mahîdhara on Vâg. S. XXXV, 15. According to Kâty. XXI, 4, 25, this ceremony takes place whilst they are on their way back from the grave to the village; as indeed appears from the order in which the formula used appears in the Vâg. Saṃhitâ. It is difficult to see why the author should not have given it in its right place, unless it was done with a view to a good conclusion to the Kâṇḍa, or because he really wished it to be done after the performance of the offering. It is scarcely necessary to assume that this Kaṇḍikâ is a later addition, perhaps based on the Kâṇva recension.

FOURTEENTH KÂṆḌA.

THE PRAVARGYA.

FIRST ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

1. The gods Agni, Indra, Soma, Makha, Vishṇu, and the Viśve Devâḥ, except the two Aśvins, performed a sacrificial session[1].

2. Their place of divine worship was Kurukshetra. Therefore people say that Kurukshetra is the gods' place of divine worship: hence wherever in Kurukshetra one settles there one thinks, 'This is a place for divine worship;' for it was the gods' place of divine worship.

3. They entered upon the session[2] thinking, 'May we attain excellence! may we become glorious! may we become eaters of food!' And in like manner do these (men) now enter upon the sacrificial session thinking, 'May we attain excellence! may we become glorious! may we become eaters of food!'

4. They spake, 'Whoever of us, through austerity, fervour, faith, sacrifice, and oblations, shall first compass the end of the sacrifice, he shall be the most excellent of us, and shall then be in common to us all.' 'So be it,' they said.

5. Vishṇu first attained it, and he became the

[1] For this legend, see J. Muir, Orig. Sansk. Texts, vol. iv, p. 124.

[2] Lit., they were sitting (for the session): 'âs' (like 'sad') is here used in its technical sense, and not in its ordinary sense 'to sit, to be';—'They were [there. They said],' J. M.

most excellent of the gods; whence people say, 'Vishṇu is the most excellent of the gods.'

6. Now he who is this Vishṇu is the sacrifice; and he who is this sacrifice is yonder Âditya (the sun). But, indeed, Vishṇu was unable to control that (love of) glory of his; and so even now not every one can control that (love of) glory of his.

7. Taking his bow, together with three arrows, he stepped forth. He stood, resting his head on the end of the bow. Not daring to attack him, the gods sat themselves down all around him.

8. Then the ants said—these ants (vamrî), doubtless, were that (kind called) 'upadîkâ[1]'—'What would ye give to him who should gnaw the bowstring?'—'We would give him the (constant) enjoyment of food, and he would find water even in the desert: so we would give him every enjoyment of food.'—'So be it,' they said.

9. Having gone nigh unto him, they gnawed his bowstring. When it was cut, the ends of the bow, springing asunder, cut off Vishṇu's head.

10. It fell with (the sound) 'ghṛiṅ'; and on falling it became yonder sun. And the rest (of the body) lay stretched out (with the top part) towards the east. And inasmuch as it fell with (the sound) 'ghṛiṅ,' therefrom the Gharma[2] (was called); and inasmuch as he was stretched out (pra-vṛig), therefrom the Pravargya (took its name).

11. The gods spake, 'Verily, our great hero

[1] That is, a certain species of ants that are supposed to find water wherever they dig. Cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. XIII, p. 139.

[2] That is, the draught of hot milk boiled in the Mahâvîra pot, and hence often used as a synonym for the latter or the Pravargya.

(mahân vîraḥ) has fallen:' therefrom the Mahâvîra pot (was named). And the vital sap which flowed from him they wiped up (sam-mṛig) with their hands, whence the Samrâg[1].

12. The gods rushed forward to him, even as those eager to secure some gain (will do)[2]. Indra reached him first. He applied himself to him limb after limb, and encompassed him[3], and, in encompassing him, he became (possessed of) that glory of his. And, verily, he who knows this becomes (possessed of) that glory which Indra is (possessed of).

13. And Makha (sacrifice), indeed, is the same as Vishṇu: hence Indra became Makhavat (possessed of makha), since Makhavat is he who is mystically called Maghavat[4], for the gods love the mystic.

14. They gave to those ants the enjoyment of food; but, indeed, all food is water, for it is by moistening (the food) therewith that one eats here whatever one does eat.

15. This Vishṇu, the (Soma-) sacrifice, they then divided amongst themselves into three parts: the Vasus (received) the morning-pressing, the Rudras the midday-pressing, and the Âdityas the third pressing.

16. Agni (received) the morning-pressing, Indra

[1] That is, emperor, or lord paramount, as the Pravargya is named, in the same way as the Soma-plant (and juice) is styled King.

[2] Cf. IV, 1, 3, 5. The construction is hardly so irregular as it is represented there.

[3] That is, he enclosed him (in his own self), he took him in (gobbled him up).

[4] I. e. 'the mighty (lord),' an epithet of Indra.

the midday-pressing, and the Viśve Devâḥ the third pressing.

17. The Gâyatrî (received) the morning-pressing, the Trishṭubh the midday-pressing, and the Gagatî the third pressing. The gods went on worshipping and toiling with that headless sacrifice.

18. Now Dadhyaṅṅ Âtharvaṇa knew this pure essence[1], this Sacrifice, — how this head of the Sacrifice is put on again, how this Sacrifice becomes complete.

19. He then was spoken to by Indra saying, 'If thou teachest this (sacrificial mystery) to any one else, I shall cut off thy head.'

20. Now this was heard by the Aśvins,—'Verily, Dadhyaṅṅ Âtharvaṇa knows this pure essence, this Sacrifice,—how this head of the Sacrifice is put on again, how this Sacrifice becomes complete.'

21. They went up to him and said, 'We two will become thy pupils.'—'What are ye wishing to learn?' he asked.—'This pure essence, this Sacrifice,—how this head of the Sacrifice is put on again, how this Sacrifice becomes complete,' they replied.

22. He said, 'I was spoken to by Indra saying, 'If thou teachest this to any one else, I shall cut off thy head;' therefore I am afraid lest he should indeed cut off my head: I cannot take you as my pupils.'

23. They said, 'We two shall protect thee from him.'—'How will ye protect me?' he replied.—They said, 'When thou wilt have received us as thy

[1] Viz. the Madhu ('honey') or sweet doctrine of the Pravargya, or pot of boiled milk and ghee.

pupils, we shall cut off thy head and put it aside elsewhere; then we shall fetch the head of a horse, and put it on thee: therewith thou wilt teach us; and when thou wilt have taught us, then Indra will cut off that head of thine; and we shall fetch thine own head, and put it on thee again.'—'So be it,' he replied.

24. He then received them (as his pupils); and when he had received them, they cut off his head, and put it aside elsewhere; and having fetched the head of a horse, they put it on him: therewith he taught them; and when he had taught them, Indra cut off that head of his; and having fetched his own head, they put it on him again.

25. Therefore it is concerning this that the *Ri*shi has said (*Rig*-v. I, 116, 12), 'That Dadhya*ñk* Âtharva*ṇa*, with a horse's head, anywise spake forth unto you two the sweet doctrine:'—'Unrestrainedly he spoke this,' is what is thereby meant.

26. One must not teach this to any and every one, since that would be sinful, and lest Indra should cut off his head; but one may only teach it to one who is known to him, and who has studied sacred writ, and who may be dear to him, but not to any and every one.

27. He may teach it to one dwelling with him (as a pupil) for a year; for the year is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thereby gratifies, and therefore he may teach it to one dwelling with him for a year.

28. For three nights he keeps the rule (of abstinence); for there are three seasons in the year, and the year is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that one: it is him he thereby

gratifies, and therefore he keeps the rule for three nights.

29. Hot[1] (water) he sips, thinking, 'I will teach it as one practising austerities.' He teaches it whilst abstaining from flesh-food, thinking, 'I will teach it as one practising austerities;'

30. And whilst not drinking out of earthen (vessels); for whatever untruth (man) speaks on this (earth) is, as it were, immixed with her: therefore (one should do so) whilst not drinking out of earthen (vessels);

31. And whilst not coming into contact with Śûdras and remains of food; for this Gharma is he that shines yonder, and he is excellence, truth, and light: but woman, the Śûdra, the dog, and the black bird (the crow), are untruth: he should not look at these, lest he should mingle excellence and sin, light and darkness, truth and untruth.

32. And, verily, he that shines yonder is glory; and as to that glory, Âditya (the sun), that glory is just the sacrifice; and as to that glory, the sacrifice, that glory is just the Sacrificer; and as to that glory, the Sacrificer, that glory is just the officiating priests; and as to that glory, the officiating priests, that glory is just the sacrificial gifts: hence, if they bring up to him a dakshiṇâ he must not, at least on the same day, make over these (objects) to any one else lest he should make over to some one else that glory which has come to him; but rather on the morrow, or the day after: he thus gives it away after having made that glory his own, whatever it be—gold, a cow, a garment, or a horse.

[1] During the performance of the Pravargya ceremony boiling water has to be used whenever water is required.

33. And, verily, he who either teaches or partakes of this (Pravargya), enters that life, and that light. The observance of the rule thereof (is as follows). Let him not cover himself (with a garment) whilst the sun shines, lest he should be concealed from that (sun). Let him not spit whilst the sun shines, lest he should spit upon him. Let him not discharge urine whilst the sun shines, lest he discharge it upon him. For so long as he shines, so great he (the sun) is: thinking, 'Lest I should injure him by these (acts),' let him take food at night, after striking a light, whereby it is made to be a form of him who shines yonder. But on this point Âsuri used to say,—One rule the gods indeed keep, to wit, the truth: let him therefore speak nothing but the truth.

Second Brâhmaṇa.

The making of the Pot.

1. He equips (the Mahâvîra) with its equipments;—inasmuch as he equips it therewith from this and that quarter, that is the equipping nature of the equipments[1] (sambhâra): wheresoever anything of the sacrifice is inherent, therewith he equips it[2].

2. He gets ready a black antelope-skin,—for the black antelope-skin is the sacrifice[3]: it is at the

[1] See part i, p. 276, note 1. Here, as formerly, it has not been thought desirable to adhere throughout to the technical rendering of 'sam-bhri.'

[2] Pravargya being masculine, the original would, of course, have 'him' here and throughout, the ceremony (just like the sacrifice in general) being indeed looked upon as a person.

[3] See part i, p. 23, note 2. In making the Gharma, or Mahâvîra,

sacrifice he thus prepares (the pot);—with its hairy side (upwards),—for the hairs are the metres: on the metres he thus prepares it;—(spread out) on the left (north) side[1],—for the north is the quarter of men;—on (the skin) with its neck-part to the east[2], for that (tends) towards the gods.

3. With a spade (he digs out the clay), for the spade is a thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt is vigour: with vigour he thus supplies and completes it (the Pravargya).

4. It is made of Udumbara (Ficus glomerata) wood, for the Udumbara is strength[3]: with strength, with vital sap, he thus supplies and completes it.

5. Or of Vikaṅkata (Flacourtia sapida) wood; for when Pragâpati performed his first offering, a Vikaṅkata tree sprang forth from that place where, after offering, he cleansed (his hands); now an offering is a sacrifice, and (consequently) the Vikaṅkata is

---

pot, on the present occasion, the order of proceeding is to a considerable extent the same as that followed at the Agni*k*ayana, in providing the materials for, and making, the fire-pan, for which, see VI, 3, 3, 1 seqq. Cf. also the Âpastamba *Ś*rautas. XV, with Garbe's Translation and Notes, Journal of Germ. Or. Soc., vol. xxxiv.

[1] That is, immediately north of the lump of clay (previously prepared by a potter) and the other objects to be used for making the Mahâvîra pot, which have been previously deposited near the anta*h*pâtya peg marking the middle of the west or hinder side of the Mahâvedi.

[2] The locative, instead of the accusative, is rather strange here. As it stands, the locative is evidently parallel to '*yagñe*' and '*kh*anda*h*su,' and one has therefore to supply—he collects (prepares) the Pravargya, viz. by putting the lump of clay and the other objects thereon.

[3] See VI, 6, 3, 2 seqq.

the sacrifice: with the sacrifice he thus supplies and completes it.

6. It is a cubit long, for a cubit means the (fore-) arm, and with the arm strength is exerted: it (the spade) thus is composed of strength, and with strength he thus supplies and completes it.

7. He takes it up, with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 1), 'At the impulse of the god Savitri, I take thee by the arms of the Asvins, by the hands of Pûshan: thou art a woman;'—the import (of this formula) is the same as before[1].

8. Having placed it in his left hand, he touches it with the right, and mutters (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 2), 'They harness the mind, and they harness the thoughts, the priests of the priest, of the great inspirer of devotion; the knower of the rites alone hath assigned the priestly offices: great is the praise of the god Savitri;'—the import of this is the same as before[2].

9. He then takes the lump of clay with the (right) hand and spade on the right (south) side, and with the (left) hand alone on the left (north) side[3], with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 3), 'O divine Heaven and Earth,'—for when the sacrifice had its head cut off, its sap flowed away, and entered the sky and the earth: what clay (firm matter) there was that is this (earth), and what water there was that is yonder (sky); hence it is of clay and water that the Mahâvira (vessels) are made: he thus supplies and

[1] See I, 1, 2, 17; VI, 3, 1, 38 seq.

[2] See III, 5, 3, 11–12.

[3] Between the two actions referred to in paragraphs 8 and 9, the digging up of the clay takes place, and hence the spade, or trowel, has changed hands. Cf. VI, 4, 2, 2.

completes it (the Pravargya) with that sap; wherefore he says, 'O divine Heaven and Earth,'—'May I this day compass for you Makha's head,'—Makha being the sacrifice, he thus says, 'May I this day accomplish for you[1] the head of the sacrifice;'—'on the Earth's place of divine worship,'—for on a place of divine worship of the earth he prepares it;—'for Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!'—Makha being the sacrifice, he thus says, 'For the sacrifice (I consecrate) thee, for the head of the sacrifice (I consecrate) thee.'

10. Then an ant-hill[2] (he takes, and puts on the skin), with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 4), 'Ye divine ants,'—for it was they that produced this: just in accordance with the way in which the head of the sacrifice was there cut off, he now supplies and completes it with those (ants);—'the firstborn of the world,'—the firstborn of the world, doubtless, is this earth[3]: it thus is therewith that

[1] The pronouns in this and the subsequent corresponding formulas (vâm, va*h*, te) are taken by Mahîdhara as accusatives ('te' according to him standing for 'tvâm') to which he supplies 'âdâya'—'having taken you, may I this day compass Makha's head.' The pronouns are certainly somewhat awkward, as they can scarcely be taken as genitives of material—of you, of thee.

[2] See VI, 3, 3, 5, where 'valmîkavapâ' is qualified by 'sushirâ,' hollow. The comm. on Kâty. XXVI, 1, 2 explains 'valmîkavapâ' as the vapâ (omentum)-like inner lump (? surrounded by a kind of net) of an ant-hill: in the present case, this substance is likewise placed on the black antelope-skin to be mixed with the clay.

[3] Whilst in the text of the formula this word must be taken as being plural 'prathamagâ*h*,' the Brâhma*ṇa* (making use of the Sandhi-form) treats it as if it were singular 'prathamagâ.' Mahîdhara also, apparently influenced by the Brâhma*ṇa*, explains, 'the earth is the firstborn of creatures, and, from their connection with it, ants also are called firstborn.'

he supplies and completes it;—'may I this day compass for you Makha's head on the Earth's place of divine worship:—for Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!'—the import of this is the same as before.

11. Then (earth) torn up by a boar (he takes), with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 5), 'Only thus large was she in the beginning,'—for, indeed, only so large was this earth in the beginning, of the size of a span. A boar, called Emûsha, raised her up, and he was her lord Pragâpati: with that mate, his heart's delight, he thus supplies and completes him[1];—'may I this day compass for you Makha's head on the Earth's place of divine worship: for Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before.

12. Then Âdâra[2] (-plants), with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 6), 'Indra's might ye are,'—for when Indra encompassed him (Vishṇu) with might, then the vital sap of him, thus encompassed, flowed away; and he lay there stinking, as it were. He said, 'Verily, after bursting open (â-dar), as it were, this vital sap has sung praises:' thence Âdâra (-plants originated); and because he lay there stinking (pûy), as it were, therefore (they are also called) Pûtîka; and hence, when placed on the fire

[1] That is, he supplies Pragâpati (and hence also his counterpart, the Sacrificer) with the Earth, his mate. See J. Muir, Orig. Sansk. Texts, vol. i, p. 53; vol. iv, p. 27; and cp. Taitt. I, 10, 8, where the earth is said to have been uplifted by a black boar with a thousand arms.

[2] At IV, 5, 10. 4 we met with this plant—here also called Pûtîka, and explained, by the comm. on Kâty., as = the flowers (!) of the Rohisha plant (? Guilandina, or Caesalpinia, Bonducella)—as a substitute for Soma-plants.

as an offering, they blaze; and hence also they are fragrant, for they originated from the vital sap of the sacrifice. And inasmuch as Indra, on that occasion, encompassed him with might, therefore he says, 'Indra's might ye are;'—'may I this day compass for you Makha's head on the Earth's place of divine worship: for Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before.

13. Then goat's milk;—for when the sacrifice had its head cut off, its heat went out of it, wherefrom the goat was produced: it is with that heat[1] that he thereby supplies and completes it;—with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before.

14. These, then, are the five equipments with which he equips (the Pravargya),—fivefold is the sacrifice, and fivefold the victims, and five seasons are in the year, and the year is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies. These (objects), thus brought together, he touches with, 'For Makha (I consecrate) thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before.

15. Now there is an enclosed space[2] on the north

[1] Thus perhaps '*suk*' should also have been rendered at VI, 4, 4, 7, where it is used in connection with the ass.

[2] Viz. a space five cubits square enclosed with mats on all sides, and with a door on the east side, the ground being raised in the middle so as to form a mound covered with sand (cf. III, 1, 2, 2). The object of this enclosed space is to prevent any unauthorised person (such as the Sacrificer's wife, and people uninstructed in the scriptures) from seeing the manufacturing of the Mahîvîra (during which the door is kept closed), as well as the completed pot.

side: whilst proceeding towards that (shed) they mutter (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 7; *Rig*-v. I, 40, 3), 'May Brahmaṇaspati go forward!'—Brahmaṇaspati (the lord of devotion) doubtless is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that one: it is him he thus gratifies; hence he says, 'May Brahmaṇaspati go forward;'—'may the goddess Gladness go forward!'—for the goddess Gladness she (Vâk[1]) is;—'unto the hero[2], kindly to men and the dispenser of fivefold (offerings),'—he thereby praises and magnifies it (the Pravargya),—'unto the sacrifice may the gods lead us!'—he thereby makes all the gods its guardians.

16. It is an enclosed space;—for at that time the gods were afraid, thinking, 'We hope that the fiends, the Rakshas, will not injure here this our (Pravargya):' they accordingly enclosed for it this stronghold, and in like manner does this (Sacrificer) now enclose for it this stronghold.

17. He then deposits (the sambhâras[3]) on the mound with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before. He then takes a lump of clay and makes the Mahâvîra (pot) with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee,'—the import of this is

---

The place is to the north of the antaḥpâtya peg, the black antelope-skin being spread to the south of it (and immediately north of the materials used in making the pot).

[1] Thus Mahîdhara, on Vâg. S. XXXIII, 89.

[2] 'Vîra,' apparently an allusion to 'Mahâ-vîra' (great hero), the name of the pot used at the Pravargya.

[3] Viz. as placed on the black antelope-skin which is carried northwards to the enclosed place by the Adhvaryu and his assistants taking hold of it on all sides.

the same as before;—a span high[1], for the head is, as it were, a span high;—contracted in the middle[2], for the head is, as it were, contracted in the middle. At the top he then draws it out (so as to form) a spout[3] of three thumbs' breadths (high): he thereby makes a nose to this (Mahâvîra, or Pravargya). When it is complete, he touches it with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 8), 'Makha's head thou art,'—for it indeed is the head of Makha Saumya (the Soma-sacrifice). In the same way (he makes) the other two (Mahâvîra pots[4]); silently two milking-bowls (pinvana[5]), and silently two Rauhiṇa-plates[6].

18. Verily this sacrifice is Pragâpati, and Pragâpati

[1] That is, from bottom to top, a belt (mekhalâ) running round it at the distance of three thumbs' breadths from the top (Mahîdhara, and comm. on Kâty.). This top part above the belt—here simply called 'mouth,' whilst in the Âpast. Śr. XV, 2, 14 it is called 'back' (sânu)—ends in a hole for pouring the liquid in and out.

[2] That is, for taking hold of it (mushṭigrahaṇayogyam, comm. on Kâty.).

[3] 'Mukha,' for which Kâty. XXVI, 1, 16 has 'âsekana' explained by the commentator as a hole (garta; comm. on Âśv. Gṛihyas. IV, 3 bila), apparently serving as the mouth, or open part of the vessel which seems to be otherwise closed. The edge of the hole would seem to protract sufficiently from the surface to suggest a similarity to the nose. In making the vessel, it seems first to be left solid, the open part which is to hold the milk being then hollowed out by means of a reed from the top hole to the depth of less than the upper half, the remainder remaining solid. Cf. Âśv. Śr. XV, 3, 4.

[4] Only the first of the three pots is, however, actually used; unless it gets broken by accident.

[5] According to the comm. on Kâty. Śr., these vessels are of the form of the (hand-shaped) bowl of an offering-ladle (sruk, cf. part i, p. 67, note 2).

[6] The Rauhiṇa-kapâlas are two round, flat dishes for baking the Rauhiṇa cakes on.

is both of this, defined and undefined, limited and unlimited[1]. Whatever one does with a Yagus formula, by that one makes up that form of him (Pragâpati) which is defined and limited; and whatever one does silently, by that one makes up that form of him which is undefined and unlimited: verily, then, whosoever, knowing this, does it on this wise, makes up that whole and complete Pragâpati. But he also leaves over a lump of spare (clay) for expiations.

19. He then smooths[2] it by means of Gavedhukâ grass (Coix barbata),—for when the sacrifice had its head cut off, its vital sap flowed away, and therefrom those plants grew up: with that vital sap he thus supplies and completes it;—with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before. In the same way the other two (Mahâvira pots); silently the two milking-bowls, silently the two Rauhiṇa-plates.

20. He then fumigates these (vessels) with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 9), 'With dung of the stallion, the impregnator, I fumigate thee,'—for the

[1] Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sansk. Texts, vol. v, p. 393, where a passage is quoted from Prof. Cowell's translation of the Maitri-Upanishad (VI, 3). 'There are two forms of Brahma, the embodied (mûrta) and the unembodied (amûrta): the former is unreal (asatya), the latter real (satya).'—Cf. Sat. Br. VI, 5, 3, 7.

[2] The Sûtras use the verbs 'ślakshṇayati, ślakshṇikurvanti' (to make smooth, or soft), and this, I think, must indeed be the meaning of 'hinv.' It would also suit very well the passage III, 5, 1, 35, where it is said that the Vedi is a woman, and that, by sprinkling the former with water, one 'makes her smooth' for the gods. The polishing of the vessels is done by rubbing them with Gavedhukâ grass, whether with the spike, stem, or leaves is not specified.

stallion is an impregnator, and the impregnator means vigour: with vigour he thus supplies and completes it,—'on the Earth's place of divine worship: for Makha thee, for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before. In the same way (he fumigates) the other two (Mahâvîra pots); silently the two milking-bowls, and silently the two Rauhiṇa-plates.

21. He then bakes them, for what is baked belongs to the gods. He bakes them by means of bricks, for they it was that did so on that occasion[1]: just in accordance with the way in which the head of the sacrifice was there cut off, he now supplies and completes it with those (bricks). But, indeed, let him bake them with anything[2] whereby they may become properly baked. Having laid down the fuel for baking[3], he puts down the Mahâvîra (pot), with, 'For Makha thee, for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before. In the same way the other two Mahâvîra (pots); silently the two milking-bowls, silently the two Rauhiṇa-plates. By day he should bury them (in the hole), and by day he should take them out, for the day belongs to the gods.

[1] That is, when the Ukhâ was baked, cf. VI, 5, 4, 1; or, perhaps,—they it was that (the gods) made at this juncture. The former translation is more in accordance with what follows, though one would expect 'etad' to mean 'at this time.'

[2] That is, without using bricks (?).

[3] Viz. in a square hole dug for the purpose east of the Gârhapatya; the pot being then placed bottom upwards on the burning material, dry herbs, wood, &c. According to Âsv. Śr. XV, 3, 20 such materials are to be used as, whilst being burnt, dye red.

22. He takes out (the first pot) with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 10), 'For the righteous one (I take) thee,'—the righteous one, doubtless, is yonder world, for the righteous one means truth; and he that shines yonder is the truth, and the first Pravargya is that (god): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For the righteous one (I take) thee.'

23. With, 'For the efficient one thee' (he takes out the second pot),—the efficient one (sâdhu), doubtless, is he (Vâyu, the wind) that purifies here by blowing, for as a permanent one (siddha) he blows through these worlds; and the second Pravargya is that (god): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For the efficient one (I take) thee.'

24. With, 'For a good abode thee!' (he takes out the third pot),—the good abode, doubtless, is this (terrestrial) world, for it is in this world that all creatures abide; and the good abode also is Agni (fire), for Agni abides with all creatures[1] in this world; and the third Pravargya is that (god): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For a good abode thee.' Silently (he takes out) the two milking-bowls, and silently the two Rauhiṇa-plates.

25. He then pours goat's milk upon them[2] (the

[1] The accusative with 'kshi' (to inhabit) is rather peculiar here.

[2] As the pots are, however, standing with their open parts upwards, on sand north of the hole in which they were baked, it would chiefly be inside that they would receive the milk, being thereby cooled (cf. VI, 5, 4, 15). According to Âpastamba, sand is in the first place heaped up around them in the sunwise fashion, i.e. keeping them on the right side whilst strewing it.

first) with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before. In the same way the other two; silently the two milking-bowls, and silently the two Rauhiṇa-plates.

26. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance of the rule thereof is the same as at the creation [1].

THIRD BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now at the time when he there [2] proceeds with the guest-meal, he who intends to perform the Pravargya, prior to the Upasads [3], spreads Kuśa grass with its tops directed towards the east, in front of the Gârhapatya, and places the vessels thereon in pairs [4],—the Upayamanî (tray) and the Mahâvîra (pot), the pair of lifting-sticks [5], the

[1] That is to say, as would seem,—even as, in creating the universe, Pragâpati reconstructs his body, or constructs himself a new body, so the Sacrificer, in keeping up the observance of the Pravargya, constructs himself a new body for the future life.

[2] That is, at the Soma-sacrifice, of the preliminary day (upavasatha) of which the guest-meal to, or hospitable reception (âtithya) of, King Soma forms part (see part ii, p. 85 seqq.). The assumption here is, that the performance of the Pravargya takes place on that day before the Pressing-day, whilst in reality it has been performed for at least two days before that.

[3] See III, 4, 4, 1. The Upasads are performed twice daily, for at least three days, up to the day before the Soma-sacrifice; and if the Pravargya is to be performed likewise, it precedes immediately each performance of the Upasad. Cf. also XIV, 3, 1, 1 with note.

[4] Prior to this, the doors of the śâlâ are to be closed, to keep the Mahâvîra from being seen; see p. 452, note 2. The entire performance of the Pravargya indeed has to be kept secret from the eyes of unauthorised persons.

[5] The 'parîśâsau' (also called 'śaphau,' XIV, 2, 1, 16) are two

two milking-bowls, the two Rauhiṇa-plates, the two offering spoons for the Rauhiṇa (cakes), and whatever other (implement) there is,—these make ten, for the Virâg consists of ten syllables, and the sacrifice is Virâg: he thus makes this to be equal to the Virâg, the sacrifice. And as to their being in pairs,—a pair means strength, for when two take hold of each other they exert strength; and a pair (couple) means a productive union: with a productive union he thus supplies and completes it.

2. Then the Adhvaryu takes the (lustral) sprinkling water, and, stepping up, says, 'Brahman, we shall proceed: Hotṛi, sing praises!' for the Brahman is seated on the right (south) side as the guardian of the sacrifice: to him he thus says, 'Sit thou undistracted: we are about to restore the head of the Sacrifice;' and 'Hotṛi, sing praises!' he says, because the Hotṛi is the sacrifice: he thus thereby says to him, 'Restore the head of the sacrifice!' and accordingly the Hotṛi begins to recite—

3. [Vâg. S. XIII, 3.] 'The Brahman, firstborn from afore[1],—the Brahman, doubtless, is yonder

pieces of wood or laths apparently fastened together by a kind of clasp (or a cord) at one end, so as to serve the purpose of a pair of tongs (parîśâsau saṁdaṁśâkârau, comm. on Kâty. XXVI, 2, 10) for taking up the Mahâvîra pot, which must not be handled in any other way. According to Haug, Ait. Br., Transl., p. 51, they are placed underneath the pot in lifting it, but this seems very improbable, seeing that, at the end of the sacrifice, the Adhvaryu, by means of them, turns the pot upside down so as to pour the remainder of its contents into the offering spoon (see Kâty. XXIV, 6, 17 with comm.); nor could the blackened pot in that way be cleansed properly and placed on the supporting tray (XIV, 2, 1, 16–17).

[1] For the complete verse, see VII, 4, 1, 14. For the complete

sun, and he is born day by day from afore (in the east); and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'The Brahman (n.), firstborn from afore.' He then sprinkles (the vessels): the import of this is the same as before [1].

4. He sprinkles (the chief Mahâvîra) with (Âg. S. XXXVII, 11), 'For Yama thee!'—Yama, doubtless, is he who shines yonder, for it is he who controls (yam) everything here, and by him everything here is controlled; and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For Yama (I sprinkle) thee.'

5. 'For Makha thee!'—Makha, doubtless, is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that one: it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For Makha thee.'

6. 'For Sûrya's heat thee!'—Sûrya, doubtless, is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that one: it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For Sûrya's heat thee.'

7. Having taken out a post [2] by the front door (of the *sâlâ*), he drives it into the ground on the south side (of the *sâlâ* [3]), so that the Hotṛi, whilst singing praises, may look upon it; for the Hotṛi is the sacrifice, and he thereby restores the sacrifice to this (earth), and she causes the Gharma (milk) to rise.

series of texts recited by the Hotṛi, see Ait. Br. I, 19 seqq.; Âśv. Śr. IV, 6.

[1] Viz. he makes the vessels sacrificially pure (I, 3, 3, 1).

[2] For tying the cow that is to furnish the milk for the Gharma. Near it a peg is driven into the ground to tie the goat to whose milk is to be used afterwards.

[3] That would be, south of the southern door (Âpast. XV, 6, 13).

8. Having turned round the Emperor's throne-seat[1] in front of the Âhavanîya, he places it south thereof, and north of the King's (Soma's) throne-seat[2], so as to face the east.

9. It is made of Udumbara wood, for the Udumbara means strength: with strength, with vital sap, he thus supplies and completes it (the Pravargya).

10. It is shoulder-high, for on the shoulders this head is set: he thus sets the head upon the shoulders.

11. It is wound all over with cords[3] of Balvaga grass (Eleusine indica). When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its vital sap flowed out, and thence these plants grew up: with that life-sap he thus supplies and completes it.

12 And as to why he places it north (of Soma's seat),—Soma is the sacrifice, and the Pravargya is its head; but the head is higher (uttara): therefore he places it north (uttara) of it. Moreover, Soma is king, and the Pravargya is emperor, and the imperial dignity is higher than the royal: therefore he places it north of it[4].

---

[1] The Pravargya is styled 'samrâg,' or universal king, emperor; as distinguished from King Soma, for whose seat, reaching only up to the navel, see III, 3, 4, 26 seqq. (Cf. also that of the Ukhya Agni, which is only a span high, VI, 7, 1, 1, 12 seqq.)—For a similar attribution of imperial dignity (sâmrâgya)—as well as royal dignity (râgya)—to him who is consecrated by the Sautrâmaṇî (where the seat used is knee-high), see XII, 8, 3, 4 seqq.

[2] Âpast. XV, 6, 10 places it in front (east) of the seat for Soma.

[3] Cf. XII, 8, 3, 6.

[4] According to Kâty. XXVI, 2, 17 (Âpast. XV, 6, 11), the black antelope-skin is then spread over the seat, and the two unused Mahâvîra pots (as well as the reserve piece of clay and the spade, Kâty.) placed thereon.

13. And when the Hotṛi recites this (verse, *Rig*-v. V, 43, 7), 'Whom the priests anoint, as if spreading him . . .,' he anoints that Mahâvîra which is to be used, all over with ghee[1], with, 'May the god Savitṛi anoint thee with honey!' for Savitṛi is the impeller of the gods, and honey means everything whatever there is here: he thus anoints it (or him) all over with everything here, and Savitṛi, as the impeller, impels it for him,—this is why he says, 'May the god Savitṛi anoint thee with honey!'

14. Now sand has been strewed[2] on the north side of it: below that he (previously) throws (a plate of) white gold[3], with, 'Protect it from contact with the earth!' For at that time the gods were afraid lest the Rakshas, the fiends, might injure that (Pravargya) of theirs from below; and that, to wit, gold, being Agni's seed, it (serves) for repelling the fiends, the Rakshas. But, indeed, the Earth also was afraid of this lest this (Pravargya), when heated and glowing[4], might injure

[1] Kâty. XXVI, 2, 4 refers to the pot as 'containing ghee (âgyavant),' which the comm. takes to mean 'filled with consecrated ghee;' whilst Âpast. XV, 7, 5 leaves the option between greasing it (aṅg) and filling it (abhipûr) with ghee. It would doubtless, at all events, be abundantly greased inside.

[2] North of the Gârhapatya and the Âhavanîya in the śâlâ two mounds (khara) are formed, covered with (or consisting of) sand. The one north of the latter fire is here alluded to.

[3] That is, a silver plate weighing a hundred grains.

[4] Though 'taptaḥ' and 'śuśukânaḥ' are here translated as if they were actually co-ordinate predicates, I am not sure whether we should not rather take the passage to mean,—that this glowing one, when heated; or rather, this one when heated so as to be glowing. Cf. XIV, 2, 1, 18; 3, 1, 14, where I prefer to subordinate one of the participles to the other.

her: he thus keeps it separate from her. White it is, for white, as it were[1], is this earth.

15. And when the Hotṛi recites this (verse, *Rig*-v. I, 36, 9), 'Sit thee down: thou art great . . .,' sheaths of reed-grass are kindled on both sides[2], and throwing them (on the mound), he puts (the Mahâvîra pot) thereon. When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and therefrom these plants grew up: with that life-sap he thus supplies and completes it.

16. And as to why they are kindled on both sides: he thereby repels the Rakshas, the fiends, from all the quarters. Whilst this (pot) is being heated, the (Sacrificer's) wife covers her head, thinking, 'Lest this one, when heated and glowing, should rob me of my eyesight,' for it indeed becomes heated and glowing.

17. He puts it on with, 'Flame thou art, glow thou art, heat thou art;'—for the Gharma is he who shines yonder, and he indeed is all that: it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'Flame thou art, glow thou art, heat thou art.'

18. He (the Sacrificer) then invokes blessings on this (earth)[3], for the sacrifice is this (earth): it is thus (whilst being) on her that he invokes blessings, and she fulfils them all for him.

[1] I read, 'ragateva'; cf. the corresponding 'harinîva hi dyauḥ,' XIV, 1, 3, 29.

[2] That is, by dividing the sheaths in the middle lengthwise, and lighting both halves in the Gârhapatya fire.

[3] According to Kâty. XXVI, 3, 5 he makes a span (of thumb and index)—or spreads his hand with the palm downwards—over the pot whilst muttering the respective formulas; apparently changing the position of the hand according to the point of the compass referred to in the formula.

19. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 12.] 'Unmolested thou art in front (in the east),'—for unmolested by the Rakshas, the fiends, indeed, this (earth) is in front;—'in Agni's over-lordship,'—he thus makes Agni her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—'grant thou life unto me!'—he thus secures life for himself, and accordingly he attains the full (term of) life.

20. 'Possessed of sons towards the south,'—in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak;—'in Indra's over-lordship,'—he thus makes Indra her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—'grant thou offspring unto me!'—he thus secures offspring and cattle for himself, and accordingly he becomes possessed of sons and of cattle.

21. 'Well to live on behind (towards the western region),'—in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak;—'in god Savitri's over-lordship;'—the god Savitri he thus makes her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—'grant thou eyesight unto me!'—he thus secures eyesight for himself, and accordingly he becomes possessed of eyesight.

22. 'A sphere of hearing towards the north,'—'causing (sacrificial calls) to be heard[1],' is what he thereby means to say;—'in the creator's over-lordship,'—the creator he thus

[1] Or, calling for the '*srausha*t'; cf. part i, p. 131, note 2. The masculine form of the participle is somewhat peculiar as the term it is meant to explain refers to the earth. It has probably to be understood in the sense of, 'where he (viz. the Adhvaryu) calls for the *srausha*t.' Mahîdhara explains the term 'âsruti' by 'where they, the priests, utter the sacrificial calls,' i. e. 'meet for sacrifice.'

makes her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—'grant thou prosperity (increase) of wealth unto me!'—wealth, prosperity, he thus secures for himself, and accordingly he becomes wealthy and prosperous.

23. 'Disposition above,'—'disposing[1] above' is what he thereby means to say;—'in Bṛihaspati's over-lordship,'—Bṛihaspati he thus makes her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—'grant me vigour!'—vigour he thereby secures to himself, and accordingly he becomes vigorous, strong.

24. On the right (south) side (of the Mahâvîra) he (the Sacrificer) then makes amends by (laying down) the hand with the palm upwards, with, 'Shield me from all evil spirits!' whereby he means to say, 'Protect me from all troubles!' When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and went to the Fathers, but the Fathers are three in number[2]: it is with these that he thus supplies and completes it (the Pravargya).

25. Thereupon, whilst touching her (the earth)[3],

[1] Here the masculine gender can hardly be understood otherwise than in the sense 'where (Bṛihaspati, or Brahman) disposes on high.' Mahîdhara takes no notice of this interpretation of the Brâhmaṇa, but explains 'vidhṛiti' as either 'one who upholds (dhârayati) in an especial manner,' or where 'the offering spoon, &c., is held upwards (uparishṭâd dhriyate,—? who holds it upwards),'—an explanation which can hardly commend itself.

[2] This specification of the number seems to have no other object but that of limiting the general term of 'Fathers,' or deceased ancestors, to the specific signification it has at the Śrâddha, where offering is made to the father, grandfather, and great-grandfather.

[3] According to Kâty. XXVI, 3, 8, he does so whilst spanning the earth north of the Mahâvîra pot.

'Thou art Manu's mare,' for, having become a mare, she (the earth) indeed carried Manu, and he is her lord, Pragâpati: with that mate, his heart's delight, he thus supplies and completes him (Pragâpati, the Pravargya, and Sacrificer).

26. He then lays pieces of (split) Vikaṅkata wood round (the Mahâvîra), two pointing to the east[1], with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 13), 'Hail! be thou encompassed by the Maruts!'—the call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last[2]; for the call of 'hail!' is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies; and hence he places the call of 'hail!' first, and the deity last.

27. 'Be thou encompassed by the Maruts,' he says; for the Maruts are the (common) people: he thus surrounds the nobility by the people, whence the nobility here is surrounded on both sides by the people. Silently (he lays down) two pointing to the north[3], silently (again) two pointing to the east, silently two pointing to the north, silently two pointing to the east.

28. He makes them to amount to thirteen, for there are thirteen months in the year, and the

[1] That is, along the north and the south sides of the pot, on the burning sheaths of reed grass; or rather on hot cinders heaped thereon. Kâty. XXVI, 3, 9. They would partly serve the purpose of the ordinary (three) enclosing-sticks; and Âpast., indeed, calls them 'paridhi.'

[2] Literally, the call of 'hail!' (svâhâ-kâra) he makes to be the nearer, and the deity the farther.

[3] That is, along the west and the east sides of the pot. According to Âpast. Śr. XV, 8, 1–4, two pieces of wood are laid down alternately by the Adhvaryu and the Pratiprasthâtṛi, the last pieces being then laid down (on the south side) by the former priest.

year is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and hence he makes them to amount to thirteen.

29. He then places a gold plate (weighing a hundred grains) on the top (of the pot), with, 'Protect it from contact with the sky!' For at that time the gods were afraid lest the Rakshas, the fiends, might injure that (Pravargya) of theirs from above; and that—to wit, gold—being Agni's seed, it (serves) for repelling the fiends, the Rakshas. But, indeed, the Sky also was afraid of this lest this (Pravargya), when heated and glowing, might injure it: he thus keeps it separate therefrom. It is yellow, for yellow, as it were, is the sky.

30. He (the Adhvaryu) then fans (the fire) thrice by means of (three) fans[1], whilst muttering, 'Honey!' each time; for honey means breath: he thus lays breath into it. Three (fans) there are, for there are three breathings, the out (and in)-breathing, the up-breathing and the through-breathing: it is these he thus lays into it.

31. They then fan it thrice[2] in the non-sunwise way. When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and went to the Fathers,—the Fathers being three in number[3]: with them he thus supplies it.

32. But, indeed, the breathings depart from those who perform the fanning at the sacrifice. They

[1] They consist of pieces cut from the black antelope-skin (with black and white hair, according to Âpast. XV, 5, 12), fastened to sticks.

[2] That is, the Adhvaryu, Pratiprasthâtri, and Agnîdh then take each one of the fans, and move round the fire whilst keeping it on their left side (the Agnîdh going in front).

[3] See p. 465, note 2.

fan again thrice in the sunwise way,—this makes six; and six in number are these breathings (vital airs) in the head: it is these he thus lays into it. They cook the two Rauhiṇa (cakes). When a blaze is produced, he takes off the gold (plate).

33. And when the Hotṛi recites this (verse, *Ṛig*-v. I, 112, 24), 'Successful, O Aśvins, make ye our voice,' the Adhvaryu steps up, and says, 'The Gharma is aglow[1].' If it be aglow, he may know that the Sacrificer will become more prosperous; and if it be not aglow, he may know that he will become poorer; and if it be neither aglow nor the reverse, he may know that he (the Sacrificer) will become neither more prosperous nor poorer: but indeed (the pot) should be fanned so (long) as to be aglow.

34. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance thereof is the same as at the creation[2].

[1] That is, apparently, red-hot, glowing (*sukita*), or perhaps, entirely ablaze, enveloped in flames—outside as well as inside, owing to the ghee with which it was greased all over; hence hardly, 'bestrahlt' (illumined, shone upon), as the St. Petersb. Dict. takes it; cf. *susukâna*, XIV, 2, 1, 18; 3, 1, 14. According to Âpast. *Śr.*, the three priests, having completed their circumambulation, sit down on the east, south, and north side respectively, and continue to fan the pot, at the same time oiling it with ghee, until the pot is ablaze, when the Adhvaryu takes off the gold plate. According to Kâty., on the other hand, the Pratiprasthâtṛi proceeds with the baking of the cakes, whilst the Adhvaryu sprinkles the pot with ghee each time that the Hotṛi, in his recitation, utters the syllable 'om' at the end of a verse. Before the last verse, the twenty-fifth, of the same hymn concluding the first part of the recitation, a special verse, IX, 83, 3, is inserted. Âśv. *Śr.* IV, 6, 2–3.

[2] See p. 458, note 1.

FOURTH BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, when the Adhvaryu here steps up and says, 'The Gharma is aglow,' they step up and revere it (the Mahâvîra) with the Avakâśa[1]; but the 'avakâśa' are the vital airs: it is thus the vital airs he lays into it. Six of them[2] step up to it, for six in number are these vital airs in the head: it is these he thus lays into it.

2. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 14,] 'The child of the gods,'—the child (garbha) of the gods, in truth, is he that shines yonder, for he holds (grabh) everything here, and by him everything here is held; and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'The child of the gods.'

3. 'The father of thoughts,'—for he (the sun) is indeed the father of thoughts;—'the lord of creatures,'—for he is indeed the lord of creatures.

4. 'The god hath united with the god Savitri,'—for the god (the Mahâvîra) has indeed united with the god Savitri (the sun);—'with Sûrya he shineth,'—for (equally) with Sûrya (the sun) he has indeed shone.

5. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 15,] 'Agni hath united with Agni,'—for Agni (fire) has indeed united with Agni;—'with the divine Savitri,'—for with the divine Savitri he has indeed united;—'with Sûrya

---

[1] Avakâśa (looks, or possibly, apertures) is the technical designation of the verses Vâg. S. XXXVII, 14–20 a.

[2] Viz. the Sacrificer and the priests with the exception of the Prastotri.

he hath shone,'—for with Sûrya he has indeed shone.

6. 'Hail! Agni hath united with his heat,'—for Agni has indeed united with his heat; the call of hail he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before;—'with the divine Savitṛi,'—for with the divine Savitṛi he has indeed united;—'with Sûrya he hath shed light,'—for with Sûrya he has indeed shed light.

7. These, then, are three 'avakâśa,'—for there are three vital airs, the in (and out)-breathing, the up-breathing, and the through-breathing: it is thereby that he lays it (the vital air) into him.

8. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 16.] 'The sustainer of the sky, and of heat upon earth, shineth forth,'—for as the sustainer of the sky, and of heat on earth, that (sun, and Mahâvîra) indeed shines forth;—'the divine sustainer of the gods, he, the immortal, born of heat,'—for he is indeed the divine sustainer of the gods, the immortal one, born of heat;—'grant unto us speech, devoted to the gods!'—speech doubtless is worship: he thus means to say thereby, 'bestow upon us worship whereby we shall please the gods!'

9. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 17; *Ṛig*-v. I, 164, 31; X, 177, 3.] 'I beheld the guardian, the never-resting[1],'—he who shines yonder is indeed the guardian, for he guards everything here; and he does not lie down to rest: therefore he says, 'I beheld the guardian, the never-resting;'—

[1] Or, as Mahîdhara and Sâyaṇa take it, the never-falling.

10. 'Wandering on paths hither and thither,'—for he indeed wanders hither and thither on the divine[1] paths;—'arraying himself in the gathering and the radiating,'—for he indeed arrays himself in the gathering (converging) and the radiating regions, or rays;—'he moveth to and fro within the spheres,'—for again and again he wanders moving within these worlds.

11. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 18,] 'O lord of all worlds, O lord of all thought, O lord of all speech, O lord of every speech!' that is, 'O lord of all this (universe);'—'Thou art heard by the gods, O god Gharma, as a god, guard thou the gods!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

12. 'Give thy countenance hereafter to the divine feast of you two,'—it is with regard to the two Aśvins that he says this, for it was the Aśvins that then restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Give thy countenance hereafter to the divine feast of you two.'

13. 'Honey to the two lovers of honey! honey to the two longing for honey!'—for Dadhyañk the Âtharvaṇa indeed told them (the Aśvins) the Brâhmaṇa called Madhu (honey), and this is their dear resource: it is by means of that (dear resource) of theirs that he approaches them, and therefore he says, 'Honey to the two lovers of honey! honey to the two longing for honey!'

14. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 19.] 'To the heart

[1] One might expect 'daívaiḥ pathíbhiḥ' or 'devaíḥ pathíbhiḥ,' which Mahîdhara explains by 'devamârgaiḥ.'

(I consecrate) thee, to the mind thee, to the sky thee, to the sun thee: going upwards take thou the sacrifice to the gods in heaven!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

15. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 20,] 'Thou art our father: be thou our father!'—for he who shines yonder is indeed the father, and the Pravargya is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'Thou art our father: be thou our father!'—'Reverence be unto thee: injure me not!'—it is a blessing he thereby invokes.

16. Thereupon he uncovers the head of the (Sacrificer's) wife, and makes her say whilst she is looking at the Mahâvîra, 'Together with Tvash*tri* will we serve thee: (bestow thou sons and cattle upon me! bestow thou offspring upon us! may I remain unscathed together with my husband!)'—the Pravargya (m.) is a male, and the wife is a female: a productive pair is thus produced.

17. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance thereof is the same as at the creation [1].

Second Adhyâya. First Brâhmaṇa.

The Boiling of the Gharma, and the Offerings.

1. He now offers (the first of) the two Rauhi*ṇa* (cakes) [2]:—(Vâg. S. XXXVII, 21), 'May the day

[1] See p. 458, note 1.

[2] According to the Sûtras and the Taitt. Âr., the southern cake

be pleased with its brightness, the well-lighted with its light, hail!' with this text both (cakes are offered) in the morning;—'May the night be pleased with its brightness, the well-lighted with its light, hail!' with this text both (cakes are offered) in the evening.

2. And as to why he offers two Rauhiṇa (cakes), —the two Rauhiṇas doubtless are Agni and Âditya (the sun), for by means of these two deities sacrificers ascend (ruh) to heaven.

3. And, indeed, the Rauhiṇas are also day and night, and the Pravargya is the sun: he thus encompasses yonder sun by the day and the night, whence he is encompassed by the day and the night.

4. And, indeed, the Rauhiṇas are also these two

is offered at this juncture of the performance, whilst the northern one is offered later on (see XIV, 2, 2, 41). For both cakes one and the same text is used, viz. the first of the two here mentioned at the morning performance, whilst the second is used at the afternoon performance. The cakes, being one-kapâla ones (the two 'rauhiṇahavanî' ladles serving as kapâlas), must be offered entire. Cf. Kâty. XXVI, 4, 14; 6, 18; Âpast. XV, 10, 10; 11, 5; 12, 7; Taitt. Âr. IV, 10, 4. Though our Brâhmaṇa expresses itself in a rather peculiar way, its statement, here and at XIV, 2, 2, 41, is perhaps meant to imply the same mode of procedure. If this is the case, the two paragraphs would mean,—at this juncture of the two performances he offers the two southern (northern, at XIV, 2, 2, 41) cakes,—the two cakes (the southern and the northern one) of the morning performance requiring the first, and those of the afternoon performance the second, text. It is not impossible, however, that the author intends a different mode of procedure or wishes to leave it purposely vague. If we were to read 'rauhiṇam' for 'rauhiṇau,' the text would be more in accordance with the practice prescribed in the Sûtras. Cf. also Mahîdh. (on Vâg. S. XXXVII, 21)—where read 'rauhiṇau' instead of 'pravargyau'—who adopts the procedure here explained.

worlds, and the Pravargya is the sun: he thus encompasses yonder sun by these two worlds, whence he is encompassed by these two worlds.

5. And, indeed, the Rauhiṇas are also the two eyes, and the Pravargya is the head: he thus places the eye in the head.

6. He now takes a rope, with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 1), 'At the impulse of the divine Savitri, I take thee, with the arms of the Asvins, with the hands of Pûshan: Aditi's[1] zone thou art;'—the mystic import of this is the same as before[2].

7. He then calls the cow, whilst stepping behind the Gârhapatya (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 2), 'Idâ, come hither! Aditi, come hither! Sarasvatî, come hither!' for the cow is Idâ, and the cow is Aditi, and the cow is Sarasvatî. And he also calls her by her (real) name, with these (formulas), 'N. N.[3], come hither!' thus thrice.

8. When she comes, he lays (the rope) round her (horns), with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 3), 'Aditi's zone thou art, Indrâṇî's head-band;'—for Indrâṇî is Indra's beloved wife, and she has a most variegated head-band: 'that thou art' he thereby means to say, and that he indeed thereby makes it to be.

9. He then lets the calf to it (to suck), with, 'Pûshan thou art,'—Pûshan, doubtless, is he that blows here (the wind), for that one supports[4]

[1] The edition omits 'adityai,' and reads 'devebhyas' for 'devasya.'

[2] See I, 2, 4, 4; 3, 1, 15.

[3] As, for instance, Dhavalî, or Gaṅgâ.

[4] Or nourishes, makes grow, inasmuch as it brings about rain (Mahîdhara).

(push) all this (universe); and the Pravargya also is that (wind): it is him he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Pûshan thou art.'

10. He then leads it (the calf) away[1] with, 'Afford (milk) for the Gharma!' for the Gharma, doubtless, is that fluid which this (cow) lets flow: he thus means to say thereby, 'Allow her a share!'

11. He then causes it to flow into the milking-bowl, with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 4), 'Flow for the Aśvins!'—with regard to the Aśvins he thus says this, for it was the Aśvins who restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Flow for the Aśvins!'

12. 'Flow for Sarasvatî!'—Sarasvatî, doubtless, is Speech, and with speech the Aśvins then restored the head of the Sacrifice: it is those (Aśvins) he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Flow for Sarasvatî!'

13. 'Flow for Indra!'—for Indra is the deity of the sacrifice, and it was indeed by him who is the deity of the sacrifice that the Aśvins then restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Flow for Indra!'

14. The (spilt) drops he then consecrates with, 'Hail, possessed of Indra! hail, possessed of Indra!' for Indra is the deity of the sacrifice: he thus pleases him who is the deity of the sacrifice, and therefore he says, 'Hail, possessed of Indra! hail, possessed of Indra!' Thrice he says it, for threefold is the sacrifice. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before.

[1] Whilst the calf is sucking, he secures the cow by tying together her hind legs.

15. He then touches her udder[1], with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 5; *Rig*-v. I, 164, 49), 'This ever-flowing, grateful udder of thine,'—that is to say, 'This udder of thine placed in secret[2];'—'treasure-giving, wealth-granting, bountiful,'—that is to say, 'which is a giver of treasures, a granter of wealth, and precious;'—'whereby thou furtherest all desirable things,'—that is to say, 'whereby thou supportest all the gods and all creatures;'—'O Sarasvatî, move that hither for us to suck,'—Sarasvatî, doubtless, is Speech, and so is this (cow) which yields the Gharma milk; and Speech is worship: thus he means to say, 'Grant us worship whereby we may please the gods.' He then steps up to the site of the Gârhapatya with, 'I pass along the wide aerial realm,'—the mystic import of this is the same as before[3].

16. He then takes the two lifting-sticks[4], with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 6), 'The Gâyatrî metre thou art,—the Trish*t*ubh metre thou art,'—he thus takes them with both the Gâyatrî and the Trish*t*ubh metres;—'with heaven and earth I encompass thee,'—for the two lifting-sticks are indeed these two, heaven and earth; and the

[1] Or, one of the teats (stanam); according to Mahîdhara, the part is used for the whole; and the Kâ*n*va recension indeed reads 'stanân' (the teats); cf. Kâty. XXVI, 5, 7, comm.

[2] The author apparently derives '*sa*saya' (? perennial, inexhaustible) from '*sî*,' to lie, sleep, as does Mahîdhara.

[3] Viz. as at I, 1, 2, 4.—According to Kâty. XXVI, 5, 10 seq., the Hotṛi says, 'Arise, Brahma*n*aspati!' whereupon the Adhvaryu rises; and the Hotṛi again calling, 'Hasten up with the milk!' he steps up to the Gârhapatya.

[4] See p. 458, note 1.

Pravargya is the sun: he thus encompasses yonder sun within these two, heaven and earth. Thereupon (having lifted up the pot) he sweeps it clean with a branch of reed grass: the mystic import of this is the same as before.

17. He then puts it on the 'supporting' tray[1] with, 'By the air I support thee,'—for the 'supporting' tray is the air, since everything here is supported by the air; and the 'supporting' tray also is the belly, for all food and drink here is supported (held) by the belly: therefore he says, 'By the air I support thee.'

18. He then pours in the goat's milk[2]; for that (Mahâvîra pot) when heated, becomes glowing: he thus soothes it, and when soothed he pours the cow's milk into it—

19. With, 'O Indra and ye Aśvins!'—for Indra is the deity of the sacrifice, and he thus pleases him who is the deity of the sacrifice; and 'Ye Aśvins' he says, because the Aśvins at that time restored the head of the sacrifice, and it is them he thus pleases: therefore he says, 'O Indra and ye Aśvins!'

20. 'Of bees' honey'—this is indeed honey;—'drink ye the Gharma (hot draught),'—that is to say, 'drink ye the liquor;'—'ye true ones,'—those (deities) are indeed true (vasu), for it is

[1] The 'upayamani' is apparently a kind of bowl, or hollow tray of hard (udumbara) wood, somewhat larger than the (bowls of the) spoons or ladles used on this occasion, and, indeed, also itself used as such.

[2] Whilst the Adhvaryu was milking the cow into the earthen bowl (pinvana), his assistant, the Pratiprasthâtṛi, silently milked a goat tied to the peg.

they that maintain (vâsaya) all this (universe);—'worship ye, vâṭ!' thus this comes to be for him as if it were offered with the Vashaṭ-call.

21. 'Hail to Sûrya's ray, the rain-winner[1]!'—for one of the sun's rays is called 'rain-winner,' whereby he supports all these creatures: it is that one he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Hail to Sûrya's ray, the rain-winner!' The call of hail he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before[2].

22. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance thereof is the same as at the creation[3].

Second Brâhmaṇa.

1. And when the Hotṛi recites this (verse), 'Let Brahmaṇaspati go forward, let the goddess Sûnṛitâ go forward,'—the Adhvaryu, stepping forward, makes offering (by muttering) the wind-names. For at this time the gods were afraid lest the Rakshas, the fiends, might injure that (Pravargya) of theirs in the middle (of the sacrifice): they offered it with the Svâhâ-call before (its being taken to) the Âhavanîya, being thus offered they offered it (again) in the fire; and in like manner does this one now offer it with the Svâhâ-call before

[1] According to Taitt. Âr. IV, 8, 4; Âpast. XV, 10, 2, this formula is addressed to the steam rising from the Mahâvîra pot—it being accordingly modified to 'I offer thee to Sûrya's ray, the rain-winner.'

[2] XIV, 1, 3, 26.

[3] See p. 458, note 1.

(its being taken to) the Âhavanîya, and being thus offered he offers it (again) in the fire.

2. [Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 7.] 'To the wind Ocean (I offer) thee, hail!'—the (aerial) ocean (samudra) indeed is he who blows here, for from out of that ocean all the gods and all the beings issue forth (samud-dru): it is to him (Vâyu, the wind) he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To the wind Ocean (I consecrate) thee, hail!'

3. 'To the wind Flood—thee, hail!'—the flood (sarira) indeed is he who blows here, for from out of that flood all the gods and all the creatures come forth together (saha îrate): it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To the wind Flood—thee, hail!'

4. 'To the wind Unassailable—thee, hail! To the wind Irresistible—thee, hail!'—unassailable and irresistible indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To the wind Unassailable—thee, hail! To the wind Irresistible—thee, hail!'

5. 'To the wind Favourable—thee, hail! To the wind Ogress-ridder—thee, hail!'—favourable and an ogress-ridder indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To the wind Favourable—thee, hail! To the wind Ogress-ridder—thee, hail!'

6. [Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 8.] 'To Indra, accompanied by the Vasus and Rudras, (I offer) thee, hail!'—Indra indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Indra—thee;' and when he says, 'accompanied by the Vasus and Rudras,' thereby he allows a share to the Vasus and Rudras along with Indra; and,

moreover, it is thereby made to be like the morning Soma-pressing, and the midday-pressing[1].

7. 'To Indra, accompanied by the Âdityas,—thee, hail!'—Indra indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Indra—thee;' and when he says, 'accompanied by the Âdityas,' thereby he allows a share to the Âdityas along with Indra; and, moreover, it is made like the evening-pressing[1].

8. 'To Indra, the slayer of the evil-minded,—thee, hail!'—Indra indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Indra—thee;' and as to his saying, 'to the slayer of the evil-minded,' the evil-minded one being an enemy, he thereby means to say, 'To Indra, the slayer of enemies,—thee!' This is his (Indra's) special share: even as there is a share for a chief[2], so is this his (share) apart from the (other) gods.

9. 'To Savitṛi, accompanied by the Ṛibhus, the Vibhus (lords), and the Vâgas (powers),—thee, hail!'—Savitṛi (the sun) indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Savitṛi, accompanied by the Ṛibhus, the Vibhus, and the Vâgas,—thee!' He thus allows a share therein to all the gods along (with Savitṛi).

10. 'To Bṛihaspati, accompanied by the All-gods,—thee, hail!'—Bṛihaspati indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers

[1] See III, 4, 5, 1, where it is stated that the morning-pressing belongs to the Vasus, the midday-pressing to the Rudras, and the third pressing to the Âdityas.

[2] Or, for the best (or eldest brother). Cf. III, 9, 4, 9.

it, and therefore he says, 'To Bṛihaspati—thee;' and when he says, 'accompanied by the All-gods,' he thereby allows a share therein to all the gods along (with Bṛihaspati).

11. [Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 9.] 'To Yama, accompanied by the Aṅgiras and the Fathers,—thee, hail!'—Yama indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Yama—thee;' and as to his saying, 'accompanied by the Aṅgiras and the Fathers,'—when the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and went to the Fathers,—the Fathers being three in number[1]: thus it is to these he thereby allows a share along (with Yama).

12. These are twelve names,—twelve months are in a year, and the year is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): thus it is him he thereby pleases, and therefore there are twelve (names).

13. He then pours (the spilt milk and ghee) from the tray into the Mahâvîra (pot) with, 'Hail to the Gharma!'—the Gharma (hot draught) is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): thus it is him he thereby pleases, and therefore he says, 'Hail to the Gharma!'—the call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before[2].

14. When it has been poured in, he mutters, 'Hail, the Gharma to the Fathers!' When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed

[1] See p. 465, note 2.

[2] See XIV, 1, 3, 26.

away, and went to the Fathers—the Fathers being three in number: it is these he thus pleases. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before.

15. He recites no anuvâkyâ (invitatory) formula, for once for all the Fathers have passed away: therefore he recites no anuvâkyâ. Having stepped across[1], and called (on the Âgnîdhra) for the Śraushaṭ[2], he (the Adhvaryu) says (to the Hotṛi), 'Pronounce the offering-formula (yâgyâ) of the Gharma;' and on the Vashaṭ-call being uttered he offers—

16. With (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 10), 'All regions (hath he worshipped), seated in the south,'—that is to say, 'every region (has he worshipped), seated on the south;'—'all gods hath he worshipped here,'—that is, 'every god has he worshipped here;'—'of the sweet Gharma, consecrated by Svâhâ (hail!), drink ye, O Aśvins!'—with regard to the Aśvins he says this; for the Aśvins restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before.

17. And, having offered, he (thrice) shakes (the Mahâvîra) upwards, with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 11), 'In heaven place thou this sacrifice! this sacrifice place thou in heaven!'—for the Gharma (hot milk-draught), the sacrifice, is yonder sun, and he indeed is 'placed' in the heavens, is

[1] Viz. past the Âhavanîya, along its back (or western) side, to the south side of the fire.

[2] See part i, p. 132, note; III, 4, 4, 11 seqq.

established in the heavens: it is thus him he thereby pleases, and therefore he says, 'In heaven place thou this sacrifice! this sacrifice place thou in heaven!' On the repetition of the Vashaṭ, he offers—

18. With, 'Hail to Agni, worthy of sacrifice!'—this is in lieu of the Svishṭakṛit (offering), for Agni is the maker of good offering;—'may blessing result from the sacrificial texts!' for by the sacrificial texts that (sun) is established (as the Mahâvîra) in this world: thus it is them he thereby pleases. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before.

19. The Brahman (priest) pronounces the anumantraṇa (formula of consecration); for the Brahman is the best physician among the officiating priests: thus he heals this sacrifice by means of him who is the best physician among the priests.

20. [He does so, with Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 12,] 'O Aśvins, drink ye the Gharma!'—with regard to the Aśvins he says this, for the Aśvins restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases.

21. 'The hearty[1] one with daily[2] favours,'—

[1] The exact meaning of 'hârdvânam' is doubtful. Mahîdhara analyses it by 'hârd' = 'hṛid' + 'vâna,' blowing, going, hence 'heart-wafting, going to the heart = dear to the heart.' The St. Petersb. Dict. takes the word to be 'hârd-van,' in the sense of 'herzstärkend' (heart-sustaining, invigorating — ? literally, 'possessed of heartiness'). The Taitt. Âr. has 'hârdivânam' instead. The author of the Brâhmaṇa apparently considers the term as obscure, and uses this circumstance for his own symbolic purposes.

[2] Perhaps the author means to characterise also the epithet

this is indistinct, for Pragâpati is indistinct (undefined), and the sacrifice is Pragâpati: Pragâpati, the sacrifice, he thus heals;—

22. 'To the web-weaver,'—the web-weaver, doubtless, is he that shines yonder, for he moves along these worlds as if along a web; and the Pravargya also is that (sun): thus it is him he thereby pleases, and therefore he says, 'To the web-weaver'—

23. 'To Heaven and Earth be reverence!' he thus propitiates heaven and earth, within which everything here is contained.

24. Thereupon the Sacrificer (mutters),—the Sacrificer being the sacrifice, he thus heals the sacrifice by means of the sacrifice;—

25. [Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 13,] 'The Aśvins drank the Gharma,'—he says this with regard to the Aśvins, for the Aśvins restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases.

26. 'Heaven and Earth have approved of it[1],'—he says this with regard to heaven and earth, within which everything here is contained;—'may gifts accrue here!'—whereby he means to say, 'may there be riches for us here.'

27. The rising (milk) he then consecrates by the anumantraṇa[2], 'For freshness swell thou!'

'ahar-diva' (lit. 'day-daily,' cf. Germ. tagtäglich; Aberdonian 'daily-day') as obscure. Mahîdhara takes it to mean 'relating to morning and evening,' as applying to the two performances of the Pravargya.

[1] They approved of it by saying 'Well done'; Mahîdh.

[2] That is, as would seem, he speaks the anumantraṇa in order to consecrate whatever milk might have been spilled in bubbling over. Possibly, however, he is to do so at the time when the pot bubbles over (though the 'atha' would rather be out of place in that case). The Taittirîyas differ somewhat on this point of the performance.

—whereby he means to say, 'For rain . . .;'—'for vigour swell thou!'—he thereby means the vigour, the life-sap, which results from the rain;—'for the Brahman swell thou!'—he thereby means the priesthood;—'for the Kshatra swell thou!'—he thereby means the nobility;—'for Heaven and Earth swell thou!'—he thereby means these two, the heaven and the earth, within which everything here is contained.

28. When it rises upwards, it rises for (the benefit of) the Sacrificer; when on the front side, it does so for the gods; when on the right (south) side, it does so for the Fathers; when at the back (west side), it does so for the cattle; when on the left (north) side, it does so for (the Sacrificer's) offspring: in any case no fault is incurred by the Sacrificer, for it always rises upwards; and in whatever direction it rises in that it rises. When the drops cease,—

29. He steps out towards the north-east with, 'A well-supporting support thou art,'—he who shines yonder is indeed a support, for he supports everything here, and by him everything here is supported; and the Pravargya also is that (sun): thus it is him he thereby pleases, and therefore he says, 'A well-supporting support thou art.'

30. He then places (the Mahâvîra) on the mound with, 'Incapable of injuring, preserve thou our powers!'—'Not angry[1], preserve our wealth,'

After the Gharma-milk has been offered, the Pratiprasthâtri fills the Mahâvîra pot, whilst it is held over the fire, with boiled sour curds and whey (dadhi), whilst muttering the text, 'The Asvins drank the Gharma . . .,' and with the texts, 'For freshness swell thou,' &c.

[1] The author apparently takes 'ameni' in the sense of 'amanyu.'

is what he thereby means to say;—'preserve the priesthood, preserve the nobility, preserve the people!'—'preserve all that,' is what he thereby means to say.

31. He then offers by means of the pieces of (split) wood[1],—the pieces of wood being the vital airs, it is the vital airs he thus bestows upon him;—

32. With (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 15), 'Hail to Pûshan, to the cream!'—Pûshan, doubtless, is he who blows here, for he (the wind) supports (push) everything here; and the breath also is that (wind): it is breath he thus bestows upon him, whence he says, 'Hail to Pûshan, to the cream!' The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before. Having offered (by means of the first piece) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick[2] (paridhi).

33. 'Hail to the pressing-stones!'—the pressing-stones being the vital airs, it is the vital airs he thus bestows upon him. Having offered (with the second stick) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick.

34. 'Hail to the sounding-holes[3]!'—the

The St. Petersb. Dict. assigns to it the meaning 'not shooting, incapable of shooting.'

[1] For these pieces of wood, or large chips, of Vikaṅkata wood (Flacourtia sapida) which were laid round the pot, see XIV, 1, 3, 26. They are dipped into the remains of the hot milk and ghee, the liquid adhering to them being then offered.

[2] That is, that one of the three fresh sticks enclosing the fire which is laid down first, along the back, or west side, and forms the base of a triangle the apex of which points eastwards. Cf. I, 3, 4, 1 seqq.

[3] This meaning is, by the St. Petersb. Dict., assigned to 'prati-rava'

sounding-holes (pratirava), doubtless, are the vital airs, for everything here is pleased (pratirata) with the vital airs: it is the vital airs he thus bestows upon him. Having offered (with the third stick) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick.

35. 'Hail to the Fathers, (seated) upon the Barhis[1], and drinking the Gharma!'—even without offering he secretes (this, the fourth stick) under the barhis of the south part (of the vedi[2]) whilst looking towards the north[3]. When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and went to the Fathers—the Fathers being three in number: it is them he thus pleases. And

(otherwise 'echo'), the proper term for the sounding-holes being 'upa-rava,' cf. III, 5, 4, 1, where they are likened to the eyes and ears, as channels of the vital airs.

[1] If this rendering (St. Petersb. Dict.) of 'ûrdhvabarhis' is correct—the term being apparently based on the Fathers' epithet 'barhishadaḥ,' 'seated on the barhis' (sacrificial grass-covering of the altar-ground)—the force of 'ûrdhva' in the compound is very peculiar. Mahîdhara takes it in the sense of 'having their barhis pointed upwards,' i. e. towards the east (!), the peculiar feature of the barhis in the present case—as far as the participation of the Fathers in the drinking of the Gharma is concerned—being its having the tops of the grass-stalks turned to the east instead of to the south, as is the case in all ceremonies relating to the Fathers. The term 'ûrdhvabarhis' might possibly mean 'having their (special) barhis above,' i. e. in the world of the Fathers, where they would be supposed to partake of the libations of hot milk; whilst yet another (suggested by the next paragraph) would be that of 'having the barhis above them;' which would, however, be more appropriate if the secreting of the stick under the barhis applied to the present, instead of the next one.

[2] The comm. on Kâty. XXVI, 6, 14 calls this part of the barhis 'âtithyâbarhis' (?).

[3] And accordingly, without looking at it.

as to why he does not look at it,—once for all the Fathers have passed away.

36. 'Hail to Heaven and Earth!'—heaven and earth being the out (and in)-breathing and the up-breathing, it is the out and up-breathing he thus bestows upon him. Having offered (with the fifth stick) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick.

37. 'Hail to the All-gods!'—the Viśve Devâḥ being the vital airs, it is the vital airs he thus bestows upon him. Having offered (with the sixth stick) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick.

38. [Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 16,] 'Hail to Rudra, praised by the Rudras[1]!'—even without offering (with this, the seventh stick), he, looking southwards, hands it to the Pratiprasthâtṛi, and the latter throws it outside (the offering-ground) northwards to the north of the hall, for this is the region of that god: he thus gratifies him in his own region. And as to why he does not look at it, he does so thinking, 'Lest Rudra should do me harm.'

39. There are seven of these oblations, for seven in number are these (channels of the) vital airs in the head: it is these he thus bestows upon him.

40. He then pours (the remaining milk and ghee) from the Mahâvîra into the supporting-tray with, 'Hail, light with light!'—for light indeed the milk was in the one (vessel), and light it is in the other, and these two lights thus unite with each other. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the mystic import of this is the same as before.

[1] Or, 'having his praises sung by the chanters,' as Mahîdhara takes 'rudrahûti.'

41. He then offers (the second of) the two Rauhiṇa[1] (cakes) with, 'May the day be pleased with its brightness, the well-lighted with its light, hail!'—the mystic import of this is the same as before;—'may the night be pleased with its brightness, the well-lighted with its light, hail!'—the mystic import of this is the same as before.

42. He then hands to the Sacrificer the remainder of the Gharma. He, having solicited an invitation[2] (to the meal), drinks it with, 'Offered is the honey unto Agni, the greatest of Indras,'—'Offered is the honey unto Agni, the most powerful,' he thereby means to say;—'let us eat of thee, god Gharma: reverence be unto thee, injure us not!'—a blessing he thereby invokes.

43. Now, on the south side sand has been strewn; there they cleanse themselves[3]: in this there is the

[1] Viz. XIV, 2, 1, 1.

[2] Viz. at the hands of the officiating priests, by saying to each, 'Invite me, N. N.!' whereupon each of them replies, 'Thou art invited.' Cf. XII, 8, 3, 30. According to Âpast. Śr. XV, 11, 12, the priests and the Sacrificer partake of the residue in the order —Hotṛi, Adhvaryu, Brahman, Pratiprasthâtṛi, Agnîdh, and Sacrificer; or, optionally (ib. 14), only the Sacrificer drinks of it, whilst the priests merely smell it. Cf. the eating of the whey (of clotted curds), II, 4, 4, 25, to which the present eating of the remains is stated, by Kâty. XXVI, 6, 20, to be analogous; whilst the offering is said to be on the model of the Agnihotra.

[3] The usual place to do so is over the pit (kâtrâla), cf. III, 8, 2, 30; XII, 8, 1, 22; whilst the utensils are cleaned in the Mârgâlîya. On the present occasion a mound of sand (or covered with sand)—the so-called 'ukkhiṣṭa-khara' (mound of remains)—is raised in the south part of the śâlâ, close to the mat or hurdle forming its wall, just east of the southern door. According to Kâty. XXVI, 6, 21 seqq., Âpast. XV, 12, 1 seqq., the Mahâvîra and the remaining

same significance as in the Mârgâlîya. The pieces of wood he throws into the fire. They then proceed with the Upasad. And thus the head of the sacrifice has been set right in the very same manner in which the Aśvins then restored it.

44. One must not perform the Pravargya at one's first Soma-sacrifice, since that would be sinful, and lest Indra should cut off his head; but at the second or the third (Soma-sacrifice); for at first the gods went on worshipping and toiling with the headless sacrifice, therefore (he should do so) at the second or the third (sacrifice). Moreover, it will become heated and ablaze;—

45. And were he to perform the Pravargya at the first Soma-sacrifice, that (Mahâvîra) of his, when heated and ablaze, would burn up his family and cattle, and also his life, and the Sacrificer would be liable to perish: therefore (let him perform it) at the second or third (sacrifice).

46. Let him not perform the Pravargya for any and every one, lest he should do everything for every one, for the Pravargya is everything; but let him only perform it for him who is known, or to whoever may be dear to him, or who has studied sacred writ: by means of the study of sacred writ he would thus gain it.

47. One may perform the Pravargya for a thousand (head of cattle) [1], for a thousand means everything, and that (Pravargya) is everything. One may

apparatus are then in solemn fashion (carried round in front of the Âhavanîya, and) placed on the throne-seat, and consecrated (or appeased) by being sprinkled with water.

[1] That is, at a sacrifice for which this constitutes the sacrificial fee.

perform it for all (the Sacrificer's) property; for all one's property means everything, and this (Pravargya) is everything. One may perform it at a Visvagit with all the Pṛish*th*as [1]; for the Visvagit (all-conquering day) with all the Pṛish*th*as means everything, and this (Pravargya) is everything. One may perform it at the Vâgapeya (and) Râgasûya, for such (a ceremony) means everything. One may perform it at a sacrificial session, for the session means everything, and this (Pravargya) is everything. These are (the occasions for) his performances of the Pravargya, and (let him perform it) nowhere else but at these.

48. Here now they say, 'Seeing that the Pravargya is headless, whereby, then, does the Agnihotra become possessed of a head for him?' Let him say, 'By the Âhavanîya.'—'How the New and Full-moon sacrifices?' Let him say, 'By the ghee and the cake.'—'How the Seasonal sacrifices?' Let him say, 'By the oblation of clotted curds [2].'—'How the animal sacrifice?' Let him say, 'By the victim and the cake.'—'How the Soma-sacrifice?' Let him say, 'By the Havirdhâna [3].'

49. And they also say,—when the sacrifice had its head cut off, the gods on that occasion restored it as the hospitable reception [4] (of King Soma), and verily for him who so knows this offering is not made with any headless sacrifice whatever.

[1] See p. 139, note 1; and XII, 3, 3. 6.

[2] For the 'payasyâ' see part i, p. 178, note 4; p. 381, note 2.

[3] That is, the cart or carts on which the offering-material (including the Soma-plants) is contained, as also the shed in which they are placed.

[4] See III, 2, 3, 20; 4, 1, 1.

50. And, again, they say, 'Seeing that at the sacrifice they lead forward the Praṇîtâ[1] (water), wherefore do they not lead it forward on this occasion?' Well, this—to wit, the Praṇîtâ (water)—being the head of the sacrifice, and the Pravargya also being its head, (he does so) thinking, 'Lest I cause the head to be overtopped by a head.'

51. And, again, they say, 'Seeing that elsewhere there are fore-offerings and after-offerings, wherefore are there not any on this occasion?' Well, the fore-offerings and after-offerings being the vital airs, and so also the Avakâśas[2], and the pieces of wood, (it is so) lest he should cause the vital airs to be overtopped by vital airs.

52. And, again, they say, 'Seeing that elsewhere they offer two butter-portions, wherefore does he not offer them on this occasion?' Well, those two—to wit, the butter-portions—being the eyes of the sacrifice, and so also the two Rauhiṇa (cakes)—(it is so) lest he should overtop eye by eye.

53. And, again, they say, 'Seeing that they make offering to the gods by means of wooden (vessels), wherefore does he offer this (Gharma) by means of one made of clay?' When the Sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away and entered the heaven and the earth. Now this (earth) is clay, and yonder (sky) is water; and the Mahâvîra (vessels) are made of clay and water: thus he supplies and completes it (the Pravargya) with that life-sap.

54. But if it were made of wood, it would be

[1] See part i. p. 9, note. [2] See p. 469, note 1.

burnt; and if of gold, it would dissolve; and if of copper, it would melt; and if of stone, it would burn the two handling-sticks; and that (Gharma) itself submitted to that (earthen vessel): therefore it is by means of an earthen one that he offers it.

55. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance thereof is the same as at the creation[1].

THIRD ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMAṆA.

THE SETTING OUT OF THE PRAVARGYA.

1. Now, on the third, or the sixth, or the twelfth day[2], having combined (the two performances of) the Pravargya and Upasads[3], he 'sets out[4]' the Pravargya, for set out (removed), as it were, is this head (from the trunk). Having gathered together all around it[5] (the Mahâvîra pot), they

[1] See p. 458, note 1.

[2] That is, according to whether there are three, six, or twelve Upasad days to the particular form of Soma-sacrifice about to be performed. On each of these days there would be two performances of the Upasads,—and in case the Pravargya is to be performed— as many performances of that sacrifice.

[3] On the day before the Soma-sacrifice, the two performances of the Pravargya and the Upasads are combined and gone through in the forenoon, instead of the forenoon and afternoon as is otherwise the case. Kâty. XXVI, 7, 1 does not refer to the performance of the Pravargya on this day, but merely remarks that 'at the end of the Upasads (i. e. of the combination of the Upasads, comm.) the removal of the Pravargya' takes place. Âpast. XV, 12, 4–6, on the other hand, states distinctly that the total number of performances of the Pravargya is to be double that of the Upasad days.

[4] The 'setting out' (utsâdana) of the Pravargya is the technical phrase for the removal and orderly laying out (in the form of a man) of the apparatus used for the Pravargya ceremony.

[5] After collecting the implements they take them out of the śâlâ

meet together upon the Vedi in the Śâlâ, (entering) by the front door.

2. The Âgnîdhra then brings three bundles of faggots to the Âhavanîya, and kindling one of them, he offers (thereon) whilst holding it[1] on a level with (the Sacrificer's) mouth. When the sacrifice had its head cut off its heat went out of it, and entered these worlds: it is with that heat he thus supplies and completes it.

3. And as to why (it is held) on a level with the mouth,—well, what is level with the mouth is, as it were, above; and above, as it were, is yonder (heavenly) world: thus he thereby supplies and completes it (the Pravargya) with that heat which had entered yonder world.

4. [He offers, with Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 18.] 'What heavenly fire of thine there is, O Gharma,'—just the fire which is heavenly;—'what is in the Gâyatrî and in the Havir-

and lay them down near the Antardhpâtya peg at a few steps from the front door (whilst Âpast. makes them to be put on the throne-seat placed north of the Âhavanîya).

[1] According to the comm. on Kâty. XXVI, 7, 4, it is the Adhvaryu who—after ladling four times into the offering-spoon—distributes this ghee successively over the three bundles of sticks,—viz. pouring some upon the first two whilst they are held, at the specified height over the Âhavanîya fire, by the Agnîdh (who immediately after the offering throws them into the fire), and upon the third after it has been held knee-high by the Agnîdh, and then thrown into the fire by the Adhvaryu. According to Âpastamba, who makes the Pratiprasthâtri and Adhvaryu the two performers, the third portion of the ghee is offered on the bundle of sticks whilst it is still held knee-high over the fire. As noted by Kâtyâyana, the ceremony is analogous (though reversed as regards the order of height) to the offering on the three enclosing-stones at the Śatarudriya ceremony, IX, 1, 1, 5 seqq.

dhâna,'—just that which is in the Gâyatrî (metre) and Havirdhâna (shed);—'may that (fire) of thine increase and become firm: to that (fire) of thine, hail!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

5. Then, having kindled the second (bundle), he offers (thereon) whilst holding it navel-high; for in the middle, as it were, is what is navel-high, and in the middle, as it were, is the air-world: thus he thereby supplies and completes it with that heat which had entered the air-world.

6. 'What fire of thine is in the air,'—just the fire which is in the air;—'what is in the Trishṭubh and in the Âgnîdhra,'—just that which is in the Trishṭubh (metre) and Âgnîdhra (fire-shed);—'may that (fire) of thine increase and become firm: to that (fire) of thine, hail!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

7. Then, having put the third (bundle) on the fire, he offers on it whilst sitting; for below, as it were, is he who is sitting; and below, as it were, is this (terrestrial) world: thus he thereby supplies and completes it with that heat which had entered this (terrestrial) world.

8. 'What fire of thine is in the earth,'—just that fire which is in the earth;—'what is in the Gagatî and in the Sadas,'—just that which is in the Gagatî (metre) and the Sadas (shed);—'may that (fire) of thine increase and become firm: to that (fire) of thine, hail!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

9. He (the Adhvaryu) then steps out[1], with

[1] Viz. out of the śâlâ, with the Sacrificer's wife in front of him,

(Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 19), 'Thee (we will follow) for the protection of the Kshatra,'—for he who shines yonder[1] is indeed the divine ruler: 'for the protection of this human ruler,' he thereby means to say;—'guard thou the Brahman's body!'—that is to say, 'preserve thou the Brahman's person (âtman);'—'Thee (we will follow) as a stay for the Vi*s*,'—the Vi*s* (people, clan) doubtless is the sacrifice: 'for the safety of the sacrifice,' he thus means to say;—'we will follow to new prosperity,'—it is for the safety and the stability of the sacrifice that he says this.

10. He then says (to the Prastotri), 'Sing the Sâman!' or 'Recite the Sâman!' but let him rather say, 'Sing the Sâman!' for they indeed sing the Sâman. When he sings the Sâman it is in order that the fiends, the Rakshas, should not injure these

and followed by the others. According to Âpast. XV, 13, 4, the Pratiprasthâtri now leads the Sacrificer's wife within the enclosure; and whilst attendants carry away the objects not immediately connected with the Pravargya ceremony (post, peg, strings, sand, &c.), the Adhvaryu places the throne-seat (with the chief vessels) so as to stand with two feet on the Vedi, and with the other two outside it, and calls on the Prastotri to sing the Sâman. This (as is usual in chanting) is done three times—the Adhvaryu, however, repeating his summons each time—and each time all of them (including the Patnî) sing or utter a special finale,—the first time in the *s*âlâ, the second time midway between the *s*âlâ and the Uttaravedi, and the third time when they have arrived behind the Uttaravedi; the finales corresponding to the formulas of this paragraph, viz.—'For the protection (or protector) of heaven (we follow) thee!'—'For the protection of the Brahman—thee!'—'For the protection of the self—thee!'

[1] It should be borne in mind that the Mahâvîra by which they are supposing themselves to be led now, is looked upon as a symbol of the sun.

outside the sacrifice, the body; for the Sâman is a repeller of the fiends, the Rakshas.

11. He sings it on a (verse) relating to Agni, for Agni is the repeller of the Rakshas. On an Ati*kkh*andas (verse) he sings it, for that—to wit, the Ati*kkh*andas (redundant metre) is all metres, therefore he sings it on an Ati*kkh*andas (verse).

12. He sings[1], 'Agni burneth, encountereth with flames, Ahâvo! Ahâvo!!'—it is thus he repels the fiends, the Rakshas, from here.

13. They walk out (from the sacrificial ground) northwards[2], along the back of the pit and the front side of the Âgnîdhra (fire-house)—for this is the gate of the sacrifice—and proceed in whatever direction from there water is (to be found).

14. Let him 'set out' that (Pravargya) on an island; for, when heated, it becomes burning-hot[3]; and were he to set it out on this (earth), its heat would enter this (earth); and were he to set it out on water, its heat would enter the water; but when he sets it out on an island—thus, indeed, it does not injure either the water or this (earth), for inasmuch as he does not throw it into the water, it does not injure the water; and inasmuch as the water flows all round it—water being a means

[1] The same Sâman is sung when they betake themselves to the expiatory bath at the end of the Soma-sacrifice, cf. IV, 4, 5, 8 where the stobha had better be altered to 'ahâvo' (though the Sandhi in the text is the same as of 'ahâvas'). As on that former occasion, all the priests, as well as the Sacrificer, join in the finale.

[2] In doing so, they take the Pravargya-vessels and implements along with them.

[3] Hardly 'is suffering pain,' as it was taken at IX, 2, 1, 19; though '*susuk*âna' and '*suk*' evidently refer to internal heat, or passion, cf. p. 464, note 4, p. 468, note 1.

of soothing—it does not injure this (earth): let him therefore set it out on an island.

15. But let him rather set it out on the Uttara-vedi[1]; for the Uttara-vedi is the sacrifice, and the Pravargya is its head: he thus restores to the sacrifice its head.

16. The first Pravargya (pot) he sets out so as to be close to (the front side of) the navel (of the Uttara-vedi), for the northern (upper) navel is the voice, and the Pravargya is the head: he thus places the voice in the head.

17. [He does so, with Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 20,] 'The four-cornered,'—four-cornered, indeed, is he who shines yonder, for the quarters are his corners: therefore he says, 'Four-cornered';—

18. —'Mighty navel of the divine order,'—the divine order being the truth, he thereby means to say, 'The mighty navel of the truth;'—'that mighty one (be) unto us of all life,'—'that mighty one (be) unto us (a bestower) of the complete (term of) life,' he thereby means to say[2];

[1] Kâtyâyana only lays down the rule that, in the case of the sacrifice not being accompanied with the building of a fire-altar, the Pravargya apparatus should be removed to the Uttara-vedi; whilst, in the case of one who likewise performs the Agnikayana, he would doubtless follow the indication already laid down in the Brâhmaṇa, IX, 2, 1, 19; viz. that the pot may be removed to an island, but should rather be deposited on the fire-altar (in which case, however, the 'setting out' of the apparatus would apparently have to be deferred till after the performance of the Soma-sacrifice). Âpastamba treats of the Uttara-vedi as the place where the implements are to be deposited, but finally he allows an option of other places, including an island, but not the fire-altar.

[2] The words 'sa naḥ sarvâyuḥ saprathâḥ,' being here used as explanatory of 'sa no viśvâyuḥ saprathâḥ,' have probably got by mistake into the Saṃhitâ.

19. —'from the hatred, from the guile,'—in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak;—'of him of another law, let us free ourselves!'—another law, indeed, is his (Pravargya's and the Sun's), and another that of men[1]: therefore he says, 'Of him of another law, let us free ourselves.' In this way the other two (pots are placed) east of it: this is threefold, for the head is threefold[2].

20. In front thereof (he places) the reserve (lump of) clay, whereby he puts flesh upon it (Pravargya); on the two sides thereof the two lifting-sticks, whereby he gives two arms to it; and on the two sides yet further away the two Rauhiṇa offering-ladles, whereby he gives two hands to it.

21. On the left (north) side (he places) the spade, for there is its place of rest; on the right (right) side the imperial throne, for there is its place of rest; on the left side the black antelope-skin, for there is its place of rest; on all sides (save the front side) the fans, for, the fans being the vital airs, he thereby bestows vital airs on it; there are three of them, for there are three vital airs, the out- (and in-) breathing, the up-breathing, and the through-breathing: it is these he thus bestows on him.

22. He then puts the cords and halter on the supporting-tray, and places (the latter) behind (the

[1] The author evidently understands the text more in accordance with Mahîdhara's interpretation which makes 'anyavratasya' to refer to the Supreme Spirit (paramâtmâ) whose law, or ways, are different from men's, and construes it with 'sa*ś*ima' (we serve, are devoted, to that righteous one). The preceding part of the half-verse he would thus take independently of this:—'Away hatred! away guile!'

[2] Viz. consisting of bone, skin, and hair.

navel) with its point towards the east: a belly he thus gives to it. On the two sides thereof the two milking-bowls (pinvana): two testicles he thereby gives to it, for by means of his testicles the male overflows (pinv). Behind (them he places) the post and peg: whereby he gives two thighs to it; behind (them) the two Rauhiṇa-plates, whereby he gives two knees to it; and as to their being single plates, it is because these knees consist, as it were, of single plates (bones). Behind (them) the two poking-sticks (dhṛishṭi), whereby he gives two feet to it, for with the feet one strikes out boldly (dhṛishṭam). On the left side the two mounds[1] used in the performance, for there is their place of rest; on the right side the Mârgâlîya[2], for there is its place of rest.

23. He then pours milk into that (chief pot), with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 21), 'This, O Gharma, is the contents of thy bowels,'—the contents of the bowels being food, it is food he thus puts into it;—'Grow thou, and fill out thereby!'—in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak;—'and may we ourselves grow, and fill out!'—it is a blessing he thereby invokes.

24. Let him not pour in all (the milk), lest the food should turn away from the Sacrificer.—He leaves over half of it or more; and on that same afternoon he pours it to the fast-milk, and hands it to the Sacrificer: thereby he bestows food upon

[1] That is, the sand used for them, and brought thither in vessels.

[2] That is, the sand of the 'mound of remains' (ukkhishṭakhara), see p. 489, note 3.

the Sacrificer, and thus, indeed, food does not turn away from the Sacrificer.

25. He then sprinkles it (the Pravargya apparatus) with water: water being a means of appeasement, he thus appeases it; he sprinkles it all over: all over he thus appeases it; three times he sprinkles, for threefold is the sacrifice.

26. He then says (to the Prastotṛi), 'Sing the Vârshâhara Sâman!'—the fallow stallion[1] (vṛishâ harik) doubtless is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is thus him he thereby pleases, and therefore he says, 'Sing the Vârshâhara Sâman[2]!'

27. They then cleanse themselves at the pit. With (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 23), 'May the waters and plants be friendly unto us,' he takes water in his joined hands; for water is a thunderbolt: he thus makes a covenant with the thunderbolt;—and with, 'May they be unfriendly unto him who hateth us, and whom we hate!' let him sprinkle it in whatever direction he who is hateful to him may be, and he thereby overthrows him.

28. He (the Sacrificer) then steps out towards the north-east, with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 24), 'From out of the gloom have we risen,'—gloom is

[1] Or, bull.—The Vâg. S. (XXXVIII, 22) here inserts the verse *Rig*-v. IX, 2, 6, to be used during the sprinkling,—'The fallow stallion hath whinnied—or, the fallow bull hath roared—the mighty one, beautiful as Mitra, *the water-holding vessel* hath shone like unto the sun.' The italicised words, evidently added to suit the Mahâvîra vessel, are wanting in the *Ṛik*.

[2] Kâty. XXVI, 7, 36 (doubtless in accordance with another śâkhâ) also prescribes here the Ishṭâhotrîya Sâman.

evil: it is gloom, evil, he thus drives away;—'beholding the higher light,'—this (terrestrial) world is higher than the water: it is on this world he thus establishes himself;—'God Sûrya, with the gods, the highest light,'—Sûrya, the highest light, is the heavenly world: it is in the heavenly world he thus finally establishes himself. He walks along without looking back, and puts a log of wood on the Âhavanîya[1], with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 25), 'A kindler thou art, fire thou art: lay thou fire into me!' it is a blessing he thereby invokes.

29. And at a continued pressing of Soma they also perform the Gharma of curds and whey (Dadhi-gharma),—for Soma is the sacrifice, and the Pravargya is its head: he thus restores to the sacrifice its head,—at the midday-pressing, for that—to wit, the midday-pressing—is Indra's special pressing: he thus pleases him in his own share;—when the Mâdhyandina-pavamâna has been chanted, for the Mâdhyandina-pavamâna is the breath: it is breath he thereby lays into him;—with the Agnihotra-ladle, for the Agnihotra is the mouth of sacrifices: he thus puts a mouth in the head.

30. On its being brought, he says, 'Hotâr, speak what thou hast to speak!' for the Hotṛi speaks on this occasion. Then, stepping up, he says, 'Cooked is the offering-food;' for cooked, indeed, it is. Having stepped across (behind the Âhavanîya), and called for the Śraushaṭ, he says, 'Pronounce the offering-formula!' and offers on the Vashaṭ being uttered. When the Vashaṭ is

[1] The Sacrificer's wife (according to another śâkhâ) also silently puts one on the Gârhapatya fire.

repeated, he brings the draught, and hands it to the Sacrificer.

31. Having solicited an invitation[1] (and received an answer from the priests), he drinks of it, with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 27), 'May there be in me that great energy,'—a great energy, indeed, is he who shines yonder;—'in me the fitness, in me the intelligence,'—fitness and intelligence he thus secures to himself;—'the Gharma of triple fires shineth,'—for this Gharma of triple fires indeed shines;—'together with the shining light,'—for together with the shining light (the sun) it indeed is;—'together with the fire, the Brahman,'—for together with the fire, the Brahman, it indeed is;—(Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 28), 'The seed of the milk hath been brought,'—for this is indeed the seed of the milk that has been brought;—'may we obtain the milking thereof year after year!'—it is a blessing he thereby invokes. They then cleanse themselves at the pit: the significance of this is the same as before.

32. Now, then, as to the sacrificial gifts. The gold plate he gives to the Brahman; for the Brahman is seated, and gold is settled[2] glory: therefore he gives the gold plate to the Brahman.

33. And that cow which yielded the Gharma-milk he gives to the Adhvaryu; for scorched, as it were, is the Gharma, and the Adhvaryu comes forth (from the sacrificial ground) like something scorched[3]: therefore he gives it to the Adhvaryu.

34. And that cow which yielded the Sacrificer's

[1] See p. 489, note 2.

[2] Lit., lying, i. e. not standing or moving.

[3] Cf. XI, 2, 7, 32.

fast-milk he gives to the Hotṛi; for the Hotṛi is the sacrifice, and the Sacrificer also is the sacrifice: therefore he gives it to the Hotṛi.

35. And that cow which yielded the fast-milk for the (Sacrificer's) wife he gives to the chanters, for it is they, the Udgâtṛis, that do, as it were, the wife's work on this occasion: therefore he gives it to the chanters.

36. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance thereof is the same as at the creation [1].

Second Brâhmaṇa.

Expiatory Ceremonies.

1. Now this—to wit, the sacrifice—is the self of all beings, and of all gods: after its successful consummation the Sacrificer prospers in offspring (or, people) and cattle; but he whose Gharma (pot) is shattered is deprived of his offspring and cattle. In that case there is an expiation.

2. He offers an oblation of a full (spoon of ghee); for the full means everything: with everything he thus heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

3. [He offers, with Vâg. S. XXXIX, 1,] 'Hail to the vital airs with their over-lord!'—the over-lord of the vital airs, doubtless, is the mind (soul), for in the mind all the vital airs are established: it is thus by means of the mind that he thereby heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

[1] See p. 458, note 1.

4. 'To the Earth hail!'—the earth, doubtless, is a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

5. 'To Agni hail!'—Agni, doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

6. 'To the Air hail!'—the air, doubtless, is a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

7. 'To Vâyu hail!'—Vâyu (the wind), doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

8. 'To the Sky hail!'—the sky, doubtless, is a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

9. 'To Sûrya hail!'—Sûrya (the sun), doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

10. [Vâg. S. XXXIX, 2,] 'To the Regions hail!'—the regions, doubtless, are a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

11. 'To Kandra hail!'—Kandra (the moon), doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

12. 'To the Nakshatras hail!'—the Nak-

shatras (lunar asterisms), doubtless, are a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

13. 'To the Waters hail!'—the waters, doubtless, are a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

14. 'To Varuṇa hail!'—Varuṇa, doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

15. 'To the Navel hail! To the Purified one[1] hail!'—This is undefined, for undefined is Pragâpati, and Pragâpati is the sacrifice: it is thus Pragâpati, the sacrifice, he thereby heals.

16. These are thirteen oblations,—for there are thirteen months in the year, and the year is Pragâpati, and Pragâpati is the sacrifice: it is thus Pragâpati, the sacrifice, he thereby heals.

17. [Vâg. S. XXXIX, 3,] 'To the Voice hail!'—a mouth he thereby gives to it;—'to the Breath hail! to the Breath hail!'—two nostrils (a nose) he thereby gives to it;—'to the Eye hail! to the Eye hail!'—two eyes he thereby gives to it;—'to the Ear hail! to the Ear hail!'—two ears he thereby gives to it.

18. These are seven oblations,—now seven in number are these vital airs in the head: it is them he thereby gives to it. He offers a last oblation of a full (spoon),—the full means every-

[1] Mahîdhara takes 'pûta' in the sense of 'the purifier (sodhaka)' and apparently the name of a god (as he does also the Navel (nâbhyai devatâyai)).

thing: with everything he thus heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice,—

19. With (Vâg. S. XXXIX, 4), 'The mind's purpose,'—by the mind, indeed, everything is gained here: by the mind he thus heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice;—

20. 'The truth of speech may I freely obtain,'—by speech everything is gained here: by speech he thus heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice;—'may the form of cattle, the essence of food, fame, and prosperity accrue unto me, hail!'—a blessing he thereby invokes.

21. Thereupon, having pounded that spare (clay), and mixed it with powdered clay, he makes (a pot) in proper form, and bakes it in proper form for the purpose of the 'setting out'; and let him perform (the sacrifice) with whichever of the two reserve (pots) may be firm.

22. The Pravargya, indeed, is the year; for the year is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is placed on the fire then it is spring; when it is burning-hot then it is summer: when it is flowing over then it is the rainy season;—but, indeed, when the rains overflow, all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the rains overflow for him who thus knows this.

23. The Pravargya, indeed, is these worlds, for these worlds are everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is placed on the fire then it is this (terrestrial) world; when it is burning-hot then it is the air-world; and when it flows over then it is yonder (heavenly) world;—but,

indeed, when yonder world overflows, all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, yonder world overflows for him who thus knows this.

24. The Pravargya, indeed, is those deities—Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya; for those deities are everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is placed on the fire then it is Agni; when it is burning-hot then it is Vâyu (the wind); and when it flows over then it is Âditya (the sun);—but, indeed, when yonder sun overflows, all the gods and all beings subsist upon him; and, verily, yonder sun overflows for him who thus knows this.

25. The Pravargya, indeed, is the Sacrificer, his own self, his offspring (or people) and cattle; for the Sacrificer is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is placed on the fire then it is his own self; when it is burning-hot then it is his offspring; and when it flows over then it is his cattle;—but, indeed, when the cattle overflow (with milk) all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the cattle overflow for him who thus knows this.

26. The Pravargya, indeed, is the Agnihotra, for the Agnihotra is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it (the Agnihotra milk) is put on the fire then it is the (Gharma) placed thereon; when it is ladled out then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when the Agnihotra overflows all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the Agnihotra overflows for him who thus knows this.

27. The Pravargya, indeed, is the New and Full-moon sacrifices; for the New and Full-moon sacrifices

are everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it (the havis) is put on the fire then it is the (Gharma) placed thereon; when it is standing ready then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when the New and Full-moon sacrifices overflow all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the New and Full-moon sacrifices overflow for him who thus knows this.

28. The Pravargya, indeed, is the Seasonal sacrifices, for the Seasonal sacrifices are everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it (the havis) is put on the fire then it is the (Gharma) placed thereon; when it is standing ready then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when the Seasonal sacrifices overflow then all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the Seasonal sacrifices overflow for him who thus knows this.

29. The Pravargya, indeed, is the Animal sacrifice, for the Animal sacrifice is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it (the meat) is put on the fire then it is the (Gharma) placed thereon; and when it is standing ready then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when the animal offering overflows all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the animal offering overflows for him who thus knows this.

30. The Pravargya, indeed, is Soma, for Soma is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is poured out then it is the (Gharma) placed on the fire; when it is drawn (into the

cups) then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when Soma overflows all the gods and all beings avail themselves thereof; and, verily, Soma overflows for him who thus knows this; and, verily, no sacrifice whatever is offered without the Pravargya for him who thus knows this.

31. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance of the rule thereof is the same as at the creation[1].

[1] See p. 458, note 1.

INDEX TO PARTS III, IV, AND V.

(KÂṆḌAS V—XIV.)

abhigit, Soma-day, Part IV, page 321 n.

abhiplava-shaḍaha, III, introd. xxi; V, 148; is the established (regular) shaḍaha, 149; used by Âdityas when contending with Aṅgiras, 152; etymology, 152, 162.

abhisheka, III, 68; the 'Vasor dhârâ' and Vâgaprasavîya oblations performed on completed fire-altar are a consecration-ceremony superior to the ordinary one, IV, 213 seq.; and including the consecration of both Râgasûya and Vâgapeya, 225.

abhishekanîya, III, introd. xxvi; 68 seq.; stotras of, 69.

abhîvarta-sâman, III, 16.

abhri (spade), lies on left side of Âhavanîya, III, 199; made of bamboo, 199.

adâbhya-graha, is speech, up-breathing, ear, V, 105; etymology, 105–7.

âdâra, plants, how produced, V, 451; =pûtika, 451; they are fragrant and blaze up in fire, 452.

adhrigu, litany, V, 385–6.

adhvan, ghee-offering to, in the house of the courier, III, 64.

Adhvaryu, seated towards east, III, 108; his fee at Daśapeya a golden mirror, 119; their fee a sterile cow for pañkabila oblation to Mitra-Varuṇa, 122; spreads the sacrifice, 142; his fee at Sautrâmaṇî three garments; the Aśvins the Adhvaryus of the gods, IV, 23; sings the Sâmans over the completed altar, 181; in drawing the Soma-cup he takes Pragâpati's vital fluid, 282; must pronounce his Yagus indistinctly, 340; is summer whence he is as if scorched, V, 45; how he is to step past the vedi when calling or having called for the śraushaṭ, 57–8; initiated by Pratiprasthâtṛi for sattra, as the mind, 136; they drink the Âśvina cup of Sautrâmaṇî, the Aśvins being the Adhvaryus of the gods, 245; is scorched, as it were, 503.

Aditi, by sixteen syllables gains the shoḍaśa-stoma, III, 40; karu to, 60; is this earth, 60, 378; V, 6, 181, 293; the wife of the gods, III, 60; urugarmâ (of wide shelter), 90; Aditi and Diti, 93; prayugâṃ havis (pap), 125; reddish-white cow pregnant with calf her victim at oblation of teams, 125; is speech, 237; offers fire-pan to her sons, the gods, 238; gives (dad) everything here, 378; back of Aditi (the earth), IV, 27; Aditi and Pûshan, connected with triṇava-stoma, 69; ruler of the Fathers, 74;—(additional) pap at New moon, V, 5, 6; paps at Sautrâmaṇî, 213 n., 268.

Âditya (the sun), even rising burns up plants, III, 78; how created, 148; his union with sky, 149; with him the Âdityas placed in sky, 150; is the Agni on the altar, 152, 194; with Parameshṭhin connected with sky,

189; is space-filler, 189; regent of sky, 204, (286); a thunderbolt, 208; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya all the light, 210; none other than the width of the sky can contain him, 216, 364; placed upwards from here in the east, 223, 275; is the truth, 265; the twenty-first, or twenty-one-fold, 265, 308; IV, 62, 163; V, 37, 291; was Agni's protector against the Rakshas, III, 266; is the hook (âsaṅgana) to which the worlds are fastened by means of the quarters, 269; encompassed by the two worlds, 271; is the fire on Âhavanîya, (fire-altar), 309; is the vigour that went from Pragâpati, 312; white horse his representative, 359; kisses all creatures by his rays, 359; strings these worlds to himself on a thread (the wind), 360; IV, 141; is settled on earth by his rays, III, 365; is the Brahman, first-born in front (east), 366; man (purusha) in his disk (maṇḍala), 367; looks downward and gives warmth by his rays, 367; like a drop leaping to the sky and the earth, 368; moves round these worlds from left to right, 400; the brilliant face (front) of the gods, 408; he is (sûrya) the soul of everything that moves and stands, 408; is the all-embracer (? all-expander, all-opener) and becomes the eye, IV, 8; is the upper region, 27; is placed within the southern region, 27; the sustainer of air and regions, and ruler of beings, 28; when he sets everything holds its peace, 62; is the sixteenfold wielder of the (fifteenfold) thunderbolt, 85; is the extent (vyaḳas), 88; is a bright razor (kshura bhrâga), 89; (unclimbable, 89); Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya move hitherwards and thitherwards, 90; is Indra, 92; all hymns are in praise of him, 92; has the earth as his foundation, 95; the all-embracer, connected with the west, 106; burns only on this side of the sky, 130; the luminous Âditya is on the back of the sky, 131; shines for all the three worlds, 132; passes by these worlds and revolves incessantly round them from left to right, 134, 136; is the vital power (âyus), 142; animates all this universe, which is in his shadow, 142; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya are the hearts of the gods, 162; is the heart of Agni-Pragâpati, the altar and universe, 180; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya are the Pravargya (vessels), 187; in the air, half-way between the two worlds, 196; keeps measuring in the middle of the sky, and even in rising fills the three worlds, 196; is a showering ocean, and a ruddy bird, 197; traversing guards the ends of these worlds, 197; connected with the Trishṭubh, 197; Âditya the man (nara) of the sky as (part of) the All (viśva), 208; is the eye, 208; is the highest of all the universe, 240; is the Dhâṭri (orderer), 264; is the year and the one hundred and one-fold Agni (fire-altar), 313; his rays are a hundredfold, 313, 322; is established in the seven worlds of the gods, 314; is Agni (Pragâpati), ascended to heaven, 349; is the Arka, 349; Agni considered as Âditya, 363, triad—Agni, Âditya, Prâṇa—are the eater, the Arka, the Uktha, the Purusha, 398, 399; Âditya one of the six doors to the Brahman, V, 66, 67; to Âditya offering is made in Agni at Agnihotra, 112 seq.; slaughtered by Pragâpati as sacrificial animal, and consequently endowed with certain powers, 128 seq.; Agni, Âditya, Vâyu are light, might, glory (fame), 173; the Sacrificer is Âditya, 248; Âditya is the divine Kshatra, the glory (śrî), the supreme lordship, the summit of the fallow one, the realm of light, 291;—cf. Varuṇa Âditya.

âditya-nâmâni (pârthâni), III, 83.

Âdityas, by fifteen syllables gain pañkadaśa-stoma, III, 40; animal offering to (instead of to Aditi), 126; twelve, born from Vâk, 149; placed with Âditya in the sky, 150; fashioned the sky by means of Gagatî, 234; pap at dîkshâ of Agnikâyana, 247;—produced, IV, 33; Âdityas and Maruts, connected with embryos and the pañkaviṃśa-stoma, 68; Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas separated and were the lords when heaven and earth separated, 75; lords of the western region, 101; connected with Varuṇa, saptadaśastoma, &c., 101; Vasus, Rudras, Âdityas, Maruts, Viśve Devâḥ build on different sides of altar (E. S. W. N. Upper), 118;—the twelve Âdityas enumerated, V, 116; Âdityas and Aṅgiras contending for getting first to heaven, 152; arise by performance of third pressing, 173; the sacrificial horse to go the way of the Âdityas, 288; consecrate king by the Gagatî, 313; obtain the part of Vishṇu, the sacrifice, corresponding to the evening-pressing, 443; Indra, with Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas, receives offering of gharma, 479 sq.

Âgâtaśatrava. See Bhadrasena.

Agâtaśatru, king of Kâśi, III, 141.

age-grades (vayâṃsi), oblations relating thereto, forming part of Vasor dhârâ, IV, 218.

âghâra (libation of ghee), III, 172.

Âgîgarta, father of Śunaḥśepha, III, 95.

Agni, by one syllable gains the breath, III, 40; is all deities, 44; the lower end, 44; the sacrifice, 45; gold his seed, and the fee for his oblations, 45, 59; is fiery spirit or brightness (tegas), 46, 82; with Indra smites the Rakshas, 51; is Varuṇa and Rudra, 51; the giver, 54; Vaiśvânara, twelve-kapâla cake to, 57; Aṇîkavat, eight-kapâla cake to, 58; Agni Gṛihapati, eight-kapâla cake of quick-grown rice, 69, 89; pârtha-oblation to, 82; to him belong shoulder-pieces of yoke, 101; rathavimokaṇîya-oblation to, 101; Agni Dharmaṇaspati, 112; assists Varuṇa, 113; at upasad eight-kapâla cake to, 118; pañkabila ditto on east part of vedi, 120, 121; fee is goad, 121; prayugâṃ havis, eight-kapâla cake, 125; Pragâpati-Agni, the Purusha, 144; the Brahman (triple science) in Agni's mouth, 146; etymology (agri), 146; is trivṛit, the altar consisting of nine substances, 147; gâyatra, 148, 161; union with earth, 148; with Agni the Vasus placed on earth, 150; restores Pragâpati, hence Pragâpati called Agni, 151, 152; Agni Kitya, 151 seq.; is the sun (as an Âditya), 152; Pragâpati's son and father, 154; is speech, 154; becomes a bird to bear sacrifice to sky, 157; his eight or nine forms (Rudra, Sarva, Paśupati, Ugra, Aśani, Bhava, Mahân devaḥ, Îśâna, Kumâra), 159, 160; is all bright (kitra) things, 161, 369; his forms coveted by Pragâpati, 161; he-goat slain for him, 162; home prepared for him by slaying animals (and preparing food), 165; five Agnis (layers), 165; is this earth, 169; is the (ten) regions, 183; is Savitṛi, 191; Virâg, 196; Agni the cattle, went away from the gods, and is searched for, 196 seq.; is cattle (animals), 197; is threefold, 197; enters seed, 198; regent of earth, 204, 286; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya are all the light, 210; (the fire) belongs to Indra and Agni, 212, 253; is Âditya, 216; the child of the two worlds, 224; the sea-born child of the waters, 226; a conqueror, overpowering in battle, 259; burns up the evil (enemies) of the gods, 259; is the brahman and kshatra, 260; born from Dyaus, 272; nourished by day (dawn) and night, 273; shining moves between heaven and earth, 273; is sap and substance in this world,

278; golden-handed (?), 283; distributed in many ways, 284; overthrows Pûru, the Asura, in battle, 292; his splendour in the heavens is Âditya, 304; that on earth this fire, 304; that in the air the wind, 304; Agni Purishya, the son of the earth, 311; Agni the mouth of the gods, 312; his glory (śravas) and vigour is the smoke which announces him in yonder world, 349; son of heaven and earth, 350; leading forward of Agni, 356 seq.; went away from the gods and entered the water, 360; Agni found by a white horse (Pragâpati) on a lotus-leaf, 360; Agni scorches him, 360; Agni the repeller of all evil, 360; taken up by Agnikit into his own self, 362; is the rakshas-killing light, 372; takes away Pragâpati's fiery spirit (tegas) to the south, 374; becomes Pragâpati's right arm, 374; Agni Vaiśvânara, Âditya, creeps as a tortoise over the three worlds, 392; Agni yavishṭha, 413;—is Pragâpati, IV, introd. xvii seq.; the divine Sacrificer, and priest of the sacrifice, xix; the child of the universe, xx; Agni, Âditya, and Vâyu his three forms, xx; Agni the altar, a bird carrying the sacrifice to heaven, xxi; is attended to in front (of the altar), 3; is the existent (bhuva), 4; through Agni everything exists, 4; becomes the breath, 4; from fire breath fashioned, 4; Agni Vaiśvânara is the year, 33; connected with priesthood and trivṛit-stoma, 67; is Virâg, regions and vital airs, 70; is the Brahman (deity), 85; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya move hitherwards and thitherwards, 90; connected with Va-us, trivṛit, âgya-śastra, rathantara, 100; protector of the east, 101, (105); his rays like those of the sun, 105; has distinction (śrî) bestowed upon him by the gods, 113; lord of the good, 123; his paths lead to the gods, 123; his path becomes black, when fanned by the wind, 141, 142; in his immortal form is Rudra, 156; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya are the hearts of the gods, 162; nothing greater than Agni, the fire-altar, 163; the Rudras invoked in the Śatarudriya are Agnis, 167; the fire-altar is speech, 173; is the head of Agni-Pragâpati, the altar and universe, 178, 179; is offspring and the lord of offspring, 181; injures by his heat, fire, and flame (haras, śokis, arkis), 182; in men, water, plants, trees, 183, 184; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya are the Pravargya (vessels), 187; leading forward of Agni, 188 seq.; regaling him with food (sixteen ladlings of ghee), 189; Agni is Viśvakarman, 189, 190; is the eye of gods and men, 200; created as the hundred-headed Rudra, 201; is thousand eyed, 201; is a well-winged bird, 201; seated on the back of the earth he fills the air with his shine, props the sky with his light, and upholds the quarters by his lustre, 202; the fire-altar his seat, 202; oblation to (Agni) Viśvakarman, 204; taken by Pragâpati to his bosom as his own son, 206; Agni, the fire-altar, is the Purusha, made up of seven purushas, the fire being his head, 206, 207; Agni the man (nara) of the earth as (part of) the All (viśva), 208; is speech, 208; Agni's universal sovereignty, 228; Agni as Gandharva, with the plants as Apsaras his mates, 231; lord of the world and lord of creatures whose dwellings are on high and here below, and who is both brahman and kshatra, 234, 235; Agni, when completed and consecrated, becomes a deity, Varuṇa, 238; Agni, the fire-altar, is a heavenly bird, 250; one potent drop (indu), the faithful eagle, the golden-winged bird, 251; Agni Vaiśvakarmaṇa, 268; name to be given to the fire on the altar, 269; the

chiefest of the fires of the five races of men, 269; Agni Vaiśvânara, verses to, 276; Agni the gods' prâṇa, 295; is all objects of desire, 313; the nature of Agni as the vital airs, 331–3; Agni and Indra created as brahman and kshatra, 342; they joined each other as the gold man and the gold plate, 342; they are the light and immortal life, 343; they are the fire-altar, Agni what is baked by fire (bricks) and Indra the purîsha, 343; Agni and Indra are the Viśve Devâḥ, and the three are brahman, kshatra, and viś, 344; is Pragâpati, 345; Agni (-Pragâpati), on ascending, is Âditya, 349; the vital breath, 349; Agni considered as Vâyu or as Âditya, or as the year, 363; as speech, 364; as Death, 365; the direction in which Agni (the fire-altar) is to look, 390 seq.; (Agni) Vaiśvânara, views regarding his nature, 393 seq.; is the Purusha, 398; triad—Agni, Âditya, Prâṇa—are the eater, the Arka, the Uktha, the Purusha, 398, 399; —Agni Dâtri, eight-kapâla cake at New moon, V, 8; Agni Pathikṛit, expiatory eight-kapâla cake at New moon, 10; ditto at Agnihotra, 191; at Aśvamedha, 350; Agni Vaiśvânara, ditto twelve-kapâla one, 11; Agni created out of Pragâpati with a life of a thousand years, 15; Agni and Soma become eater and food, 16; Agni created by the Brahman and placed on earth, 27; takes Śrî's food and receives (mitravindâ) oblation (eight-kapâla cake), 62–65; Agni (fire) one of the six doors to the Brahman, 66; Agni the teacher of the brahmakârin, 86; evolved from the earth, and from him the *Rig*-veda, 102; to Agni offering is made in Âditya at Agnihotra, 112 seq.; Agni's breath taken by the sun, whence fire has to be fanned, 130; triad—Agni, Arkya, Mahad uktham, 172; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya are light, might, glory (fame), 173; Agni Vivikṛi, expiatory eight-kapâla cake at Agnihotra, 192; Agni Saṃvarga, ditto cake, 193; Agni Apsumat, ditto, 193; Agni Sukṛi ditto, 194; the first of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 280; Agni the dark-necked, 316; Agni sacrificed as animal victim, 319; Agni as the chamberlain of king Marutta, 397; oblation to Agni Âyushmat, 439; is the good abode, 457; is the self of all the gods (and regent of the earth), 505.

Agnîdh, ox his fee at Daśapeya, III, 119; gold for pañkabila oblation, 121; bullock for Sautrâmaṇî, 142;—sprinkles fire-altar with water to appease it, IV, 169; is Agni, 169; follows the fire with the single sword (-line), 192.

Âgnîdhra (=Agnîdh), same as Agni, III, 122; is the spring season, V, 44; is under the Brahman, 137.

Âgnîdhra, n. (fire-shed), is the air, IV, 196; associated with Trishṭubh, V, 495; between it and kâtvâla is the gate of sacrifice, 497.

Âgnîdhrîya, III, 97; taken out of Gârhapatya, 265; is the wind in the air, 315, 317; the through-breathing, 317; prepared first of dhishṇya hearths, IV, 242; at Agnikayana built of eight bricks, 243.

Agnihotra, both oblations offered with the same formula, IV, 297; the offerer of the Agnihotra, in the other world, eats food in the morning and evening, 299, 325; to be offered by the Sacrificer himself on new and full moon, V, 21; the four oblations are what, in the Aśvamedha, are those to the horse's feet, 34, 35; esoteric theories on Agnihotra, 46 seq.; how performed when staying abroad, 47; six couples in Agnihotra, 48; disputation about Agnihotra, 79 seq., 112 seq.; speculations on the effect

of the two oblations, 114; expiations of mishaps, 178 seq.; Agnihotra a long sattra terminating with death or old age, 178; Agnihotra cow and calf are speech and mind, 46; the sky and wind, 182; Agnihotra cow is Aditi, the earth, 181; Agnihotra is conducive to heaven, 190; directions in case of Agnihotrin dying whilst from home, 197 seq.; is the mouth of sacrifices, 502.

Agnikayana, III, introd. xxvi, xxvii, 143 seq.; is a uniform (comprehensive) ceremony, 343; IV, introd. xiii seq.; includes all sacrificial rites, IV, 266; shown in detail, 296 seq.; not to be performed for another, 279.

Agnikit, is born in the other world as one made of gold, IV, 295; must not eat of the flesh of any bird (say some), 296; he becomes of Agni's form and all food belongs to him, 296; he becomes the deity Agni, and hence immortal, 296; in the other world eats food every hundred years or not at all, 299.

Agnikityâ, a supernumerary (special) rite, III, 246.

agnikshetra, preparation of (ploughing, &c.), III, 325 seq.

âgnimâruta-śastra, connected with Bṛihaspati, the Viśve Devâḥ, the upper region, &c., IV, 103; on second day of Aśvamedha, V, 382.

âgnimâruta-stotra (=yagñiyagñiya), IV, 252 n.

Agni-nâmâni (pârthâni), III, 82.

Agninetrâḥ (devâḥ), seated in east, III, 148.

Agni-Pûshan, eleven-kapâla cake to, III 55.

Agnirahasya, IV, 281 seq.

Agnisava, IV, 298.

Agnîshomîya, animal offering, IV, 245; is without Samishṭayagus, 260; twenty-one at Aśvamedha, 372, 375; eleven at Purushamedha, 404.

Agnishṭoma, III, introd. xii seq.; victim of, 11; the stomas used, 127; three different modes of its performance, IV, 287; V, 140; the stotras and śastras of Gyotishṭoma Agnishṭoma form a bird, hence equal to Mahâvratasâman and Mahad uktham, IV, 287, 289; a hundred and six or a hundred and twelve in the year's session, V, 147.

Agnishṭoma-sâman, III, introd. xiii seq., 12; IV, 252; on first day of Aśvamedha, V, 376.

Agnishṭut Agnishṭoma, V, 418.

Agni-Soma, eleven-kapâla cake to, III, 45, 56, 69; animal offering to, 68; cake at Full moon, V, 6.

Agni-Vishṇu, eleven-kapâla cake to, III, 44, 54; ditto at dikshâ of Agnikayana, 247.

agniyogana (yoking of fire-altar), IV, 249 seq.

Agnyâdhâna, not to be performed under special nakshatras; but at new moon (of Vaiśâkha or other), V, 1, 2.

âgrayaṇa-graha, III, 6; produced from nidhanavat-sâman, and from it the triṇava and trayastriṁśa, IV, 11.

âgrayaṇeshṭi, offering of first-fruits, instituted by the gods, III, 46.

âgur, formulas, V, 32, 157.

âgûrtin, V, 32; 33 n.

âgyabhâga, at animal sacrifice, V, 124.

âgya-śastra, connected with Agni, the Vasus, the east, trivṛit, and rathantara, IV, 100.

Âhavanîya; (śâlâdvârya) set up on cart, III, 104; head of sacrifice, 233; (in ukhâ) sacrificer's divine body, 262; if it goes out, is again taken out of Gârhapatya, 265; is the sun (or heavenly Agni), 309; its hearth is the sky, its fire the sun and moon, 315; is the world of the gods, 344; the sky, IV, 196; V, 178; or fire-altar, is the Sacrificer's divine body, IV, 226; place for, 307; atonement for Âhavanîya going out, lest the eldest son die, V, 82; ditto for Agnihotra fire going out, 187 seq.; is the (immortal) womb of the gods, 271.

ahîna, III, introd. xix, xx.
âhuti, oblation, etymology, V, 27.
Aibhîvata. See Pratidarśa.
aida-sâman, produced from the anushṭubh, and from it the manthin (graha), IV, 10; how chanted, ib.
Aikshvâka. See Purukutsa.
Aindravâyava-graha, III, 6.
air (antariksha), its union with Vâyu, III, 148; connected with Indrâgni, Viśvakarman, and Vâyu, 188; heals what is injured and torn in the earth, 221; air-world fashioned by Rudras by means of trishṭubh, 234; the home of the waters, 416; supported by the sun, IV, 28; is of trishṭubh nature, 57; is the expanse (varivas), 88; is the lower abode, 203; three oblations of air (or wind, vâta) on chariot, thereby yoking it, 235; air, space, invisible, V, 17; steadied by birds and sun-motes (? sunbeams), 126; connected with Sarasvatî, 241; is a place of abode for all the gods, 505.
airs, vital. See prâṇa.
Aishâvîra, a family of priests, V, 45.
Akkhâvâka, cart laden with barley and yoked with ox his fee at Daśapeya, III, 119; is under Hotṛi, V, 137.
akshara, III, 158; part of speech, 203; (the imperishable) is the one brick constituting Agni, the great Brahman into which all beings pass, IV, 343.
aksharapaṅkti metre, is the heavenly world, IV, 88.
akshâvâpa (keeper of dice) one of king's ratnâni, III, 63, 107.
akshâvapana, III, 64.
Aktâkshiya, III, 153.
all-herb seed, sown on site of burial ground, V, 432.
alms, begging of, by Brahmakârin, V, 49, 50.
altar. See fire-altar.
amâvâsyâ, the night of the sun and moon's staying together; new moon, V, 9.
ambâ, ambikâ, ambâlikâ, V, 321.
amṛita, the nectar of immortality. See immortality.
amṛitavâkâ, a certain bird, (keeps most apart of birds), produces the kshipraśyena (quick eagle), V, 370.
Aṁśa, pârtha-oblation to, III, 82.
aṁśu-graha, drawing of, III, 5; is Pragâpati, the body of the sacrifice, the mind, the out-breathing, the eye, V, 105, 106.
anaddhâ-purusha (sham-man), III, 197, 206; looked at, 227.
añgali, joining of hands, a sign of reverence, IV, 165.
Aṅgiras, is the breath, III, 254; Aṅgiras and Âdityas contending for getting first to heaven, V, 152; the Veda of the Apsaras, 366; with Yama and the Fathers receive offering of Gharma, 481.
anîka, III, 58.
anîkavat, III, 58.
animal, domestic, seven kinds of, possessed by Maruts, III, 40; five sacrificial, 162; delight near fire, 164; are Agni, 197; horse, ass, and he-goat, search for Agni, 198, 204–206; consists of body and vital air, 293; born with bones, though not introduced with bones into womb, 254; mounted on its middle body from left side, 361; having received the foetus standing, gives birth whilst lying down, 363; left side of well-filled animal more raised than right, 400; do not diminish, being established in the womb, 401; are the vital airs, 402; the kiṁpurusha, gaura âraṇya, gavaya, ushṭra, śarabha unfit for sacrifice and not to be eaten by Brâhmaṇa, 412; of animals the head born first, IV, 40; biggest about the middle, 40, 50; the right side the stronger, 40; there are animals in the air, 46; are food, 46; four-footed (live) in the air, 50; four kinds of four-footed domestic animals, 56; four-footed, connected with Vasus and Rudras, freed from death through the katurviṁśa-stoma, 68; tame, ruled over by Bṛihaspati, 74; one-hoofed, ruled over by Varuṇa, 75; small, ruled over by

Pûshan, 75; wild, ruled over by Vâyu, 75; threefold (father, mother, child; or embryo, amnion, chorion), 110; seven domestic animals, 211, 277; seven wild ones, 277; five (sacrificial) —man, horse, bull, ram, he-goat, 299; by these Pragâpati could not attain heaven, 300; Pragâpati the one proper sacrificial animal, 304; sacrificial animal is Pragâpati, and represents all deities, 404; draught animal pulls with all four limbs, V, 78; walks on two feet at a time, 78; one-hoofed originates from Indra's ear, 215; are sixteenfold, 252; tame and wild ones bound at Aśvamedha, 306; if so, gain earth and heaven respectively, 306; the wild ones set free, 307.
animal-brick (cattle-brick), III, 155, 166, 187.
animal sacrifice (paśubandha), III, introd. xii; to Vâyu and Pragâpati, 171 seq.; chief oblations of, 175; consists of omentum, animal cake and chief oblations, 180; a. s. of Soma-day (savanîya paśu), IV, 260; the performer of it eats food every six months in the other world, 299; esoteric remarks on, V, 118 seq.; is a ransoming of one's own self, 118; should be performed at least once a year, 119; either of the haviryagña, or the Soma-sacrifice order, 119; is a great Soma-sacrifice, not an ishṭi, 120; with or without Soma, 122, 123; Kâturmâsya animal sacrifice, 402.
animal victim, five, III, 156; their heads, 164; heads placed in fire-pan in first layer, 400; ropes of unequal length, 166; now only two slaughtered, 171; by male victims the Sacrificer ransoms himself, V, 119; to whom does it belong? (Pragâpati, Sûrya, Indra-Agni), 127, 128.
anirukta, III, 110, 179; V, 506.
aṅkâṅka (metre), is water, IV, 89.
anna-homa, III, 37; V, 295, 377.
anointment, of Sacrificer, at Râgasûya (on tiger skin), III, 80; at Agnikayana (on black antelope skin), IV, 226; (on skin of he-goat), 227; by Soma and the nectar of immortality, 251; with fat gravy at Sautrâmaṇî (on black antelope skin), V, 250 seq., 252.
ant (vamrî and upadîkâ), gnaw Vishṇu's bowstring, obtain the taste of food, and find water where they dig, V, 442; are the first-born of the world (?) 450; ant-hill, III, 206; is this earth, 207; used for the clay of Pravargya vessels, V, 450.
antariksha (air), etymology, III, 318; IV, 50.
Antarvat, a Gandharva, V, 30.
antaryâma-graha, III, 6; produced from svâra-sâman, and from it the paṅkadaśa-stoma, IV, 7.
antelope skin, black, sign of initiation, III, 186; is the sacrifice, 215, 266; IV, 226; V, 249, 447; its hair the metres, III, 255, 266; V, 249, 448; is the earth, III, 216; the seat of the good work, 219; therein gold plate sewn, 266; anointing of Sacrificer on, IV, 226; used in burning dead body, V, 200, 203; for consecration at Sautrâmaṇî, 249.
anumantraṇa, V, 40, 42, 483, 484.
Anumati, eight-kapâla cake to, III, 42; is this earth, 44; a garment the fee, 44; pap to her, (the extreme end of) one of the four regions, IV, 264.
Anumlokantî, the Apsaras, is an intermediate quarter (? N. W.), or the night, IV, 107.
anupraisha, V, 244.
anuśâsana, precepts (? the Vedâṅgas), to be studied, V, 98.
Anushṭubh, connected with north, autumn, vairâga, ekavimśa-stoma, III, 91; produced from the autumn, and from it the aida-sâman, IV, 10; in the form of it four-year-old kine produced, 39; is the northern region, 45; is speech, 89, 144, 277; of thirty-two syllables, 206; is the voice (of Pragâpati), 327, 328; what takes place after the three savanas is of Anushṭubh nature, V, 106; the horse is of

Anushṭubh nature, 304; Anushṭubh related to the north, 304.
anuvâkyâ, is in the Gâyatrî metre, V, 26.
anuvâka, eleven, III, 183; are thunderbolt, hail, and (heavenly) firebrand, V, 42, 43.
Anvâdhyas, the guardians of one of the four regions, V, 359.
anvâhârya, mess of rice, the dakshiṇâ at Darśapûrṇamâsa, V, 7; etymology, 23.
Anvâhârya-pakana fire, atonement for its going out lest his cattle die, V, 83; is the air, 178; blood milked by Agnihotra cow to be boiled on enclosed Anvâhârya, 183.
anvâkhyâna, old tale, regarding battles between gods and Asuras, not true, V, 14.
anvârambhaṇîyeshṭi, III, 42 n.; of Agnyâdhâna at preceding full-moon, V, 2.
Anyatabplakshâ, a lake in Kurukshetra, visited by swan-maidens, V, 70.
âpab, etymology, III, 146.
apâmârga (achyranthes aspera), thereby the gods wiped away the Rakshas, III, 52; of a backward effect, 54; used for cleansing one's self after a burial, V, 437.
apâmârga-homa, III, 52.
apâna, downward air, becomes the upward air, IV, 16.
apâna-bhṛit, the eye-sustainer, IV, 15.
apasyâ bricks, III, 388; laying down of them in first layer, 413 seq.; are waters, 413; IV, 2; of second layer, 23, 34 seq.; are rain, 34.
apendra, III, 130.
apradakshiṇam (apasalavi), V, 323, 467.
apratiratha, is Indra, IV, 192; hymn muttered by Brahman, as the fire is led forward, 192.
âprî verses, twelve, III, 169, 173; for sautrâmaṇî, V, 244.
Apsaras,—from Pragâpati couples issue in the form of Gandharvas and Apsaras, IV, 229; Gandharvas and Apsaras made offering to in râshṭrabhṛit oblations, 230 seq.; Gandharvas and Apsaras affect sweet scent (gandha) and beauteous form (nipa= apsas), 230; and worship the divine Purusha under these forms, 373; changed into swans, V, 70; Soma Vaishṇava their king, the Aṅgiras their Veda, 366.
âpti, (twelve) formulas and oblations, III, 29.
Âptoryâma, III, introd. xiii, xix–xxiii; V, 419; Atirâtra, 397.
Âpyas, the guardians of one of the four regions, V, 359.
araṇi, two, V, 74.
araṇye-nûkya, the odd cake to Maruts, IV, 210; (extended), V, 336; is speech, IV, 210; the seven rivers flowing westwards, 212; belongs to Pragâpati, 212.
Ârbhava-pavamâna, of Vâgapeya, III, 9.
Arbuda Kâdraveya, king of snakes, V, 367.
ardhendra oblations of ghee, to Indra coupled successively with one other deity (Agni and Indra, &c.), forming part of the Vasor dhârâ, IV, 216.
Arguna, mystic name of Indra, III, 99.
arikupa (metre) is the water, IV, 88.
Arishṭanemi, the chieftain (grâmaṇî) of the sacrifice (or the north), is the second autumn month, IV, 107.
arka, flame, the four, IV, 334 seq.; is the fire on the fire-altar, 342; the fire-altar (Agni-Pragâpati), 346, 348; is Aditya; the vital air, 349; the Arka is Agni, Âditya, Prâṇa, the Purusha, 398, 399; the Arka-nature of the Arkya, 402; is the waters, 402; Arka and Aśvamedha, become Death, 404.
arka (calotropis gigantea), is food, IV, 157; leaf used for offering to Rudra with, 157; thrown into the pit (kâtvâla), 166; the arka sprang from Rudra's place of rest, 158; is inauspicious and hence must not be trodden upon, 166; arka flowers, leaves, &c., 334 seq.

arka (? hymns of praise), food for the gods, V, 232.
arkâśvamedhasaṁtati, oblations, IV, 239.
arkis,—haras, sokis, arkis (heat, fire, flame), of Agni, IV, 382.
ârkshyat, V, 155 n.
Arkya, is the fire (Agni-Pragâpati) and the food thereof, IV, 342 seq.; the Arka-nature of the Arkya, 402; triad—Agni, Arkya, Mahad uktham, V, 172.
arm, exerts strength, III, 200; stroking arms of king, 88; is fifteenfold, IV, 79; food is eaten therewith, 306; arms and legs consist of twenty-five parts each, 325; parts of arm, V, 75, 77; the different parts, 162.
arm-pit, from it water springs, IV, 169.
arrow, three, III, 88; arrow's range = Pragâpati's width, 17; = Pragâpati's height, 25; arrow's width, 236; arrow is strength, 236.
ârsheyam (ancestry), III, 190.
ârtava (? seasonal period), the ruler of seasons, IV, 74.
Aruṇa Aupaveśi, (Gautama), a teacher, IV, 393, 394.
Âruṇeya. See Śvetaketu.
Âruṇi, betwitches Bhadrasena Âgâtaśatrava, III, 140; his view on Darśapûrṇamâsa, V, 37; on Agnihotra expiation, 182; cf. Uddâlaka.
arvan, horse, carries the Asuras, IV, 401.
Ârya, and Śûdra, ruled by day and night, IV, 74; Śûdra woman the Arya's mistress, V, 326.
Aryaman, his path above upper region, III, 59, 122; pârtha-oblation to, 83.
Asamaratha, Âditya's chieftain (grâmaṇî), is the second rainy month, IV, 106.
âsandî. See throne-seat.
Âsandîvat, a city, V, 396.
Aśani, a form and name of Agni, is the lightning, III, 160.
asapatnâ, bricks, of fifth layer, IV, 83 seq.
aśmâ (ashṭakâ), the earth, III, 154, 387; IV, 95; conn. with Savitṛi, III, 190; made by Sacrificer's wife, 190; forming of, by the mahishî, 238; is speech, 239, 387; IV, 95; etymology, III, 387; is the vital airs, 388; laying down of, 388, 389; is the mahishî, 391; IV, 2.
ashes, the foul part (pâpman) of food eaten by Agni, III, 261; thrown out in the evening and morning, 261; taken to the water, 293; some of it brought back and put in the pan, 294, 295.
ashṭâdaśa-stoma, is speed, and the year, IV, 63.
ashṭâkatvârimśa-stoma, the revolving sphere, the year, IV, 66; the last of the even stomas, 218.
ashṭamî, eighth day after full moon, sacred to Pragâpati, III, 180; is a joint of the year, 180.
Asita Dhânva, king of the Asuras, V, 368.
Asitamṛigas, a branch of the Kaśyapa family of priests, win the Soma-drink from the Bhûtavîras, IV, 345 n.
aśman, etymology, III, 148.
asrîvayas, a metre, is all food, IV, 52.
ass (râsabha) how created, III, 147; substitute for cow and sheep, 197; he-ass doubly impregnates, 197; searches for Agni, 204, 205; is addressed, 224; imbued with burning (pain), 225; represents Vaiśya and Śûdra, 227.
Asuras, arrogance and defeat of, III, 1; repulsed by Indra and Bṛihaspati in the south, IV, 192; contend with the gods for the regions, 193; hold to untruth, and the gods to truth, 257; serve the divine Purusha as Mâyâ, 373; carried by horse Arvan, 401; created from the downward breathing of Pragâpati, V, 13; smitten with evil and darkness, 13, 14; the tales of their fights with the gods not true, 14; through arrogance offer into their own mouths and come to naught, 22; contend with the gods for Pragâpati, the sacrifice, 105; Asita Dhânva their king, magic art their Veda, 368; Asuravidyâ, 368 n.; driven from the regions, 423; from the

earth, 429; people of Asura nature (the Easterns and others) make their burial-places round, 423; and line them with stone, 430.
âsuta and suta, V, 242 n.
Asuri, on truth, V, 417.
asva, etymology, III, 146; V, 328.
Asvamedha, III, introd. xxvi; a supernumerary (special) rite, 246; is the sun, IV, 239, 104; how produced, 403; Arka and Asvamedha become Death, 404; the Darsapûrnamâsa the original (normal) Asvamedha, V, 33; Asvamedha the moon, 33, 34; performance, 274 seq.; is the bull among sacrifices, 276; wealth (? distinction), royal sway, departs from him who performs the Asvamedha, 285; means royal sway, 288; Asvamedha performed by Pragâpati, 289; from of old a hero was born to the performer of the Asvamedha, 295; where they perform it, Parganya rains whenever they list, and security of possession is assured to the people, 295; the Asvamedha Pragâpati reserves for himself, assigning the other sacrifices to the gods, 295; is the king of sacrifices, 298; the victims tied to the stakes, 298 seq.; is the royal office, 303; a disused sacrifice, 334; belongs to all the deities, 336; is a Kshatriya's sacrifice, hence commenced in summer, 347; but rather in spring, 347.
Asvapati Kaikeya, a king and theologian, IV, 393.
Asva Sâmudri, V, 302.
asvastomîyâ, oblations, V, 337, 341.
Âsvatarâsvi. See Budila.
asvattha (ficus religiosa), leaves used for salt-bags, III, 33; tree on which the Maruts stayed, 34, 84; branch broken off by itself used for making a bowl, 67; consecration vessel, for a Vaisya to sprinkle with, made thereof, 84; originates from Indra's skin, (and honour), V, 215; means honour, 220; not to stand near a grave, 427; is the abode (of plants?), 433.
âsvina-graha, III, 6.
âsvina-sastra, III, introd. xviii, xx.
Asvinau, by two syllables gain two-footed men, III, 40; two-kapâla cake to, 62; are twins, 62; reddish-white he-goat their victim at Sautrâmanî, 129; cure Indra from the effects of overdraught of Soma, 132; drink Soma with Namuki, 135; two-kapâla cake at Sautrâmanî for healing, 137; lay down the second layer of altar, as physicians and Brâhmanas, IV, 23, 30; are the Adhvaryus of the Agnikityâ and the gods, 23; took the part of Pragâpati below waist and above feet which is sacred to them, 28; became everything here, 30; (with the help of Sarasvatî) they heal Indra, when his vital energy is taken from him by Namuki, V, 216, 223; the he-goat their guerdon, 216; are the physicians of the gods, 217; he-goat immolated to them, 217; are the eyesight, and fiery spirit, 217, 218; she-goats sacred to them, 218; bring the Soma (plant) from Namuki which Sarasvatî then distils, 232; connected with the earth (and the morning-pressing), 241, 247; possess healing-power (bhaishagya), 243; are the Adhvaryus of the gods, 245; connected with spring and summer, 247; together with Sarasvatî they prepare the Sautrâmanî to heal Indra, 249; Asvinau, Sarasvatî, and Indra are everything here, 253; and have a share in the gharma, 475; two he-goats black (? white) on lower part of the body their victims at Asvamedha, 300; restore Dadhyañk Âtharvana's head after becoming his pupils, 444, 445; 475.
âsvinî, regional bricks, IV, 23 seq.; what part of the body they represent, 28.
Atharvan, is the breath, III, 217;

the Atharvans the Veda of the Gandharvas, V, 365.
Atharvâṅgiras, the study of their texts, V, 97.
âti, an aquatic bird, V, 70.
atigrâhya-grahâ*b*, III, 6.
ati*kkh*andas, comprises all metres, III, 104; V, 497; the covering (including) metre in form of which the lions were produced, IV, 38; beyond all metres, 110, 385.
Atirâtra, III, introd. xiii, xvii–xx, xxiii; confusion of its sâmans in session of a hundred Atirâtras, V, 92; two in the year's session, 147; Atirâtra with all the stomas, 330, 333, 395.
atirikta-stotra, III, introd. xx, xxii.
âtithya (guest-offering), ends with the Iḍâ, IV, 259; is the head of the (Soma-) sacrifice, V, 491.
Atnâra, Âtnâra. See Para.
Atyagnish*t*oma, III, introd. xiii; last day of Atirâtra, avivâkya, xvii.
Audanya (son of Udanya). See Mundibha.
Audbhari. See Kha*nd*ika.
audgrabha*n*a-oblations, III, 249; at A*s*vamedha, V, 289 seq.
Aupamanyava. See Mahâśâla.
Aupave*s*i. See Aru*n*a.
Aupâvi Gâna*s*ruteya, descends to earth from upper region, III, 2, 3.
au*s*ana-sâman, how chanted, IV, 7.
austerities. See tapas.
autumn, produced from the ear, and from it the anush*t*ubh, IV, 10; consists of months Isha and Ûrga, 49; rainy season and autumn are the air-world and the middle of the year, 49; in autumn creatures are brahman-vat (? rich in growth), 45.
avabhr*i*tha, III, 185; at the animal sacrifice, V, 121; at Sautrâman*î*, 264.
avakâ plants, placed below and above tortoise, III, 392; means water, 393; IV, 49; below and above the lower *ri*tavyâ bricks of third layer, IV, 48; drawn across the altar to appease it, 174; etymology, 175; afford least subsistence, 175; sepulchral mound covered therewith, V, 436.
avakâ*s*a, formulas, V, 469; are the vital airs, 469, 492.
avatâna, 'unstringing' formulas and oblations, IV, 163.
avi (ewe), is this earth, III, 156; victim, 156; created from Pragâpati's ear, 402; sacred to Varu*n*a, 411; is the skin of (supplies a covering for) the two-footed and four-footed, 411; fashioned first of forms by Tvash*t*ri, 411.
âvid-formulas, III, 89.
Âvikshita. See Marutta.
âvis, III, 89.
âvitta, III, 89.
avivâkya, III, introd. xvii.
axle, demoniacal voice in, III, 291.
Ayasthûna, a performer of a sattra, V, 61.
Ayavas,—Yavas and Ayavas the former and latter fortnights, connected with creatures generally, and the *k*atu*sk*atvârim*s*a-stoma, IV, 69; the lords of creatures, 76.
Âyogava. See Marutta.
Âyus, is Agni, III, 323.
Âyush*t*oma, form of Agnish*t*oma, IV, 287.

Bahishpavamâna, of Vâgapeya, III, 8; of Abhishe*k*anîya, 69; at A*s*vamedha, is heaven, V, 305, 306; when chanted 'outside,' 305.
bahvri*k*a, theologians of the *Rig*-veda, V, 72.
Bâlâki, V, 165.
balance, the right edge of the vedi is a balance in which the Sacrificer is weighed, V, 45.
Balhika, Prâtipîya, a Kauravya king, V, 259.
balvaga, grass used for winding round throne-seat, V, 461.
bamboo. See reed.
barefooted, consecrated king never stands barefooted on earth, III, 129.
Bârhaduktha, Âprî-verses, V, 302.
Bârhaspatya pap, III, 21, 28, 36.
barhis, is the sky, V, 248.

barley-corn, V, 405.
barren, wife possessed with Nirṛiti, III, 65.
bath, purificatory, V, 438.
beasts, wild (śvâpada, tiger, &c.), spring from Soma flowing from lower opening, III, 131.
bee, wounds the horse's thigh, V, 330.
Belief and Unbelief, as two women with a man (Wrath) between them, V, 111, 112.
belly, gets and eats the food, IV, 115; food of all kind meets together there, V, 37.
Bhadrasena Âgâtaśatrava, bewitched by Âruṇi, III, 141.
Bhaga, pârtha-oblations to, III, 82.
bhâgadugha, carver or tax-gatherer, III, 62; one of the ratninaḥ, 63.
Bhâllaveya, V, 354, 393; cf. Indradyumna.
Bharadvâga, ṛishi, III, introd. xiv; is the mind, 107; etymology, 107.
Bhâradvâga, a teacher, IV, 352.
Bharata, is Pragâpati, III, 292;—Bharata Dauḥshanti, son of Śakuntalâ, performed the Aśvamedha, V, 399; seizes the sacrificial horse of the Satvats, 401.
Bhâratas, the throne of, III, 105; Bharatas, V, 399, 401.
Bhauvana. See Viśvakarman.
Bhava, a form and name of Agni, is the rain-cloud (parganya), III, 160.
Bheshaga, (medicine) a work of the Âtharvaṇikâḥ, V, 365 n.
Bhîmasena, performs Aśvamedha, V, 396.
Bhṛigu Vâruṇi, sent out by his father Varuṇa to gain knowledge, V, 108 seq.
Bhṛigus, one is to sacrifice along with them, IV, 200; sacrifice was offered by them, 262.
bhrûṇahatyâ, V, 341.
bhûḥ, bhuvaḥ, svar,—sâman on, IV, 145; are the three worlds, 145; the first words spoken by Pragâpati, V, 12; the five syllables made by Pragâpati the five seasons, 13; luminous essences evolved from triple science, 103; expiatory oblations to be made therewith, 103, 104; are all-expiatory, 180; some perform the sprinkling of the Sacrificer with these at Sautrâmaṇî, 253.
bhûta, living being, existing thing (? spirit) — freed from death through trayastriṃśa-stoma, connected with Ṛibhus and Viśve Devâḥ, IV, 70; the bhûtânâm patiḥ their lord, 73; Pragâpati Parameshṭhin their lord, 76, 350, 354; daily offerings to them, V, 95.
bhûtânâm patiḥ (Pragâpati, the year), husband of Ushas, III, 158; IV, 73.
Bhûtavîra, a family of priests, IV, 345 n.
Bhûti, goddess of prosperity, homage paid to her, III, 324.
bhuvaḥ. See bhûḥ.
bifurcate. See forking.
bilva (Aegle Marmelos), V, 374.
birds,—how created, III, 148; when born, body produced first, IV, 136, 139; flesh not to be eaten by Agnikit (say some), 296; contract and expand their wings and tail, 300 seq.; the little bird which bustles with 'ahalak,' V, 325; birds the people of Târkshya Vaipaśyata, the Purâṇa their Veda, 369.
bird-like body, is the fire-altar, IV, 285; takes Pragâpati to heaven, 300.
black, is sickly, IV, 137.
blood, oblations of, V, 394.
boar, produced from ghee, III, 102; boar and cow friendly together, 103; shoes of boar's skin, 102; vicious boar (durvarâha) unclean, V, 178; earth torn up by boar, used for Pravargya vessels, 451.
body, founded on the mind, III, 270; linked to food by the (channels of the) vital airs, 270; is kindled by the sun, and hence warm, IV, 135; produced before wings and tail, 136; has thirty limbs, 167, 222; is twenty-five-fold, 168, 222; if immortal, is boneless, 178; the fire-altar, Mahâvrata, and Mahad uktham are the Sacrificer's

divine, immortal body, 279; consists of couples, 284; consists of five mortal parts (hair, skin, flesh, bone, marrow) and five immortal parts (mind, voice, breath, eye, ear), 290; the immortal parts are the vital airs, 292; body (fifteenfold, 309; fivefold, 309); consists of 101 parts and has as many vital airs, 325, 326; parts constituting (Pragâpati's) body, 347; of thirty parts, 383, 387; body of dead man how to be treated, V, 201 seq.; body of man is of three parts, 261.

bone,—bricks are Agni's bones, IV, 20; bones run both lengthwise and crosswise in the body, 135; in wings and tail of birds no transverse bone, 135; is one of the mortal parts of the body, 178; bones are the 'śrî' (? goodness, strength) of men, 326; are the enclosing-stones, hence 360 of them, 387; V, 169; bones of fat and lean persons are alike, V, 20; bones of dead man are collected, 117, 443 n.; brought home, arranged on black antelope skin and burnt, 200; buried, 433; arranged like bird's body, 435.

boon, choosing of, III, 105.

bow, strung, III, 87; is the Râganya's strength (vîrya), 89; with three arrows given as sacrificial fee, V, 11; Vishṇu's bow and three arrows, 442.

brahmahatyâ, redeemed by Aśvamedha, V, 328; atonement for it, 340, 341.

Brahmakârin, not delivered to Death, V, 48; cuts off a night from his life by not bringing firewood, 48, 49; his life a sacrificial session, 49; begging alms, 49, 50; brings firewood to teacher, 53, 54, 85; initiation of Brahmakârin, 86 seq.; teacher, by laying his right hand on him, becomes pregnant with him, and in the third night he is born as a Brâhmaṇa with the Sâvitrî, 88; whether allowed to eat honey or not, 90; may initiate the Unnetri, 137.

brahmakarya, religious studentship, V, 86 seq.

Brahman (n.), is Bṛihaspati, III, 3, 21; IV, 192; (prayer), III, 21; (priesthood) connected with the east, Gâyatrî, Rathantara, Trivṛit, spring-season, 91; the Brahman (trayî vidyâ) first created, 145, 146; is the foundation of everything, 145; is Agni's mouth, 146; Pragâpati is the whole Brahman, 353; constitutes the fourth layer of altar, IV, 59; (priesthood) delivered from death through the trivṛit-stoma, 67; Brahmaṇaspati its lord, 73; is Agni, 85; Agni created as the Brahman, 342; the firstborn Brahman, the Rishis, 100; the Brahman, the Yagus, its power in the other world, 173; (holy writ) seven-syllables (*rik*, yagus, sâman, brahman), 314; (mystic science) the greatest, 338; established as the viś, V, 41;—is the highest of gods, IV, 59; upholds heaven and earth, 59; is the vital airs, 59; is Pragâpati, 59, 60; is the Gâyatrî, and the sun's disk, 94; is the universe, 315; the (imperishable) akshara, the one brick (of) Agni into which all beings pass, 343; the true Brahman is the Purusha, 400; the universe in the beginning was the Brahman who created the gods, V, 27; the Brahman, having placed the deities in the three worlds and in the higher worlds, went to the sphere beyond these, whence it descended again by means of its manifestations Form and Name, 27; only on being possessed of the Brahman the gods became immortal, 28; delivers creatures to Death, except the Brahmakârin, 48; six doors to the Brahman, 66 seq.; sacrifice to Brahman (study of the Veda), 95 seq.; is a light equal to the sun, 388; the ultimate thing of the universe, 409; Brahman Svayambhu, performs austerities, 417; offers himself up in the

creatures, and the creatures in his own self, 418; is the first-born, yonder sun, 459.
Brâhman (m.), priest, mounts cart-wheel, III, 22; beats the drum, 24; presented with gold honey-cup, 29; gets gold śatamânas as fee for protecting sacrifice in south, 108; IV, 211; his fee at Daśapeya twelve heifers with first calf, III, 119; bull his fee for pañkabila-oblation to Indra, or brown ox for ditto to Soma, 122; white-backed bullock for Bṛihaspati's ditto pap, 122; neither performs, nor chants, nor recites; yet gets gold śatamâna, 141; is the entire sacrifice, 185; as representative of Bṛihaspati mutters Apratiratha hymn whilst Agni is led forward, IV, 192; is the autumn, V, 45; uses the whole trayî vidyâ, 104; initiated for sattra (as moon and plants), 135; if he does not know certain rites he may allow another to act for him, 211, 212; formerly they had to be of the Vasishṭha family, 212; is the heart of the sacrifice, 245; one fettering the sacrificial horse without announcing it to Brahman is liable to incur injury, 277; the spotless Brahman, is the moon, 317, 318; (? Pragâpati), is the horse, 318; boon granted to him, 350; is the highest seat of speech, 391; the guardian of the sacrifice, 459; the best physician amongst priests, 483; is seated, 503.
Brâhmaṇa (m.), not to be fed upon, having Soma for his king, III, 72, 95; IV, 249; sprinkling of king from palâśa vessel, III, 83; sprinkles him in front, 94; comes after king, 96; is stronger than king, 110; is followed by the three other castes, 227; Brâhmaṇa and Kshatriya never go behind Vaiśya and Śûdra, 227; into him, as the representative of the Brahman, all beings pass and are reproduced therefrom, V, 85; effect of the study of the Veda on him, 99 seq.; not to engage with Râganya in disputation, 114; as the scapegoat receives the Sacrificer's pain and evil, 181; the Brâhmaṇa descended from Rishis, represents all deities, 195, 196; Brâhmaṇa, if going away offended, is presented with a cow longing for a bull, 195; Brâhmaṇa accepting earthen vessels of dead man, is a remover of corpses, 205; the Soma his drink, 217; not to drink raw spirituous liquor, 260; is a form of the priestly office, 286; king can oppress him, but fares the worse for it, 286; to the Brâhmaṇa belongs the fulfilment of wishes, 287; was of old born endowed with spiritual lustre, 294; every Sacrificer becomes a Brâhmaṇa, 348; Brâhmaṇa knowing nothing of the Aśvamedha, may be despoiled, 360.
brâhmaṇa (n.), mystic sense, or dogmatic explanation of an oblation, IV, 240.
Brâhmaṇâkkhaṃsin,—bull his dakshiṇâ at Daśapeya, III, 119; is under the Brahman priest, V, 136.
Brahmaṇaspati, lord of the priesthood, IV, 73; is the sun, V, 453.
brahmaudana, priests' mess of rice, V, 274; is seed, 275, 348.
brahmodya, theological disputation, V, 79; between Brahman and Hotṛi, 314; all priests, 388–390.
breast-bone, IV, 114.
breath. See prâṇa.
brick. See ishṭakâ.
Bṛihaduktha Vâmadevya, V, 302.
bṛihad vaḳas, III, introd. xv.
Bṛihaspati, gains Pragâpati and ascends to upper region, now his own, III, 2, 59, 122; is the Brahman (priesthood), 3, 21; IV, 192, 229; V, 258, 314; wild rice-pap on seventeen plates, III, 21, 28; afraid of the earth and vice versâ, 34; with Bṛihaspati's rulership the Sacrificer is consecrated at Vâgapeya, 39; by eight syllables gains Gâyatrî,

40; pap to Br*i*haspati, 59; is Purohita of gods, 59; V, 258; white-backed bullock his fee, III, 59; his the smaller and broken rice-grains, 67; (? is Varu*ṇa*, 68); pap of wild rice to Br*i*haspati Vâ*k*, 70; pârtha-oblation to Br*i*haspati, 82; IV, 228; assists Varu*ṇa*, III, 113; sa*ṃsri*p-oblation (pap), 116; pañ*k*abila (pap) on centre of Vedi, 120, 121; white-backed bullock fee to Brahman for Br*i*haspati's oblation, 122; prayûgâ*m* havis (pap), 125; Savitr*i* and Br*i*haspati connected with the regions and the *k*atush*t*oma, IV, 69; ruler of tame animals, 74; protector of upper region, 103; connected with Vi*ś*ve Devâ*ḥ*, tri*ṃ*ava and trayastri*ṃś*a-stomas, &c., 102, 103; as Brahman assists Indra Apratiratha in fighting the Asuras, 192; takes *Ś*rî's holy lustre and receives (mitravindâ) pap, V, 62–65; the eighth of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 281; offering of barren cows, 402, 411; Br*i*haspati, with the Vi*ś*ve Devâ*ḥ*, receives offering of Gharma, 480; is the wind, 480.

Br*i*haspati-sava, III, introd. xxiv, xxv, 4; the same as Vâgapeya, 34.

Br*i*hatî, metre,—the fire-altar becomes like it, III, 219; is the year, 220; consists of thirty-six syllables, 318; in the form of it oxen were produced, IV, 38; is the air, 53; a thousand br*i*hatîs, 111; is the mind (of Pragâpati), 327, 328; 12,000 make up the whole *Rik*, 352; twenty-one br*i*hatîs, as the measure of the universe, 384–387; the *k*aturmâsya formulas amount to 362 br*i*hatîs, and hence to the year and Mahâvrata, V, 78; by it the gods reached heaven, 156, 172; the Âpa*ś*kita-sattra amounts thereto, 172; cattle related thereto, 221; the pressing-stones are of br*i*hatî nature, 243.

br*i*hat-sâman, III, introd. xv, xvi, xx–xxiii; connected with Indra, xv; with Kshatra, &c., 91; produced from pañ*k*ada*ś*a-stoma, IV, 7; (br*i*ha*k* *kh*andas) is heaven, 19; connected with Indra, the Rudras, the south, &c., 101; sung over completed fire-altar, is the sky, 179.

br*i*hat-stotra, Vâgapeya-sâman, III, 11.

Bu*dh*ja Â*ś*vatarâ*ś*vi Vaiyâghrapadya, a teacher, IV, 393.

bull, liberated as fee for Agni-Soma cake, III, 45; fee for Indrâgni cake, 46; dark-grey, fee for Pûshan's trisha*ṃ*yukta, 56; brown, for Soma's, 56; is the Pragâpati of cows, 58; belongs to Indra, 60; spotted, 61; fee for oblation to Maruts, 61; sacrificial animal, 162, 165 seq.; slaughtered for Indra, 162; eight-hoofed, 177; (ukshan) is vigour, produced in the form of the Kakubh, IV, 38; two-year-old (dityavâ*ḥ*) produced in the form of the Virâ*g*, 39; other ages of other metres, 39; originates from Indra's mouth, V, 215; has an excrescence (hump), 276.

burial-place (*ś*ma*ś*âna), V, 421 seq.; four-cornered, 423; is made round by people of Asura nature, the Easterns and others, 423, 424; the site for it, 424 seq.; size, 428, 435; ploughing of site, 431.

calf, year and a half old, is vigour, produced in the form of the trish*t*ubh, IV, 39; white calf of black cow, 200.

carpenter, his house is the resting-place of the sacrificial horse and its keepers, V, 360.

cart. See chariot.

castes, four, do not vomit Soma, III, 131.

cattle, belong to Pûshan, III, 55; (Rudra, 52); are purîsha, 201; represented by the *kh*andasyâ (metre-) bricks, IV, 36; thrive when it rains, 36; become metres, 36; Pragâpati, in the shape of Gâyatrî, overtakes the

cattle, 37; thrive exceedingly in the homestead of him who possesses many of them, V, 126; their eye taken by the sun, whence they only know things by smelling, 130; bovine cattle represent all animals, 332.
chamberlain. See kshattṛi.
chanting-place, of bahishpavamâna-stotra, V, 305.
chariot, -race, introd. xxiv, 17 seq.; taken down from stand and turned, III, 18, 98; with three horses, warrior and charioteer, 50, 102; gods driving on, 289; placed north of fire with pole to the east, 290; offering made on head of chariot, IV, 233; chariot shifted sunwise round the fire on the brick-altar, 234; is the sun, 235; by oblations of air the gods yoked the chariot for the obtainment of all their wishes, 236; two smashed chariots joined together, V, 198; made complete by means of cords, 318.
charioteer, not to get down from chariot along with king, III, 104.
child, born with head first, III, 233; in womb grows by warmth, 254; tries to speak and stand up at the end of a year, V, 13; first speaks words of one or two syllables, 13; born after being fashioned for a year, 88.
circumambulation, (thrice) of altar (to atone for ordinary walking round), IV, 170; of sacrificial horse (by the king's wives), V, 322, 323.
clavicle. See collar-bone.
clay, produced from foam, III, 147, 157; lump of, is Agni, 206 seq.; ditto for Pravargya vessels, V, 449.
clod-bricks, are the regions, III, 345, 348; vital sap, 345; IV, 44; clod of earth deposited midway between a grave and the village, V, 440.
cloud, originates from smoke, III, 85; is the udder whence the 'shower of wealth' flows, IV, 221.
coin. See gold coin.
cold, is the body of him about to die, IV, 136.
collar-bone, classed with the ribs, V, 164.
colour (outward appearance), is everything, V, 354.
commander of army. See senânî.
conception,—one born a year after conception may perform Agni-ḳayana without having carried the Ukhya Agni for a year, IV, 274.
consecration. See anointment.
copper, piece of, put in mouth of eunuch, III, 90; melts, V, 493.
cord, is Varuṇic, III, 222, 236; cf. rope.
costal cartilages, IV, 114.
cotton tree, (salmalia malabarica), the highest tree, V, 317.
couch, no sleeping on during initiation, III, 185.
counter-charm, III, 53, 371.
couples, sustain the realm, IV, 230.
courier. See palâgala.
cow, dakshiṇâ for first-fruits, III, 46; her Varuṇic nature, 51; yoke-trained cow dakshiṇâ for Indraturîya, 51; belongs to Rudra, 52; dakshiṇâ for oblation to Aditi, 60; cow-raid, 98; cow and boar friendly together, 103; means these worlds, 156; has four nipples, 237; most fit to yield a livelihood, 237; when milked out is worn, 257; (or bull) created from Pragâpati's breath, 402; is (the supplier of) food, 406; not to be injured, 406; milch cow (dhenu) is vigour, produced in the shape of the gagatî metre, IV, 39; the bricks of altar made such, 172; milked by sitting person, 172; milk of black cow, with white calf, offered to Agni about to be laid on fire-altar, 200; black cow and white calf are night and sun, 200; cow of plenty, seen and milked by Kaṇva, 203; offering of barren cow (to Mitra-Varuṇa), 263–265; brings forth within a year, V, 12; cow suckling a strange calf, her milk used for offering in case of an

Agnihotrin dying, 198; cow, wont to cast her calf, victim of Indra at Aśvamedha, 300; barren cows immolated, 402, 411; tail of barren cow tied to the left arm of a dead man, 438 n.; of Pravargya, see gharmaduhâ.
cow-dung, smeared over fire-site, V, 191; used for burning dead body, 202.
creation, III, 145 seq.; nine primary substances, 147.
creator. See Dhâtri.
creatures (pragâ), produced from Pragâpati, the sacrifice, III, 40; in all quarters, IV, 31; Pragâpati their lord, 73; Yavas and Ayavas their lords, 76.
crosswise, offering made on Svayamâtṛiṇṇâ of completed altar, IV, 183.
crow, is untruth, V, 446.
cubit, means the (fore-)arm, V, 449.
curds and whey, sour curds. See dadhi.
cushions, wrought of gold threads, for the priests to sit on, V, 360, 361.

dadhi, sour curds, is life-sap, III, 374; belongs to Indra, 375; a form, or the life-sap, of the earth-world, 389, 390; mixed with honey and ghee, for sprinkling completed fire-altar, IV, 182 seq.; globule of sour curds put on Samidh, as a form of cattle, 203.
dadhigharma, V, 502.
Dadhikrâ, III, 27.
Dadhikrâvan, III, 27; V, 326.
Dadhyañk Âtharvaṇa, is speech, III, 218; knew the pure sacrificial essence (the Madhu), 444; is decapitated by Indra, and restored by the Aśvins, 443, 444.
Daivâpa. See Indrota.
Daivâmpâti, instructed by Śâṇḍilyâyana, IV, 273.
Dâkshâyaṇa, form of Full and New-moon sacrifice, to be performed for fifteen years, V, 5.
dakshiṇâ (sacrificial gift), (cows), the way along which they pass, III, 99, 101;—dakshiṇâ as Apsaras, the Gandharva Yagña's mates, IV, 232; the sacrifice is praised for them, 233; no bargaining for, as depriving the priests of their place in heaven, 280; wins food, 285; no oblation without dakshiṇâ, V, 7; stand south of altar, 17; time for bringing them up at animal sacrifice, 120; are healing medicine, 217; is the glory, 446; must not be given away by the priest, at least not on the same day, 446.
Dânava (Asuras), V, 95.
daṇḍavadha, III, 108.
darbha-grass, bunch of, put on ploughed Agnikshetra, III, 332; contains food and drink, 332; grew up from waters loathing Vritra, 332; IV, 44; handful put on mixture of ghee (with gold chips), sour curds and honey for sprinkling therewith (with the tops) on completed fire-altar, 182; a means of purification, V, 195, 274; piece of gold tied thereto and taken westwards (as the sun), 195; ditto of silver, taken eastwards (as the moon), 196; rope thereof for tying sacrificial horse, 274; sepulchral mound covered therewith, 436.
darkness, after the creation of the earth, III, 319.
Darśapûrṇamâsa, the offerer thereof eats food every half-month in the other world, IV, 299; esoteric remarks on, V, 1 seq., 52 seq.; to be performed for thirty years (twice 360 full and new moons) thereby gaining the 360 days and nights of the year, 4, 5; first performed by Parameshṭhin Prâgâpatya, 15; after him Pragâpati, Indra, Agni, and Soma, 15, 16.
Daśapeya, III, introd. xxvi; requires special offering-place, 68, 113 seq.; etymology, 114; an Agnishṭoma, 118.
Daśaratha, king of Ayodhyâ, III, 97.
Daśarâtra, V, 140; last day of, called avivâkya, III, introd. xvii; compared to the seat (or

body) of a chariot, the two shadahas being the wheels, V, 149, 155 n., 159.
dative of purpose, III, 198.
Daubshanti. See Bharata.
daurgaha, V, 397.
dawn, precedes the sun, III, 273.
day, a separater, IV, 89; originates from the light emitted by the gods when created, V, 14; the (one) day (after day) is the year, 155.
day and night, nourish Agni, III, (271), 273; encompass the universe, 287; days and nights are endless, 352; rulers of Ârya and Sûdra, IV, 74, 75; are Pragâpati's joints, 281; are forms of Brahman and Kshatra, V, 286.
dead man, his bones arranged in bird-form, V, 435.
Death, seizes creatures whilst in Pragâpati's womb, IV, 67; created above (mortal) beings as their consumer, 290; searches for (the half-mortal) Pragâpati who has entered the earth, 290; is the year, 356 seq.; he is the ender, 356; has only the body for his share, 357; those who do not become immortal come to life again and become the food of Death time after time, 358; Agni as Death, 365; Death is immortal, and the man in the sun, 366; Death is both the man in the sun and that in the right eye, 371, 374; is both one and many, being the man in the sun, he is numerously distributed on earth among creatures; whence also both near and far away, 372; Death becomes the self of him who knows, and makes him immortal, 374; Death, hunger, being alone in the beginning, creates Mind, 402; Arka and Asvamedha become Death, 404; creatures delivered to him, except Brahmakârin, V, 48; deaths take place in any world, 339; oblations to Deaths, 340.
deity, only he is a deity to whom offering is made, IV, 238, 246, 266; different deities and metres identified with parts of the body, 330, 331; the ultimate deity not to be questioned beyond, V, 117.
Devaganavidyâ, the Veda of Rakshas, V, 368.
devasû (divine quickeners), offerings to, III, 69, 72; IV, 246.
dewy season, consists of the months Tapa and Tapasya, IV, 126; which are supreme, 126, 127; is the sky, 127; is the year's head, 127.
dhâmakhad, seat-hiding (?) verse, IV, 291.
Dhânva. See Asita.
Dharma Indra, king of the gods, V, 370.
Dhâtri (creator), connected with gods generally, and the Vis, IV, 68; lord of the seven Rishis, 73; is Pragâpati, 263; the sun, 264; offering of twelve-kapâla cake to, 264.
Dhîra Sâtaparneya, instructs Mahasâla Gâbâla on the nature of Agni, IV, 331.
dhîshanâ, III, 243.
dhishnya hearths, III, 317, 318; preparation of, IV, 241; are the clansmen to the fire-altar, as chief, 241; consist of a single layer, 242; only with lokamprinâ bricks, 242; enumeration of, 242 n.; eight, 360.
dhrishti, fire-tongs, V, 39 n., 500.
Dhritarâshtra, V, 401.
dhriti, four oblations offered every evening of preliminary year of Asvamedha, V, 285, 288, 364.
dhruva-graha, III, 11.
Dhvasan Dvaitavana, king of the Matsyas, performed the Asvamedha, V, 398.
dice, game at, III, 106, 112; V, 330.
dîkshâ, III, 68; at Agnikayana to last a year, 181; insignia of, 185; of Agnikayana, 246 seq.; is speech, IV, 67; springs from faith (sraddhâ), 138; is the body of the sacrifice, 240; of seven days at Asvamedha, V, 290 seq.; twelve, 371; is the vital airs, 291; twenty-three days at Purushamedha, 403.

dîkshaṇîyeshṭi, III, 44; IV, 258; without samishṭayagus, 258.
diśâm aveshṭayaḥ, III, 120.
diśyâ, regional bricks, in first layer, III, 188 seq.; in second layer (=âśvini), IV, 31 seq.; in third layer, 43 seq.; are the regions and the sun, 43, 44; are the metres, 45.
Diti (and Aditi), viewed by Mitra and Varuṇa, III, 93.
dog, the moon is the heavenly dog, watching the Sacrificer's cattle (to seize them) and coming down at new moon, V, 10; dog's clutch (śvaluḳita), a burning pain, 10; dog driven away by bow or staff, 11, 12; an unclean animal, 178; four-eyed dog killed at Aśvamedha and plunged under horse's feet, 279; dog is untruth, 446.
dṛibâ, (dṛivâ), arrow, III, 88.
drops, oblation of. See stokîyâ.
drought, produces a lawless condition, V, 18.
drums, seventeen put up, III, 23; one beaten by Brahman priest, 24.
dûrvâ, grass (and brick), III, 187, 379; is cattle, 379; etymology, 380; is the kshatra, breath and vital sap, 380; grows up joint by joint, knot by knot, 381; spreads and branches out by a hundred shoots, 381; IV, 2.
Dushṭarîtu Paumsâyana, a king, V, 269, 272.
Dvâdaśâha, opening Atirâtra of, III, introd. xix.
Dvaitavana. See Dhvasan.
dvâpara, die, III, 107.
dvâviṃśa-stoma, is vigour, the year, IV, 63.
dvipadâ, the ample metre in the form of which sheep were produced, IV, 38; of twenty syllables, 385; offering of, V, 342.
Dviyagus brick, is this earth, seen by Indrâgnî, III, 381; is the Sacrificer, 381; his human body, 382; laying down of, 383; is the hip of Agni, the sacrificial animal, 400; IV, 2.
Dyaus, gives birth to Agni, III, 272.
Eagle. See śyena, suparṇa.
ear, one of the five vital airs (of the head), III, 402; as the regions, is the child of heaven, IV, 10; from it autumn is produced, 10; is Viśvâmitra (all-friend), 10; introduced from the left (or upper) side, 11; is one only, 11; sustained by the upward vital air (udâna), 15; one of the five divisions of vital air in the head, 190; the ear evolved from the eye, and from it work, 378, 379; the two ears connected by channel, V, 36; what is thought by mind is spoken by speech, and heard by the ear, 263; Adhvaryu and Sacrificer whispering in the (right) ear of the horse, 287.
earth, three of them, III, 27; afraid of consecrated Bṛihaspati and vice versâ, 34; ditto of Varuṇa, 103; union with Agni, 148; (bhûmi) a foundation, 147, 158; (pṛithivî) the broad, 148, 158; is the Gâyatrî, 148; connected with Pragâpati and Agni, 187; created as one consisting of eight syllables, 232; fashioned by Vasus by means of Gâyatrî, 233; navel of the earth, 258; a firm resting-place, 278; surrounded by ocean, 301; is circular, 309; the mother of Agni Purîshya, 311; is Pragâpati's Gârhapatya, 314; after its creation, darkness was everywhere, 319; Pragâpati its begetter, 346; spread on waters like a lotus leaf, 364; is Agni's womb, 364; is established on truth, 364; is the truth, the most certain of worlds, 364; sheds seed upwards in the form of smoke (steam) which becomes rain, 383; bears everything breathing, 387; is measured out, fashioned (mitâ); is the course (eva), IV, 88; on earth one thinks with the heart, and the mind, 95; is the most substantial (rasatama) of worlds, 179; is the right wing of Agni-Pragâpati, the altar and universe, 179; steadied by mountains and

rivers, V, 126; is the Kshatriya's world, 133; connected with the Aśvins, 241; is higher than the water, 267; he who hides himself, or goes elsewhere, is ultimately found on the earth, 284, 285; no creature, walking erect or horizontally, can go beyond it, 285; is the great vessel, 315; in the beginning of the size of a span, 451; raised up by boar Emûsha (Pragâpati, her husband), 451; is a good abode on which all creatures abide, 457; is white, as it were, 463; her over-lords (Agni, Indra &c.), 464 seq.; becomes a mare and carries Manu, her lord (Pragâpati), 466; is a place of abode for all the gods, 505.

east, connected with priesthood &c., III, 91; Agni's region, 206; IV, 199; is towards the gods, III, 215, 355; IV, 226; is the Gâyatrî, IV, 45; is a queen, 46, 100; the Vasus its lord, 100; protected by Agni, 100; connected with trivṛit-stoma, âgyaśâstra, and rathantara-sâman, 100; is strength and the sky, V, 16, 17; the region of the gods, 485.

easterns. See prâkya.

eater, the, is Agni, Âditya, the breath, IV, 398.

egg. See golden egg.

eight, symbolical significance, IV, 190.

eighteenfold, is the year, IV, 66.

eighty (aśîti), means food, IV, 92, 112, 161; of formulas (to the Rudras), 161, 223.

ekâdaśinî, of sacrificial stakes, V, 301 n., 309; is heaven, 310; offspring and cattle, 310; a virâg, 335, 404, 405.

ekapadâ, the gapless metre in the form of which goats were produced, IV, 38; of ten syllables, 385.

ekatriṃśa-stoma, is design, the year, IV, 64.

ekaviṃśa, the twenty-first or twenty-one-fold, is the sun, III, 265, 308; IV, 62; V, 331, 333, 334, 335, 378, 402; produced from manthi-graha, and from it the vairâga-sâman, IV, 10.

ekaviṃśa-stoma, connected with Anushṭubh &c., III, 91; at morning-service of Keśava-panîya, 127; is the upholder (a foot-hold), the sun, IV, 62; through it, connected with Mitra Varuṇa, rain and wind freed from death, 68; the foundation (the feet), 78; connected with Soma, the Maruts, north &c., 102; second day of Aśvamedha an ekaviṃśa-day, V, 378; the foundation of Stomas, 378.

ekoti, V, 150.

elevation (high-lying ground), people in danger take thereto, V, 300.

embryonic water of calving cow, III, 78.

embryos, freed from death through pañkaviṃśa-stoma, connected with Âdityas and Maruts, IV, 69; killer of embryo is despised, 272.

Emûsha, the boar (Pragâpati) raises the earth (his wife), V, 451.

enclosing-stones. See pariśrit.

enemies (or enemies' sons), when meeting, get on well together on addressing one another by name, V, 288.

entrail (vṛikalâ), if not cleansed of contents in dead body, a tiger springs therefrom when burnt, V, 203, (215).

Eshavîra, a family of priests, V, 45 n.

etarhi, one-fifteenth part of a kshipra, V, 169.

eunuch, long-haired, III, 90; malted rice bought from him, V, 219; is neither man nor woman, 219.

eva, at least, IV, 19 (u eva).

exorcism, IV, 171.

eye, food flowed from eye of fallen Pragâpati, III, 312; one of the five vital airs (of the head), 402; there is always water in it, 416; produced from the sun, and from it the rain, IV, 8; is the Ṛishi Gamadagni, 9; introduced from behind, 9; is one only, 9; sustained by the downward vital air (apâna), 15; one of the five divisions of vital air in the head, 190; the man in the

(right) eye is the man in the sun and the gold man of the altar, 368; he is the same as Indra, and has a mate in the left eye, who is Indrâṇî, 369; the two persons descend to the cavity of the heart and enter into union, and at the end of their union the man sleeps, 370; from the union of these two divine persons all that exists originates, 371; the man in the right eye (and in the sun) is Death, his feet stick fast in the heart, and on his pulling them out and coming out, he dies, 371; that man in the eye is the vital air and leads forward all creatures, 371; whilst being one only he is numerously distributed among creatures, 372; the eye evolved from breath, and from it the ear, 377, 378; what were man without eyes, V, 124; white, black, and pupil, 165, 246, 354; white and black, 354; by means of it the body moves, 346.

faggots, three bundles of, lighted and offered upon whilst held at different heights, V, 494.

faith,—truth in faith, V, 46; the initiation sprung from faith, 138.

falcon. See śyena.

fanning, of the sacrificial horse, by the king's wives, V, 323; of the (Pravargya) fire, by the Adhvaryu and his assistants, 467.

fast-milk, living on, is penance (tapas), IV, 256; milk of three, two, one teat during days of initiation, and of none on day of preparation, 256.

father, is gentle and kind to his son, IV, 25; when asked for anything by his sons, says 'So be it,' 60; takes his dear son to his bosom, 206; sons in early life subsist on father, the reverse in later life, V, 157; returning from abroad is received kindly by sons, 204; father and sons part in time of peace, 308.

Fathers, the hollow is sacred to them, III, 31; are the clansmen, with Yama for their chief, 299; Aditi their ruler, IV, 74; the south their region, 226; are the six seasons, 243; he who does not eat becomes consecrated to the Fathers (dies), V, 20, 21; daily offering of the svadhâ to them, 95, 96; sacrificial practices appropriate to offerings to Fathers, 198 seq.; the world of the Fathers is in the south, 225; the surâ-liquor of the Sautrâmaṇî falls to the share of the Fathers of him who drinks it, 233; those who perform on southern fire, go down to the world of the Fathers, 236; live in Yama's realm, 236, 237; the path of the Fathers and that of the gods by one of which all living beings have to pass, 237, 238; are asleep, 265; placed in the immortal womb, 272; are the subjects of Yama Vaivasvata, the Yagus their Veda, 365; the uneven number, and the single nakshatra belong to them, 423; the door to their world is in the south-east, 424; their world inclines towards the south, 424; to them belongs the (sod) filled with roots, 427; they are the world of plants, and hide among the roots of plants, 429; not seen together with the living, 440; three in number, 455; with Yama and the Aṅgiras, receive offering of Gharma, 481.

female, lies on left side of male, III, 199; injures no one, 202; after birth conceives again, 311.

fever, one suffering therefrom is consumed by his vital airs, IV, 348.

fifteen, IV, 74, 309.

fifteenfold, is the thunderbolt, III, 413; IV, 85; V, 384; the arm, IV, 79; the neck, V, 163.

fig-tree, Indian. See Nyagrodhas.

finale. See nidhana.

fingers (and toes), have a common connecting link (or limb), III, 417; consist of four parts each, IV, 325; the different

fingers, V, 75; the different fingers and their joints, 161.
finger-breadth, the lowest measure, IV, 300; thereby fire-altar measured, 300.
fire, when it goes out it is wafted up in the wind, IV, 333; Fire evolved from Work, 380; is the womb of the sacrifice, V, 3; is one of the six doors to the Brahman, 66; sacrificial fires only desire flesh of victims and the Sacrificer, 119; four kinds of fires, (three worlds and the regions; Agni, Vâyu, Âditya, Kandramas), 127; there is a fire in every piece of wood, 187; circumambient fire shuts out the Asuras, 271; carried round victims, 307.
fire-altar (agni); the way in which it is mounted (like a horse), III, 361; building of, 362 seq.; a four-footed animal, IV, 19; contraction and expansion (of animal's body), 20 seq.; of eagle-build, 21; is the year and the three worlds, 29; constructed so as to extend (fly) eastwards, 115; Agni its head, the earth its right, the sky its left wing, Vâyu (the air, vital air) its body, the moon its tail, the sun its heart, 178–80; the Sacrificer's divine body, 226, 256; the body of all the gods, 256; substitutes for complete fire-altars at repeated Soma-sacrifices, 271; is an ocean of Yagus, 278; Fire-altar, Mahâvrata and Mahad uktham are the Sacrificer's divine, immortal body, 279; is a bird-like body, 285; is the earth, the mind, the trunk, the head, 286; is measured by finger-breadths, 300; the sevenfold, 306; for this a vedi of ninety steps, 308; different forms of, from sevenfold to one hundred and onefold (the latter of which is to be fourteen times that of the former), 309 seq.; by building a smaller fire-altar, one curtails Pragâpati, and by one larger than the largest one exceeds the universe, 312; the hundred and onefold contains all objects of desire, is the year, and the sun, 313; it is equal to the sevenfold one, 314; is built between the two performances of the upasads, 316; each layer of bricks and earth takes (or represents) a month to build, 318; the hundred and onefold the normal one (?), 321 seq.; it gains the immortal light, 323; it is a sevenfold one by its layers, 324; the fire (altar) is fivefold (by food, drink, excellence, light, and immortality), 326; is the food prepared for Pragâpati and becomes the body itself, 341; is the man in the sun, 366; is the earth, air, sky, the sun, the nakshatras, the metres, the year, the body, all beings and all gods, 381–390.
firebrand, belongs to Rudra, V, 201.
fire-pan. See ukhâ.
firmament (nâka), is the heavenly world above the Virâg (layer), IV, 93, 100; is the regions, 100; in the world of righteousness (sukrita) above the third luminous back of the sky, 122; the heavenly world, the back of the sky, 198; the heavenly world beyond the highest fire-altar, 250, 304.
first-fruits, offering of. See Âgrayaneshti.
fivefold, is the animal sacrifice, V, 125; the Asvamedha becomes so, 308.
flax, forms amnion of Agni's womb, III, 252; foul smell of, 252.
flesh, not to be eaten during initiation, III, 185; of fat person fat, of lean lean, V, 20; is the best kind of food, 119.
foam, produced from water, III, 147, 157.
food, kinds of, given to Sacrificer, III, 36; one kind to be renounced by him, 37; satisfies if proportionate to body, 260, 330; IV, 189; to food the body is bound by the vital airs, III, 270; is taken in from the front (mouth) backward, 402; the resort of the waters, 416; the

purîsha is Agni's food, IV, 20; is seventeenfold, 79; whilst eating food one drives away evil that is above him, 87; is asked for by sick man when he gets better, 87; is of three kinds, 93; its essence is invisible, 95; threefold (ploughing, rain, seed), 110; benefits the body only if put in the body, 135; put in (a channel of) the vital air benefits the whole body, 139; are sustained by food, 139; they close up if food is not eaten, 139; is the arrow of the Rudras of the earth, 165; sour curds, honey, and ghee are every kind, or the best kinds, of food, 184, 185; is variegated (varied), 196; is served from the right side, 226; is of two kinds, immortal and mortal, 285; food taken by the arm at a cubit's distance, 306; food, when enclosed in the body, becomes the body itself, 341; the food consumed by man in this world consumes him in the other, V, 260.
food-brick, III, 155, 166.
foot, is a support, IV, 137.
foot-print of the horse, offered upon, V, 363.
forest-fires, take place in spring, V, 45.
forking, (bifurcated) branches, of udumbara samidh, IV, 203; mean cattle, 203.
form,—hair and form, IV, 295; form and name, the two forces of the Brahman (the former being the stronger), V, 27, 28; oblation to Forms, see prakrama.
fortnight (paksha), the former and latter, called Yavas and Ayavas, IV, 69, 76.
forty-four-fold, is the trishṭubh and thunderbolt, IV, 85.
frog, drawn across the altar, to appease it, IV, 174; arose from the water dripping off the altar, 174.
Full and New-moon sacrifice. See Darśapûrṇamâsa.
fumigation, of pan, III, 240; of Pravargya vessels, V, 455, 456.
funeral ceremonies, V, 421 seq.
funeral pile, V, 201, 202, 203.
furrow, what it yields, III, 329; are the vital airs, their meeting-place speech (voice), 332.

Gâbâla. See Mahâśâla, Satyakâma.
gâgata, of Gagatî nature, cattle (animals), V, 252, 284, 313.
Gagatî, gained by Viśve Devâḥ, III, 40; connected with Viśve Devâḥ &c., 91; of twelve syllables, 169; of forty-eight, 183; is the earth, 169, 183; V, 245; all the metres, III, 169, 183; the triple science, 193; gains these worlds from above hitherwards, 281; produced from rainy season, and from it the ṛiksama-sâman, IV, 8; in the shape of it milch cows were produced, 39; is the western region, 45; cattle, 52; V, 313; is the Brahman, and the sun's disk, IV, 94; is the downward breathing (of Pragâpati), 327–329; a Ṛibhu of the Gagat metre (the ârbhava-pavamâna) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, V, 173; thereby the Âdityas consecrate the king, 313.
Gâmadagna, âprî-verses, V, 302.
Gamadagni, ṛishi, is the eye, IV, 9; is Pragâpati, V, 302.
Ganaka, of Videha, questions Yâgñavalkya as to Agnihotra, V, 46; obtains Mitravindâ sacrifice from Yâgñavalkya, 66; questions Brâhmaṇas regarding Agnihotra, 112 seq.; teaches Yâgñavalkya, 114; becomes Brahman, 115; has a sacrifice performed with 1,000 cows as dakshiṇâ, 115.
Ganamegaya Pârikshita, IV, 345 n.; cups of fiery liquor poured out in his palace, V, 95; performs Aśvamedha, 396.
Gana Śârkarâkshya (Sâyavasa), a teacher, IV, 393, 396.
Gânaśruteya. See Aupâvi.
Gândhâra (Nagnagit), IV, 21.
Gandharva, the heavenly, thought-cleansing, III, 5; is yonder sun, Savitṛi, 195;—twenty-seven of them, 19; were the first to yoke the horse, 20; from Pragâpati

couples issue in the form of Gandharva and Apsaras, IV, 229; Gandharva and Apsaras made offering to in râshṭrabhṛit oblations, 230 seq.; Gandharva and Apsaras affect sweet scent (gandha) and beauteous form (rûpa =apsas), 230; and worship the divine Purusha under those forms, 373; carried by horse Vâgin, 401; three Gandharvas (Yavamat, Uddâlamat, Antarvat) point out to the Ṛishis imperfections in their sacrifice, V, 29, 30; get the Apsaras Urvasî back from Purûravas, 69; produce a flash of lightning, 70; teach Purûravas how to produce a sacred fire, to become one of themselves, 73; the people of king Varuṇa Âditya, the Atharvans their Veda, 365.

garbha, of pṛishṭha-sâman, III, introd. xx seq.

Gârhapatya, thence fire of ukhâ is taken, III, 263; if it goes out, is produced by churning, 264; building of, 298 seq.; outlines of hearth, 302; is Agni himself, 309; is the earth, 309; IV, 196; V, 178; the world of men, III, 314; ascended by the gods, 319; on the fifth layer of the fire-altar, IV, 99, 117 seq.; is food, 118; Gârhapatya hearth is a womb, 119; is the vedi, 121, 307; the original Âhavaniya (of the hall) is the womb in which the gods begat the Gârhapatya of Agnikayana, 308; from it the Âhavanîya is born, 308; atonement for Gârhapatya going out, lest master of the house die, V, 83; ditto for going out at Agnihotra, 188 seq.

garment, made to float away, in avabhṛitha, V, 267; a hundred garments the priests' fee, 353; garments man's outward appearance, 353.

Garutmat. See suparṇa.

Gâtavedas, etymology, IV, 274.

gâthâ, V, 101, 326 seq.;—cf. Nârâśaṃsî-gâthâḥ.

gâtru, V, 163 n.

gaura, III, 410.

Gaurîviti Śâktya, V, 250.

Gautama. See Kuśri, and Aruṇa.

Gavâm ayanam, a sattra, V, 139 seq.; deities of, 140 seq.; the three great rites of it (Katurviṃśa, Vishavat, Mahâvrata), 144.

gavaya, V, 338.

gavedhukâ seed (coix barbata), is refuse, III, 51, 71; used for oblation to Rudra, 51, 63, 71, 158;—grass used for smoothing newly-made vessel, V, 455.

gâyatra, Agni, III, 148, 161; IV, 277, 300; (khandas) is Agni, IV, 178.

gâyatra-sâman, produced from Gâyatrî, and from it the upâṃśugraha, IV, 4; when used in stotras, 4; sung over completed and appeased altar, is Agni, 178.

Gâyatrî, is Agni's metre, III, 31; Bṛihaspati's, 40; connected with the brahman, &c., 91; is the earth, 148; how produced, 158; of twenty-four syllables, 167; IV, 300; is the vital air, III, 167, 218, 253; produced from spring season, and from it the gâyatra-stoma, IV, 4; in the shape of it two and a half year old kine were produced, 39; is the eastern region, 45; the breath (of Pragâpati), 327; Gâyatrî tripadâ, 385; the golden, brilliant-winged Gâyatrî who bears the Sacrificer to heaven, V, 53; is the vedi, 56; Gâyatrî in bird's shape fetches Soma from heaven, 122; a falcon of the Gâyatrî metre (the bahishpavamâna) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, 173; thereby the Vasus consecrate the king, 312; is fiery mettle, 312.

generation, threefold (father, mother, son), III, 240; only takes place above the earth, IV, 128; is stationary, on the other side of the sky and sun, 128; only on this side of the sky, 130.

generative power, is immortal, III, 354; is only on this side of the sky and sun, IV, 128.

gharma, hot draught of milk and ghee, V, 442; is the sun, 463, 481; revered as the lord of all

worlds, and of thought and speech, 471, 489; is cow's milk (and ghee), 475.
gharmadughâ (samrâg-cow), is Idâ, Aditi, Sarasvatî, V, 474; is bound by its horns, 474; is given to Adhvaryu, 503.
ghee, in consecration water, III, 79; is seed, 211 &c.; the life-sap of the universe, of waters and plants, 333; a form, or the life-sap, of the air, 390; with gold chips in it offered on completed fire-altar, IV, 182; mixed with sour curds and honey for sprinkling on ditto, 182 seq.; belongs to Agni, 189; is fiery mettle, V, 274, 296, 312: is the gods' favourite resource, 296, 410.
Ghora, a work of the Atharvans, V, 366 n.
ghosha (roar), pârtha-oblation to, III, 82.
ghritâkî, the apsaras, is an intermediate region (? N.W.), or the offering-spoon, IV, 107.
girdle, sign of initiation, III, 185.
go, ox, III, 119.
goat, (he-), means Pragâpati, III, 35; brings forth thrice a year, 35; (aga) how created, 147, 173; he-goat sacrificial animal, 162, 165 seq.; slaughtered for Agni, 162; for Pragâpati, 171; searches for Agni, 204, 205; addressed, 225; represents Brâhmaṇa, 227; is the form of all cattle, 230; sprung from Pragâpati's head, 245; from his voice, 402; eats all kinds of herbs, 245; produced in form of ekapadâ metre, IV, 38; the grey (smoke-coloured) animal originates from Indra's eyes, V, 214; hornless he-goat one of the three chief victims in Aśvamedha, 298; produced from the heat in Makha's head, 452.
goat's hair, cut off, III, 229; mixed with clay, 230.
goat's milk, III, 245; used for cooling Pravargya vessels, V, 452, 457, 477.
goat's skin, of he-goat, III, 35.
gods, offer to one another, III, 1; are thirty-three (or four), 9, 79; V, 258; slay Vritra, III, 48; smite the Rakshas and gain universal conquest, 49; sweep away the Rakshas, 52; obtained possession of man by trishaṁyukta, 54; love the mystic (mysterious), 144 seq.; created from (Pragâpati's) upper vital airs, 150; saw second layer of altar, 189, 190; were produced from out of these worlds, 239; are threefold, 239; wives of gods placed fire-pan in lap of the earth, 242; wives of gods are the plants, 242; gods make food of whoever hates them and give it to Agni, 259; Âhavanîya is the world of the gods, 344; their life is longer than man's, 344; one must do as the gods did, 357; become the truth, 363; have their birthplace in the east (the Âhavanîya), 389; order: Agni (and Dikshâ), Indra and Vishṇu, gods generally and creator, Mitra and Varuṇa, Vasus and Rudras, Âdityas and Maruts, Aditi and Pûshan, Savitri and Brihaspati, Yavas and Ayavas, Ribhus and Viśve Devâḥ, IV, 67–69; gods generally (man-viewers) connected with the creator (Dhâtri) and the Vis, 68; become complete through offspring (or subjects) and mates, seat themselves on the firmament, in heaven, 108; entered heaven from below, 109; draw together round Indra, 127; are just as many now as there were of old, 128; Agni, Vâyu, Âditya, the hearts of the gods, 162; gods holding to truth, and Asuras to untruth, 257; created from the breath (prâṇa), 289; seven worlds of the gods, 277; (the three worlds and four quarters), 314; are of joyful soul, 339; the true knowledge belongs to them alone, and he who knows it is not a man, but one of the gods, 339; were first mortal, and only after gaining the year,

became immortal, V, 5; created from Pragâpati's breath of the mouth, 13; the tales of their fights with the Asuras not true, 14; created by the Brahman, and placed in the three worlds and those above them, 27; were mortal, and only on being possessed of the Brahman, became immortal, 28; daily offering to them with svâhâ, 96; contend with the Asuras for Pragâpati, the sacrifice, 105; number of gods (8 Vasus, 11 Rudras, 12 Âdityas, Indra, Pragâpati), 115 seq.; the one god, Prâna, 117; the world of the gods in the north, 225; the path of the Fathers, and that of the gods, by one of which all living creatures have to pass, 237, 238; 'all the gods' enumerated as ten, 280, 281; are of three orders, 291; did not know the way to heaven, 320; Dharma Indra their king, the Sâman their Veda, 370; reside on earth, in the air, the heavens, the regions, the nakshatras, the waters, 505, 506; Agni, Vâyu, Sûrya, Kandra, Varuna are the Self of the gods, 505, 506.

gold, is immortal life, III, 35, 84, 93, 265; IV, 343; V, 239; gold threads woven in strainers, III, 84; its uses, 141; produced from ore, (147), 158; is immortal, 203; is light, 366; IV, 343; V, 203, 303; immortality, V, 147, 203; is Agni's seed, 187; a piece of it tied to darbha plant and taken westward (as the sun), 195; originates from Indra's seed, 215; a piece of it used for purifying the surâ at Sautrâmanî, 220, 235, 236; sacrificers and priests cleanse themselves by means of piece of gold held over kâtvâla, 239; originates from seed of immolated horse (Pragâpati), 275; (satamâna) piece given as fee with brahmaudana at beginning of Asvamedha, 275; by means of the golden light Sacrificer goes to heaven, 303; is a form of the Kshatra, 303; is fire, light, immortality, 348; as dakshinâ, 356, 358; gold stools and cushions, 360, 361; slab of gold as seat, 361; repels the Rakshas (as Agni's seed), 467; dissolves (melts), 493; is lying (settled) glory, 503.

gold brick, III, 155, 166.

gold chips, thrust into (the organs of) the victims' heads, III, 402–404; fire-altar bestrewed with 5 and 200, IV, 146 seq.; make Agni thousand-eyed, 201; some thrown into ghee for oblation on (svayamâtrinnâ of) completed altar, 182; these chips complete making Pragâpati's body immortal, 291, 294; seven inserted in the seven openings of vital airs of dead body before being burnt, V, 203.

gold coin (nishka) worn as prize, V, (51). 53.

golden egg, produced from the primordial waters, V, 12; floated about for a year, as the only resting-place, 12.

gold man (purusha), laid on gold plate in first layer, III, 366; is Pragâpati-Agni, 366; the Sacrificer, 368, 382; when laid down, one must not walk in front of him, 369; two offering-spoons his arms, 373; covered and viewed by Sacrificer whom he represents, 375, 376; is the Sacrificer's divine body, 382; his body co-extensive with altar, IV, 18, 146; gold man and gold plate are Agni and Indra, 342; is the man in the sun, and both are the man in the right eye, 368; is the foundation of the Yagus, as one of the only three bricks of which the altar consists, 374.

gold plate, III, 35; trodden upon by consecrated king, 92; with 100 holes, 93; (gold piece) on gaming-ground offered upon, 112; hung round Agnikit's neck, 265; is the truth and Âditya, 265; with twenty-one knobs, the sun's rays, 265; means vital

energy and vigour, 266; sewn up in antelope skin, 266; worn over navel, 267; is Pragâpati's vigour which went out of him and became the sun, 212, 213; put down on lotus-leaf in centre of altar-site under first layer, 364; IV, 146; gold plate and gold man are Indra and Agni, 342; gold plate is the orb of the sun, and both are the white of the eye, 367, 368; is the foundation of the *Rik*, as one of the only three bricks of which the altar consists, 374; gold and silver plates beneath feet of Sacrificer whilst consecrated at Sautrâmaṇî, V, 251; the two there represent lightning and hail, 251; placed on top of Pravargya pot, 467; given to Brahman priest, 503; cf. nishka.

gomṛiga, one of the three chief victims at Aśvamedha, V, 298, 338.

Goshṭoma, form of Agnishṭoma, IV, 287.

Gotama Râhûgaṇa, originator of Mitravindâ sacrifice, V, 66.

Gotama's Stoma (Katushṭoma), V, 375.

go-vikartana, huntsman (?), one of the king's ratnâni, III, 63.

govinata, form of Aśvamedha, V, 400, 401.

graha (cup of Soma), after their drawing chanting of stotra and recitation of śastra, IV, 13; is the draught of Pragâpati's vital fluid, 282.

graha oblations of ghee relating to Soma cups and implements, forming part of the Vasordhârâ, IV, 216.

grain, are a form of day and night, V, 296; parched grain, a form of the Nakshatras, 296.

Grâmaṇî (headman), one of the ratninaḥ, III, 60; is a vaiśya, 61; 111.

Grâvastut priest, is made the Hotṛi, V, 137.

grave. See burial-place.

great region. See upper region.

Gṛihapati, III, 158; V, 131; initiated first (being the earth), 135.

grîvâḥ. See neck.

groats, parched, are a form of the gods, V, 296.

guda prâṇa, intestinal vital air, IV, 17.

guest-offering, III, 355.

guhû. See spoon.

Gumbaka (Varuṇa), V, 340, 343.

Gyotishṭoma, form of Agnishṭoma, IV, 287.

hail, a terrible form of rain, V, 251.

hair, of lion, wolf, tiger thrown on flesh-portions of Sautrâmaṇî, III, 132; ditto in cups of Surâ, V, 218; these are a form of Rudra, 229; purîsha formulas are Agni's hair, IV, 20; hair and form, 295; how the hair grows and gets grey, V, 52, 55; comes off when wetted, 313.

hair-pit,—from Pragâpati's hair-pits the stars originate, IV, 361; as many as there are twinklings of the eye, V, 169.

Hairaṇyanâbha. See Para.

Hâliṅgava, a teacher, his view of the nature of Agni, IV, 363.

hand, laid down, palm upwards, for protection, V, 465.

haras,—haras, śokis, arkis (heat, fire, flame) of Agni, IV, 182.

hare, in the moon, V, 10; leaps in bounds, 390.

haridru (deodar tree), not to stand near a grave, V, 427.

Hariśkandra, father of Rohita, III, 95.

havirdhâna, associated with Gâyatrî, V, 494.

haviryagña, killed by mortar and pestle, V, 2; as distinguished from the Soma-sacrifice, 119.

haya, horse, carries the gods, IV, 401.

hazel-cock (kapiñgala), springs from Viśvarûpa's head, III, 130.

head, of child born first, III, 233; IV, 287; ditto of animals, IV, 40, (287); human head is placed on ukhâ, III, 311; is the birth-place of the vital airs, 396; measures a span, if four-cornered, contracted in the middle, 396; is (the focus) of

the ten vital airs, IV, 57; is threefold, and consists of two kapâlas, 78, 387; is of Gâyatrî nature, and threefold, 114; fivefold vital air of head (mind, speech, breath, eye, ear), 190; becomes 'sharpened,' 190; threefold (skin, bone, brain), V, 163, 499; three heads of the Aśvamedha, 335; is a span high, contracted in the middle, 454.

headman. See King-makers.

heart, on earth one thinks with one's heart and mind, IV, 95; Agni, Vâyu, Âditya the hearts of the gods, 162; is round and smooth, 180; is near the right arm-pit, 180, 181; is secret, V, 36.

heaven, a counterfeit (pratimâ) of the earth, IV, 52; is single, V, 297; by means of the golden light the Sacrificer goes to heaven, 303.

heaven and earth, when they separated, the Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas separated and became the lords, IV, 75; propitiatory cake on one kapâla, when sacrificial horse, or anything else, is lost, 347; with Sûrya and Vâyu, 347; between them everything is contained, V, 484; are the out- and up-breathing, 488.

heavenly world, above the Virâg, is the firmament, IV, 93; is the firmament, 100, 304; and the regions, 100; is the year, 100; is entered from below, 109; the heavenly world, the light, is entered from the sky, from the back of the firmament, 199; those going there do not look round, 199; heavenly world beyond the highest firmament, 250; the world where the sun shines, 304; is (the place of) safety, V, 238; Kshatriyas remain Kshatriyas in the other world, 250; is equal in extent to a thousand, 280; lies 'straight away,' 281, 297.

hemp, layer of it put in fire-pan, as the chorion, III, 252; hempen sling for gold plate worn round Agnikit's neck, 266.

herald. See King-makers.

him, makes Sâman complete, IV, 178; is the Sâman, V, 306.

hiranya, etymology, III, 367.

Hiranyagarbha, is Pragâpati and Agni, III, 172; came first into existence, 388;—IV, introd. xiv, 295 n.

hita, III, 151.

honey, used with consecration water as the essence (flavour) of water, III, 78; not to be eaten during initiation, 186; a form, or the life-sap, of the sky, 390; mixed with sour curds and ghee for sprinkling on completed fire-altar, IV, 182 seq.; the remainder (or essence) of the triple science and therefore may be eaten by Brahmakârin, V, 90; not, according to others, 90; a form of Soma, 243; means breath, 467.

honey-cup. See madhugraha.

hoof-cup, thirty-three of fat gravy offered at Sautrâmanî, V, 252.

horn, of black antelope, III, 96.

horse, aśva, produced from the water, III, 19; V, 304, 318; stands lifting one foot on each side, III, 19; sprinkling of horses for race, 19; right horse yoked first, 19; horses smell Brihaspati's oblation, 22, 28; Varuna's sacrificial animal, 60; how created (etymology of aśva), 146; sacrificial animal, 162, 165 seq.; slaughtered for Varuna, 162; is hornless and with mane, 177; its halter lies round the mouth, 198; is the sun, 199, 208, 359; searches for Agni, 204, 205; whilst running shakes itself, 207; steps on lump of clay, 207; is a thunderbolt, 209; the most highly-favoured of animals, 209; horse's footprint offered upon, 212; horse is addressed, 224; represents kshatra, 227; sacred to Pragâpati, 240; white horse led in front of the bricks of the first layer being carried forwards, 359; is made to step on altar-site from the north, 359; smells the first layer of bricks, 359, 361; IV, 141; white horse

(Pragâpati) finds Agni on lotus-leaf, III, 360; the white horse scorched by Agni, whence its mouth is scorched, and it is apt to become weak-eyed, 360; whoever seeks Agni in the shape of a white horse finds him, 360; horse led round on prepared altar-site towards sunset, 361; created from Pragâpati's eye, 402; V, 328; is the speed of the wind, III, 405; the one-hoofed animal, 410; yoked (tied) below shaft, IV, 237; right horse first by gods, the left by men, 237; carries (draws) men, 401; the sea its birth-place, 401–403; sacrificial horse (Pragâpati, the Purusha), 401; prize-winning horses constantly sprinkled (?), V, 95; sacrificial horse sacred to Pragâpati, 277, 278; horse the most vigorous, powerful, famous, and the swiftest of animals, 278; is a thunderbolt, 279; sacrificial horse generated by sky and earth, 287; synonyms of horse, 287; when let loose returns to its chain, 288; born from of old as a runner, 294; is the kshatra, 303; of Anushṭubh nature, 304; sacrificial horse put to chariot, 311; is the great bird, 315; is trimmed up with the reins, 318; is Brahman (m.), 318; knows the way to heaven, 320; lying down near sacrificial horse insures fertility, 322; is sacred to the All-gods, 332; horse stands on three feet, but scampers off on all four, 332; is the highest (noblest) of animals, 332; worth 1000 cows, 353; steps on chanting-place, 384.

horse-dung, seven balls of, used for fumigation, III, 240; V, 455.

horse-hoof, oblation on, V, 339.

hotrâ, the seven, are the regions, III, 368.

Hotṛi priest, seated towards the west, III, 108; gold plate his fee at Dasapeya, 119; piebald bullock his fee for paṅkabila oblation to Visve Devâḥ, 122; Hotṛi means abundance, 142; his fee at Sautrâmaṇî three milch cows, 142; is Agni, 219; black antelope skin his own place, 219; the guardian of undisturbed rites, 219; follows behind the bricks of first layer carried forward, defending it from behind, 358; is winter, V, 45; the six hotṛis (priests generally), 121; initiated for sattra, as Agni and speech, 136; is the voice of the sacrifice, 245; is the sacrifice, 459, 460, 504.

Hotrîya hearth, of Agnikâyana, of twenty-one bricks, and as many enclosing-stones, IV, 243.

householder (gṛihamedhin) unlearned in scriptures, V, 362.

hunger, death is hunger, IV, 402; Yûpa bent at top, and bent outwards in middle, is a type of hunger, V, 124.

hungry, hungry man is consumed by his vital airs, IV, 347, 348.

Idâ, mother of Purûravas, V, 68; Manu's daughter (is the Agnihotra cow), 81.

idâ, invocation of, III, 41, 113; IV, 248; is food, V, 19; the central air, 20; is faith, 42.

idam, III, 143; — idam one-fourteenth part of an etarhi, V, 169.

idâvatsara (third year of cycle), IV, 21.

idvatsara (fourth year of cycle), IV, 21.

immortal, is the food that is baked, III, 164; immortal body is boneless, IV, 178; immortal bricks are the six Sâmans sung over the completed altar, 180; going to the heavenly light and becoming immortal and Pragâpati's children, 220; the immortal light is distributed amongst beings by Savitṛi, 322; the immortal light (and life) to be gained by the hundred and onefold altar or by a life of a hundred years, 323, 324; the body is not immortal, being the share of death, 357; after separating from the body one becomes immortal, be it by knowledge or holy work (the

fire-altar); coming to life again, one attains immortal life, 357; the Amrita threefold, 365; by performing the animal sacrifice once a year—the year being life—one gains immortal life, V, 119.
immortality, is light (ruk), III, 383; IV, 238; man's highest form, IV, 147, 177; the highest thing in the universe, 148, 181; is the vital airs, 178; the nectar of immortality (Soma), the Agnikit consecrated therewith, 251, 252; the nectar of immortality, Soma, departs from the gods and is recovered by penance, 255, 256; the immortality bestowed on Agni and Sacrificer, 256; beyond the year lies the wish-granting world, the immortal (immortality) which is the light (arkis) that shines yonder, 322; it is to the other world what life is to this, 327.
impure speech, if used, the vital airs pass away, V, 326.
Indra, performed Vâgapeya and won everything, III, 3; is the kshatra, 3, 59; IV, 229; is the Sacrificer, III, 13, 54; by eleven syllables gains the Trishtubh, 40; slays Vritra by cake-offering, 45; is energy and vital power, 46, 82; generative power, 46; with Agni smites the Rakshas, 51; eleven-kapâla cake to, 59; bull his sacrificial animal, 60; Indra gyeshtha, pap of red rice to, 70; by anointing Indra, the gods guide him past his enemies, 74; by drinking Soma, Indra becomes a tiger, 81, 92; pârtha-oblation to, 82; calls on Maruts staying on Asvattha tree, 84; Indra Vriddhasravas, 89; kills Namuki, 92; mystically called Arguna, 99; rathavimokanîya oblation to, 102; Indra Visaugas, 109; assists Varuna, 113; samsrip-oblation (eleven-kapâla cake), 116; pañkabila oblation on south part of vedi, 120, 121; fee a bull, 122; slays Visvarûpa, Tvashtri's son, 130; Indra Sutrâman, 135; eleven-kapâla cake at Sautrâmanî, 136, 137; is the central vital air, 143; etymology (indh) 'the kindler,' 143; is breath, 154; bull slaughtered to him, 162; repels Vritra, 179; afraid of Vritra not being killed, enters the waters, 365; takes away Pragâpati's vigour (ogas) to the north, 374; becomes Pragâpati's left arm, 374; sour curds (dadhi) belong to him, 374; ruler of the kshatra, IV, 74; is Âditya, 92; Indra's heaven is the undiminished virâg, 94; ousted from this world by wrong sacrificial procedure, 94; protector of the south, 101; connected with Rudras, pañkadasastoma, praüga-sastra, brihatsâman, 101; the gods draw together round Indra, 127; magnified by all beings, 140; the greatest of charioteers, 140; to him belongs the 'purîsha' of the altar, 140; equal to all the gods, 140; Indra the highest, mightiest, and strongest of gods, assisted by Brihaspati, fights the Asuras, 192; is Apratiratha (irresistible car-fighter), 192; of trishtubh nature, 262; the deity of the sacrifice, 262; Indra Vimridh, verses to, 276; Agni and Indra created as brahman and kshatra, 342; they join each other as gold man and gold plate, 342; they are the light and immortal life, 343; they are the fire-altar (Agni the bricks, Indra the purîsha), 343; for killing Vritra, &c., is deprived of the Soma-drink, and Kshatriyas with him, 345, n.;—Indra Vimridh, (additional) cake at Full-moon, V, 5, 6; Indra slays Vritra by Full-moon offering, 6; Indra Pradâtri, clotted curds for, at New-moon, 8; Indra Vritrahan, expiatory eleven-kapâla cake at New-moon, 11; statements regarding his battles mere illusion, 14; Indra created out of Pragâpati with a life of a thousand years, 15; Indra

becomes speech, 16; takes Śrî's power and receives (mitravindâ) oblation (eleven-kapâla cake), 62–65; brahmakârin his disciple, 86; Indra is the thunder(-cloud), the thunder being the thunderbolt, 116; covets Vasishṭha's (knowledge of the) Virâg, 212; slays Viśvarûpa, and drinks Tvashṭri's Soma, 213 seq., 248; has his Soma-drink and vital energy taken from him by Namuki, and is restored by the Aśvins, 216; bull immolated to him at Sautrâmaṇî, 217; cows sacred to him, 218; Indra's cake of eleven kapâlas to win his energy, 222, 223; slays Namuki with foam of water, 223; drinks separately the Soma from the mixture of Soma and blood in Namuki's head, 223; Indra Sutrâman, 224; connected with the sky (and the third pressing), 241, 247; with summer, 247; with winter and dewy season, 247; heated by Aśvins and Sarasvatî by means of the Sautrâmaṇî, 249; Aśvins, Sarasvatî, and Indra are everything here, 253; and have a share in the gharma, 475; the seventh of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 281; a cow wont to cast her calf his victim at Aśvamedha, 300; Dharma Indra, king of the gods, 370; draws his glory by taking in Vishṇu (Makṭa) whence he is Makhavat (Maghavat), 443; decapitates Dadhyañk Atharvaṇa, 444; offering made at Pravargya to Indra, with the Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas, 479, 480; is the wind, 479.

Indra-Agni, lay down third layer of fire-altar, IV, 41; the best (chiefest) of gods, 41; fire-altar belongs to them, 278; the most powerful of gods, V, 278; are all the gods, 392.

Indra-Bṛihaspati, animal sacrifice to, V, 402.

Indradyumna Bhâllaveya (Vaiyâghrapadya), a teacher, IV, 393, 396.

Indrâṇî, Indra's beloved wife, V, 474.

Indra-Pûshan, karu to, III, 55.

Indra-Soma, karu to, III, 56.

Indrastut Ukthya, V, 419.

Indraturîya offering—cake to Agni, karu to Varuṇa and (gavedhukâ) to Rudra, and sour curds to Indra—III, 50, 51.

Indra-Vishṇu, karu to, III, 54; (traidhâtavî) twelve-kapâla cake at Sautrâmaṇî, 138; connected with kshatra and pañkadaśa-stoma, IV, 68; animal sacrifice to, V, 402.

indriya, III, 116, 143.

Indrota Śaunaka, V, 393; Indrota Daivâpa Śaunaka, 396.

intercourse, sexual, is an Agnihotra offering, V, 114.

intestine. See entrail.

iriṇa, III, 43.

iron, is the viś, V, 304; iron bowl, oblation in, 339.

Îśâna, a form and name of Agni, is the sun, III, 160.

Isha, first autumn-month, IV, 49.

ishṭakâ (brick) yagushmatî and lokampṛiṇâ (nobility and peasantry), III, 153; formulas of settling (sâdana), 153, 154; five kinds, 155, 166; head of, 155; are Agni's limbs, 156; made of clay and water, 164, 210; etymology, 164; amṛiteshṭakâ and anṛiteshṭakâ, 171; sharp-edged thunderbolts, 357; are all creatures, 359; special ishṭakâ marked with lines, parallel to spine, IV, 18; are the bones, 20, 135; number of, 50; are the creatures that went out of Pragâpati, 54; size and markings, 137; become milch cows, 172; are Pragâpati's joints, the days and nights, 281; made up of Pragâpati's body, 290; three thousand additional marked bricks constituting the highest form of the bird's form and plumage, 303; the one brick, Akshara, Agni, the Brahman, 343; are Pragâpati's lights, 349 seq.; bricks are threefold in respect of gender (sex), 364 seq.; the fire-altar consists of three bricks, *Rik*,

Yagus, and Sâman, having for their foundations the gold plate, the gold man, and the lotus-leaf, 374; on tomb, V, 434, 435.
ishṭâpûrta, V, 287 n.
ishṭi, (i.e. kâmyeshṭi) performed in a low voice, IV, 248.
island, neither earth nor water, V, 497.
itihâsa, legend regarding battles between gods and Asuras not true, V, 14; to be studied, 98; is the Veda of water-dwellers, 369.
itihâsa-purâṇa, to be studied, V, 98.

joy (ânanda), is the soul (of knowledge and life), IV, 339, 340.
jujube (fruit of Zizyphus Jujuba), three varieties of, used in the Sautrâmaṇî, V, 214, 215, 219.

Ka, Pragâpati, III, 173, 175, 221; V, 86; IV, introd. xiv; the four rites relating to Ka, IV, 334 seq.
Kâdraveya. See Arbuda.
Kaikeya. See Aśvapati.
Kâkra. See Revottaras.
Kakubh metre, in the form of it bulls were produced, IV, 38; is the prâṇa, 88.
kâleya-sâman, III, introd. xvi.
kali, die, III, 107; dominant over the other dice, 108.
Kalpa (prospering) oblations, with which the Vasor dhârâ concludes, IV, 220.
kâma, III, 163.
kamasa cups, III, 114.
Kâmpîla, V, 321, 322.
kâmyeshṭi, performed in a low voice, IV, 248 n.
kandramas. See moon.
Kaṅkatîyas, instructed by Sândilya in the sacrificial art of the fire-altar, IV, 254.
Kaṇva, saw the cow of plenty and milked her, IV, 203; his hermitage Nâdapit, V, 399.
kapâla, potsherd, of broken ukhâ, III, 263.
kapotî (kapotin), a particular form of a tree, 123.
kapya, a dish, V, 220.
Karakâdhvaryu, IV, 15, 129.
Karakâṇḍa, III, 171, 175.
Kârotî,—there Tura Kâvasheya built a fire-altar, IV, 279.
kârshmarya (gmelina arborea), a Rakshas-killing tree, III, 373.
karûkara (? vertebra), V, 165.
Kâśya (of the Kâśis), V, 401.
Kaśyapa, all creatures descended from him, III, 390; officiates at Sarvamedha of Viśvakarman, V, 421;—the Kaśyapas, a family of priests, IV, 345 n.
katurdaśa-stoma, gained by Vasus, III, 40.
kâturmâsya, seasonal offerings, instituted by the gods, III, 47; he who offers them eats food, every four months, in the other world, IV, 299; — esoteric remarks upon them, V, 74 seq.; by them Pragâpati fashioned for himself a body, 74; amount to the year and the Mahâvrata, 78; are the year, 309; kâturmâsya victims at Aśvamedha, 309, 383; seasonal animal sacrifices, 402.
katurviṃśa, first day (after opening day) of Sattra and formerly one of the three 'great rites' of the year, V, (139), 144, 156, 167.
katurviṃśa-stoma, is the womb, the year, IV, 64; through it, connected with Vasus and Rudras, the four-footed are freed from death, 68.
katushṭoma, is the stay, support, Vâyu, IV, 66; connected with Savitri and Bṛihaspati, frees the quarters from death, 69; V, 78, 329; is the Kṛita among dice, 330; the highest of stomas, 332; Gotama's Stoma, 375.
katuskatvârimśa-stoma, connected with Yavas and Ayavas, frees creatures from death, IV, 69; is trishṭubh (4 and 11) and thunderbolt, 85.
katustriṃśa-stoma, is the range of the ruddy one (sun), the year, IV, 65.
kâtvâla (pit), is the same (in cubit extent) as Agni (fire-altar), III, 309; arka-leaf thrown in, 166; is fire, 166; is the place for cleansing, V, 489 n.; between

it and the Âgnîdhra is the gate of sacrifice, 497.
Kauravya. See Balhika.
Kausalya, V, 397.
Kauśâmbeya, (? a native of Kauśâmbî). See Proti.
Kauṣṭhya. See Suśravas Kaushya.
Kausurubindi. See Proti.
Kâvasheya. See Tura Kâvasheya.
keepers, of sacrificial horse, V, 355.
Kelaka *Sâṇḍ*ilyâyana, a teacher, his views regarding Agni, IV, 364.
Keśavapanîya, III, introd. xxvi, 126 seq.; stomas of the three savanas (ekaviṁśa, saptadaśa, pañkadaśa), 127; may conclude the Râgasûya, 129; Shodaśin forms part of Keśavapanîya Atirâtra, IV, 405.
Keśin, a noble race, as performers of a Sattra, V, 131; exist to this (the author's) day, 134.
khadira (acacia catechu), throne-seat thereof at Abhishe*k*anîya, III, 105; is the bone, V, 373–375.
*kh*andasyâ bricks, are the metres and cattle, III, 414; IV, 2;—of second layer, IV, 36;—of third layer, 51 seq.;—of fifth layer, 87 seq., 92, 99, 109 seq.; are Pragâpati, 114.
Kha*ṇḍ*ika Audbhâri, a Kshatriya, skilled in sacrificial matters, V, 131.
*kh*andoma days, V, 156 n.
khara (mounds), III, 10; V, 452 n., 485, 489.
khila (unploughed ground) between two cultivated fields, IV, 54.
kikasâ*b*, breast-bone, V, 164 n.
kim-purusha, III, 409.
kine, are man's form (wealth), V, 261.
king, he and śrotriya upholders of the law, III, 106; if weaker than priest he is stronger than his enemies, 110; king, when consecrated, is entreated by people (for blessings), IV, 220; only he becomes king whom other kings allow to assume royal dignity, 224, 229, 233, 247; are realm-sustainers, 229; maintains his rule by offspring, 230; kings both combine and keep asunder, V, 41; can oppress the Brâhmaṇa, but fares the worse for it, 286; when clad in mail performs heroic deeds, 300; cannot rear cattle, 326.
King-makers, the non-royal, heralds and headmen, V, 304.
king's brother, III, 110.
king's son. See râgaputra.
*k*iti, layer of altar, five, III, 150, 191; IV, 147, 204; seven, III, 249, 253, 358; IV, 205; five, six, or seven, IV, 96; or three, 97;—by whom 'seen,' and what their ancestry, III, 186 seq., 190; are the seasons, IV, 96;—are sacrificial food, whence the first is sprinkled with ghee, III, 356; the first is 'led forward' on red ox-hide, 256, 257;—building of first layer, 362 seq.; is the earth and the spring season, and the feet, 386; IV, 1 seq.; plan, 17;—second layer, 22 seq.; seen by the gods and laid down by Aśvins, 23; plan, 24; is nest-like, 25; is the space between earth and air; and the summer-season, 29; the part between feet and waist, 30;—third layer, 41 seq.; seen by the gods, laid down by Indra and Agni, and settled by Viśvakarman, 41; plan, 48; is the air, and rainy season and autumn, 49; is the belly, 138; the waist, 149;—fourth layer, 58 seq.; is the Brahman, 59; upholds heaven and earth, 59; is the space between air and heaven, and the winter-season, 70; the part between waist and head, 71; between waist and neck, 149; plan, 71; is the larger of the Brahman, Pragâpati, the *Ri*shis, Vâyu, the Stomas and vital airs, 81, 82;—fifth layer, 82 seq.; is the shining (virâ*g*) heaven, 82; the fifth (including sixth and seventh) is the head and dewy season, 127; plan, 98; the fifth is the neck, the sixth the head, the seventh the vital airs, 149;—symbolical meanings

of layers, 147, 148; ditto as regards the bodily parts, 148, 149; the layers of brick are the immortal, and those of earth the mortal, parts of Pragâpati's body, 290; the mortal ones enclosed in the immortal, and made immortal, 290, 291; the seven layers, 291; how the six layers of brick, and six of earth, correspond to the vital airs and the mortal parts of the body respectively, 292 seq.; each layer of bricks and earth takes (or represents) one month, 318.

*k*itra, name of Agni, III, 161; IV, 269 n.

*k*itra-sâman, III, 369 (corr. IV, 146).

*k*itya, III, 151 seq.

k*l*ipti, (six) formulas and oblations, III, 30.

knee, consists of two plates (bones), V, 500;—knee-high, IV, 158; V, 249; lifting of sacrificer on throne-seat, 254.

knife, for slaughtering the horse is made of gold, that of paryaṅgyas of copper, and that of the others of iron, V, 303.

knife-paths, V, 326.

knowledge, superior to brick-built altars, IV, 380; by knowledge one ascends to where all desires have vanished, and all sacrificial gifts and mere rites do not attain, 389.

Koka, son of king *Son*a, V, 400.

Kosha, a priestly race, IV, 392; cf. Su*s*ravas Kaushya.

Kraivya, the Pâ*ñk*âla king, performed the A*s*vamedha, at Parivakrâ, V, 397.

krânta, one of Vish*n*u's steps, III, 96.

Kratusthalâ, the Apsaras, is an intermediate quarter (? N.E.), or (Agni's) battle, IV, 105.

kr*i*muka tree, how produced, III, 254; wood red and sweet, 254; has no ashes, 255.

kr*i*ta, dice, III, 107; V, 330.

Krivi, old name for Pa*ñk*âla, V, 397.

krivi (vv. ll. kavi, krayi), III, 98.

Kshatra, nobility, connected with South region, trish*t*ubh, br*i*hat-sâman, pa*ñk*ada*s*a-stoma, summer, III, 91; (political power) concentrated in one, 248; connected with Indra-Vish*n*u, and freed from death through pa*ñk*ada*s*a-stoma, IV, 68; Indra its lord, 74; is the eater among the people, 125, 132, 242; attaches to a single individual, 132, 241; stands, as it were, 210; is built up by (social) layers, 242; Indra created as Kshatra, 342; established on the Vi*s*, V, 41; produced from out of the Vi*s*, 225; produced from out of the Brahman, 227; not to be detached from the Vi*s*, 228; Sacrificer consecrated by the Kshatra (a Kshatriya), 253, 254; takes no delight in the priestly office, 286; spiritual lustre takes no delight in the Kshatra, 286.

kshatra-dh*r*iti, III, introd. xxvi, 129.

Kshatriya (cf. râganya), and Vi*s*, III, 100; followed by the other three castes, 226; Brâhma*n*a and Kshatriya, never walk behind Vai*s*ya and *S*ûdra, 227; Kshatriya and Purohita alone complete, 259; are everything, 260;—Kshatriya destroys enemies and raises his relations, 260; grants settlement with approval of clan, 299; deprived of the Soma-drink, IV, 345 n.; his world is the earth, V, 133; remain Kshatriya in heaven, 250; Kshatriya consecrates Kshatriya, 254; whilst sacrificing becomes a Brâhma*n*a, 348.

kshattr*i*, chamberlain, one of the ratnina*b*, III, 61; is a prasavitr*i*, 61; addresses the Pâlâgalî, V, 387.

kshetrapati,—prayugâ*m* havis (pap) to, III, 125.

kshipra, one-fifteenth part of a muhûrta, V, 169.

kshipra-*s*yena (? the quick eagle), produced from the amr*i*tavâkâ, IV, 370.

kshumâ (v. l. kshupâ), name of an arrow, III, 88.

Kubera Vai*s*rava*n*a, king of the Rakshas, V, 367.

Kuhû, pap offered to her, (the extreme end of) one of the four regions, IV, 264.
Kumâra (the boy, Agni), born from Ushas, III, 159, 160.
kumbhî, pot, III, 270; perforated with a hundred holes, V, 220, 234 n.
kumbyâ (? an explanatory passage), V, 101.
kuntâpa, V, 164 n., 374.
kûrka, a (gold) stool for Sacrificer, V, 360.
kûrma, etymology, III, 390; the same as kaśyapa, 390.
Kurukshetra,—Purûravas wanders about in Kurukshetra, V, 70; is the gods' place of divine worship, 441.
Kuru-pañkâla, III, 124; V, 51.
kurupiśaṅgilâ, V, 389, 390.
kuśa-grass, garment made thereof, worn for purification, III, 31; is pure, 32, 356.
Kuśri Vâgaśravasa (Gautama), a teacher, IV, 345 n., 390.
kya, (belonging to Ka), IV, 334 seq.; is the food of Agni, 342 seq., 347 seq.

ladder (niśrâyaṇî), leant against sacrificial post and mounted by Sacrificer and wife, III, 32.
lakshman, mark,—is lucky on right side of (body of) man, or left side of woman, IV, 81; mark in mouth lucky, 81; lucky on any side, 95.
layer, of altar. See kiti.
lead, piece of, put on tiger's skin and kicked off, III, 91; compared with gold, 92; originates from Rudra's navel, V, 215; with lead malted rice bought at Sautrâmaṇî, 219.
league, a thousand, the farthest distance, IV, 163.
leg,—arms and legs consist of twenty-five parts each, IV, 325; parts of leg, V, 75.
life, of gods longer than men's, III, 344; life (âyus) and vital air the highest (endowments), IV, 144; life (âyus, vitality) the same as vital air, 143; is food, 196; life of a hundred years is immortality, 299; gains the immortal light, heaven, 323; therefore one must not shorten one's life, 323; consequences of shorter lives, 323, 324; it requires many sacrifices to gain one day or one night (of life), 324; life is to this world what immortality is to the other, 327; those who do not become immortal come to life again, and become the food of Death time after time, 357, 358; retribution in future life, V, 109 seq.
lifting-sticks (śaphau or parîśâsau), V, 458; are heaven and earth, 476; therewith Pravargya pot is lifted, 477.
light (ruk), is immortality, III, 383; IV, 238.
lightning, is the teat whence the 'shower of wealth' flows, IV, 221; one of the six doors to the Brahman, V, 66, 67; a terrible form of rain, 261.
lightsome (ruṅmatî) oblations, (to Agni and Varuṇa), IV, 237–239.
limbs, dependent on vital airs, III, 151; IV, 19;—thirty of the body, IV, 167, 222; are tripartite and furnished with two joints, V, 77.
lines, three drawn round for protection, III, 212; on bricks, IV, 137.
lion, produced from Soma flowing from Indra's nose, III, 131; is vigour, produced in the form of the atikkhandas metre, IV, 38.
liquid,—the means of drinking off one of two liquids mixed together, V, 223.
liquor, spirituous. See parisrut, surâ.
logeshṭakâ (clod-bricks), III, 345.
loka, space and world, III, 180.
lokamprinâ, brick, is the peasantry, III, 153;—of Gârhapatya, 308;—their number on fire-altar, IV, 41; two laid down in corners and thence filling up of layer, 22, 41, 58, 82;—is the sun, 96, 131, 134, 135; the nobility, 132, 242; is the body, 134; the vital air, 136; when made milch-cows by the gods, stand with averted faces, having received

no names, 174; therefore called 'virâg,' 174; 10,800 in fire-altar (10,701 in Âhavanîya, 21 Gârhapatya, 78 dhishṇyas), 357, 360; it is the gold man in the sun, and the one brick (? akshara) in which the fire-altar results; also the man in the eye, whence two lokamprinâs are laid down, 369; Agni the one lokamprinâ, 381.
long-haired man (eunuch), III, 9, 90.
lost thing, recovered by offering to Heaven and Earth, Vâyu, and Sûrya, V, 347.
lotus-flower, and plant,—golden flower as fee, III, 115 seq.; its leaves a symbol of sky and stars, its seed-stalks of the air, and its suckers of the earth, 117; lotus plant means the waters, 364.
lotus-leaf, placed on antelope skin, III, 215; is speech, 215; the sky, 216; the womb, 222; placed on Âhavanîya site, 343; Agni found on lotus-leaf by white horse (Pragâpati), 360; lotus-leaf as womb, laid down in centre of altar-site under first layer, 363; means water and earth spread out thereon, 364; (pushkara), the essence of waters, made a stronghold by the gods for Indra, 365; represents the waters, Agni's maternal womb, IV, introd. xx; marks the commencement (womb) of altar, 44, 118, 119; is the immortal light, 365; is the light of the sun, and both are the black of the eye, 367, 368; is the foundation of the sâman as one of the only three bricks of which the altar consists, 374.
lute,—played to one is a form (sign) of wealth (? distinction), V, 285; a Brâhmaṇa and a Râganya play the lute and sing praises of Sacrificer at Aśvamedha, 285 seq., 356 seq.
lute-players, masters of, V, 362 seq., 372.

Mâdhava, second spring-month, III, 386.
Madhu, the sweet doctrine (brâhmaṇa), V, 444 n., 471.
Madhu, first spring-month, III, 386.
madhu-graha, III, 11; held by Vaiśya or Râganya, 29: presented to the Brahman priest, 29.
Madhuka Paiṅgya, remark on animal sacrifice, V, 122.
Mâdhyandina-pavamâna (at Vâgapeya), III, 8.
Mâgha, month suitable for erecting of sepulchral mound, V, 423.
maghavat=makhavat, V, 443.
Mahâdeva, V, 81.
Mahad uktham, IV, introd. xxv; in bird's shape, xxv; 110 seq.; (? a different recension, 111 n., 168 n.); the Śatarudriya accounted to be equal to it, 168, 273; an ocean of *riks*, 278; not to be recited for another, 279, 367; fire-altar, Mahad uktham, and Mahâvrata are the Sacrificer's divine, immortal body, 279;—281 seq.; originated from the vital fluid (rasa) of Pragâpati's dismembered body, 282; the Hotri thereby puts Pragâpati's vital fluid into the Soma-cup, 283; it is equivalent to all the *riks*, 283; is a bird-like body, 286; is the sky, speech, the body, 286; thereby the Hotri puts flavour into the Mahâvratiya cup, 346: is the orb of the sun, 366; triad, Agni, Arka, Mahad uktham, V, 172; — cf. uktha.
mahânâmni verses, III, introd. xx, xxi.
Mahân Devaḥ, a form and name of Agni, is Pragâpati, III, 160.
mahas (wealth, or joy), as a formula pronounced after the Agnihotra, V, 126.
Mahâśâla Gâbâla, instructed by Dhîra Śâtaparṇeya on the nature of Agni, IV, 331, 393; (? the same as Prâkînaśâla Aupamanyu), 393 n., 395.
Mahâvîra pot (Vishṇu and the Sun), etymology, V, 443; making of, 447 seq.; its form, 454; anointed with ghee, 462; is revered (as the sun), 469.

Mahâvrata, IV, introd. xxv seq.; 110, 168; the last day (before concluding day) of Gavâm ayanam, and formerly one of the three great rites of the Sattra, V, (139), 144, 167.
Mahâvrata-sâman, in bird's shape, IV, introd. xxvi, 110; an ocean of sâmans, 278; not to be chanted for another, 279, 367; fire-altar, Mahâvrata and Mahad uktham are the Sacrificer's divine, immortal body, 279; thereby the Udgâtri puts Pragâpati's vital fluid into the Soma-cup, 282; is equivalent to all (other) sâmans, 283; composition of (Gâyatra, Rathantara, Bṛihat, Bhadra, and Râgana-sâmans), 282, 283; is a bird-like body, 286; is the air, breath, 286; the vrata of the great one (Agni), 342; thereby the Udgâtri puts flavour into the Mahâvratîya cup, 346; is the light of the sun, 366.
mahâvratîya-graha, IV, introd. xxvi, 282; by offering it, the Adhvaryu puts the vital fluid into Pragâpati, 284; is Pragâpati's food, 346; is offered with 'vaushaṭ,' 202, 346.
mâhendra-graha, belongs to Indra, III, 13, 17;—drawing of, 41, 81, 113.
mahiman, two Soma-cups (drawn for Pragâpati) at Aśvamedha, day and night, IV, 401; V, 327; mahiman, is royal power, 327; the first drawn in gold vessel, 391; the second in silver vessel, 394.
mahishî, first wife, III, 238; lies down near the sacrificial horse, V, 386; addressed by Brahman, 386.
Mâhitthi, III, 175; IV, 105–8, 271.
maiden, — beautiful maiden is apt to be loved (by men), V, 295; given as dakshiṇâ, 402.
Maitrâvaruṇa, his hearth, III, 80, 81; sterile cow his fee at Daśapeya, 119; is under Hotṛi, V, 137; is the mind of the sacrifice, 245.
maitrâvaruṇa-graha, III, 6.
Makha, is the sacrifice, III, 233; Vishṇu, V, 443; his head restored, 450 seq.; — Makha Saumya, 454.
male, is pre-eminently endowed with power, IV, 230; m. organ, (of three parts), V, 19; has one joint, 19.
malt, of rice and barley, V, 219, 223 n., 240.
man,—is skinless, III, 32; men belong to Vishṇu, 54; lives up to a hundred years, 93, 135, 405; V, 261, 275; has a hundred powers or energies, III, 93, 135; V, 275; is born into a (future) world made by him, III, 181; the sham-man his sacrificial substitute, 197; is a fathom high, 309; is Pragâpati, 309; man's life shorter than the gods', 344; tends upwards by his vital airs, 368; is not held down by food and breath, 379; man's human form is clay, 382; men have their birthplace in the west (the Gârhapatya), 389; man created from Pragâpati's mind (manas), 402; is the first and strongest of animals, 402; is produced in the shape of the paṅkti, IV, 38; (male) is lucky if marked on right side, 31; single man has many wives, 230; man with upstretched arms the measure for the fire-altar, 305; that is his highest measure, 305; fivefold (by food, drink, excellence, light, and immortality), 326, 327; when man dies he, by his five vital airs, passes into fire, sun, moon, the quarters, and the wind, and becomes one of them, 333; must not eat food in the presence of his wife, 369; man at the end of sexual union becomes apathetic and sleeps, 370; is king Soma, V, 6; of sixteen parts, 20; man is born thrice (through birth, sacrifice, and death), 23, 24; daily offering to men (by entertaining guests), 95; black, yellow-eyed man (Wrath) between two women (Belief and Unbelief) in North-East quarter, 110–112; man's thought taken by sun (whence saying, 'the divine

thought protect thee, not man's thought!'), 130; man as the year (year's sattra), 144, 145, 168 seq.; man does not know clearly the way to heaven, 305; men the subjects of Manu Vaivasvata, the *Rik* their Veda, 362.
man in the eye. See eye.
man in the sun. See sun.
manas. See mind.
manthin (graha), III, 6; puroru*k* formula of, 111; produced from ai*d*a-sâman, and from it the ekavi*ms*a-stoma, IV, 10.
Manu, is Pragâpati, III, 250; carried by the earth (his wife, a mare), V, 466.
Manu Vaivasvata, king of men, V, 361.
Mânutantavya. See Saumapa.
Manyu, the one god who did not abandon Pragâpati, IV, 157; becomes Rudra, 157.
mare, brings forth within a year, V, 12: mare with foal the dakshi*n*â at Sautrâma*n*î, 218, 222; mares enclosed to make the sacrificial horse whinny, 306.
Mârgâlîya hearth, at Agni*k*ayana constructed of six bricks (the seasons, the Fathers), IV, 243; used for cleansing, V, 490.
mark, on body. See lakshman.
marrow,—the formula used in laying down the brick is the marrow, IV, 20; is the light of man's body, 327; is the Ya*g*ushmatî bricks, hence 360 parts of marrow in the body, 387; V, 169.
marud-netrâ*b* (devâ*b*), seated in the north, III, 49.
Maruts, (uggeshâ*b*) offering of sterile cow to, III, 13; are the peasantry (vi*s*), 13, 34, 61; staying on A*s*vattha tree, 34, 84; by seven syllables gain the domestic animals, 40; seven-kapâla cake to, 61; rathavimo*k*anîya oblation, 101; dappled cow their victim at oblation of teams, 125; Âdityas and Maruts connected with embryos, and pañ*k*avi*ms*a-stoma, IV, 68; lords of the north, 102; connected with Soma, ekavi*ms*a-stoma, nishkevalya-*s*astra, vairâga-sâman, 102; Vasus, Rudras, Âdityas, Maruts, Vi*s*ve Devâ*h*, build on different sides of altar (E. S. W. N. Zen.), 118; rule over rain, 170; seven cakes of seven kapâlas to them, 208 seq.; these are the vital airs (of Vai*s*vânara, the head), 209; they are the vi*s*, 210; their cakes offered to sitting, 210; with the hand, with Svâhâ (without a proper anuvâkyâ and yâgyâ), 211; are the rays of the sun, 212; the stormy (region), the troup of the Maruts, is the air, 236; are the guardians of one of the four regions, V, 359; Maruts, as guards-men of king Marutta, 397; animal sacrifice to, 402; Maruts, as the people, surround the (samrâg) Pravargya, 466.
Marutta Âvikshita, the Âyogava king, performed the A*s*vamedha, V, 397.
marutvatîya-*s*astra, connected with Varu*n*a, the Âdityas, the west, &c., IV, 101, 102; on second day of A*s*vamedha, V, 379, 380.
mate, makes man complete, IV, 132; is one half of one's self, 132.
Matsya Sâ*m*mada, king of water-dwellers, V, 369; cf. Dhvasan.
Maudgalya. See Nâka Maudgalya.
Mâyâ,—as such, Asuras serve the divine Purusha, IV, 373.
Menakâ, the Apsaras, is the southern quarter, or heaven, IV, 106.
metres,—connected with the Brahman, &c., III, 91; Gâyatrî, Trish*t*ubh, *G*agatî, Anush*t*ubh, 201–202; immortal metres, 203; identified with the white and black hair of the black antelope skin, the *rik* and sâman, 266; mounting of those four metres (representing the worlds), 276, 277; are vital sap, 352; the oceanic (samudriya) metre, 352; the seven, 353; IV, 277, 314; looseness in calculating, III, 353; are life-sustaining gods, IV, 32; the cattle become metres, 36; different kinds of metres, 36 seq.; are cattle, 45; and food, 87; the eight defined and the undefined ones, 53, 88 seq.; etymology, 87; the *kh*andasyâ

bricks representing the ten principal metres, 109, 110; seven, increasing by four (syllables), 212; these are the seven vital airs, 327–9; the different metres and deities identified with parts of body, 330, 331; do not fail by excess or deficiency of one or two syllables, V, 157.

milch-cow,—the bricks of altar are made such, IV, 172; in the other world one will get many such by the Brahman, the Yagus, 173; with calf given as dakshiṇâ for Aditi's pap at Sautrâmaṇî, V, 268.

milk,—used with consecration-water, III, 78; is breath (life), 245; laid in female, 245, 311; milk from black cow which has a white calf, offered to Agni, about to be laid down on fire-altar, IV, 200; milk is breath, 200; is vital sap, 201; milk (cups of) at Sautrâmaṇî represents Soma, and the Kshatra, V, 225, 228; cups of milk there to Aśvins, Sarasvatî and Indra, 240, 241.

milking-bowl (pinvana), made, V, 454 seq.; milked into, 475.

milking-pail (dohana),—milk offered from it, IV, 200.

millet, originates from Indra's hair, V, 215.

mind (soul, manas), — everything gained by it, III, 100; union of Mind and Speech, 149; is Sarasvat, 398; is the foundation of the body, 270; the first of vital airs, 402; in it all the vital airs are established, 402; originates from Vâyu, in right side of body, IV, 6; from it the summer is produced, 6; is one only, 7; is the moon, 11; from it speech is produced, 11; sustained by the circulating vital air (vyâna), 15; is the fifth to the four vital airs, 73; mind (-metre) is Pragâpati, 88; one of the five divisions of vital air in the head, 190; Manas as Gandharva, with *Rik*s and Sâmans as Apsaras, his mates, 233; Mind alone existed in the beginning, 375; thence the other four vital airs (speech, breath, the eye, the ear), and after them work and fire, were evolved each one from the preceding one by worshipping with its thirty-six thousand Arka-fires, 375 seq.; Mind preceded and created by Death, hunger, 402; the libations to Mind and Speech (Sarasvat and Sarasvatî) are such to Full and New moon, V, 28, 31, 32, 35; Sacrificer is mind, manifested in speech, 262; what is thought in mind is spoken by speech, and heard by ear, 263; is the overlord of vital airs, 504; all is gained thereby, 507.

mithuna, not to take place during dîkshâ, III, 185; or prior to maitrâvaruṇa curds, 186.

Mitra,—by one syllable gains trivṛit-stoma, III, 40; is the Brahman, 67; to him belongs wood broken off by itself, and naturally produced butter, 67; the larger rice-grains, 68; what is cooked by hot steam, 68; injures no one but is every one's friend, 68; Mitra Satya, pap of nâmba seed to, 71; prayugâṁ havis (pap), 125; Mitra is the breath, 230; (together with the Vasus) mixes the clay, 231; is the wind, 245; the out-breathing (prâṇa), IV, 68; takes Śrî's noble rank (kshatra) and receives (mitravindâ) oblation (pap), V, 62–5; the ninth of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblation of drops, 281.

Mitra-Bṛihaspati, a pap to, III, 66; are the path of the sacrifice, 67.

Mitra-Varuṇa, — are anointed as kings by the gods, III, 73; to them the Râganya belongs by his arms, 88, 93; are dhṛita-vratau (upholders of the sacred law), 89; mount the chariot and thence behold Aditi and Diti, 93; are the directors (praśâstârau), 99; dish of clotted curds (payasyâ) to them, 105, 186; (pañkabila) dish of clotted curds (payasyâ) on north part of vedi, 120, 121; Adhvaryu's fee

for it sterile cow, 122;—are the out-breathing (prâṇa) and up-breathing (udâna), 122; V, 181; connected with rain and wind, and the ekaviṁśa-stoma, IV, 68; payasyâ to, is a divine mate for Sacrificer (since prior to it he must not touch woman), 270; this payasyâ is seed, put into Pragâpati, 270; are this and the other worlds, V, 268; the prâṇa and apâna, 269; offering of barren cows, 402; seasonal animal sacrifice, 402, 411.

mitrâvaruṇa-netrâḥ (devâḥ), seated in the north, III, 49.

Mitravindâ, form of sacrifice (ten oblations), V, 62 seq.

month,—twelve or thirteen in the year, III, 119; a thirteenth, 182; has sixty days and nights, 184; the year their ruler, IV, 74; the thirteenth is Agni's trunk, 167; the thirteenth is the year itself, V, 247; is an excrescence of the year, 276.

moon,—slain when set at liberty, III, 45; is Vṛitra and Soma, 45; (Kandramas) how created, 149; is seed, 149; the Viśve Devâḥ placed with moon in the quarters, 150; is Pragâpati, 178; dwells on earth at new-moon, 178; slaughtered by the gods at full-moon, 178; is Vṛitra, 178; one of Agni's forms, 230; is the hook or point to which the year is linked by the seasons, 269; created with the regions, 286; sun and moon Pragâpati's eyes, the moon the eye on which he lay, hence much closed up, 313; is Soma's highest glory in the heavens, and causes him to be celebrated there, 355; is mind, and becomes (or gives birth to) speech, IV, 11; is the year and all living beings, 54; is the (thunderbolt and) pañkadaśa-stoma (because of its waxing and waning fifteen days), 62; is the tail of Agni-Pragâpati, the altar and universe, 179; the essence of oblations goes up to the moon, 179; (Kandramas), as Gandharva, with the stars as Apsaras, his mates, 232; when the moon sets it enters the wind, 333; is Âditya's (Agni-Pragâpati's) food, 349; is king Soma, 349; V, 6, 9, 10; is the ascended Pragâpati-Sacrificer, made up of all existing things, IV, 354; is the bolt of the gate of sacrifice, V, 1; the heavenly dog watching the Sacrificer's cattle (to seize them), 10; the hare-marked one, 10; full and new moon variously identified, 30 seq.; moon (Soma) is the Aśvamedha, 33, 34; the moon, one of the six doors to the Brahman, 66, 67; his light taken by the sun, 130; represented by piece of silver tied to a darbha plant and taken eastwards, 196; is born again and again, 315; the type of vitality, 315; is the spotless Brahman (masc.), 317, 318; Kandra (the regent of the regions or of the Nakshatras?) is the Self of the gods, 505.

mortals, created from lower (downward) vital airs, III, 150; IV, 289.

mortar and pestle, put in first layer, III, 393–396; mean food, 393 seq.; the mortar is the womb, the pestle the śiśna of the Agni-animal, 400; IV, 2.

mother, bears son on her lap, III, 232.

mouth,—peculiar mark in mouth is lucky, IV, 81; (pariśrit) reaching up to mouth, 159; lifting of sacrificer on throne-seat up to the mouth, V, 254.

mṛityumohinî, the first four stoma-bricks of fourth layer, IV, 59 n.

muhûrta, a fifteenth part of the day (and a thirtieth part of day and night), IV, 351 seq.; 10,800 in the year, 352; V, 169; in each muhûrta a four-score of syllables completed to make up the trayî vidyâ, Pragâpati's body, IV, 353; consists of fifteen kshipras, V, 169.

Muṇḍibha Audanya, discovers atonement for slaying of Brâhmaṇa, V, 341.

muñga-grass, layer of it put in fire-pan, as the womb, III, 251.

nabhas, the first rainy month, IV, 48.
nabhasya, the second rainy month, IV, 48.
Nâ*i*apit (Kaṇva's hermitage), V, 399.
nada-verse, IV, 113.
nadîpati, III, 75.
Nagnagit,—Svargit Nagnagit (or Nâgnagita), the Gândhâra (a râgnyabandhu), IV, 21.
Nâka Maudgalya, a teacher, V, 201.
nâkasad, bricks of fifth layer, are the gods (seated on the firmament), IV, 97 seq.; are the four priests with the Sacrificer, 103; are the (Sacrificer's) Self, 104; the regions, 104.
nakshatra, III, 19; Agnyâdhâna not to be performed under a special nakshatra, V, 1; single nakshatra, 423; are a place of abode to all the gods, 505; (*K*andra, or Varu*n*a? their regent), 505, 506.
nâmba (âmba) seed, growing on unploughed ground, III, 71.
name, giving of, frees from evil, III, 159; oblations to names (of Agni) forming part of the Vasor dhârâ, IV, 219; he who is consecrated (anointed) comes to have two names, 247; form and name, as two forces of the Brahman, the former being the stronger, V, 27, 28.
nameless finger, III, 221, 294.
Namu*k*i, an Asura, killed by Indra, III, 92; drinks Soma with the A*ś*vins, 135; takes Indra's Soma-drink and vital energy, V, 216; wins Indra's source of strength by means of the Surâ-liquor, 222; is slain by Indra with foam of water, being neither dry nor moist, neither staff nor bow, neither palm nor fist, 223; is evil, 223; in his severed head was Soma-juice mixed with blood, 223; the A*ś*vins bring away the Soma from him, and Sarasvatî distils (presses) it, 232.
Nârâ*ś*a*m*sî-Gâthâ*h*, to be studied, V, 98.
Nârâya*n*a,—Purusha Nârâya*n*a, exhorted by Pragâpati to sacrifice, V, 172, 173.
naudhasa-sâman, III, introd. xvi.
navada*ś*a-stoma, is heat and the year, IV, 63.
navel, goes all round, III, 86; navel of the earth (is the place where ukhâ is standing), 258; gold plate worn by Agni*k*it over navel, 267; sun stands over navel of the earth (or sky), 267; below navel is seed, 267; part of animal above navel is sacrificially pure, 267; immortal part of vital air is above navel, 267; the intestinal (channel of) vital air round about the navel, IV, 17; navel-high (pari*ś*rit), 158; the food above the navel is immortal, below mortal, 285; navel-high, lifting of Sacrificer on throne-seat, V, 254.
neck (grîvâ*h*), consists of fourteen joints, V, 163.
needle,—copper, silver and gold ones (or wires) used for making the 'knife-paths,' V, 326, 327.
Neshtri, draws cups of Surâ, III, 10; leads forth patnî, 31; garment his fee at Da*ś*apeya, 119; is under Adhvaryu, V, 137; Neshtri (or Pratiprasthâtri) leads up the king's wives, 321.
netting (*ś*ikya), for carrying the Ukhya Agni, III, 268; is the regions, 268; with six strings of reed grass, 269; is the seasons, 269.
New and Full-moon sacrifice. See Darśapûr*n*amâsa.
new moon,—thence the sacrifice is spread, III, 180; the night of new moon is the gate of the sacrifice, V, 1; then the moon comes down to this world, 2; new moon an additional offering in honour of Indra for having slain Vritra (at full moon), 6, 7; is a single nakshatra, 423.
nidhana,—prastâva and nidhana, IV, 145, 146.
nidhanavat-sâman, produced from pa*n*kti, and from it the âgraya*n*a-graha, IV, 11.
night, is a uniter, IV, 89; is the goodness (well-being) of the year, as then all beings dwell together, 326; originates from

the darkness arising from the Asuras when created, V, 14; means peaceful dwelling, 285.
nigrâbhyâḥ (water used for moistening Soma-plants), V, 106; are the divine waters, 107.
nilakaṇṭha, IV, 162 n.
nineteen, IV, 74.
ninety,—sixteen nineties (of dhṛiti oblations) are the horse's chain, V, 288.
nipples, on fire-pan, III, 237.
Nirṛiti (evil, corruption), oblation of spoiled rice to, III, 43; is this earth, 43, 322; pap of black rice split by finger-nails, 65; her bricks and altar, 319 seq.; to her belong husks, 320; is black, 320; south-west her region, 320; her bricks laid down in a cleft of ground or natural hollow, or where no plants grow, 321; Nirṛiti visits him who does not offer Soma, 321; is sharp-edged, 321; binds with an iron band, 322; of one mind with Yama and Yamî (Agni and the earth), 322; the awful goddess, 322; the sling sacred to her, 323; in the direction of Nirṛiti's region (S.W.) stone is thrown (thereby expelling all heat and suffering from the worlds), IV, 171, 361.
nishka, worn by Sacrificer round his neck, V, 338; given to Adhvaryu, 350.
nishkevalya-stotra and -śastra, belong to Indra, III, 13, 81; connected with Soma, the Maruts, north, &c., 102; on second day of Aśvamedha, V, 380.
niyut (team of Vâyu), is the up-breathing (udâna), III, 173, 177.
north, connected with Anushṭubh, autumn, &c., III, 91; is Rudra's region, 97; IV, 158; V, 488; northwards Sacrificer and wife ascend the sacrificial post, III, 32; northwards he puts the Ukhya Agni on the chariot, 290; palâśa branch thrown out northwards, 299; thither he relegates decline, sickness, 348; hungry people live in that region, 348; horse and ram most plentiful in the north region, 404; is the anushṭubh, IV, 45; the Maruts its lords, 102; Soma its protector, 102; connected with ekaviṁśa-stoma, nishkevalya-śastra, vairâga-sâman, 102; self-ruling, 46, 102; north side of altar offering-place to Rudra, 158; is the waters and the law, V, 18; is the region of men, 448; the region of (the Sacrificer's) offspring (or subjects, people), 485.
north-east, standing towards, Pragâpati creates creatures, III, 252, 276; is the quarter of gods and men, 252; IV, 227; there is the gate of heaven, III, 252; in that direction one offers libations and leads up the dakshiṇâs, 252; towards north-east, the Agnikit stands whilst holding the Ukhya Agni up towards the east, 272 (275), and north-east, 280; the Vishṇu-strides made in that direction, 276; animals let loose towards north-east, 239; ditto oxen after ploughing the agnikshetra, 331; ditto white horse, 359; the direction of the sun, V, 485.
nose, a partition between the eyes, and the persons therein (Indra and Indrâṇî), IV, 369.
nostrils, are the path of breath (prâṇa), V, 263.
number, the highest and lowest, IV, 172.
nyagrodha (ficus indica), therefrom consecration vessel for a friendly Râganya to sprinkle, III, 83; originates from Indra's bones (and sweet drink), V, 215, 216; means sweet drink, 220; takes root when turned downwards, 317; not to stand near a grave, 427.

oblations, are flesh, IV, 206.
ocean, lord of rivers, III, 75; flows round the earth from east southwards, 301; is a moat, 301; flows round, and encompasses these worlds, IV, 169; flows from left to right, 169; the

cloudy ocean, the sky, 235; three of Yagus, Sâman, and *Rik* (Agni, Mahâvrata and Mahad uktham), 278; the year's sattra likened to the crossing of an ocean, V, 145 seq.; (the aerial), is the wind, 479.
offspring, is all the light, III, 239.
ogress-ridder, is the wind, V, 479.
ointment, for eyes and feet, V, 439.
old ox, old barley, and old arm-chair, as fee for oblation to Agni Âyushmat after burial, V, 439.
omentum. See vapâ.
one, is speech, IV, 73.
ore, produced from stone, III, (147), 158.
ox, tired out by drawing the cart, III, 257; is Agni, 355; ox will do for (white) horse in leading forward Agni, 360; (pash*th*avâh) is vigour, produced in the shape of the b*ri*hatî metre, IV, 38; born from of old as a draught animal, V, 294; holding on to the tail of an ox, while returning home from burial, 438.
ox-hide, red, for the layers of bricks to be put on, III, 355; Râganya shoots arrows at two ox-hides, IV, 283 n.

padapaṅkti (metre), is the earth, IV, 88.
pail. See milking-pail.
Paiṅgya, remark of his on the sha*d*ahas, V, 162; cf. Madhuka.
palâgala, courier, one of the ratnina*b*, III, 64; to him belong skin-covered bow, leathern quiver, and red turban, 64.
pâlâgalî, addressed by chamberlain, V, 387.
palâ*ś*a, (butea frondosa), is the Brahman, III, 53, 83, 258; V, 221; consecration vessel therefrom, for Brâhmaṇa to sprinkle, III, 83; resin of pal*ś*a for boiling water, 229; palâ*ś*a is Soma, 229, 258; site of Gârhapatya swept with palâ*ś*a branch, 298; not the Âhavanîya, 343; sacrificial stake to be made thereof, V, 123, 373–375; palâ*ś*a branch for sweeping burial-place, 430; pala*ś*a peg, 436.
pañkabila pap, consisting of five oblations, III, 120.
pañkada*ś*a-stoma, gained by Âdityas, III, 40; connected with Kshatra, &c., 91; at evening service of Ke*ś*avapanîya, 127; produced from antaryâma-graha, and from it the b*ri*hat-p*ri*shth*a*, IV, 7; is bright, the thunderbolt, and the moon, 62; through it, connected with Indra and Vish*ṇ*u, the Kshatra is freed from death, 68; is the arm, 79; connected with Indra, the Rudras, the south, &c., 101.
pañkakûdâ, bricks of the fifth layer, IV, 99, 103 seq.; are the hotrâs, 103; etymology, 103; are the (Sacrificer's) mate, 104; offspring, 104; the regions beyond the sun, 104; shafts and missiles protecting the worlds, 104, 105.
Pañkâla, formerly called Krivis, V, 397; cf. *Son*a.
pañkavâtîya offering, III, 48.
pañkâvattîya, III, 48.
pañkavi*ṃś*a-stoma, is the embryos, the year, IV, 64; through it, connected with Âdityas and Maruts, embryos are freed from death, 69.
pañkedhmîya, III, 48.
paṅkti metre, connected with *ś*âkvara and raivata-sâmans, &c., III, 91; produced from winter, and from it the nidhanavat-sâman, IV, 11; is the slow metre, in the form of which men were produced, 38; ditto bullocks (anaduh), 39; is the upper region, 45; consists of five feet; is the ear (of Pragâpati), 327–329; of 10,800 paṅkti consists the whole *Rik*, and of as many the Yagus (7,200) and Sâman (3,600), 352, 353.
Para Âtnâra Hairaṇyanâbha, king of Kosala, performed the A*ś*vamedha, V, 397.
Parameshth*i*n, — Parameshth*i*n and Âditya connected with the sky, the third svayam-âtṛinnâ, and fifth layer, III, 188, 190; Pragâpati Parameshth*i*n, lord of beings (bhûta), IV, 76; Parame-

shṭ́in takes Pragâpati's head which is sacred to himself, 142; Parameshṭhin Prâgâpatya created out of Pragâpati with a life of a thousand years, V, 15; the first who performed New and Full-moon offering, 15; performs it for Pragâpati, as a wish-granting sacrifice, 15; is the heavenly waters (? Parganya) in the highest place, 15.
Parganya, rain-cloud and rain-god, is Bhava (Agni), III, 160; gods become like him, 277; licks the ground and strokes the plants, 277; scarcely born, lights up everything, 278; is beyond the reach of our arms, 278; does not rain in the region where kimpurusha, &c., are, 412; is the boon-bestower, the upper region, IV, 107; animal sacrifice to Parganya, V, 402.
paridhi, enclosing-sticks, — on the middle one the yoking or unyoking of the fire-altar is performed, IV, 250, 252; round tomb, V, 430.
Pârikshita. See Ganamegaya.
Pârikshitîya, V, 396.
parimâd (sâmans), preceding the mahâvrata-sâman, IV, 283 n.; are cattle, 288; how performed, 288 n.
paripaśavya, oblations, V, 321.
pâriplava legend, V, 361 seq.
parîśâsa. See lifting-stick.
pariśrit (enclosing-stone),—are the womb of the fire, III, 301, 344; the waters (ocean), 301; IV, 187, 244; are the bones, III, 302; twenty-one for Gârhapatya, (301), 308, 344, 359; offering to Rudra on three of them (the three Agnis), IV, 157; anointing takes place close to enclosing-stones, 227; pariśrit of dhishṇya hearths, are merely laid down, 244; are the clansmen, 244; represent the additional height obtained by man (with upstretched arms) standing on tiptoe, 305; a line dug for them outside (the altar-ground), 306; are of the nature of nights (protective), 326; are the nights of the year, Pragâpati's body, 354, 358; three hundred and sixty for fire-altar, (261 of Âhavanîya; 21 Gârhapatya; 78 Dhishṇyas), 357–358; are the waters encircling the earth (the fire-altar), 381.
parisrut (immature liquor), III, 9, 131, 133; originates from Indra's generative organ, V, 215; not to be consumed by Brâhmaṇa, 260.
Parivakrâ, a city in Pañkâla, V, 397.
parivatsara (second year of cycle), IV, 21.
parivṛiktâ, discarded wife, addressed by Hotṛi, V, 387.
pariyagñña, enclosing sacrifices, III, 4.
parṇa,—branch, driving away the calves therewith at new moon, V, 8; — tree originated from fallen feather of Gâyatrî, (or leaf of Soma), 122; tree in the abode (of plants?), 433.
pârtha-oblations, twelve at Râgasûya, III, 81; twelve at Agnikayana, IV, 225; are the year, 228.
pârthuraśma-sâman, V, 333.
partridge (tittiri), springs from Viśvarûpa's head, III, 130.
paryagnikaraṇa, V, 307.
paryaṅgya, victims, at Aśvamedha, V, 299 n.
paryâya, III, introd. xviii.
paśu, etymology, III, 162; cf. victim.
Paśupati, a form and name of Agni, III, 159; is the plants, 159.
paśu-puroḍâśa, III, 136, 137, 173, 175; IV, 245, 247, 248; their object, 247 n.; directions (praishas), 265; should belong to the deities to whom the victims are devoted, V, 221.
Pâṭava. See Revottaras.
path,—two paths, that of the Fathers, and that of the gods, V, 237, 238.
Pâthya, the bull, is the mind, III, 218.
patnî. See Sacrificer's wife.
patnîsâlâ, IV, 307.
patnîsaṃyâga, their symbolic import, V, 44.
Paulushi. See Satyayagñña.
Paumsâyana. See Dushṭarîtu.
paurushamedhika, the central (day), V, 419.

pavamâna-stotra, — (bahish-pavamâna) is heaven, V, 305, 306.
pavamâni-verses, V, 235.
pavitra, a Soma-sacrifice, III, introd. xxvi, 42.
pavitra, strainer, filter,—gold weaved therein, III, 84; (of goat's hair and sheep's wool), V, 235.
payasyâ (dish of clotted curds), to Mitra and Varuṇa, III, 105, 186, 120; is the essence of cattle, 105.
pearls, 101: gold pearls woven into hair of sacrificial horse, V, 313.
pebble, (gravel) produced from sand, III, (147), 158: used instead of bricks for the sepulchral mound of a non-Agnikit, V, 440.
phâlguna,—full moon of second phâlguna is the first night of the year, III, 179: V, 348.
pilippilâ (?smooth, glossy), V, 315, 316.
pisaṅgilâ (? tawny), V, 316, 389.
pîtadâru (deodar), V, 373, 374.
Pitarab,—somavantab, barhishadab, agnishvâttâb, libations of Surâ to, III, 136; cf. Fathers.
pitcher, with a hundred or nine holes, III, 135.
plaksha (ficus infectoria), mat of, V, 394.
plants, grow three times a year (spring, rainy season, autumn), III, 340; shoot out a hundredfold and a thousandfold, 340; plants as Apsaras, the Gandharva Agni's mates, IV, 231; delighted in by every one, 231.
plough (sîra), yoking of, III, 326; etymology, 326; of udumbara wood, 326; its cords of muñga grass, 326.
poison, in Pragâpati's body (from Rudra's shaft), V, 36.
pond, water from, III, 77.
pool, water from, III, 76.
porcupine, V, 390.
post, sacrificial. See yûpa.
Potri, garment his fee at Dasapeya, III, 119; is under the Brahman priest, V, 137.
pradakshiṇam (prasalavi), V, 323, 468.
Pragâpati, seventeen victims to, III, introd. xxiv, 14; is the sacrifice and food of the gods, 1; lord of speech, 5; seventeenfold, 8; IV, 190, 347; V, 352; the thirty-fourth god, III, 9, 79; man is nearest to him, 15; means productiveness, 15; is the sacrifice and the year, 30, &c.; he who offers Vâgapeya becomes Pragâpati's child, 32; Pragâpati delivers creatures from Varuṇa's noose, 47; Pragâpati-Agni, the Purusha, 144; Pragâpati becomes relaxed and is restored by Agni, hence called Agni, 151, 152; is Agni's father and son, 153, 154; Agni's father, 360: bhûtânâm patib (the year), husband of Ushas, 158; is Mahân Devab (Agni), 160; covets Agni's forms, 161; is all the metres, 169: a he-goat slaughtered for him, 171: Pragâpati is hornless, 171; twenty-one-fold, 172; one half of him is Vâyu and one half Pragâpati, 175; is the moon, 178; the eighth day after full-moon sacred to Pragâpati, 180; Pragâpati (and Agni) connected with the earth and the first svayamâtṛiṇṇâ, 187, 190; is these worlds and the quarters, 193; harnesses the mind, 193; the inspirer of devotion, 194; he is the immortal one, and the gods his sons, 194; digs for Agni, 215; is undefined, 215; both the defined and the undefined, 341; V, 455; the manly-minded, III, 284: is both gods and men, 290; after producing creatures, becomes relaxed, and is restored by the gods, 312; without him there was no firm foundation, 312: is food, 312; the vital air that went from him is Vâyu; his lost vigour is Âditya, 312; his downward vital air is the fire on earth, the air his body, the wind in the air is the vital air in his body, the sky his head, the sun and moon his eyes, 313; Pragâpati is the begetter of the earth, 346; is the whole Brahman (n.), 353; Pragâpati becomes a white horse and finds Agni on a lotus-leaf, 360: is *the* Man, 366; the vital air his pleasing form, 367;

Agni and Indra take away his fiery spirit and vigour, 374; they become his arms, 374; his hair becomes the herbs, 380;—IV, introd. xiv seq.; his dismemberment the creation of the universe, xv; is the Sacrificer, ib.; the Arch-sacrificer, xix; the one god above all other gods, xx; the thirty-fourth, xx; V, 151, 211; the food of the gods (Soma), IV, introd. xxi; Father Time or Father Year, xxii seq.; is Death, xxiii; is the *Ri*shi Vi*s*vakarman, IV, 28, 37; Pragâpati, the highest lord (parames*hth*in), becomes a metre, 37; in the form of Gâyatrî overcomes cattle, 37; in the air Pragâpati is Vâyu, 57, 58; is the Brahman (n.), 59, 60; is (aerial) space, and the saptadasastoma, 62; becomes pregnant with living beings (bhûta), 67; Pragâpati Parames*hth*in, the lord of living beings (bhûta), 76; the progenitor (praganayit*ri*), 76; is the mind (-metre), 88; enters heaven last of gods, 113, 117; consists of sixteen parts (kalâ), 189; takes Agni, as his dear son, to his bosom, 206; those going to the heavenly light and becoming immortal become Pragâpati's children, 220; from him couples issue in the form of Gandharvas and Apsaras, and he, becoming a chariot, encloses them, 229, 234; Pragâpati Vi*s*vakarman, who has wrought the universe, 233; is Dhât*ri*, 263; one half of Pragâpati mortal, and the other immortal, 290, 292; becomes clay and water, and enters the earth, afraid of Death, 290; is recovered in the form of bricks, 290; is built up so as to become immortal, 291; his body in part of Agni's, Indra's, and the All-gods' nature, 291; he (by chips of gold) finally makes his body of golden form, 295; Pragâpati is the (sacrificial) animals—man, horse, bull, ram, he-goat, 299; Pragâpati goes up to the world where the sun shines, and becomes the one sacrificial animal, 301; is Savit*ri*'s well-winged eagle, 305; Father Pragâpati requires his due proportions, 309; Pragâpati's body contains Agni, all objects of desire, 313; poured, as seed, into the ukhâ, 341; is Agni, 345; Pragâpati, the year, and his lights, 349 seq.; Pragâpati, the year, has created all existing things, 350; to encompass all beings he divides himself into different bodies, 350 seq.; Pragâpati's body contains (or consists of) the threefold science, 352; Pragâpati and Sacrificer, being composed of all existing things, on ascending, become the moon, and the sun is their foundation, being generated out of their own selves, 354, 355;—Pragâpati, the sacrifice, is the year, V, 1; the Purusha, Pragâpati, born in a year, from a golden egg, 12; his first words, 'bhû*h*, bhuva*h*, svar,' 12; born with a life of a thousand years, 13; Pragâpati smites the Asuras with evil and darkness, 13, 14; Pragâpati, by the Full and New-moon sacrifice, becomes the vital air and Vâyu, 15; Pragâpati is everything endowed with breath, 16; gives himself up to the gods and creates the sacrifice as a counterpart of himself, 22; Pragâpati and his daughter, 36 n.; poison in his body, 36; *Sr*î issuing from him, 62; brahma*k*ârin committed to him, 86; Father Pragâpati resorted to by the gods for advice, 91 seq.; Pragâpati alone in beginning, from him the three worlds, 102; the seventeenfold Pragâpati, what he consists of (as regards the trayî vidyâ), 170; exhorts Purusha Nârâya*n*a to sacrifice, 172; victim before initiation for Sattra, formerly to Savit*ri*, now to Pragâpati, 174; Pragâpati, the sacrifice, is king Soma, 205 seq.; by producing the sacrifice he lost his greatness which went

to the great sacrificial priests, 275; the most vigorous of gods, 278; Pragâpati performs Asvamedha, 289; is the chief (mukha) of deities, 292; victim to Pragâpati, 371; is the Brahman (n.), 409; Manu Pragâpati carried by the earth (his wife, a mare), 466.

Pragâpati-hridaya (Pragâpater hridayam), a sâman sung over the completed altar, IV, 180.

prâgvaṃsa, IV, 307 n.

Prâk nasâla Aupamanya, a teacher, IV, 393 n.; (?) is the same as Mahâsâla Gâbâla, 393 n., 395 n.

prâkînavaṃsa, IV, 307 n.

Prâkînayogya. See Satyayagña, Saukeya.

prakrama, step, movement,—forty-nine oblations to forms of the horse, V, 282, 363, 364.

Prâkyas, being of Asura nature, make their burial-places round, V, 423; and line them with stone, 430.

Pramlokantî, the Apsaras, is the western quarter, or the day, IV, 106, 107.

prâna (vital air), water therein, III, 184; nine, 93, 196, 218, 296; (seven of head and two downward ones), IV, 243; V, 150; ten, III, 174, 297; IV, 51, 165, 243, 246; V, 24; three, III, 218, 385; six, 270; were the Rishis, 143; are good for all beings, 151; is Pragâpati, 192; the sruva, 192; are the thoughts, 193; are Agni, 196; is Mitra, 230; immortal part of vital air is above navel, the mortal part passes by and away from the navel, 267; link the body to food, 270; are the divine inspirers, 305; three downward vital airs, 315; the three compared with the three fires, 317; number of vital airs in body uncertain, 331; food for them placed in mouth, 332, 388; seven vital airs in the head, 340, 402; seven in each victim (or its head), 403; is Pragâpati's pleasing form, 367; belongs to the whole universe, 385; is taken in from the front backwards, 391; is the male, the mate of speech, 391; the head is the birth-place of all the vital airs, 396; the five (of the head)—mind (soul), eye, breath (prâna), ear, voice (speech), 402; depart from Pragâpati, IV, 3; create food with Pragâpati, 3; spring-season produced from breath, 4; the Rishi Vasishtha is breath, 5; are connected and one, 5; five (prâna, apâna, vyâna, udâna, samâna), 15; prâna becomes the apâna, 16; intestinal vital air (guda prâna), 17; run in body both lengthwise and crosswise, 18; must reach every limb, 19; pass not only backward and forward but everywhere, 19; contracts and expands the body and limbs, 21; are life-sustaining gods, 32; up, down, and through-breathing, 34, 47; ditto and out-breathing, 43; breath necessary for all, 48; separated from each other by the width of a horse-hair (vâla), 55; seven in front (upper half of man), 55, 57; seven counter-breathings behind, 55, 58; one in each limb, 55; ten focussed in the head, 57; out-breathing (prâna) is Mitra, the down-breathing apâna) Varuna, 68; three (prâna, udâna, vyâna), 73; four prâna, with mind as the fifth, 73; seven in the head, the seven Rishis, 73; nine, 73; ten with the âtman as the eleventh; 74; prâna and apâna, 86; prâna, vyâna, udâna, 90, 237; V, 246; pass backwards and forwards, IV, 90; prâna, apâna, vyâna, 131, 186; V, 89, 90; is kindled by the sun, and hence is warm, IV, 135; without vital air a limb would shrivel up, 136, 140; prâna, apâna, vyâna, udâna, 143; they are the same as vital power (âyus), 143; the highest thing in universe, 149; are the immortal element, 178, 327; (prâna, apâna), 167; are the gods of the gods, 185;

are not eaters of oblations, 185; without them no dwelling-place becomes pure, 186; they are neither in the sky nor on earth, but whatever breathes therein, 186; connects head with body, 188; in the head fivefold (mind, speech, breath, eye, ear), 190; (prâ*n*a, breath) is one of the five divisions of vital air (prâ*n*a) in the head, 190; eight limbs and eight prâ*n*as, 190; vital airs kindle (the body), 205; the vital airs are the immortal part of the body, 292; how they are represented in the layers of the altar (Pragâpati's body), 292 seq.: by the prâ*n*a gods eat food, by the apâna men, 295; are the perfect (sâdhya, blessed) gods, 304; vital air is the light of the body, 326; a hundred and one in the body, 326; is not the immortal element, but something uncertain, 327; are the seven metres, 327–330; vital airs consume him who is hungry and feverish, 347, 348; breath evolved from speech, and from it the eye, 377; triad—Agni, Âditya, Prâ*n*a—are the eater, the Arka, the Uktha, the Purusha, 398, 399;—Vâyu, on entering man, is divided into the ten vital airs, V, 3; âsya, 'the breath of the mouth,'—therefrom the gods created, 13; from the downward breathing (avâna) the Asuras, 13; downward breathing abhorred by other breathings, but in it everything that enters the others meets, 19; prâ*n*a (breath of mouth) is the eater of food, udâna (of the nose) fills man, and (of the eyes, ears, &c.) is the giver of food, 31; prâ*n*a and apâna move in a forward and a backward direction respectively, 43; prâ*n*a entering udâna and reversely, 83; vyâna entering udâna, 84; central prâ*n*a belongs to Indra, 121; with five breathings (prâ*n*a, vyâna, apâna, udâna, samâna) five Brâhma*n*as (or the father himself) to breathe over child (before navel-string has been cut) to ensure long life, 129, 130; two downward (avâna) breathings and udâna (by which men rise, ud-yanti), 165; two, five, six, seven, twelve, or thirteen, 168; prâ*n*a and ana, each equal to the twinkling of the eye, 169; 10,800 breathings of man in day and night, 170; prâ*n*a and udâna, moving downward and upward, 230; all vital airs established on speech, 246; all vital airs established on prâ*n*a and udâna, 262; etymology (pra-nî), 263; nostrils are the path of prâ*n*a, 263; food eaten by prâ*n*a is pervaded by vyâna, and its essence shed as seed, 264; vital airs of him who speaks impure speech pass away, 326; the mind (soul) their overlord, 504.

prâ*n*abh*ri*t, bricks, are the vital airs, IV, 1; how placed, 2; laid down by tens, 3; etymology, 12; are the limbs, 13;—of second layer, 23, 33 seq.;—ten of third layer, 51; are the moon (being food as making up a virâg), 54.

pra*n*îtâ*b*, lustral water, is the head of the sacrifice, V, 35, 492; at the haviryag*ñ*a, 119; etymology, 270.

prasalavi. See pradakshi*n*am.

prastâva,—prastâva and nidhana, IV, 145, 146.

Prastot*ri*, a horse his fee at Da*s*apeya, III, 119; under Udgât*ri*, V, 136.

prâtaranuvâka, III, introd. xviii; IV, 249; of Atirâtra superseded by Â*s*vina-*s*astra, but is to be repeated in a low voice by Maitrâvaru*n*a, V, 92, 93.

Pratîdar*s*a Aibhâvata (king of the *S*vikna), as authority on the Sautrâma*n*î, V, 239.

Pratihart*ri*, priest, is under Udgât*ri*, V, 137.

Prâtipîya. See Balhika.

Pratiprasthât*ri*, III, 111; gold mirror his fee at Da*s*apeya, 119; is under Adhvaryu, V, 137; offers the cups of Surâ-liquor on the Southern of the two

Eastern fires, 232; Pratiprasthâtri (or Neshtri) leads up the king's wives, 321.
pratishṭhâ (stand), is threefold (tripods), IV, 116.
praüga-śastra, connected with Indra, the Rudras, the South, &c., IV, 101.
Pravargya, III, 355; IV, 187; 'setting out,' IV, 187; V, 493 seq.: Pravargya vessels are Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya, IV, 187; the head of the Sacrifice, 188; performed as long as the Upasads, 317; is the sun, 317; V, 445; on Śatarudriya day, day of preparation, and sutyâ day, IV, 320;—performance, V, 441 seqq.: time of performance, 458; is Vâyu-Pûshan, 475; when performed, 490 seq.; combined with Upasad, 493; is the year, the worlds (and Agni, Vâyu, and Sûrya), the Sacrificer, &c., 507 seq.
prayâga, mystic significance of, V, 40.
prâyaṇa, III, 305.
prâyaṇîya offering, III, 325: ends with the Samyos, IV, 258, 259; —Prâyaṇîya Atirâtra, 254.
prayugâm havîṃshi (twelve oblations of teams), III, 123; for yoking the seasons, 123.
prelude. See prastâva.
pressing-stones, (grâvan), are of Bṛihatî nature, V, 243; the vital airs, 486.
priests, officiating, are the limbs of the Sacrifice, IV, 280; V, 236; are of the same world as the Sacrificer, IV, 280; must not bargain for dakshiṇâs, 280; sixteen, 348; the order in which these are initiated for a sattra, V, 135 seq.; messes of rice for them, 343; the quarters (regions) parcelled out between them, 402, 412, 420;—priest's mess of rice, see brahmaudana.
pṛishṭha-sâman, six, III, introd. xx–xxiii; V, 148 n.; seven, IV, 277, 314.
pṛishṭha-stotra, III, introd. xvi, xx seq., 333, 376: are the seasons, V, 331.
pṛishṭhya-graha, belongs to Agni, Indra, and Sûrya, III, 6.
pṛishṭhya-shaḍaha, III, introd. xxi; V, 148; used by Aṅgiras when contending with Âdityas, V, 152; etymology, 152, 162.
Pṛithin Vainya, consecrated first of men, III, 81.
Priyavrata Rauhiṇâyana, directs the wind, IV, 340.
procreation. See generation.
prospering-oblations. See kalpa.
Proti Kauśâmbeya Kausurubindi, residing as religious student with Uddâlaka Âruṇi, V, 153.
prushvâ (mist, moisture, or hoar-frost), III, 77.
punaryagṇa, IV, 121.
punaściti, on fifth layer of fire-altar, IV, 99, 119 seq.; is seed and generative power, 119; etymology, 121; on what part of the altar to be laid, 121; is the uttaravedi, 121; as substitute for complete altar, 271.
Puñjikasthalâ, the Apsaras, is the (eastern) quarter, or (Agni's) army, IV, 105.
Purâṇa (stories of old time), to be studied, V, 98; the Veda of birds, 369.
puraścaraṇa, IV, 337.
purastâd bhâgaḥ, III, 333; IV, 185; cf. uddhâra.
purîsha, III, 201; its formulas are Agni's hair, itself his food, IV, 20; covering of soil, 26; is food, 95, 96, 139; is the pericardium, 96; is flesh, 138, 149; vital air, 139; belongs to Indra, 140; is one half of the altar, 140; symbolical meaning of its layers (1st cattle, 2nd birds, 3rd stars, 4th sacrificial gifts, 5th progeny and subjects, 6th gods), 147 seq.; 'earth to earth,' V, 203.
Purîshya (Agni, the altar), III, 201; favourable to cattle, cattle-loving, 206, 214; (? rich, plentiful), 310; Agni Purîshya, the son of the Earth, 311.
pûrṇâhuti, III, 42; V, 504.
Purohita, one of the ratninaḥ, III, 59; anoints (sprinkles) king in front, 94; hands the sphya to consecrated king, 110; Kshatriya and Purohita alone complete, 259; are everything, 260;

is perfect in sanctity and power, 260; his fire used by king for offering during dîkshâ, V, 371.
Pûru, an Asura-Rakshas, overthrown by Agni in battles, III, 292.
Purukutsa, the Aikshvâka, performed the Aśvamedha, V, 397.
Purûravas, son of Idâ,—Purûravas and Urvaśi, V, 68 seq.: wanders about in Kurukshetra, 70; becomes a Gandharva, 74.
purusha,—seven purushas (the seven *Ri*shis) made into one, III, 144; IV, 205;—the Purusha, 304, 305; is Pragâpati-Agni, III, 144;—(man) a sacrificial animal, 162; 165 seq.; slaughtered for Viśvakarman, 162; has twenty-four limbs, 167; twenty-one parts, 172; hornless and bearded, 177; Purusha, IV, introd. xiv seq.; (man in the sun, and in the eye, the gold man), xxii; this divine person (in sun, and eye) is variously served as Agni, Sâman, Uktham, &c., IV, 373; (Agni) Vaiśvânara is the Purusha, 398; the Agni-like, Arka-like, Uktha-like Purusha, 399; is the true Brahman, 400; Purusha Pragâpati, born from golden egg, V, 12; Purusha Nârâya*n*a exhorted by Pragâpati to sacrifice, 172, 173; is established in five things, 389; Purusha Nârâya*n*a, 403; Purusha born from Virâg, and Virâg from Purusha, 403;—purushas (men) as victims, 407 seq.;—cf. sun, eye.
Purushamedha, III, introd. xxvi; V, introd. xxi seq., 403 seq.; five sutyâs, 405; etymology, 407.
Purusha-Nârâya*n*a (litany), V, 410; cf. purusha.
purusha-sâman, (III, 369); IV, 146.
purusha-sûkta, IV, introd. xiv.
pûrvâbhisheka, IV, 249.
Pûrva*k*itti, the Apsaras, in an intermediate (? upper) quarter, or the dakshi*n*â, IV, 108.
Pûshan, by five syllables gained the five regions, III, 40; pap to, 55, 63; lord of cattle, 55; V, 346; represents productiveness, III, 56; dark grey bullock the fee for oblation to Pûshan, 56, 63; pârtha-oblation to Pûshan, 82; Pûshan Viśvavedas (all-possessing), 89; assists Varu*n*a, 113; sa*m*sri*p* oblation (pap) to, 116; prayugâ*m* havis (pap), 125; is this earth, 205; V, 352; Aditi and Pûshan connected with tri*n*ava-stoma, IV, 69; rules over small animals, 75; is cattle, 195; V, 293; takes Śrî's wealth and receives (mitravindâ) ob ation (pap), V, 62–65; protector of travellers, 293; watcher of men, 293; expiatory pap, 346; lord of roads, 352, 353; is (Vâyu) the wind, 474.
pushkara, etymology, III, 365.
pûtîka. See âdâra.

quarters. See regions.
queen, one of the ratnina*b*, III, 60; lies down near sacrificial horse, V, 322.

race. See chariot race.
Râganya, shoots seventeen arrows' ranges, III, 25; word of four syllables, 25; takes part in chariot race, 29; holds honey-cup and cup of Surâ, 29; sprinkles king from nyagrodha vessel, 83; the bow his strength (vîrya), 89; ten Râganyas drink of Sacrificer's cup, 114; armoured Râganya driving round sacrificial ground, shooting arrows at two ox-hides, IV, 283 n.; not to be engaged with in disputation by Brâhma*n*as, V, 114; hired by some to drink the Surâ-liquor, 233; a form of the kshatra, 286; battle is his strength, 287; the grandeur of heroism bestowed on him, 294, 295; born (from) of old as one heroic and victorious, skilled in archery, certain of his mark, and a mighty car-fighter, 294, 295; unfit to be consecrated (king), 360; Râganya lute-player, 364 seq.
râganyabandhu, IV, 21; keep most apart (? from their wives in eating) whence a vigorous son is born to them, 370; Ganaka

of Videha called thus, V, 113.
râgaputra, a hundred princes born in wedlock to be the guardians of the sacrificial-horse, V, 288; those who reach the end of the year's keeping become sharers in the royal sway, 288, 289.
Râgastambâyana. See Yagñavakas Râgastambâyana.
Râgasûya, III, introd. xi, xxiv–xxvi; belongs to king and makes him king, III, 4; inferior to Vâgapeya, 4; IV, 225; performance, III, 43 seq.; is Varuṇa-sava, 76; a supernumerary (special) rite, 246.
raggudâla (Cordia Myxa) V, 373, 374.
Râhûgaṇa. See Gotama Râhûgaṇa.
Raikva, III, 107.
rain, from clouds arising from smoke (steam), III, 185; from smoke sent up by the earth, 383; falls both on ploughed and unploughed land, 336; represented by the apasyâ bricks, IV, 34; falls everywhere in the same direction, 35; is in the wind, 35; falls abundantly in the rainy season, not in autumn, 49; rain and wind, connected with Mitra-Varuṇa, freed from death through ekaviṃśa-stoma, 68; is the arrows of the Rudras in the sky, 164; is ruled over by Maruts, 170; produces a well-ordered state of society, V, 18; sounds like a chant, 45; rain-drops, as many as sweat-pores, hair-pits, and twinklings of the eye, 169; hail and lightning two terrible forms of it, 251; the sky, rain, the first conception, 315.
rainy season, produced from the eye, and from it the Gagatî, IV, 8; consists of months Nabhas and Nabhasya, 48; rainy season and autumn are the air-world, and the middle of the year, 49.
raivata (and śâkvara) -sâman, is a pṛishṭha-sâman, III, introd. xxi, xxii; connected with paṅkti, trayastriṃśa, &c., 91; śâkvara and raivata produced from trinava and trayastriṃśa, IV, 12; connected with Bṛihaspati, Viśve Devâḥ, the upper region, &c., 103.
Râkâ, pap offered to her, (the extreme end of) one of the four regions, IV, 264.
Rakshas,—safety from, III, 45; suck out creatures, 49; smitten by Indra and Agni, 51; swept away by the gods, 52; kept by continuous libation from coming after the gods, 191; kept off from south, and sacrifice spread in place free from danger and devilry, 199; seek to hinder the gods from sacrificing, 357; are the associates of the night, 361; rakshas-killing counter-charm, 53, 371, 372; repelled by thunderbolt, 372; harass those wandering in a wild forest, V, 160; Kubera Vaiśravaṇa their king, the Devaganavidyâ their Veda, 367, 368.
rakshovidyâ, V, 368 n.
ram, sacrificial animal, III, 162, 165 seq.; slaughtered for Tvashṭri, 162; is vigour, IV, 38; vicious ram (aiḍaka) an unclean animal, V, 178; originates from Indra's nose, 215.
Râma, son of Daśaratha, III, 97.
Râma Mârgaveya, one of the Śyâparṇa family of priests, IV, 345 n.
rampart, threefold, III, 212, 213.
râshṭrabhṛit oblations, at (consecration of) Agnikâyana, IV, 229.
raśmi, rein, III, 101.
Rathagṛitsa, Agni's commander-in-chief (senânî), is the first spring-month, IV, 105.
rathantara-sâman, III, introd. xiv, xv; connected with Agni, xv; with the brahman, &c., 91; at keśavapanîya used for first pṛishṭha and for sandhi-stotra, 127; produced from trivṛit, IV, 5; (rathantara-khandas is the earth, 89); connected with Agni, the Vasus, east, trivṛit and âgyaśastra, 100; sung over completed altar, is this earth, 179; etymology, 179.
Rathaprota, Âditya's commander-in-

chief, is the first rainy month, IV, 106.
Rathasvana, Vâyu's commander-in-chief, is the first summer month, IV, 106.
Rathaugas, Agni's chieftain (grâmaṇî), the second spring month, IV, 105.
rathavimokanîya oblation, III, 101.
Rathekitra, Vâyu's chieftain (grâmaṇî), is the second summer month, IV, 106.
ratna-havimshi (ratninâm havimshi), III, 58 seq.
ratninaḥ, III, 65; do homage to king, 108.
râtri (night performance), III, 127.
râtrî-paryâyâḥ, III, 12.
rattan (vetasa), mat used to cut the sacrificial horse on, V, 304, 329, 394; rattan grows in water, 304, 329.
rauhiṇa, plates, V, 454 seq.; cakes, cooked, 468; offered, 472, 489; they are Agni and Âditya; day and night, heaven and earth, 473, 474.
Rauhiṇâyaṇa. See Priyavrata.
raurava-sâman, is an aiḍa-sâman, IV, 10.
realm, sustained by kings, IV, 229; by couples (offspring), 230.
red, includes all colours, III, 355.
reed (muñga), entered by Agni, III, 198; is Agni's womb, 200; (vetasa) rattan branch drawn across altar to appease it, IV, 174; plucked out from its sheath, V, 267; a bundle held upwards while sepulchral mound is raised, and afterwards put up in the house, 436; sheaths of reed grass kindled, 463.
region (quarter), — five, III, 40, 108; IV, 246; four, III, 203; six, 268; seven, IV, 277; nine, III, 196, 296; ten, 183, 297; IV, 164, 246; ruled over by Pûshan, III, 40; ascent of, 91; connected with the Brahman, &c., 91; how created, 149; are parts of Vâyu-Pragâpati, 152; are Agni, 183; connected with Vâyu, and third layer of altar, 188; heal what is injured, 221; put in the world by Viśve Devâḥ, 235; are both inside and outside of these worlds, 235; by them the worlds are fastened to the sun, 269; created with the moon, 286; are between these two worlds, 349; IV, 26; are the upper sphere, IV, 9; above everything, 10; are the heavenly world, 10; become the ear, 10; are in all four directions, 26; face each other, 27; are supported by the sun, 28; names of the five regions (East queen, South far-ruler, West all-ruler, North self-ruler, Great-region supreme ruler), 46, 100 seq.; freed from death through katushṭoma, connected with Savitṛi and Bṛihaspati, 69; encircling (paribhû), 88; are the firmament, the heavenly world, 100; five on this side of the sun, 104, 195, 200; five on the other side of the sun, 104, 200; four on the other side (?), 198; five propitiatory oblations to (the five) regions (diśâm aveshṭi), 245; how laid down in the several layers, 263, 264;—created by the five gods Parameshṭhin, Pragâpati, Indra, Agni, Soma, V, 16 seq.; guardians of the four regions are the Âpyas, Sâdhyas, Anvâdhyas, and Maruts, 359; parcelled out between the priests, 402, 412, 420; are a place of abode to all the gods, and Kandra their regent (?), 505.
regional bricks. See diśyâ, and âśvinî.
renunciation, of one kind of food for life, III, 337; IV, 224.
retaḥsik, bricks,—two, are these two worlds, III, 383; IV, 26; are the testicles, III, 384; are the ribs of Agni, the sacrificial animal (bird), 400; IV, (2), 16; their range (or rim), 17, 23, 26.
retribution in future life, V, 109 seq.
Revottaras Sthapati Pâṭava Kâkra, (short Sthapati Kâkra, or Kâkra Sthapati), priest and teacher, V, 236, 269.
Ṛibhu,—Ṛibhus and Viśve Devâḥ

connected with beings (bhûta) and trayas'ri*m*sa-stoma, IV, 69; a *Ri*bhu of the *G*agat (*G*agatî) metre (is the ârbhava-pavamâna) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, V, 173; Savit*ri*, with *Ri*bhus, Vibhus, and Vâgas, receives offering of Gharma, 480.

ribs, are the middle of the body, IV, 20, 31, 32; fastened on breast-bone and costal cartilages, 114; —parsu and p*rish*ti, V, 164 n.

rice, different kinds of, III, 69–70; originates from Indra's marrow (and Soma-drink), V, 216.

Rik, was in V*ri*tra, III, 138; part of triple Veda, 139, 141; thereon the Sâman is sung, IV, 13; wife of Sâman, 14; *Rik*s and Sâmans as Apsaras, the Gandharva Manas' mates, 233; they are wishes, as thereby one prays, 233; by the Mahad uktham it enters Pragâpati as his vital fluid, 284; consists of 12,000 B*ri*hatîs, 10,800 Pañktis, 352, 353; a hymn to be recited of the *Rik*, the Veda of men, V, 362.

*rik*sama-sâman (? vairûpa-sâman, or such as are merely sung, not chanted), produced from *G*agatî, and from it the *S*ukra-graha, IV, 7.

*Ri*shabha Yâg*ñ*atura, king of the *S*viknas, V, 250, 399, 400.

*Ri*shi,—were the non-existent, III, 143; the vital airs, 143, 333; IV, 60, 100, 185; etymology, III, 143; saw the fourth layer of altar, 189, 190; have a fore-share in Agni, 333; the seven *Ri*shis are the seven vital airs in the head, IV, 73; Dhât*ri* their lord, 73; the first-born Brahman, 100; *Ri*shis spin the thread (of the sacrifice), 124; first made up (constructed) the fire-altar, 174, 185; the seven purushas made into one purusha were the seven *Ri*shis, 205; established in the seasons, 212; the last-born *Ri*shis, 250, 267;—have mistakes in their sacrifice pointed out to them by Gandharvas, V, 29; the seven (Ursa major), 425.

*ri*shîkâ, bear or ogre, V, 307.

*ri*tavyâ, seasonal bricks, are the seasons, III, 386; IV, 29; the three worlds, 129; the nobility, 129; stepping-stones for the gods and Sacrificer to ascend and descend the worlds, 129;—the two of first layer are the spring months, Madhu and Mâdhava, III, 386; IV, 2;—two of second layer, 24; are the summer months, *S*ukra and *Su*ki, 29;—two lower of third layer, the two rainy months Nabhas and Nabhasya, 48; the two upper, the autumn months Isha and Ûrga, 49;—two of fourth layer, the winter months Saha and Sahasya, 70;—two of fifth layer, 99, 125 seq., are the dewy months Tapa and Tapasya, 126.

rite. See vrata.

river,—seven flowing eastwards, IV, 211; seven flowing westwards (identified with downward vital air), 212; those drinking thereof become most vile, blasphemous, and lascivious of speech, 212.

Rohi*n*î, the nakshatra, falls on new moon of month Vais*â*kha, V, 2.

Rohita, son of Hari*s*kandra, III, 95.

rope, of darbha grass, for tying horse, greased with ghee, V, 374; twelve (or thirteen) cubits long, 276.

royal dignity, means unlimited prosperity, V, 249.

rubbing down of Sacrificer with fragrant substances, at Sautrâma*n*i, V, 252.

Rudra, is Agni, III, 51, 64; gavedhukâ pap to, 51, 63; rules over beasts, 52, 205; hankers after killed cow, 63; Rudra Pa*s*upati, gavedhukâ pap to, 70; the North his region, 97; IV, 158; V, 488; Rudra Su*s*eva (most kindly), III, 110; a form and name of Agni, 159; *S*atarudriya, IV, 150 seq.; is Agni in his immortal form, 156; oblations of wild sesamum, on an arka leaf, to, 156; was originally Manyu, 157; etymology, 157; V, 116; hundred-headed, thousand-

eyed, hundred-quivered, IV, 157; oblations of gavedhukâ flour on an arka leaf, 158; is the Kshatra (whilst the Rudras are the Vis), 159, 162; the golden-armed leader of hosts, 160; worshipped with mystic utterances, 161; Agni created as the hundred-headed Rudra, 201; his shaft piercing Pragâpati's body, V, 36 n.; the ruler of animals, 229; by hairs of lion, wolf, and tiger being put in cups of Surâ representing wild animals, Rudra's shaft is only directed against these, and he spares domestic cattle, 230; consecrates king by the Trishṭubh, 312.

Rudras, by fourteen syllables gain *k*aturdaśa-stoma, III, 40; eleven, born from Vâ*k*, 149; placed in the air with Vâyu, 150; kindle the sun, 231; Vasus (with Mitra) and Rudras mix the clay, 231; fashion air-world by means of trishṭubh, 234; Rudras and Vasus sing praises of (bricks in) second layer, IV, 25; how produced, 33; Vasus and Rudras connected with embryos and *k*aturvi*m*śa-stoma, 68; Vasus, Rudras and Âdityas separate, and are the lords when heaven and earth separate, 75; connected with Indra, &c., 101; the lords of the south, 101; Vasus, Rudras, Âdityas, Maruts, Viśve Devâ*ḥ* build on different quarters of the altar (E.S.W.N.Zen.), 118; of earth, air, and sky, 158–159; originate from drops of oblations, 159; are the Vi*ś* (whilst Rudra is the Kshatra), 159; are spread by thousands over these worlds, 168; in tribes (*g*âtâni), 160; the arrows of the Rudras of sky, air and earth are rain, wind and food, 164, 165; the Rudras invoked in the Śatarudriya are Agnis, 167; the eleven Rudras enumerated, V, 116; arise by performance of midday pressing, 173; obtain the part of Vishṇu, the sacrifice, corresponding to the midday pressing, 443; Indra, with Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas, receives offering of Gharma, 479, 480.

rugâ, an arrow, III, 38.

ruṇmati, oblations to Agni and Varuṇa, IV, 237–239.

rûpa, form, — oblations to forms. See prakrama.

Sacrifice, path of, not to be swerved from, III, 14; V, 10; west (to east?) path of sacrifice, III, 347; sacrifice is happiness, 351; performed from the left (north) side, IV, 107; of ever-flowing blessings, 107; all beings are settled in the sacrifice, 144; has only one finale, heaven, 146; is all-sustaining, 199; they who perform it are wise, 199; Yag*ñ*a as Gandharva, with the Dakshiṇâs, as Apsaras, his mates, 232; comparative efficacy of sacrifices, 299; is a Man, 300, 305; Pragâpati, the Sacrifice, is the Year, V, 1; 38; the fire its womb, 3; is a counterpart of Pragâpati, 22; becomes the Sacrificer's body, 23, 27; bolt of the sacrifice (yag*ñ*ameni), 42; the successful issue of the sacrifice, 66–68; the five great (mahâyag*ñ*a), 95; sacrifice is cattle, 116; animal sacrifice fivefold, 125; like a forest with desert places and ravines, the sacrifice not to be entered without knowledge, 160; (true) form of sacrifice ensures entrance to the heaven of the living, 212; is devotion, 231; a web, 252; the navel of the earth, 390; passage between Âgnîdhra and *K*âtvâla is the gate of the sacrifice, 497; sacrifice is the self of all beings, 504.

Sacrificer, is Indra, III, 13; 18; at Vâgapeya sprinkled with remains of offering material, 38; the child of the earth, 125; he is Agni, 212; is really intended to be born in heaven, 345; is Pragâpati, Agni, the sacrifice,

IV, introd. xv seq.; carried to heaven by, or flying there in shape of, birdlike altar, IV, introd. xxi seq.; becomes Death, xxiii: ousted from his realm (yagamânaloka) by wrong sacrificial procedure, IV, 94; is the fire on fire-altar, 94; sits down with the Viśve Devâḥ on the higher seat (in the sky), 124; is established with Viśve Devâḥ, 202; the fire-altar, Mahâvrata, Mahad uktham, his divine immortal body, 279; is the body of the sacrifice, 280; V, 236; in entering on the fast he gives himself up to the gods, and by the sacrifice he becomes an oblation to the gods by which he redeems himself from them, V, 26; 27; and is freed from sin, 38; Sacrificer dying whilst away from home, 197 seq.; when about to die, 201 seq.; when dead, goes to the place won by him in heaven, 204; symbolically placed in heaven, provided with the Soma-drink, 231; drinks Aindra cup at Sautrâmaṇî and has his abode with Indra, 245; is Âditya, 248; requests invitation from priests for partaking of cup (of vasâ), 259; arises in the other world with a complete body and all limbs, 259; by means of the golden light (or a gleam of light shining after him) goes to heaven, 303; with Vâvâtâ and other wives, 349; whilst sacrificing becomes a Brâhmaṇa, 348.

Sacrificer's wife, led forth by Neshṭri, III, 31; puts on garment of Kuśa grass, 32; discarded when without son, 65; Sacrificer's wives sprinkle the horse, V, 313; they weave pearls into its hair, 313; they cleanse sacrificial horse, 321–323; walk round it, 322, 323; fan it, 323; the four wives in attendance at sacrifice, 349;—she is made to look upon the Mahâvîra, 472.

sacrificial post. See Yûpa.

sâdana, settling of bricks, III, 154; sâdana and sûdadohas, 301, 305 seq.; 379; V, 5.

sadas, associated with Gagatî, V, 495.

sadasya, a seventeenth priest recognised by the Kaushîtakins, IV, 348 n.

sâdhyas, the guardians of one of the four regions, V, 359.

sagâta, III, 107, 111.

sagûrabdîya, oblation on the darbha bunch on freshly ploughed altar-site, is Agni's fore-share, (III, 332, 333); IV, 185.

sagush, IV, 32.

saha, the first winter-month, IV, 70.

Sahaganyâ, the Apsaras, is an intermediate quarter (? S.E.), or the earth, IV, 106.

sahasradakshiṇa, III, 140.

sahasya, the second winter-month, IV, 70.

Śailâli, V, 393.

Saindhava (horses), are the Hotṛis and Adhvaryus, V, 94.

Śâkalya, chosen to quench the firebrand Yâgñavalkya, V, 115: questions beyond the deity (Pragâpati-Brahman) and dies in misery, 117.

Śâkâyanins,—their doctrine regarding the nature of Agni, IV, 363.

Śâktya. See Gaurîviti.

Śakuntalâ, the Apsaras, mother of Bharata, V, 399.

śâkvara (and raivata) -sâman, a pṛishṭha-sâman, III, introd. xx–xxii; connected with Pañkti, Triṇava, &c., 91; śâkvara and raivata produced from triṇava and trayastriṁśa, IV, 12; connected with Bṛihaspati, Viśve Devâḥ, the upper region, &c., 103.

śakvarî (verses), V, 331, 333.

śâlâ, III, 117.

śâlâvṛika (or sâlâvṛika), hyena (?), V, 71.

salt, means cattle, III, 33, 299; seventeen bags (aśvattha leaves) thrown up by peasants to Sacrificer, 34; scattered over Gârhapatya site, 299; is the amnion of the fire, 302, 344; saline soil

means cattle, 343; is seed, V, 426.
Salva, a people, IV, 344.
Sâman, III, introd. xiii seq.; was in *Vri*tra, 138; — = vâginâm sâman) sung by Brahman, 23; part of triple Veda, 139, 141; is sung on the *rik*, IV, 13; the husband of the *Rik*, 14; — sâmans sung on svayamât*rinn*âs, 144; are sap (rasa) laid into the worlds, 145; on bhu*h* bhuva*h* svar, 145; six Sâmans sung (by Adhvaryu) over appeased altar, 177 seq.; are the vital airs, 177; make body boneless and immortal, 178; those six Sâmans are immortal bricks, 181; *Rik*s and Sâmans as Apsaras, the Gandharva Manas' mates, 233; are wishes, as one prays with them, 233; by the Mahâvrata-sâman the Sâman (veda) enters Pragâpati as his vital fluid, 284; Sâman (veda) consists of 4,000 *bri*hatîs, and Yagus and Sâman of (7,200 and 3,600) 10,800 pañktis, 353; sâman sung (by Brahman) at Sautrâma*ni*, the Sâman representing lordship (kshatra) or imperial sway, V, 255; is the essence of all the Vedas, 255; is the Veda of the gods, 370; a decade of it recited, 370; sung at pravargyotsâdana, 496; drives off the Rakshas, 496.
samânabh*ri*t (holders of the pervading air) are the speech-sustainers, IV, 15.
sâma-nidhana, IV, 116.
sambhâra, III, 36; V, 447.
Sa*mg*îvî-putra, IV, introd. xviii.
sa*mg*rahît*ri*, charioteer, one of the ratnina*h*, III, 62, 104.
*s*amî (acacia suma), a samidh of, IV, 202; etymology, 202; for appeasement, not for food, 202; peg on tomb, V, 436.
samidh, eleven, III, 259; twelve for Kshatriya and Purohita, 259; three udumbara ones, soaked in ghee, put on the fire prior to its being led forward, IV, 189; are Agni's food, 191, 202; three (*s*amî, vikañkata, udumbara) put on, 202, 203; samidh means vital air, 205.
sâmidhenî, twenty-four, III, 167; twenty-one, 172; seventeen, 174; eleven, the first and last of which recited thrice, V, 25, 39.
samishṭayagus, III, 185; nine (eleven) at Agni*k*ayana Soma-sacrifice, IV, 257 seq.; not performed at Dîkshan*i*yeshṭi, &c., 258 seq.; at etymology, 261; the nine to complete the nine incomplete offerings, 261 seq.; is food, V, 44.
sa*mk*ṛiti-sâman, V, 333.
Sâ*m*mada. See Matsya.
samrâg, is Pravargya, V, 443; his throne-seat, 461.
samrâg-cow (of Pravargya), killed by a tiger, atonement, V, 131 seq.; cf. gharmadughâ.
sâmrâgya (imperial dignity), III, introd. xxiv; represented by throne-seat at Sautrâma*ni*, V, 249.
samrâ*t*sava, III, introd. xxv.
sa*ms*ṛip-oblations, III, 114 seq.
sa*ms*thâ, III, introd. xi; the sa*ms*thâ is the year, V, 248.
sa*ms*tubh (metre), is speech, IV, 89.
Sâmudri (son of Samudra). See A*s*va.
samudriya-metre, III, 352 (cf. samudra-metre, = the mind, IV, 88).
sa*m*vatsara, (?) year of cycle, IV, 21; etymology, V, 14.
samya*ñk*, IV, 26, 27.
*S*amyos, makes good all imperfections in sacrifice, V, 29; — *s*amyorvâka, a resting-place, 44.
sand (sikatâ), produced from clay, III, 158; scattered over saline soil on Gârhapatya site, 300; on Âhavanîya site, 344; is the ashes of Agni Vai*s*vânara, 300; his seed, 300, 302, 311; emptied fire-pan filled with it, 311; on uttara-vedi, 349; two kinds, black and white, 352; is the lost part of the Brahman (Pragâpati), 353; is unnumbered, unlimited, 353; number of sand grains, 353; represents bricks with formulas, 353; the sediment of water, 416.

sandhi-stotra, III, introd. xviii, xix, 12; is trivṛit at Keśavapaniya, 127.
*Śâṇḍ*ila, fire-altar, IV, 167, 222, 272, 274.
*Śâṇḍ*ilya, III, 414; IV, introd. xviii, instructs the Kaṅkatîyas, IV, 254, 279; disputing with his pupil Sâptarathavâhani, 295; instructs Vâmakakshâyaṇa, 345; his doctrine of the Brahman, 400.
*Śâṇḍ*ilyâyana, instructs Daiyâmpâti, IV, 273; cf. Kelaka *Śâṇḍ*ilyâyana, 364.
śântadevatya, the same as śatarudriya, IV, 156.
sap, vital (rasa), unites head and breath (vital air), IV, 201.
śapha. See lifting-stick.
saptadaśa-stoma, III, introd. xxiii; connected with Viś, &c., 91; used at Daśapeya, 118; at midday-service of Keśavapaniya, 127; produced from śukra-graha, and from it the vairûpa-sâman, IV, 9; is space, Pragâpati, the year, 62; connected with gods generally and the creator, frees the Viś from death, 68; is food, 79; connected with Varuṇa, the Âdityas, the west, &c., 101, 102.
Sâptarathavâhani, disputing with his teacher *Śâṇḍ*ilya, IV, 295.
sapti, leader or side-horse, III, 20, 21.
Sarasvat, is the mind, III, 398; V, 32, 35.
Sârasvata wells, III, 398.
Sarasvatî, victim to, III, introd. xviii, xxiv; is Vâk, 39, 80, 398; V, 32, 35, 293, 476; pârtha-oblation to, III, 82; assists Varuṇa, 113; *saṃsrip*-oblation (pap), 115; prayugîm havis (pap), 125; ewe with teats in dewlap her victim at Sautrâmaṇî, 129; cures Indra of effects of Soma, 135; with Sarasvatî Vâk's support the Sacrificer is anointed at Agni-ḱayana, IV, 228; takes Śrî's prosperity (pushṭi) and receives (mitravindâ) oblation (pap), V, 62–65; is healing medicine, and assists the Aśvins in curing Indra, whence she gets the ram for her guerdon, 216, 223; ram immolated to her, 217; ewes sacred to her, 218; she distils the Soma (plant) brought away from Namuḱi by the Aśvins, 232; connected with the air (and the midday-pressing), 241, 247; bestows food, 243; connected the rainy season and autumn, 247; together with the Aśvins she prepares the Sautrâmaṇî to heal Indra, 249; Aśvins, Sarasvatî and Indra are everything here, 253; have a share in the Gharma, 475; an ewe her victim at Aśvamedha, 300; assists the Aśvins in restoring the head of Makha, 475.
Sarasvatî, river, water from it used for coronation of king, III, 73.
sârathi, III, 62.
śarîra, etymology (śri), III, 144.
Śârkarâkshya. See *Gana*.
Sârñgaya. See Suplan.
sarpaṇa, III, 114; with the horse, to the Pavamâna-stotra, V, 305.
sarpanâma-formulas, III, 369; etymology, 370.
sarpavidyâ, the Veda of snakes, V, 367.
Sarva, form and name of Agni, III, 159; is the waters, 159.
Sarvamedha, III, introd. xxvi; V, 417 seq.; a ten-days' sacrifice, 418.
Sarvaprishṭha, III, introd. xxii; IV, 246.
sarvastoma, IV, 246.
sarvavedasa, sarvasva (all one's property),—substitutes in giving it away, IV, 321 n.
śastra, III, introd. xii; attended by Sacrificer, 41; is the Sacrificer's subjects, 41; same as stotra, IV, 14; (professional) reciter is despised, 367; (uktha) without it, the stotra is in vain, V, 257.
śaśvat, III, 98; V, 250 n.
sata, a bowl (of reed), V, 220, 252.
śatamâna, round (gold) plate, III, 104; presented to Brahman, 141; fee for bahishpavamâna of Aśvamedha, V, 306.

Satânîka Sâtrâgita, performed the Asvamedha, V, 400, 401.
Sâtaparneya. See Dhîra Sâtaparneya.
Satarudriya, IV, 150 seq.; etymology, 156, 157; amounts to the year, 166, 167; to the Mahad uktham, 168, 320.
satasîrsha-rudra-samaniya, IV, 157.
satâtirâtra session, V, 91 seq.
satobrihatî metre, in the form of it steers were produced, IV, 38.
Sâtrâgita. See Satânîka.
Sâtrasâha. See Soma.
Sattra, sacrificial session, — of a hundred Agnishtomas, Ukthyas, Atirâtras, V, 91, 135 seq.; performance of a year's Sattra is like the crossing of an ocean, 145 seq.; of a thousand years, and its substitutes, 170 seq.
Sattrin, — whether to have separate or common hearths, V, 175; if taken ill, keep apart and offer Agnihotra, 175; in case of death, Sattrin to be burnt by his own fires, 175.
Satvats, V, 401.
Satyakâma Gâbâla, V, 392.
satya-sâman, III, 361, 363 (corr. IV, 146).
Satyayagña Paulushi (Prâkînayogya), a teacher, IV, 393, 394.
Sâtyayagñi, V, 354, 395; cf. Soma-sushma Sâtyayagñi.
Sâtyâyani, IV, 21; his view as to the nature of Agni, 363.
Saukeya Prâkînayogya, in disputation with Uddâlaka Âruni, V, 79 seq.
Saulvâyana, an Adhvaryu priest, V, 61.
Saumapa Mânutantavya, V, 392.
Saunaka. See Svaidâyana, Indrota.
Sausromateya. See Âshâdhi.
Sautrâmanî, III, introd. xxvi, 129 seq.; castrated bull the fee, 137; a draught mare, 138; a sattra, III, introd. xii, 140; performance, V, 213 seq.; is both an ishti and an animal sacrifice, 220; is Soma, 220; by Sautrâmanî one's enemy is overcome, 223; should be performed after each Soma-sacrifice to replenish one's self, 239; becomes (or is) a Soma-sacrifice, 240, 245, 264; belongs to Indra, 245; is the year, 247, 248; is the moon, 248; prepared by Asvins and Sarasvatî to heal Indra, 249; a Brâhmana's sacrifice, 260; is the body of man (Sacrificer), 262; Yagña, the Sautrâmanî, at first with the Asuras, went over to the gods, 270.
savana, the three (Soma-pressings), of Gâyatrî, Trishtubh, and Gagatî nature, are devoted to Agni, Indra, Visve Devâh respectively, V, 106, 443, 444; (Asvins, Sarasvatî, Indra), 241; (Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas), 241 n., 443.
Savanîya victims, on first day of Asvamedha, V, 377; on third, 395.
savimsa-stoma, is victorious assault, the year, IV, 63.
sâvitra, formulas and libations, III, 190, 196; IV, 266; are one half of the year, 347; an Anushtubh one (not approved of), V, 89.
Savitri, the impeller, speeder, III, 2, 61; preliminary oblation to, 4; by six syllables gained the six seasons, 40; twelve or eight-kapâla cake, 61, 115; ditto of fast-grown rice, 69; Savitri Satyaprasava, 69, 109; pârtha-oblation, 82; assists Varuna, 113; samsrip-oblation (twelve or eight-kapâla cake), 115; prayugâm havis (ditto), 125; ditto cake at Sautrâmanî, 136; saw the Sâvitra formulas, 190; is Agni, 191; poured out as seed, 192; is the mind, 193; (the dappled steed) with his rays (reins) measures out earth and regions, 195; is yonder sun, 195; the heavenly Gandharva, 195; he who chooses his friendship chooses glory and prosperity, 251; Savitri and Brihaspati, connected with the regions and the katush-toma, IV, 69; the sun-rayed, golden-haired Savitri raises the light, 195; is the guardian of all beings, 195; Savitri, the sun's well-winged eagle, is Pra-

*g*âpati, 305; distributes the immortal light among creatures, plants and trees, more or less, and, along with it, more or less life, 322; takes Śrî's dominion, and receives (mitravindâ) oblation (eight or twelve-kapâla cake), V, 62, 65; brahma*k*ârin committed to him, 86; victim before initiation for Sattra, formerly to Savit*ri*, now to Prag*â*pati, 174; Savit*ri*'s cake is on twelve kapâlas, to win the food of the year, 222; connected with the rainy season, 247; receives oblation at Sautrâma*ṇi* (for having assisted in healing Indra), 252; the fourth of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 280; three ish*ṭi*s to Savit*ri* Prasavit*ri*, Savit*ri* Âsavit*ri*, Savit*ri* Satyaprasava, 284; Savit*ri* is this earth, 284; takes the sacrificial horse to heaven, 319; cake (on twelve kapâlas) to Savit*ri* Prasavit*ri*, 355; ditto to Savit*ri* Âsavit*ri*, 356; ditto to Savit*ri* Satyaprasava, 358; three oblations to Savit*ri*, 409; deposits the dead man's bones in the earth, 433; Savit*ri*, with the *Ri*bhus, Vibhus, and Vâ*g*as, receives offering of gharma, 480; is the wind, 480.

sâvitri, the sacred (Gâyatri) formula, taught to Brahma*k*ârin at once, formerly after a year, V, 87, 89.

savyash*ṭhri* (savyastha, savyesh*ṭhri*, savyesh*ṭha*), III, 62, 102.

Sâyakâyana. See *Sy*âpar*ṇa*.

Sâyavasa. See *G*ana.

science,—sciences (vidyâ*b*) to be studied, V, 98. See triple science.

sea, the womb of waters, III, 416.

seasons, six, III, 31, 220, 351; IV, 228; V, 287; ruled over by Savit*ri*, III, 40; connected with the metres, castes, sâmans, stomas, 91; the five bodily parts of Prag*â*pati, 152; seven, 249, 358; IV, 177, 211, 277, 314; the six seasons fasten the year to the moon, III, 269; are the Viśve Deva*b*, 311; three seasons of growth (spring, rainy season, autumn), 340; by seasons the age of embryo and man is computed, 386; consist of two months, 386; IV, 29; the Ârtava their rulers, 74; they move hitherwards and thitherwards (come and go), 91; five, 120; in each season there is the form of all of them, 126; everything fits in with its place by means of the seasons, 126; are (? rise) upwards from this earth, 128; are deranged for him who dies, 129; seven or five, 163; the six seasons are the Fathers, 243; a dying man changes to the season he dies in, 244 n.; — originated from the words 'bhû*b*, bhuva*b*, svar,' V, 13; the sun is their light, 149; are continuous, all first, all intermediate, all last, 248; the year is the bull among the seasons, 276.

seed (retas), produced from whole body, III, 349; white and speckled, 351; moist, 352; is twenty-five-fold (or twenty-fifth), 353; possessed of vital air, otherwise becomes putrid, 354; is virile power, 354; cast silently, 358; IV, 208; shed only by testiculati, III, 384; when productive, V, 53, 56; after seed is implanted, birth takes place, 180; from seed of man and animal everything is generated, 180; the essence of food, 264; of the sacrificial horse (Prag*â*pati) becomes generated, 275.

self-surrender. See surrender.

Senagit, Parganya's commander-in-chief (in the upper region), is the first winter month, IV, 108.

serpents, are the worlds, III, 369; different kinds of, 370; great serpent an object of wonder, V, 40.

sesamum, oblations of wild sesamum to Rudra, IV, 156.

seven, IV, 277, 314.

seventeen, IV, 74.

seventeenfold, is Prag*â*pati, III, 8, 79; V, 384; B*ri*haspati-Prag*â*-

pati, III, 21, 22; man, 174; Pragâpati, space, IV, 62; Pragâpati, the year, 76; food, 79; the chest, V, 163.
shaḍaha, sixty in the gavâm ayanam, V, 147; the two kinds (Pṛishṭhya and Abhiplava) are two revolving wheels of the gods, crushing the sacrificer's evil, 149; the two kinds to be worked into each other like the threads of one web, 149; alternate in sattra, 162 n.
shaḍdhotṛi formula, V, 121.
shaṭtriṃśa-stoma, is the firmament, the year, IV, 65.
sheep (see avi, and ram;) produced in the form of dvipadâ metre, IV, 38; with sheep's wool malted barley bought at Sautrâmaṇî, V, 219.
shoḍaśa-stoma, gained by Aditi, III, 40.
shoḍaśin (sacrifice), III, introd. xvi seq., xxiii; victims of, 12; forms part of Keśavapanîya Atirâtra, IV, 405; twelve in the year's session, V, 147.
shoḍaśi-graha, belongs to Indra, III, 6.
shoḍaśi-stotra, III, 127.
shoes, of boar-skin, III, 102; he who has performed Râgasûya is never to stand on ground without shoes, 129.
sick man, when he gets better, asks for food, IV, 87.
sickle, the crops go nigh to, III, 327.
side, right side of animal the stronger, IV, 115.
silk-cotton tree. See cotton tree.
silver, piece of, tied to a darbha plant and taken eastwards (as the moon), V, 196; gold and silver plates (lightning and hail) beneath feet of Sacrificer whilst consecrated at Sautrâmaṇî, 251; as dakshiṇâ, 357; silver plate inserted under sand, 462.
Sinîvalî, is Vâk, III, 231; pap to her, (the extreme end of) one of the four regions, IV, 264.
śipita, (? bald part), V, 9.
Śipivishṭa, (? bald), Vishṇu, V, 9.
śiras, etymology (śrî, śri), III, 144, 145, 401.
śiśna, man sports therewith, V, 76.
sitting,—one who has gained a position in the world is anointed sitting, IV, 227.
six, its symbolic meaning, III, 268, 269; IV, 166.
sixteenfold, is Âditya as the wielder of the fifteenfold thunderbolt, IV, 85; animals (cattle), V, 252; man, animal, universe, 302 n.
sky (dyaus), union with the sun (Âditya), III, 149; connected with Parameshṭhin and Âditya, 188; is the waters, 216; fashioned by the Âdityas by means of Gagatî, 234; udder of, is the waters, 284; is Pragâpati's head, 313, 317; sheds seed in the form of rain produced by smoke (steam), 383; the seat of the waters, 416; is blissful (śambhû), IV, 88; above the third luminous back of the sky is the world of righteousness (sukṛita), 122; is the left wing of the Agni-Pragâpati, the altar and universe, 179; is the higher abode, 202; the highest home, 203; steadied by clouds and stars, V, 126; connected with Indra, 241; the sky, rain, the first conception, 315, 389; is, as it were, yellow, 467; is a place of abode for all the gods, 505.
slaughtering-knife. See knife.
sleep, not to be disturbed, as during it the union of the two divine persons in the eyes takes place, IV, 371; mouth of him who has been asleep is clammy, 371; in sleep man's functions cease, 372.
śloka (noise, praise), pârtha-oblation to, III, 82.
śmaśâna. See burial-place; etymology, V, 422.
smoke, is the breath of the sacrifice, III, 240; is seed shed by the earth, and becomes rain, 383; is the vigour of fire, IV, 250.
snake, is neither worm, nor non-worm, III, 90; are the people of Arbuda Kâdraveya, the Sarpavidyâ their Veda, V, 367.
Snâtaka, may initiate the Unnetṛi priest, V, 137.

śokis, haras, śokis, arkis (heat, fire, flame) of Agni, IV, 182.

Soma, the moon, III, introd. xxviii; means truth, light, 8; glory, 56; princely power (kshatra), 82; by four syllables gained four-footed cattle, 40; pap to, 56; brown bull is of his nature, 57; Soma Vanaspati, pap of śyâmâka millet to, 70; Soma, king of Brâhmaṇas, 72, 95; pârtha-oblation to Soma, 82; tiger-skin his beauty, 81, 92; ratha-vimokaṇîya-oblation to, 102; assists Varuṇa, 113; (upasad) pap to, 118; (paśukabila) pap on south part of veda, 120, 121; fee to Brahman, brown ox, 122; prayugâm havis (pap), 125; Soma withheld from Indra, 130; Soma juice flows from Indra, 131; Soma bought at new moon after year's initiation, 181; is paramâhutiḥ, 258; the blowing wind (Vâyu), 342; the vital airs, 342; the breath, 354; life-sap, 342; buying, driving about, &c., 342; is the drop, 405; the imperishable, 405; is Pragâpati, IV, introd. xxi; rules over trees, IV, 76; protector of the north, 102; connected with Maruts, eka-viṃśa-stoma, nishkevalya-śastra, vairâga-sâman, 102; the nectar of immortality, 251, 252; with Agnikayana, Soma to be pressed for a year, 320; is the moon, 349; V, 6, 9, 10; pressed at full moon, and in the subsequent half-month enters waters and plants, 10; Soma created out of Pragâpati with a life of a thousand years, 15; Agni and Soma become eater and food, 16; Soma, the moon, is the Aśvamedha, 33, 34; takes Śrî's royal power and receives (mitravindâ) oblation (pap), 62–65; fetched from heaven by Gâyatrî in bird's shape, 122; Pragâpati, the sacrifice, is king Soma, 205 seq.; one purged by Soma offers the Sautrâmaṇî, 217 seq.; is the drink of the Brâhmaṇa, 217; is Indra's faithful companion, 226; contributes to joy (intoxication), 227; śukra somapîtha, 231; śukra madhumat, 232; taken from Indra by Namuki, and brought away again by the Aśvins and distilled by Sarasvatî, 222, 232; the second of the ten deities 'all the gods' receive oblations of drops, 280; Soma Vishṇava, king of the Apsaras, 366; Soma is the seed of the vigorous steed, 390; king Soma's throne-seat, 461.

Soma-netrâḥ (devâḥ), seated above, III, 49.

Soma-Rudra, pap to, cooked with milk from white cow with white calf, III, 65; they removed darkness from the sun (Sûrya), 66.

Soma-sacrifice, interlinked with Agnikayana, III, 343; the performer of it eats food once a year in the other world, IV, 299; is (Pragâpati's) seventeen-fold food, 348; as distinguished from haviryagña, V, 119.

soma-saṃsthâ, III, introd. xi, xii.

Somaśushma Sâtyayagñi, disputation on Agnihotra at Janaka's house, V, 112, seq.

somâtipavita, III, 129; somâtipûta, V, 226.

somavâmin, III, 129; V, 217, 226.

soma-vendor, malted rice bought from him at Sautrâmaṇî, V, 220.

son,—sons treated kindly by father, IV, 25; when asked by father to do anything, say 'what will therefrom accrue to us?' 59; dear son a favourite resort, 161; taken by father to his bosom, 206; sons in early life subsist on father, the reverse in later life, V, 157; father returning from abroad is received kindly by his sons, 204; father and son part in time of peace, 308.

Sona Sâtrâsâha, king of Pâñkâla, performed the Aśvamedha, V, 400.

sounding-holes, are the vital airs, V, 487.

South, connected with Kshatra, &c., III, 91; kine and goats most

plentiful in south region, 404; is the trishṭubh, IV, 45: is virâg (wide-ruling), 46, 101; the Rudras its lords, 101; Indra its protector, 101; connected with pañkadaśa-stoma, praüga-śastra, and bṛihat-sâman, 101; connected with Vâyu, 106; region of Fathers, 226; V, 485; is space and the air, V, 17.

South-east, Ukhya Agni (the sun) held up towards, III, 280; sacred to Agni, IV, 80; the sun is placed there, 133; in that region is the door to the world of the Fathers, V, 424.

sowing, of all kinds of herb-seeds on agnikshetra, III, 337.

space (aerial expanse) is Pragâpati the year, and the Saptadaśa-stoma, IV, 62.

spade, is a thunderbolt, V, 448; of udumbara or vikaṅkata wood, 448.

sparrow (kalaviṅka), springs from Viśvarûpa's head, III, 130.

speech (voice), lord of, is Pragâpati, III, 5; based on vital air, 151; is the sruk, 192; world of speech, 145, 192; there is a keen edge to it on one or both sides, 200; speaks truth and untruth, divine and human, 200; consists of vâk (voice) and akshara (syllable), 203; is a spade, 215; is of three kinds, *rik*, yagus and sâman; or low, half-loud and loud, 239; is healing medicine, 341; by speech the gods conquered the Asuras and drove them out of the universe, 387; the breath is the male, or mate, of speech, 391; a vital air, 402; produced from mind (and the moon), and from it the winter, IV, 11; is the *Ri*shi Viśvakarman, 12; sustained by the pervading vital air (samâna), 15; made by the gods their milch-cow, 173; one of the five divisions of vital air in the head, 190; by speech one gets into trouble, 210; speaks both truth and untruth, 257; Agni as Speech (the trayî vidyâ), 364 seq.; is the sun, 365; evolved from mind, and from it breath, 376, 377; the libations to Mind and Speech, (Sarasvat and Sarasvatî) are such to the Full and New moon, V, 28, 31, 32, 35;—single of vital airs, 246; mind is manifested as speech, 262; what is thought in mind is spoken by speech and heard by ear, 263; by mind and speech all is gained, 507.

sphûrgaka, tree, not to stand near a grave, V, 427.

sphya (sacrificial wooden sword), handed to consecrated king, III, 110; gaming-ground prepared therewith, 111.

spinal column, is continuous, V, 35.

spoon, (cf. sruk, sruva), taking up of the two offering-spoons (guhû and upabhṛit), V, 56; not to clink together, 57, 60, 61.

spring-season, connected with east, gâyatrî, &c., III, 91; is the earth, 386; consists of months Madhu and Mâdhava, 386; produced from breath, and from it the Gâyatrî, IV, 4; in spring forest-fires occur, V, 45; the Brâhmaṇa's season, 348.

sprinkling,—of Sacrificer with remains of (prasavanîya) offering-material at Vâgapeya, III, 38; of fire-altar with water, IV, 169, 174; of completed fire-altar with mixture of dadhi, honey and ghee, as Agni's after-share, 185; of sacrificial horse with water, V, 278, 316.

spṛit, bricks of fourth layer, IV, 66 seq.; free creatures from death, 67.

spṛiti, oblations, V, 133.

Śraumatya, a teacher, his view of the nature of Agni, IV, 363.

Śraushaṭ, different modes and tones in uttering it, V, 57 seq.; its five formulas are the unexhausted element of the sacrifice, 170;—482, 502.

śrî, excellence, III, 144, 163, 392; distinction (social eminence), IV, 110, 132, 241; V, 285, 313; goodness (?), 326, 327; prosperity, V, 18, 59; beauty, 315.

Śrî, goddess of beauty and fortune, springs from Pragâpati, and is despoiled by the gods, V, 62.
Śriñgaya, a people, V, 269.
śrishṭi, bricks of fourth layer, IV, 71 seq.; ? throwing of prastara (sacrificer) into the fire, V, 24; creation (?), 458.
Śrotriya, is an upholder of the sacred law, III, 106.
sruk (offering-spoon), is speech, III, 192: the two serving as Agni's (the golden man's) arms, 373; of udumbara for Vasor dhârâ, IV, 214.
Śrutasena, performs Aśvamedha, V, 396.
sruva, (dipping-spoon), thrown eastward or northward, III, 53; is breath, 192; two oblations therewith, IV, 204.
staff, as sacrificial fee, V, 11, 12.
stake, sacrificial. See Yûpa.
stambayagus, III, 325.
standing, one is stronger than sitting, IV, 172, 178: he who has not yet gained a position (but is striving to gain it) is anointed standing, 227.
stars (nakshatra), how created, III, 149; are the lights of righteous men who go to heaven, 244; are the hair (of the world-man), IV, 288; as Apsaras, the Gandharva Kandramas' mates, 232: are lightsome (bhâkuri), 232; originate from Pragâpati's hair-pits, 361.
steer (ṛishabha) is vigour, produced in the form of the satobṛihatî metre, IV, 38.
step, is the briskness in man, V, 266.
sthâlî, cauldron, III, 270.
sthapati (governor), III, 111. Cf. Revottara.
sticks, striking king with, III, 108.
stobha, III, introd. xxiii.
stokiyâ, oblations of drops, a thousand to ten deities, V, 279, 280.
Stoma,—are laid down as bricks in fourth layer, IV, 59; are the vital airs, 61; are food, 218; oblations relating to the Uneven and Even stomas, forming part of the Vasor dhârâ, 217, 218; seven, 277, 314; do not fail by excess or deficiency of one stotriyâ, V, 157; increasing by four (verses), 166, 167.
stomabhâgâ, bricks of fifth layer, are the essence of food, IV, 92 seq.; are the firmament (nâka), 93, 97; the first twenty-one are the three worlds and four regions; the last eight are the Brahman, the disk of the sun, 94; are the heart, 96, 99, 115.
stone,—hunger is laid into it, hence it is hard and not fit for eating, IV, 170; put in water-pitcher and through it in Nirṛiti's region, 171; it should break there, 171; variegated stone set up whilst Agni is led forward, 195; is the sun, 196; is the vital air and vital power, 196; is put into the Âgnidhriya dhishṇya, 243, 360.
stool, gold, for Sacrificer, and Adhvaryu, V, 360, 361.
stotra, III, introd. xii seq.; attended by Sacrificer, 41; is the Sacrificer's own self, 41; stotras of Abhishekanîya, 69; the same as the śastra, IV, 14; connected with the production of food (life), 72.
stotriya-triṛika, IV, 14.
stronghold, threefold, III, 213.
sû, 'to animate, speed,' III, 2.
Subhadrikâ, dwelling in Kâmpîla, V, 321.
Subrahmaṇyâ, priest, is made the Udgâtṛi, V, 137.
sûdadohas, and sâdana, III, 301, 305, &c.; is the breath, 302, 354; IV, 5.
Śûdra,—Ârya and Śûdra ruled by day and night, IV, 74, 75; Śûdra woman as the Ârya's mistress, V, 326; Śûdra is untruth, 446.
śuk, heat, pain, suffering, IV, 171; V, 497 n.
Śuki, second summer month, IV, 29.
Śukra, first summer month, IV, 29.
Śukra-graha, III, 6; puroruk formula of, 111; produced from ṛik-sama-sâman, and from it the saptadaśa-stoma, IV, 8.
Sûktavâka, a completion of the sacrifice, V, 44.
śûlâvabhṛitha, V, 122.

summer-season, connected with the South, Trishṭubh, &c., III, 91; produced from the mind, and from it the Trishṭubh, IV, 6; consists of months *Suk*i and *Sukra*, 29; is the part between earth and atmosphere, 29; is scorched, V, 45; the Kshatriya's season, 347.

Sun, twenty or twenty-first-fold, III, 265; IV, 163; V, 37, 291, 305; there is a man in the sun's disk (man*d*ala), III, 367; its disk is the Brahman, and the Gâyatrî, IV, 94; is smooth and round, 180; its disk is variegated, 196; when the sun sets it enters the wind, 333; is a baker of the baked, 352; is the foundation of Pragâpati and the Sacrificer, and generated out of their own self, 354, 355; the sun—its orb, light, and man—is the triple science, the Mahad Uktham, Mahâvrata, and Fire-altar, 366; the man in it is Death, who is immortal, 366; its orb is the gold plate and the white of the eye; its light the lotus-leaf and the black of the eye; its man the gold man (in the altar) and the man in the right eye, 367, 368; is the goal, the resting-place, V, 37; the towering form of the bull, 107; (Âditya) slaughtered as an animal victim by Pragâpati, and consequently endowed with certain powers, 128 seq.; represented by piece of gold tied to darbha plant and taken westwards, 195; established on the Br*i*hatî, 255, 256; walks singly, 314; is spiritual lustre, 314, 315; not rivalled by any one, 354; no one able to turn him back, 359; is a remover of evil, 426; originates from Vish*n*u's head when cut off, 442; whilst the sun shines the performer of Pravargya is to wear no garment, nor to spit, nor to discharge urine, 447; is Brahma*n*aspati, 453; is the truth, 457; the Brahman (n.), 460; Yama, 460; Makha, 460; is the child (garbha) of the gods, 469; the lord of creatures, 469; the sustainer of sky and gods, 470; the never-resting guardian, 470; is the father, 472; is a web-weaver, 484; the quarters are its corners, 498; is the fallow stallion, 501.

Sun and Moon (sûryâ*k*andramasau), are Pragâpati's eyes, III, 113.

Su*n*a*h*sepha, legend of, III, 95, 109.

Sunâsîrya, seasonal offering, III, 48; Sunâsîrîya, part of Pragâpati's body, V, 77; oblations of, 77 n.

sun-motes, III, 79, 80; as Apsaras, the Gandharva Sûrya's mates, IV, 231; they float clinging together, 231.

sun-rain, III, 76.

sun-rays, are the Visve Devâ*h*, V, 196.

sunwise motion, III, 359; leads to the gods, 372, 373.

Supar*n*a, eagle (or falcon), Savit*ri*'s (garutmat) Supar*n*a, (is Pragâpati), IV, 105; a Supar*n*a of the Trishṭubh metre (is the mâdhyandina-pavamâna) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, V, 173.

Suplan Sâr*ñ*gaya, V, 239.

surâ, cups of, III, 8; mean untruth, &c., 8, 9; drawn by Neshṭri, 10; one of them held by Vaisya or Râganya, 29; oblation of, 133; offered to Fathers from pitcher with a hundred, or nine, holes, 136; originates from Indra's hips, V, 215; preparation of surâ, 223, 224; it means food, and the Vis, 225; contributes to joy (intoxication), 227, 228; is the essence of waters and plants, 233; gladdens the Sacrificer, 233; is drank by him and priests, being unpropitious for a Brâhma*n*a, 233, 245; others make a Râganya or Vaisya drink it, 233; it falls to the share of the Fathers of him who drinks it, 233; purifies the Sacrificer whilst itself is purified, 236.

surrender (paridâ), of one's self, IV, 186, 239, 251, 269; V, 236.

Sûrya, as Gandharva, with the sun-motes, as Apsaras, his mates,

IV, 231; is the highest of all the universe, 240; created by the Brahman and placed in the sky, V, 27; evolved from the sky, and from him the Sâmaveda, 102; Sûrya's daughter purifies the Soma with tail-whisk, 226; she is Faith, 226; Sûrya, the highest light, is heaven, 267; sacrificed as animal victim, 320; expiatory pap, 346, 347; is the eye of creatures, 346; Sûrya, Vâyu, and Heaven and Earth, 347; walks singly, 388; one of his rays is the ram-winner, 478; is heaven, the highest light, 502; (regent of the sky) is the self of the gods, 505.

Sûryâ*k*andramasau, are Pragâpati's eyes, III, 313.

Sûryastut Ukthya, V, 419.

Sushe*n*a, Parganya's chieftain (grâma*n*î) in the upper region, is the second winter month, IV, 108.

Su*s*ravas Kaushya, a teacher, IV, 391.

Sûta, one of the ratnina*b*, III, 60; is the spiriter (sava), 60–62; 111.

suta and âsuta, V, 241 n.

Svadhâ, as such the Fathers worship the divine Purusha, IV, 373; the Father's food, V, 96–98, 234; the autumn is the Svadhâ, 423.

svâdhyâya, the study of one's daily lesson of the scriptures, V, 100 seq.

svâhâ, therewith logs are consecrated, III, 261; is food, IV, 159; is distinct (definite), 183; is the Vasha*t*, 277.

Svaidâyana, a Saunaka, and northern Brâhma*n*a, defeats Uddâlaka Aru*n*i, V, 50 seq.

svar, cf. bhû*r*.

svarâ*g*, metre, III, 364; of thirty-four syllables, IV, 385.

svâra-sâman, produced from Trish*t*ubh, and from it the Antaryâma-graha, IV, 6, 7; how chanted, ib.

svara-sâman days, performed either as Agnish*t*omas or as Ukthyas, V, 147.

Svarbhânu, an Asura, smites the sun with darkness, III, 65, 406.

Svargit Nâgnagita, or Nagnagit, the Gândhâra, a râganyabandhu, IV, 21.

svayam-â*t*rinnâ brick, represents the three worlds, III, 155; the first belongs to Pragâpati, 187, 378; second to Indrâgnî and Vi*s*vakarman, 188; third to Parameshthin, 188;—laying down of first, as earth, food, and vital air, 377; the lower vital air, 399; IV, 2; the second (in the third layer) is the middle part of the body and its vital air, 42; the air, 44, 45; the third (in the fifth layer), 96, 99; the vital air in the middle of the body, 114, 116, 140 seq.; oblations thereon, 182; is an uttaravedi, 182; svayamâ*t*rinnâs as substitutes for fire-altar, 271.

Svetaketu Âru*n*eya, has sacrifice performed for him by Vai*s*vâvasavya, IV, 333; his view regarding the fore-offerings, V, 40; regarding the nature of honey, 90; disputation on Agnihotra at Ganaka's house, 112 seq.; questioned by his father regarding the fording-footholds of the year, 147.

Svikna. See Pratidar*s*a, Ri*s*habha.

Svish*t*akri*t*, performed between two oblations, III, 40; the same for kâmyeshtis, IV, 248; is fervour (tapas), V, 41; the Kshatra, 253; three oblations of blood at A*s*vamedha, 337, 338; is Rudra, 338.

swan maidens, V, 70.

sweat-pores, as many as there are hair-pits and rain-drops, V, 169.

Syaita-sâman, III, introd. xvi; sung by some over completed altar, IV, 180.

*s*yâma, III, 14.

*s*yâmâka, millet, III, 70.

Syâpar*n*a, a people, IV, 344 n.; Syâpar*n*a Sâyakâyana, III, 171; IV, 274, 344.

*s*yena, falcon or eagle, one of the Gâyatrî metre (is the bahishpavamâna) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, V, 173; the talon-

slaying śyena, the king of birds, originates from Indra's heart, 215; with two feathers of śyena the sacrifice is purified (swept up and down) at Sautrâmaṇî, 230.

tail,—twenty-one-fold, IV, 222; contraction and expansion of bird's tail, 301 seq.;—tail whisk as purifier, V, 220, 235.
Tâṇḍya, III, 153.
tanu, (five bodily parts), III, 152.
Tapa, the first dewy season, IV, 126; is the sun, 126.
tapas, (austerities) to be practised: of him who does so every part shares in the world of heaven, IV, 362; there is no perpetuity in it, 418.
tâpaśkita, (the fire-altar used at the sacrificial session of that name), IV, 317; substitute for a session of a thousand years, V, 171 seq.; amounts to a Bṛihatî, 172.
Tapasya, the second dewy season, IV, 126.
Târkshya, the commander-in-chief of the sacrifice (or north), is the first autumn month, IV, 107; Târkshya Vaipaśyata, king of birds, V, 369.
târpya, III, 85.
teacher, of brahmakârin, whether to carry on sexual intercourse, or not, V, 90.
testicles, V, 500.
thighs, joined to body at upper end, III, 306; thigh-bone the largest bone, IV, 137.
thirteen, IV, 74.
thirty,—limbs of body, IV, 167.
thirty-one, IV, 76.
thirty-three, IV, 76; V, 164.
thousand,—means everything, IV, 147, 304; V, 348;—the benefits of a life of 1,000 years, how to be gained, IV, 362.
thread,—with it fried rice-grain is bought at Sautrâmaṇî, V, 219.
threefold, the, belongs to gods, III, 21.
throne-seat, of udumbara, for consecration at Vâgapeya, III, 35; of khadira at Abhishekanîya, 105; rising from, 128; thereon Ukhya Agni placed and carried, 267 seq.; represents the earth, 267; of udumbara wood, 267; V, 249; represents imperial dignity, 249; royal dignity, 249; the womb and navel of the Kshatra, 250; throne-seat, of Pravargya, the samrâg, 461; of udumbara, shoulder-high, 461; wound with grass-cords, 461.
thunderbolt, is fifteenfold, III, 413; the (sixteenfold) sun (Âditya) is its wielder, IV, 85; has a sling (or handle) on its right side, 86; Indra drives off the Asuras therewith, 193; is the thunder, V, 116.
tiger, skin of, used at consecration ceremony of Râgasûya, III, 81; is Soma's beauty, 81, 92; produced in the shape of the virâg metre, IV, 38; is vigour, 38; springs from entrail of dead body, if not cleaned out before being burnt, V, 203; springs from Indra's entrails, 215.
tilvaka, tree, not to stand near a grave, V, 427.
tongue, distinguishes the essence (taste, flavour) of food, V, 263.
tooth,—how teeth grow and decay, V, 52, 54.
top,—of grass-stalks is sacred to the gods, IV, 185.
tortoise (kûrma), how created, III, 147; a living one placed in first layer, 389; is the life-sap of these worlds, and these worlds themselves, 389; the lower shell the earth, the upper one the sky, and what is between is the air, 389; is anointed with dadhi, honey, and ghee, 389; is the same as the sun (Âditya), 390; is the vital air, 391; Agni Vaiśvânara, Âditya, creeps over the three worlds in the shape of a tortoise, 392; the lord of the waters and the bull of bricks, 392;—how laid down on the altar, IV, 2.
traidhâtavî, offering at Sautrâmaṇî, III, 139; at Purushamedha, V, 412.
trayastriṁśa (-stoma), connected with paṅkti, raivata, &c., III,

91; triṇava and trayastriṁśa, produced from the âgrayaṇa and from them the śâkvara and raivata-sâmans, IV, 11, 12; is a foundation, the year, 65; connected with Ribhus and Viśve Devâḥ, frees living beings (bhûta) from death, 70; is connected with Bṛihaspati, the Viśve Devâḥ, the upper region, &c., 103; last of the uneven stomas, 217; trayastriṁśa day, 420.

trayî vidyâ, III, 139; (the brahman) first created, 145, 192; is all the metres, 193; consists of hymns, tunes, and prayers, 196; dug out by the gods from the mind-ocean, 415; (stoma, yagus, *rik*, sâman, bṛihat, rathantara) is food; mentioned in final benediction of the Vasor dhârâ consecration, IV, 220; is the truth, 258; the (Soma)-sacrifice, 261; contains all existing things, 352; Pragâpati's body contains (or consists of) it, 352; consists of 10,800 eighties of syllables, 353; is Speech, and Agni (the fire-altar), 364 seq.; is the universe, 403; constitutes the (new, divine) body of the Sacrificer, V, 38; evolved from Agni, Vâyu, and Sûrya, and from it the luminous essences bhûḥ, bhuvaḥ, svar, 102, 103; the Brahman priest to use the trayî vidyâ, 104; is the unexhausted element of the sacrifice, 170.

trayodaśa-stoma, gained by Vasus, III, 40.

trayoviṁśa-stoma, the array, the year, IV, 63.

trees, all except udumbara side with the Asuras against the gods, III, 256; ruled over by Soma, IV, 76.

tretâ, die, III, 107.

trikakubh (metre), is the udâna, IV, 88.

triṇava-stoma, connected with Paṅkti, śâkvara, &c., III, 91; with trayastriṁśa produced from the âgrayaṇa-graha, and from them the śâkvara and raivata-sâmans, IV, 11, 12; is strength, the year, 64; connected with Aditi and Pûshan, 69; connected with upper region, Bṛihaspati, Viśve Devâḥ, &c., 102, 103; is the two sides (flanks), V, 164; triṇava day, 420.

tripâṇa, III, 85.

triple science. See trayî vidyâ.

trishaṁyukta, offerings, III, 54, 56.

trishṭubh, gained by Indra, III, 40; is vigour, strength (vîrya), 64; is the one rule which the gods keep, 447; IV, 262, 308; V, 311, 312; connected with kshatra, &c., III, 91; is the body, self, 167, 218, 253; produced from the summer, and from it the svâra-sâman, IV, 6; year-and-a-half-old calves produced in the form of it, 39; is the south, 45; the air of trishṭubh nature, 57; Vâyu connected with it, 142; is the thunderbolt, 193, 308; connected with the sun, 197; of eleven syllables, 308; is the generative breathing (of Pragâpati), 327–379; an eagle of the trishṭubh metre (midday Pavamâna) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, V, 173; thereby the Rudras consecrate king, 312.

trivṛit-stoma, gained by Mitra, III, 40; connected with brahman, &c., 91; produced from upâṁśugraha, and from it the Rathantara, IV, 5; the swiftest of stomas, 61; is Vâyu, 61; is breath, 66; through it (connected with Agni) the priesthood delivered from death, 67; is the head, 78; connected with Agni, the Vasus, the east, âgyaśastra, rathantara-sâman, 100.

truth, remaining with the gods, and untruth with Asuras, IV, 257; he who holds to it, though first poor, in the end prospers, 257; truth in faith, V, 46; conquers pain, always to be spoken, 85.

Tura Kâvasheya, IV, introd. xviii; builds fire-altar at Kârotî, IV, 279.

Tvashṭri, assists Varuṇa, III, 113; rules over living forms, 113, 115; (saṁsṛip) ten-kapâla cake to, 115; prayugâṁ havis (ten-

kapâla cake), 125; his son Visvarûpa, 130; V, 213; ram slaughtered for him, III, 162; fashioned first the sheep, 411; takes Śri's forms and receives (mitravindâ) oblation (ten-kapâla cake), V, 62–65; practises mystic rites on Indra and excludes him from the Soma-draught, 213 seq.; 248; Tvashtri, the seminal, is multiform, 293; fashioner of the couples of animals, 293.
twenty-five, IV, 75.
twenty-five-fold, is seed, III, 353; is the body, IV, 168, 222.
twenty-four-fold, is man, III, 167; the wing (paksha), IV, 222; Pragâpati, the year, V, 141.
twenty-nine, IV, 75.
twenty-one, IV, 75, 191; V, 150.
twenty-one-fold (or twenty-first), is man, III, 172; (stoma) the sun, 127, 265; IV, 163; V, 37, 150 (cf. note), 305 note, 333, 335; the tail, IV, 222; the belly, V, 164; the altar, &c., 334, 335; the head of the sacrifice, 335.
twenty-three, IV, 75.
twinkling of the eye, as many as there are spirations, and hair-pits, V, 169.

udâna, becomes the vyâna, IV, 16; (breath of the nose) fills man, V, 31.
udânabhrit (holders of the upward air), are the ear-sustainers, IV, 15.
udavasânîyeshti, III, 115, 139; IV, 269.
udayanîya (Atirâtra), IV, 254.
Uddâlaka Âruni, son of (Aruna) Gautama, a Kurupañkala Brâhmana, [IV, 333 n., 393 n.;] V, 50 seq.; in disputation with Saukeya Prâkînayogya, 79 seq.; teacher of Proti Kausurubindi, 153.
Uddâlavat, a Gandharva, V, 30.
udder, in one third of cow, III, 237.
uddhâra, share,—purastâd—, uparishtbât, IV, 162.
Udgâtri priest, seated towards north, III, 109; gold wreath his fee at Dasapeya, 119; by means of the Mahâvrata (sâman) he puts the vital fluid into Pragâpati, the altar, IV, 282; is the rainy season, V, 45; initiated for Sattra (as being the thunder-cloud and rain), 135; holding on to him from behind, 173; not to chant the Udgîtha of bahishpavamâna at Asvamedha, 305; is the friend of the gods, 388; the Udgâtris do, as it were, the Patnî's work at the sacrifice, 504.
udgîtha,—of bahishpavamâna at Asvamedha performed by the horse, V, 305.
udumbara (ficus glomerata), means substance, food, III, 35, 36, &c.; strength, life-sap, 373; used for throne seat at Vâgapeya, 35; for food-vessel, 36; for consecration water-vessel, 73, 80; ditto for the king's kinsman to sprinkle from, 83; branch hidden in wheel-track, 104; how produced, 256; sides with the gods, whilst all other trees do so with the Asuras, 256; contains the vital sap of all other trees, 256, (267), 394; produces fruit (thrice a year) equal to that of all other trees, 257; is always moist, 257; udumbara jar used for sowing seed on Agnikshetra, 337; etymology, 395; samidhs of, IV, 189, 191; samidh with forking branches, 203; offering-ladle of, for vasor dhârâ, 214; originates from Indra's flesh (and force), V, 215; means strength, force, 220, 448.
uggiti, formulas and oblations, III, 40.
Ugra, form and name of Agni, III, 159; is Vâyu, 160.
Ugrasena, performs Asvamedha, V, 396.
ukhâ, fire-pan,—materials collected for, III, 180; belongs to Pragâpati, 180; eight parts of, 180; thereinto the Sacrificer pours his own self, 180; represents the three worlds, 210, 233 seq.; 313; fashioning of, 233 seq.; is a cow, 237; is Agni's self (body), 239; is the Sacrificer's own self, 251; baking of pan, 252 seq.; instructions in case

of its breaking, 263; ditto in case of fire therein going out, 263; etymology (ut-khan), 270; filled with sand and milk, 310, 311; not to be looked at when empty, 310; placed on mortar in first layer, 396–398; is the belly of the animal Agni, 400; shaping and baking of it side by side with the building of fire-altar, IV, introd. xix; a representation of the three worlds, ib.; is placed on the mortar, 2; Pragâpati and Sacrificer are poured therein as seed into the womb, 341; therein, as the three worlds, Pragâpati pours his own self, 354.

Ukhya Agni, III, 263, 265; is held up towards east, 272, (275); towards south-west and north-east, 280; carried about for a year, 269; placed on chariot and driven about, 290 seq.; poured on Gârhapatya, 310; IV, 191 n.; 308 n.; by building an altar without carrying him for a year one kills all beings in the form of an embryo, 272; one must not officiate at such a sacrifice, 272; relaxations of rule, 273, 274; only one who has carried Agni for a year attains immortal life, 324; placed on fire-altar with 'vashaṭ,' 202, 341.

ukkhishṭakhara, V, 489 n., 500.

uktha, III, introd. xiv–xvi; (=mahad uktham), the food of Agni, IV, 342; the uktha is Agni, Âditya, Prâṇa, the Purusha, 399; (=śastra), V, 257.

uktha-stotra, III, introd. xiv seq., 127.

ukthya-graha, III, 11.

Ukthya sacrifice, III, introd. xiv–xvi; victims of, 12; two hundred and forty, or two hundred and thirty-four in a year's session, V, 147.

ulûkhala, etymology, III, 395.

unbelief and belief, as two women with a man, (wrath) between them, V, 111–112.

uneven, belongs to the Fathers, V, 423.

universe, in the beginning was neither existent, nor non-existent, IV, 374; is Mind alone, 375; is only Death, hunger, which creates Mind, 402; universe originally was nothing but a sea of water, V, 12; in the beginning was the Brahman, 27.

Unnetṛi, priest, initiated last for sattrâ by non-initiated Snâtaka or Brahmaḳârin, V, 137.

unstringing (formulas). See avatâna.

untruth, — remaining with Asuras, and truth with the gods, IV, 257; he who speaks untruth, though first flourishing, comes to nought in the end, 257; women, the śûdra, the dog and the blackbird (crow) are untruth, V, 446.

upabhṛit. See spoon.

upahita, III, 151.

upâṃśu-graha, III, 6; is the mouth of the sacrifice, 53; produced from gâyatra-sâman, IV, 4; from it the trivṛit, 5.

upanayana, initiation of Brâhmanical student, V, 86 seq.

upanishad (mystic import), the essence of the Yagus, IV, 339; regarding the nature of Agni, 363 seq.; V, 155.

uparishṭâd bhâgaḥ, IV, 185; cf. uddhâra.

Upasad, III, 116, 118, 355; IV, 187; with three kindling-verses, and without prayâgas and anuyâgas, IV, 259; the two performances are two strongholds between which the fire-altar is built, 316; are the fervour in the sacrifice, 317; are day and night, and Pravargya the sun, 317; three, six, twelve, or twenty-four Upasad-days, or a year, 317, 318; on Śatarudriya-day, day of preparation, and sutyâ-day, 320; like after-offerings of a backward direction, V, 43; twelve Upasad-days at Aśvamedha, 371; ditto at Purushamedha, 403; is combined with Pravargya, 493.

upaśaya, supernumerary, V, 220 n.

upasthâna, of fire on fire-altar, IV, 269; with seven-versed Aindra-hymn, 274, 275.

upayag, by-offering, eleven, III, 163.

upayamanî, (supporting) tray, V,

458; is the air, the Pravargya pot placed thereon, 477, 481, 488.
upper (or great) region,—is the sun, IV, 27; the pankti, 45; sovereign mistress (adhipatnî), 46, 102; the Visve Devâḥ its lords, 102; connected with Bṛihaspati, the trinava, and trayastrimsa stomas, the sâkvara, and raivata sâmans, 102, 103; a boon-bestower, is Praganya, 107; is the Sacrificer's region, 485.
Ûrga, second autumn month, IV, 49.
Urvasî, an Apsaras,—is the upper region, or the oblation, IV, 108; Urvasî, and Purûravas, V, 68 seq.
Ushas, wife of Bhûtânâm patiḥ (Pragâpati, the year), III, 158.
ushṇih, —in the form of it three-and-a-half-year old kine produced, IV, 39; is the eye (of Pragâpati), 327–328.
ushṇîsha, turban, III, 86.
usurer (money-lender), V, 368.
utkara, heap of rubbish, is the seat of what is redundant (superfluous), IV, 137
utsâdana,—of Pravargya, IV, 187; V, 493 seq.
utsarga, formulas of removal (of distress), III, 408.
uttaramandrâ (tune or lute), V, 356.
uttara-nârâyaṇa (litany), V, 412.
uttara-vedi (high, or upper, altar), is the sky, III, 349; the womb, 349; the air, V, 248; on the uttara (northern) vedi, 225; used for 'setting out' the Pravargya vessels, 498; its navel is the voice, 498.

vâga (food, race, strength), III, 204.
Vâga,—Savitṛi, with Ribhus, Vibhus, and Vâga, receives offering of gharma, V, 480.
Vâgapeya, III, introd. xi, xxiii seq.; by offering it one ascends to upper region, 2, 3; to the light, 33; becomes immortal, 33; wins Pragâpati, 3; it belongs to Brâhmaṇa and Râganya, 3; by offering it one becomes samrâg, 4; it is superior to Râgasûya, 4; IV, 225; number seventeen prevails thereat, III, 8; etymology, 13 seq.; is a supernumerary (special) rite, 246.
vâgapeya-graha, belongs to Indra, III, 6; five such, 8.
vâgapeya-sâman, III, introd. xxiii, 11, 12.
vâgaprasavîya, (seven) oblations as Vâgapeya, III, 37; with remains thereof Sacrificer sprinkled at Vâgapeya, 38; (fourteen) oblations (of all-herb-seed) at Agnikayana, IV, 223 seq.; are all food, 224.
Vâgasravasa. See Kusri Vâgasravasa.
vâghat, III, 218, 223.
vâgin, horse, carries the Gandharvas, IV, 401.
vâginâm sâman, III, 23.
vai, meaning of, III, 198.
Vainya. See Prithin.
Vaipasyata. See Târkshya.
vairâga-sâman, III, introd. xx, xxii, xxiii; connected with Anushṭubh, ekavimsa-stoma, autumn, 91; produced from ekavimsa-stoma, IV, 10; connected with Soma, Maruts, north, &c., 102.
vairûpa-sâman, III, introd. xx, xxii; connected with vis, Gagatî, &c., 91; (?) = ṛiksama-sâman, IV, 8, 9; is an aida-sâman, 10; connected with Varuṇa, the Âdityas, the west, &c., 102.
vaisâkha, month, new moon of, coincides with the nakshatra Rohinî, V, 2.
Vaishṇava. See Soma Vaishṇava.
Vaisravaṇa. See Kubera Vaisravaṇa.
Vaisvadeva, seasonal offering, III, 47; part of Pragâpati's body, V, 74; oblations, 74 n.; at Asvamedha (to Ka, Pragâpati, Aditi, Sarasvatî, Pûshan, Tvashṭri, Vishṇu), 289 seq.; 292 seq.
vaisvadeva-sastra, connected with Bṛihaspati, the Visve Devâḥ, the upper region, &c., IV, 103; on second day of Asvamedha, V, 381.
vaisvadevî (âmikshâ), III, 108;—bricks, IV, 23, 30 seq.; represent creatures, 31.
vaisvakarmaṇa, formulas and oblations (corresponding to the

Sâvitra ones), IV, 266; Agni Vaiśvakarmaṇa, 268; are the second half of the year, 347.
Vaiśvânara, twelve-kapâla cake to, III, 57; Vaiśvânara is the year, 57, 170; prayugâm havis (twelve-kapâla cake), 125; paśupuroḍâśa, 170; twelve-kapâla cake at dîkshâ of Agnikayana, 247; Vaiśvânara is all the fires, 248; is Agni, 248; is the Kshatra, 248; the Gârhapatya is Agni Vaiśvânara, 300; the year, IV, 33, 207; twelve-kapâla cake which makes Agni Vaiśvânara a deity after being set up on fire-altar, 207; etymology, 208; is the Kshatra, 210; is the sun, 212; views regarding his nature, 393 seq.; is the Purusha, 398; expiatory cake, V, 346; Vaiśvânara is this earth, 346.
Vaiśvâvasavya, officiates to Śvetaketu Âruṇeya, and is examined by his patron's father (Uddâlaka Âruṇi), IV, 333.
Vaiśya, takes part in chariot race, III, 29; holds honey-cup and cup of surâ, 29; sprinkles king from aśvattha vessel, 84; hired by some to drink the surâ-liquor, V, 233; son of Vaiśya woman not anointed, 326.
Vaivasvata. See Manu, Yama.
Vaiyâghrapadya. See Buḍila, and Indradyumna.
Vâk, victim to, III, 15; (Sarasvati) the leader, 39, 80; (Bṛihaspati) Vâk, pap of wild rice to, 70; the triple Veda the thousandfold progeny of Vâk, 140; out of her Pragâpati produced the waters, 145, 192; union with mind (manas), 149; bears the eight Vasus, eleven Rudras, twelve Âdityas, and the Viśve Devâḥ, 149; Vâk, the voice, speaks to a span's distance, 200; is part of speech, 203; is a mahishî (consecrated queen), 239;—cf. Sarasvatî Vâk.
vâkovâkyam, dialogue, to be studied, V, 98.
vâlakhilyâ, bricks of the third layer are the vital airs, 54 seq.; etymology, 55; by means of them the gods ranged over these worlds upwards and downwards, 56.
Vâmadevya, son of Vâmadeva. See Bṛihaduktha.
vâmadevya-sâman, III, introd. xvi, 12, 274; how chanted, IV, 7; sung over completed altar, is the breath (vital air) and Vâyu, 179; is Pragâpati, V, 333.
Vâmakakshâyaṇa, III, 314; instructed by Śâṇḍilya, IV, 345.
vapâ, —of five cuttings (portions), V, 125; vapâ offering on second day of Aśvamedha, 392 seq.; victims with and without vapâ, 420.
vâr, etymology, III, 146.
varaṇa wood, peg of, V, 436; enclosing-sticks, 439; sruva-spoon, 439.
vâravantîya-sâman, III, introd. xiv-xxi; used for Agnishṭoma-sâman on first day of Aśvamedha, V, 376.
Vârkali, V, 169.
vârshâhara, sâman, V, 501.
vârtraghna, are the âgyabhâgas, V, 350.
Varuṇa, by ten syllables gains Virâg, III, 40; his noose, 47, 57, 280; Varuṇa is Agni, 51; (? Bṛihaspati, 68); barley pap to, 57, 60; to Varuṇa belongs the black, hence black cloth the fee for oblation to Varuṇa, 58; knot sacred to Varuṇa, 58; is the spiriter (sava) of gods, 60; the horse his sacrificial animal, 60; to Varuṇa belongs what is hewn by axe and what is churned, 67; what is cooked by fire, 68; what grows in ploughed ground, 71; the flowing water that does not flow, 76; the garment of initiation (at Abhishekanîya), 87; Varuṇa Dharmapati, barley pap to, 71; Varuṇa consecrated king, 98, 103; upholder of the sacred law, 106; Varuṇa Satyaugas, 109; on being consecrated Varuṇa's lustre (bhargas) departs from him, 113; assists himself, 113; saṁsṛip-oblation (barley pap) to, 116; seizes creatures, 116; prayugâm havis

(pap) to, 125; barley pap at Sautrâmaṇi, 136, 137; Varuṇa is the injurer, 137; horse slaughtered for him, 162; to him belongs the sling, 279, 280; the sheep sacred to him, 411; Mitra and Varuṇa, out-breathing and down-breathing, connected with ekaviṃśa-stoma, IV, 68; rules over one-hoofed animals, 75; protector of the west, 101; connected with the Âdityas, saptadaśa-stoma, marutvatîya-śastra, vairûpa-sâman, 101, 102; ruṅmatî (lightsome) oblation to, 238; is Agni (when completed and anointed), 238; is the kshatra, 239; Varuṇa and horse, V, introd. xix seq.; part of Pragâpati's body affected by Varuṇa, 36; takes Śrî's sovereign power and receives (mitravindâ) oblation (ten-kapâla cake), 62, 65; sends out his son Bhṛigu to improve his knowledge, 108 seq.; through (a cake to) Varuṇa one delivers one's self from Varuṇa's power and noose, 221; Varuṇa's cakes of ten kapâlas, for Varuṇa is Virâg, the lord of food, 222; connected with winter, 247; upholder of the sacred law, 251; is the king of the gods, 251; receives oblation in Sautrâmaṇî (for assisting in healing Indra), 252; swearing by the inviolable waters a sin against Varuṇa, 265; Varuṇa's son or brother is a whirlpool, 266; the last of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 281; Varuṇa Gumbaka, 343; propitiatory barley pap, 346; Varuṇa seizes upon the drowned, 346; barley sacred to him, 346; Varuṇa Âditya, king of the Gandharvas, 365; (the regent of waters, ? and Nakshatras) is the self of the gods, 505, 506.

Varuṇa-praghâsâḥ, seasonal offering, III, 47; part of Pragâpati's body, V, 75; oblations of, 75 n.

varuṇa-sava, III, introd. xxv, 76, 103.

Vâruṇi. See Bhṛigu.

varuṇic nature, of cow, III, 51.

varuṇya, III, 57.

vaśa, hymn, IV, 112, 223.

vâśa (? desirable or submissive), III, 77.

vasatîvarî water,—at Aśvamedha of four kinds, from the four quarters, 275.

Vashaṭ, uttered with ten oblations of the Darśapûrṇamâsa, V, 3; is the sun and Death, and by it the Sacrificer is regenerated and delivered from death, 26; produces wasting away of cattle in winter, 45;—277 note.

Vasishṭha, the Ṛishi, is breath, IV, 5; his (knowledge of the) Virâg coveted by Indra, V, 212; formerly only one of his family could become Brahman priest, 212.

Vasor dhârâ, shower of wealth, IV, 213 seq.; is Agni's Abhisheka (consecration), 213; its mystic meaning, 221 seq.; corresponds to year and Mahad uktham, 221, 222.

Vasu, dwelling in the air, III, 103, 281.

Vasus, by thirteen syllables gain the trayodaśa-stoma, III, 40; eight Vasus produced from Vâk, 149; placed on earth with Agni, 150; (with Mitra) mix the clay, 231; fashioned this earth-world by means of Gâyatrî, 233; Rudras and Vasus sing praises of (brick in) second layer, IV, 25; how produced, 33; Vasus and Rudras, connected with the four-footed and the katurviṃśa-stoma, 68; Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas separated, and were the lords when heaven and earth separated, 75; connected with Agni, &c., 100; the lords of the east, 100; Vasus, Rudras, Âdityas, Maruts, and Viśve Devâḥ build on different quarters of altar E. S. W. N. U., 118; the eight Vasus enumerated, V, 116; arise by performance of morning pressing, 173; consecrate the king by the Gâyatra metre, 312; obtain the part of Vishṇu, the sacrifice, corresponding to

the morning-pressing, 443; Indra, with Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas, receives offering at Pravargya, 479, 480.
vâta. See wind.
vâtsapra, hymn and rite, III, 261, 283; an unyoking-place, 286.
vatsara, (fifth year of cycle), IV, 21.
Vâtsya, a teacher, IV, 272, 345 n.
vaushaṭ, etymology, IV, 341, 346; forms part of the unexhausted element of the sacrifice (and trayî vidyâ), V, 170.
vâvâtâ, addressed by Udgâtṛi, V, 387.
vayasyâ, bricks in second layer, IV, 24.
Vâyu, how created, III, 148; his union with the air, 148; and the regions, 188; with him the Rudras in the air, 150; is the released Pragâpati, 152; Vâyu Niyutvat, 173; the out-breathing, 173; one half of Pragâpati, 175; regent of the air, 204, (210, 286); Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya, are all the light, 210; goes along by the breath of the gods, 221; is the vital air that went out of Pragâpati, 312; is Viśvakarman (the maker of everything), IV, 6; blows most in (from) south, 6; becomes the mind, in right side of body, 6; wind produced by the prâṇabhṛits, 33; everywhere between the two worlds, 34; runs everywhere in the same direction, 34; is in the regions, 34; wind has rain in it, 35; overlord of the air world, 48; is Pragâpati (of the air), Agni, the Sacrificer, 57, 58; takes the part of Pragâpati between head and waist, 60; becomes the deities and the forms of the year, 60; is the trivṛit-stoma, and the swiftest, 61; the support of all beings, 66; encloses all beings, 66; rules over wild animals, 75; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya move hitherwards and thitherwards, 90; the all-worker (viśvakarman), in the south, 106; blows sideways in the air, 130; wind and sky the highest, and close together, 140, 141; is only on this side of the sky, 141; is the thread by which the sun strings the worlds to himself, 141; is of trishṭubh nature, 142; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya are the hearts of the gods, 162; is the self (body) of all the gods, 179; is the body (âtman) of Agni-Pragâpati, the altar and universe, 179; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya are the Pravargya (vessels), 187; Vâyu is the man (nara) of the air as (part of) the All (viśva), 208; is the breath, 208; Agni considered as Vâyu, 363; Vâyu, the one wind, when entering man is divided into ten parts, V, 3; Pragâpati becomes vital air, and Vâyu, 15; created by the Brahman and placed in the air, 27; Vâyu one of the six doors to the Brahman, 66, 67; offering for expiation to Vâyu in the direction in which the wind blows, 84; all beings (at death) pass over into the wind, and from thence are again produced, 84; is evolved from the air, and from him the Yagurveda, 102; Vâyu's form taken by sun, whence wind is invisible, 130; Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya are light, might, glory (fame), 173; the swiftest of gods, 278; the fifth of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblation of drops, 281; is a singer of praises, 312; Vâyu cooks the food, 316; sacrificed as animal victim, 319; expiatory milk oblation, 345, 347; Vâyu is the transformer of seed, 345; Vâyu, Sûrya, and Heaven and Earth, 347; is Pûshan, since he supports (push) everything, 474; (regent of the air) is the self of the gods, 505.
Veda, triple (yagus, *rik*, sâman), III, 139, 140, 141; the thousandfold progeny of Vâk, 140; the three Vedas (cf. trayî vidyâ), consist of 10,800 eighties of syllables, IV, 353; study of the Veda, V, 95 seq.; beneficial effects thereof, 99 seq.;

Rik, Yagus and Sâman are light, might and glory (fame), 174.
vedi, is this earth, III, 345, 349; IV, 235; V, 248; is the world of the (? place for) gods, IV, 118; measuring of vedi (for fire-altar), 30 seq.; (mahâvedi) equal to vedi of sevenfold fire-altar, 306; vedi of ninety steps (for the sevenfold fire-altar), 308; is fivefold, 309; right edge of vedi a balance in which the Sacrificer is weighed, V, 45; is the golden, brilliant-winged Gâyatri who bears the Sacrificer to heaven, 56; how to step past it, 57 seq.; two vedis at Sautrâma*n*î, 225; is the farthest end of the earth, 390.
ve*t*, sacrificial call, is indistinct (indefinite), IV, 183; used with oblation of ghee (with gold chips in it), on completed fire-altar, 183; used (with 'svâhâ') after final benediction of Vasor dhârâ consecration, 220; with 'vasha*t*,' or 'svâhâ,' is food offered to the gods, 221.
vetasa (bamboo), etymology, IV, 174; cf. reed.
vibhîtaka nut, used as dice, III, 106; tree, not to stand near a grave, V, 427.
Vibhus,—Savit*ri*, with *Ri*bhus, Vibhus, and Vâgas, receives offering of Gharma, V, 480.
victim, animal, is Pragâpati, and represents all deities, IV, 404; number of, at A*s*vamedha, V, 309 seq.; is quieted (killed), 321; human (symbolic), 407; set free, 411; enumerated, 413 seqq.
vikaṅkata, (flacourtia sapida), is the thunderbolt, III, 53; how produced, 256, 448; pieces laid round Pravargya pot, representing the Maruts, V, 466; the vital airs, 486.
vikar*n*î, brick in sixth or seventh layer, IV, 96, 99, 140 seq.; is Vâyu, 140; is vital power (âyus), 141, 291.
vikrama*n*a, one of Vish*n*u's steps, III, 96.
vikrânta, one of Vish*n*u's steps, III, 96.
vikr*i*ti, (fashioning) formula, III, 283.
village-boundaries, contiguous in time of peace, V, 306, 307.
vimita, shed, put up on gaming ground, III, 11.
virâ*g*, bricks of fifth layer, IV, 83.
Virâ*g*, metre, gained by Varu*n*a, III, 40; of ten syllables, 183, 196; V, 403 n.; is Agni, III, 196; is food, IV, 50, 204; all food, IV, 12, 87; V, 408, 418; the unassailable metre in form of which tigers were produced, IV, 38; also two-year-old kine, 39; is food, 50, 204; of thirty syllables, 94, 385; the undiminished Virâ*g* is Indra's heaven, 94; the ten vital airs are the Vîrâ*g*, the sacrifice, V, 3; possessed by Vasish*th*a, and coveted by Indra, 212; is the earth, 212; created by Pragâpati, enters the sacrificial horse, 310; born from the Purusha, and the Purusha from Virâ*g*, 403.
vi*s*, (peasantry, clan), food for the noble, III, 13; connected with west, *G*agatî, vairûpa-sâman, saptada*s*a-stoma, rainy season, 91; connected with the gods generally, and the creator, is freed from death through saptada*s*a-stoma, IV, 68; less powerful than nobility, and differing in speech and thought from each other, 133; is the sacrifice, 144; sits as it were, 210; is indefinite, 210, 245; speak to the kshatra now in a loud, now in a low voice, V, 41; obedient to the kshatra, 227; not to be equal and refractory, but obedient and subservient, to kshatra, 303.
Vish*n*u, by three syllables gained the three worlds, III, 40; is the upper end of the gods, 44; the sacrifice, 45, 113; V, 179; three-kapâla cake, or pap to, III, 54; men belong to him, or are of his nature, 54; three steps (strides), 96, 261, 275; by Vish*n*u, Pragâpati created

the worlds, 276, 286; assists Varuṇa in recovering his lost vigour, 114; (upasad) three-kapâla cake, or pap, 118; as embryo a span long, 235, 255, 260, 268; Vishṇu Śipivishṭa, pap of rice and fresh milk at New moon, V, 9; the sixth of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 281; Vishṇu nibhûyapa, Śipivishṭa, 293; a dwarfish animal his victim at Aśvamedha, 300; enters the world in three places, 388; first reaches end of sacrificial session, and attains excellence among gods, 441; is the sacrifice, 442; unable to control his ambition, 442; with his bow and three arrows, 442; his head is cut off, and becomes the sun, 442; is divided into three parts (the pressings of the Soma-sacrifice), 443.

Vishṇu-strides, a feature of the haviryagña, V, 120.

vishṭârapaṅkti (metre), is the regions, IV, 88.

vishṭâvrâga, III, 50, 53.

vishṭhâvrâgin, III, 123.

vishṭuti, III, introd. xxii.

Vishuvat, central day of Gavâm ayanam, and formerly one of the three 'great rites' of the year's sattra, V, (139), 144; is in excess of the year, 158.

viśvadeva-netrâḥ, (devâḥ), seated in the west, III, 49.

Viśvagit Atirâtra, with all the pṛishṭhas and giving away of all one's property, a substitute for a year of Soma-pressing (with Agnikâyana), IV, 320, 321; V, 420, 491.

viśvagyotis (bricks) are (all the light), Agni, Vâyu, and Âditya, respectively, III, 210, 239; making of, 239; mean offspring, progeny, 239, 385; IV, 129; laying down of the first (Agni), III, 384; is breath, 385; IV, 2; Agni, 130; that of third layer, Vâyu, 47, 130; is offspring, 47; is breath, 47; the fifth layer, 99, 129; possessed of generative power, 129; is the sun, 130; is breath, 131; Sûrya its lord, 131.

Viśvakarman, the purusha (man) slaughtered for him, III, 162; Viśvakarman and Indrâgnî connected with the air and the second svayamâtṛinnâ, 188, 190; IV, introd. xiv; is Vâyu, 6, 106; the Ṛishi Viśvakarman is speech, 12; he is Pragâpati, 28, 233; settles the third layer of altar, 41, 47; is Agni, 189, 190, 204; oblation to, 204; is the lord of all that exists, 204; eight oblations to (Agni) Viśvakarman corresponding to the Sâvitra oblations, 266; Viśvakarman Bhauvana performs Sarvamedha, and promises the earth to Kaśyapa, 421.

Viśvâkî, the Apsaras, is the northern quarter, or the vedi, IV, 107.

Viśvâmitra, ṛishi (All-friend), is the ear, IV, 10.

Viśvantara Saushadmana, IV, 344 n.

Viśvarûpa, the three-headed son of Tvashṭri, slain by Indra, III, 130; V, 213.

Viśvâvasu, the Gandharva, IV, introd. xiv.

Viśve Devâḥ, by twelve syllables gained Gagatî, III, 40; paṅkabila oblation (pap) on west part of vedi, 120, 122; piebald bullock the Hotṛi's fee, 122; animal offering to them (instead of to Maruts), 126; born from Vâk, and placed with the moon in the quarters (regions), 150; they and Bṛihaspati no special class of deities, 150; put the quarters in the world, 235; are the seasons, 311; sing praises of (bricks in) second layer, IV, 26; produced, 33; Ṛibhus and Viśve Devâḥ connected with living beings (bhûta) and trayastrimśa-stoma, 69; are the lords of the upper region, 102, 103; connected with Bṛihaspati, &c., 103; Vasus, Rudras, Âdityas, Maruts, Viśve Devâḥ, build on different sides of altar (E. S. W. N. U.), 118; sit down with the Sacrificer on the higher seat (in the sky), 124; are Indra and

Agni, and the three are brahman, kshatra, and vi*s*, 314; the most famous of gods, V, 278; are all the gods, 392; the counsellors of king Marutta, 397; offering of barren cows, 402, 411; Visve Devâ*h*, except the Asvins, 441; with B*ri*haspati, receive offering of gharma, 480; are the vital airs, 488.

vital airs. See prâ*n*a.

vital power, vitality (âyus). See life.

vrata, rite (of abstinence), III, 185; (fast-milk), 262; the four rites, and rites of rites, IV, 333 seq.; 342; entering upon at New moon, V, 7 seq.; vrata (food) brought at haviryag*ñ*a, 119; is the head of the sacrifice, 240.

vratadughâ, cow, given to Hotr*i* and Udgâtr*i*s, V, 504.

vr*i*dhanvant, V, 351.

Vr*i*tra, slain by Indra by means of cake-offering, III, 45; by Full-moon offering, V, 6; is the moon, III, 45; slain by gods, 48, 49; *rik*, yagus, and sâman were in him, 138; his retreat shattered by Vish*n*u, 139; repelled by Indra, 179; waters loathing him, 332; verses relating to the slaying of Vr*i*tra, IV, 275; is evil, sin, V, 11.

vr*i*tra-sa*ñ*ku (peg), V, 437.

vyâhr*i*ti, mystic utterance, used with offerings to Rudra, IV, 161.

vyâna, becomes the udâna, IV, 16.

vyânabhr*i*t (holders of the circulating air) are the mind-sustainers, IV, 15.

vyushti-dvirâtra, III, introd. xxvi, 129.

wain, as the mark of a sacrificial horse, V, 354.

walking round altar (in sprinkling), means slighting it, IV, 170; made good by circumambulation, 170.

warm, is the body of him who is to live, IV, 136.

water (âpa*h*), different kinds of, for consecration, III, 73 seq.; produced out of Vâ*k*, 145, 192; from Pragâpati, 157; heals what is injured, 220; the waters the udder of the sky, 284; the foundation of the universe, 293; therefrom the universe was produced, 294; water first made of this universe, 363; are unsettled, 301; waters beyond and below the sun, 305; jarful of water poured out as a thunderbolt to clear himself of all evil (nirr*i*ti), 324; three jarfuls poured on every four of sixteen furrows of Agnikshetra, 335; three additional ones on whole of Agnikshetra, 336; is the sky, 343; there is water not only in the channels of the vital airs, but in the whole body, 337; are the tenth, 363; whenever water (rain) flows everything that exists is produced, 363; possess self-rule, 364; the deepest place of the waters is where the sun burns, 391; are founded on the mountains (rocks), 405; the eye is their abode, the ear their goal, the sky their seat, the air their home, the sea their womb, sand their sediment, 416; is food, IV, 35; is the vital airs, 35; waters (of heaven) are in the highest place, 37; sprinkling of fire-altar with water, 169; springs forth from rock, 169; is contained in rock, in the mountains, 170; waters as Apsaras, the Gandharva Vâta's mates, 232; food is produced from them, 232; universe originally nothing but a sea of water, V, 12; is everything, even in the farthest place, being Parameshth*i*n, 15; water one of the six doors to the Brahman, 66, 67; the waters the foundation of the universe, 205; swearing by the inviolable waters, sin against Varu*n*a, 265; waters as the third of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 280; water thrown for exorcising, 438; the waters a place of abode to all the gods, and Varu*n*a their regent, 506.

water-dwellers (fish and fishermen),

subjects of Matsya Sâṁmada, the Itihâsa their Veda, V, 369.
well-water, III, 77.
west, connected with viṣ, Gagatî, &c., III, 91; west (?to east) path of sacrifice, 347; is the Gagatî, IV, 45; all-ruling (samrâg), 46, 101; the Âdityas its lords, 101; Varuṇa its protector, 101; connected with saptadaśa-stoma, marutvatîya-śastra, vairûpa-sâman, 101; the all-embracer is Âditya, 106; is hope, distinction (prosperity) and the earth, V, 17, 18; the region of cattle, 485.
wheat, headpiece of sacrificial post made of, III, 31; is touched by sacrificer, 32.
wheel, mounted by Brahman priest, III, 32; of cart and potter, creaks if not steadied, V, 126.
whey (vâgina), of the Maitrâvaruṇî payasyâ, offering of, IV, 271; dakshiṇâ given therewith, 271.
whirlpool, water from, III, 76.
wife, is one half of husband, III, 32; intercourse with, kept secret, 229; the husband must not eat food in her presence in order that she may bear a vigorous son, IV, 369, 370; (many) wives a sign of (social) eminence, V, 313.
wind (vâta), cf. Vâyu; — connected with Varuṇa, by rain freed from death through ekaviṁśa-stoma, IV, 68; is Vâyu, 142; is the arrows of the Rudras of the air, 165; Vâta as Gandharva with the waters as Apsaras, his mates, 232; three oblations of wind on chariot, thereby yoking it, 235: is on this side of the sun, 235; also in the other world, 235; and in this (terrestrial) world, 236; wind-names uttered, V, 478; is the (aerial) ocean, flood, 479; is unassailable and irresistible, 479; an ogress-ridder, 479; identified with (aerial) ocean, flood; Indra, Savitṛi, Bṛihaspati, and Yama, 479–81; Pûshan, 486; is irresistible, an ogress-ridder, 479.
wing, of altar, crackling of, IV, 21; is of paṅkti nature (or fivefold), 115; twenty-one-fold, 222; contraction and expansion of, 300 seq.; has a bending link, 301; is crooked (?curved), 302; wings are the bird's arms, 306; the immortal wings of the Âhavanîya, V, 271.
winter, produced from speech, and from it the paṅkti, IV, 11; consists of months Saha and Sahasya, 70; is the space between air and heaven, and the part of body between waist and head, 70, 71; frog, avakâ plant, and bamboo three forms of it, 175; in winter cattle waste away, V, 45.
wish,—in wishes nothing is excessive, IV, 241, 247, 265.
wolf, springs from Soma flowing from ears, III, 131; from Indra's urine, V, 215.
woman, impure part of, below navel, III, 32; fair-knotted, fair-braided, fair-locked her perfect form, 232; on left side of man, IV, 81; lucky if marked on left side, 81; brings forth within a year, V, 12; two women (Belief and Unbelief) in N.E. quarter with black yellow-eyed man (wrath) between them, 110, 111; has beautiful form bestowed upon her, 295; given as dakshiṇâ, 402; is untruth 446.
womb, lies close to belly, IV, 115; lower than belly, 115; enlarges with the child before it is born, not after, 309; is the bearer because Pragâpati by it bore creatures, V, 114.
wood, two kinds of (cut by axe and that found on the ground), III, 257.
wood-brick, III, 155, 166.
work (karman), evolved from the ear, and from it fire, IV, 379.
worlds, the, are the heavenly abodes (of the gods), III, 195; fastened to the sun by means of the quarters, 269; the two, are round, 271; ascent of the (worlds and) metres, 276–278; they are strung on a thread and joined with Âditya, 360; from them is born both what exists

and what exists not, 366; glide along like serpents, 369; are the resting-place, and moving-place, 143; seven worlds of the gods, 277; the three worlds and four quarters, 314; were created together, 286; three and those above them in which are placed the deities higher than Agni, Vâyu, Sûrya, V, 27; the Brahman is the sphere beyond these higher worlds, 27; how they were steadied by Pragâpati, 126; have light on both sides (sun and fire), 149; the three worlds (earth, air and heaven) are light, might and glory respectively, 173; two, those of the Gods and the Fathers, 225.

Wrath, as black, yellow-eyed staff-bearing man, between two women, Belief and Unbelief, V, 111, 112.

Yagña. See sacrifice.

yagñakratu, oblations of ghee relating to special sacrifices (Agni and Gharma, &c.), forming part of the Vasor dhârâ, IV, 217.

yagñapukkha, III, introd. xx.

Yâgñatura. See *Ri*shabha.

Yagñavakas Râgastambâyana, to him Pragâpati revealed himself, IV, 349.

Yâgñavalkya, IV, introd. xviii; questioned by Ganaka as to Agnihotra, V, 46; on the way in which the oblation is to be treated, 61; found by Ganaka to know the Mitravindâ sacrifice, 66; in disputation on Agnihotra at Ganaka's house, 112 seq.; taught by Ganaka, 114; claims prize as most learned in sacred writ, 115; on Agnihotra expiation, 182; on offering of omenta, 393.

yagñâyagñiya-sâman, III, introd. xiv, 274; sung over completed altar, is the moon, IV, 179; is the heavenly world, 252; is Agni Vaisvânara's chant of praise, 253; on first day of Asvamedha, V, 376.

yagñopavîtin, sacrificially invested, V, 237.

Yagus, was in Vritra, III, 138; part of triple Veda, 139, 141; the Brahman, the Yagus, its power in the other world, IV, 173; the fire-altar the ocean of Yagus, 278; is built up with the fire-altar, 282; marches in front in quest of Pragâpati's vital fluid, 282; is Vâyu, 336; the breath, 337; (yat-gûh), 337; the mystic import (upanishad) its essence, 339; is silent (muttered), indistinct, 350; he who knows the mystic science becomes the Yagus and is called thereby, 341; Yagus consists of 8,000 brihatîs, and Yagus and Sâman of 10,800 (7,200 and 3,600 resp.) pañktis, 353; is the one brick of which the fire-altar consists, 374; all beings, all the gods become the Yagus, 390; what is performed without a yagus, is unsuccessful, V, 276.

yagushmatî, bricks, are the nobility, III, 153; placed on the body of the altar, 348; number of, IV, 22; are the peasantry, 132, 133; is food, 134; any special (extra) one to be placed in middle layer, 138; none in the dhishnya hearths, 242, (?) 244; are the days of the year, Pragâpati's body, 354; three hundred and ninety-six in fire-altar, 357; enumerated as to layers, 358, 359.

yâgyâ, is to be in the trishtubh metre, V, 26.

Yama, III, 49; rules over the settlements of the earth, and grants it to Sacrificer, 298; is the kshatra, 299; Yama and Yamî (Agni and Earth) of one mind with Nirriti, 322; the Fathers live in his realm, V, 236, 237; rules over, and grants, abode in the earth, 431; is the sun, 460; Yama, with Angiras and Fathers, receives offering of Gharma, 481; —Yama Vaivasvata, king of the Fathers, 365.

yamanetrâh (devâh), seated in the south, III, 49.

yaudhâgaya-sâman, chanted with three nidhanas, IV, 7.

Yavamat, a Gandharva, V, 30.
Yavas and Ayavas, the light and dark fortnights, connected with creatures generally and the *katuskatvârimsa*-stoma, IV, 69; the lords of creatures, 76.
yâvat — tâvat, as long as, III, 244.
year, is seventeenfold (twelve months and five seasons), III, 174; twice in the year food is ripened, 244; is fastened to the moon by means of the seasons, 369; —its part in the sacrifice (as Father Time), IV, introd. xv seq.; is the fire-altar and the three worlds, IV, 29; is Agni Vaisvânara, 33; is space, 62; speeds all beings, 63; burns up all beings, 63; assails all beings, 63; the most vigorous of all things, 63; is arrayed (spread) over all things, 64; is the womb of all beings, 64; as an embryo, in the shape of the thirteenth month, enters the seasons, 64; is the strength of all beings, 64; it forms all beings, 65; is the foundation of all beings, 65; is the range of the ruddy (sun) and holds the supreme sway, 65; is the firmament (nâka), heaven, 65; all creatures are evolved from it, 66; is eighteenfold, 66; ruler of the months, 74; is generative power, 125; made continuous by the seasons, 125; contains all objects of desire, 313; is the same as the sun, 313; beyond the year lies the wish-granting world which is immortality, 322; is fivefold (viz. food, drink, excellence, light, and immortality), 326, 327; its divisions and lights, 351 seq.; is death, 356 seq.; Agni as the year, how corresponding to each other, 363; produced from the union of Death's mind and speech, 402; —Pragâpati, the sacrifice, is the year, V, 1, 38; only after gaining the year the gods become immortal, 5; the year is the imperishable world, 5; created by Pragâpati as a counterpart of himself, 14; the year (year's sattra) as man, 144, 145, 168 seq.; is that (one) day after day, 155; amounts to a Brihatî, 155; is the bull among seasons, 276.
yoke, measure of uttaravedi, III, 349; — yoke-pin, distance of throw of, III, 123.
yoking, first of the right, then of the left, ox, III, 291, 327.
youth (blitheful), in the prime of life, is apt to become dear to women, V, 295.
yûpa, sacrificial post, eight-cornered, III, 31; wrapt up in seventeen clothes, 31; with a wheaten head-piece, 31; seventeen cubits long, 31; mounted by Sacrificer and his wife, 32; V, 254; remarks on material, form, and size of yûpa, V, 123, 124; twenty-one, 373, 383.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

Page 13, paragraphs 7, 8. We have probably to translate—the gods were created on its reaching heaven,—they were created on its entering this earth.

P. 45, par. 33, lines 6, 11. Read,—in the balance.

P. 60, l. 19. Read,—Adhvaryu.

P. 70, note 3. Read,—offering of a pap to Aditi.

P. 91, par. 4, l. 4. Read,—did we, by one of a hundred Ukthyas, dispel the darkness.

P. 107, par. 10, ll. 2, 3. Read,—form of the bull.

P. 108, note 3. Add,—Cf. also Hillebrandt, 'Varu*n*a und Mitra,' p. 68 seq.

P. 130, par. 9, ll. 2, 3. Read,—'The divine thought protect thee, not man's thought!'

P. 136, par. 6, l. 2. Under him:—Harisvâmin explains 'anu' by 'anvâbhakta,' 'participating after him,' cf. XIII, 5, 4, 24.

P. 149, note 1. The commentary takes 'p*rish**th**y*apratish*th*ite' in the sense of 'established on the p*rish**th**y*a,'—inasmuch as, in the first half of the year, he begins each month with the Abhiplava, and ends with the P*rish**th**y*a, which is the stronger (balavattara, cf. XII, 2, 2, 16), and therefore 'âtmapratish*th*ita.'

P. 155, note 2. The MS. of the commentary is corrupt—âñ-pûrvasyâkriyate satari*n*âdaya*h* *sa**h*** bhadrâgamam va*kkh*asthâne evâdhikshipayati na pradesântara âvartata ity artha*h*.

P. 279, note 1, l. 3 from below. Read,—'four-eyed' dog.

P. 334, note 1. 'Utsanna' probably means 'detached'; cf. II, 5, 2, 48.

P. 397, par. 6, l. 3. For whence, read,—and then.

PART IV.

P. 20, par. 5, l. 5. Read,—skin.

P. 25, note 1, l. 4. Read,—on the reta*h*si*k* range.

P. 48, par. 5, l. 4. Read,—Nabhas and Nabhasya.

P. 55, par. 4, l. 5. Read,—the seventh.

P. 103, par. 11. After 'sake,' add,—'The *S*âkvara and Raivata sâmans for stability in the air!' for by the *S*âkvara and Raivata sâmans it is indeed established in the air.

P. 108, l. 8. Read,—Pûrva*k*itti.

P. 163, l. 3. Read,—of seven seasons.

P. 168, note 4. Delete,—According to . . . referred to.

P. 170, pars. 6-8. Read,—circumambulates.

P. 192, par. 5, l. 2. Read,—irresistible warrior.

P. 223, par. 2, l. 3. Read,—shower of wealth.

P. 295, l. 1. Instead of, then,—read, thereby.

P. 312, par. 18, l. 9. Read,—exceeds this universe.

P. 313, l. 2. Read,—nor does he exceed this universe.

P. 325, par. 14. Read,—There are these five fingers (and toes) each consisting of four parts.

Note 1. Delete,—that being the simplest kind of Soma-sacrifice.—Sâya*n*a indeed must mean—all Soma and other sacrifices, down to the Agnihotra;—hardly, all sacrifices concluding with the Agnihotra.

P. 337, note 2. Read,—'moving in front,' or 'previous performance.'

P. 382, par. 23, l. 2. Read,—thousand B*ri*hatîs.

P. 389, l. 9. Perhaps we ought to translate—that (gold man), indeed, is the end, the self, of everything here (or, of this universe). Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sansk. Texts, vol. v, p. 389.

Par. 16, l. 2. Read,—they ascend to where desires have vanished.

P. 393, par. 1, l. 4. Read,—*G*ana *S*ârkarâkshya.

Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East.

CONSONANTS.	Missionary Alphabet. I Class.	Missionary Alphabet. II Class.	Missionary Alphabet. III Class.	Sanskrit.	Zend.	Pehlevi.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew.	Chinese.
Gutturales.										
1 Tenuis	k	. . .	. . . .	क	𐬐	𐭪	ك	ك	ק	k
2 „ aspirata	kh	. . .	. . . .	ख	𐬑	𐭫	. . .	. . .	ק	kh
3 Media	g	. . .	. . . .	ग	𐬌	𐭤	گ	. . .	ג	. . .
4 „ aspirata	gh	. . .	. . . .	घ	𐬍	𐭥	. . .	. . .	ג	. . .
5 Gutturo-labialis	q	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ق	ق	ק	. . .
6 Nasalis	ṅ (ng)	. . .	. . . .	ङ	𐬀 (ng) / 𐬁 (N)	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
7 Spiritus asper	h	. . .	. . . .	ह	𐬭 (𐬭𐬎 *hv*)	𐭣	ه	ه	ה	h, hs
8 „ lenis	’	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ا	ا	א	. . .
9 „ asper faucalis	‘h	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ح ع	ح ع	ח ע	. . .
10 „ lenis faucalis	’h	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ح ع	ح ع	ח ע	. . .
11 „ asper fricatus	. . .	*‘h*	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
12 „ lenis fricatus	. . .	*’h*	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
Gutturales modificatae (palatales, &c.)										
13 Tenuis	. . .	*k*	. . . .	च	𐬕	𐭮	چ	. . .	. . .	*k*
14 „ aspirata	. . .	*kh*	. . . .	छ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	*kh*
15 Media	. . .	*g*	. . . .	ज	𐬖	𐭩	ج	ج	. . .	. . .
16 „ aspirata	. . .	*gh*	. . . .	झ	. . . .	. . .	غ	غ	. . .	. . .
17 „ Nasalis	. . .	*ñ*	. . . .	ञ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .

CONSONANTS (*continued*).	MISSIONARY ALPHABET. I Class.	II Class.	III Class.	Sanskrit.	Zend.	Pehlevi.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew.	Chinese.
18 Semivocalis	y	. . .	. . . .	य	𐬌𐬌 init. 𐬍𐬌	𐭩	ي	ي	י	y
19 Spiritus asper	. . .	(y)	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
20 „ lenis	. . .	(y)	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
21 „ asper assibilatus . .	. . .	s	. . . .	श	𐬱	𐭮	ش	ش	. . .	. . .
22 „ lenis assibilatus . .	. . .	z	. . . .	. . .	𐬰	𐭭	ژ	. . .	. . .	s
Dentales.										
23 Tenuis	t	. . .	. . . .	त	𐬠	𐭬	ت	ت	ת	t
24 „ aspirata	th	. . .	. . . .	थ	𐬡	. . .	. . .	. . .	ת	th
25 „ assibilata	. . .	. . .	TH	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ث	ث	. . .	. . .
26 Media	d	. . .	. . . .	द	𐬛	𐭣	د	د	ד	. . .
27 „ aspirata	dh	. . .	. . . .	ध	𐬜	. . .	. . .	. . .	ד	. . .
28 „ assibilata	. . .	. . .	DH	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ذ	ذ	. . .	. . .
29 Nasalis	n	. . .	. . . .	न	𐬦	𐭤	ن	ن	נ	n
30 Semivocalis	l	. . .	. . . .	ल	. . . .	𐭤,𐭥	ل	ل	ל	l
31 „ mollis 1	. . .	l	. . . .	ळ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
32 „ mollis 2	. . .	. . .	L	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
33 Spiritus asper 1	s	. . .	. . . .	स	𐬯	𐭯	س (ث)	س	ס	s
34 „ asper 2	. . .	. . .	s (ʃ)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	ס	. . .
35 „ lenis	z	. . .	. . . .	. . .	𐬵	𐭵	ز (ذ)	ز	ז	z
36 „ asperrimus 1	. . .	. . .	z (ʒ)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ص	ص	צ	ʒ, ʒh
37 „ asperrimus 2	. . .	. . .	ẓ (ʒ)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ض	. . .	. . .	. . .

Dentales modificatae (linguales, &c.)											
38 Tenuis	...	*t*	....	ट	....	...	ط	ط	ט	...
39 „ aspirata	...	*th*	....	ठ	....	...	ظ	ظ	...	...
40 Media	...	*d*	....	ड	...	...	...	...	...	...
41 „ aspirata	...	*dh*	....	ढ	....	...	...	ض	...	...
42 Nasalis	...	*n*	....	ण	...	...	...	...	...	...
43 Semivocalis	r	...	....	र	...	...	ر	ر	ר	...
44 „ fricata	...	*r*	....	...	....	...	...	...	...	*r*
45 „ diacritica	...	...	R	...	....	...	...	...	...	...
46 Spiritus asper	sh	...	....	ष	...	...	...	...	...	sh
47 „ lenis	zh	...	....	...	....	...	...	...	...	...
Labiales.										
48 Tenuis	p	...	....	प	...	...	...	...	...	p
49 „ aspirata	ph	...	....	फ	....	...	...	...	...	ph
50 Media	b	...	....	ब	...	...	...	...	...	...
51 „ aspirata	bh	...	....	भ	....	...	...	...	...	...
52 Tenuissima	...	*p*	....	...	....	...	...	...	...	...
53 Nasalis	m	...	....	म	...	...	...	...	...	m
54 Semivocalis	w	...	....	...	...	...	...	...	...	w
55 „ aspirata	hw	...	....	...	....	...	...	...	...	...
56 Spiritus asper	f	...	....	...	...	...	...	...	...	f
57 „ lenis	v	...	....	व	...	...	و	و	ו	...
58 Anusvâra	...	*m*	....	अं	...	...	...	...	...	...
59 Visarga	...	*h*	....	अः	....	...	...	...	...	...

VOWELS.	MISSIONARY ALPHABET. I Class.	II Class.	III Class.	Sanskrit.	Zend.	Pehlevi.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew	Chinese.
1 Neutralis	0	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	ֲ	ă
2 Laryngo-palatalis	ĕ	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
3 „ labialis	ŏ	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	ا fin.	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
4 Gutturalis brevis	a	. . .	. . . .	अ	𐬀	𐬀 init.	ـَـ	ـَـ	ַ	a
5 „ longa	â	(*a*)	. . . .	आ	𐬁	𐬁	ـَا	ـَا	ָ	â
6 Palatalis brevis	i	. . .	. . . .	इ	𐬃	. . .	ـِـ	ـِـ	ִ	i
7 „ longa	î	(*i*)	. . . .	ई	𐬄	ی	ـِي	ـِي	ִי	î
8 Dentalis brevis	*li*	. . .	. . . .	ऌ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
9 „ longa	*lî*	. . .	. . . .	ॡ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
10 Lingualis brevis	*ri*	. .	. . . .	ऋ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
11 „ longa	*rî*	. . .	. . . .	ॠ	. . . .	. . .	. .	. .	. . .	. . .
12 Labialis brevis	u	. . .	. . . .	उ	𐬅	. . .	ـُـ	ـُـ	ֻ	u
13 „ longa	û	(*u*)	. . . .	ऊ	𐬆	ا	ـُو	ـُو	ֻו	û
14 Gutturo-palatalis brevis . . .	e	. . .	. . . .	. . .	𐬇(e) 𐬈(*e*)	. . .	. . .	. . .	ֱ	e
15 „ longa . . .	ê (ai)	(*e*)	. . . .	ए	𐬇, 𐬈	ی	. . .	. . .	ֱי	ê
16 Diphthongus gutturo-palatalis	âi	(*ai*)	. . . .	ऐ	. . . .	. . .	ـَيْ	ـَيْ	. . .	âi
17 „ „	ei (ĕi)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	ei, êi
18 „ „	oi (ŏu)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
19 Gutturo-labialis brevis	o	. . .	. . . .	. . .	𐬉	. . .	. . .	. . .	ֹ	o
20 „ longa	ô (au)	(*o*)	. . . .	ओ	𐬊	ا	. . .	. . .	ֹו	. . .
21 Diphthongus gutturo-labialis	âu	(*au*)	. . .	औ	𐬋 (*au*)	. . .	ـَوْ	ـَوْ	. . .	âu
22 „ „	eu (ĕu)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
23 „ „	ou (ŏu)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
24 Gutturalis fracta	ä	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
25 Palatalis fracta	ï	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
26 Labialis fracta	ü	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	ü
27 Gutturo-labialis fracta	ö	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

TRANSLATED BY VARIOUS ORIENTAL SCHOLARS

AND EDITED BY

THE RIGHT HON. F. MAX MÜLLER.

*** This Series is published with the sanction and co-operation of the Secretary of State for India in Council.*

REPORT presented to the ACADÉMIE DES INSCRIPTIONS, May 11, 1883, by M. ERNEST RENAN.

'M. Renan presente trois nouveaux volumes de la grande collection des "Livres sacres de l'Orient" (Sacred Books of the East), que dirige à Oxford, avec une si vaste érudition et une critique si sure, le savant associé de l'Académie des Inscriptions, M. Max Müller. . . . La premiere serie de ce beau recueil, composée de 24 volumes, est presque achevée. M. Max Müller se propose d'en publier une seconde, dont l'intérêt historique et religieux ne sera pas moindre. M. Max Muller a su se procurer la collaboration des savans les plus eminens d'Europe et d'Asie. L'Universite d'Oxford, que cette grande publication honore au plus haut degré, doit tenir à continuer dans les plus larges proportions une œuvre aussi philosophiquement conçue que savamment exécutée.'

EXTRACT from the QUARTERLY REVIEW.

'We rejoice to notice that a second series of these translations has been announced and has actually begun to appear. The stones, at least, out of which a stately edifice may hereafter arise, are here being brought together. Prof. Max Müller has deserved well of scientific history. Not a few minds owe to his enticing words their first attraction to this branch of study. But no work of his, not even the great edition of the Rig-Veda, can compare in importance or in usefulness with this English translation of the Sacred Books of the East, which has been devised by his foresight, successfully brought so far by his persuasive and organising power, and will, we trust, by the assistance of the distinguished scholars he has gathered round him, be carried in due time to a happy completion.'

Professor E. HARDY, Inaugural Lecture in the University of Freiburg, 1887.

'Die allgemeine vergleichende Religionswissenschaft datirt von jenem grossartigen, in seiner Art einzig dastehenden Unternehmen, zu welchem auf Anregung Max Müllers im Jahre 1874 auf dem internationalen Orientalistencongress in London der Grundstein gelegt worden war, die Übersetzung der heiligen Bücher des Ostens' (*the Sacred Books of the East*).

The Hon. ALBERT S. G. CANNING, 'Words on Existing Religions.'

'The recent publication of the "Sacred Books of the East" in English is surely a great event in the annals of theological literature.'

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

LONDON: HENRY FROWDE

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.

FIRST SERIES.

VOL. I. The Upanishads.

Translated by F. MAX MÜLLER. Part I. The *Khândogya-upanishad*, The Talavakâra-upanishad, The Aitareya-âra*n*yaka, The Kaushîtaki-brâhma*n*a-upanishad, and The Vâgasaneyi-sa*m*hitâ-upanishad. *Second Edition.* 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Upanishads contain the philosophy of the Veda. They have become the foundation of the later Vedânta doctrines, and indirectly of Buddhism. Schopenhauer, speaking of the Upanishads, says: 'In the whole world there is no study so beneficial and so elevating as that of the Upanishads. It has been the solace of my life, it will be the solace of my death.'

[See also Vol. XV.]

VOL. II. The Sacred Laws of the Âryas,

As taught in the Schools of Âpastamba, Gautama, Vâsish*th*a, and Baudhâyana. Translated by GEORG BÜHLER. Part I. Âpastamba and Gautama. *Second Edition.* 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Sacred Laws of the Âryas contain the original treatises on which the Laws of Manu and other lawgivers were founded.

[See also Vol. XIV.]

VOL. III. The Sacred Books of China.

The Texts of Confucianism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. Part I. The Shû King, The Religious Portions of the Shih King, and The Hsiâo King. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

Confucius was a collector of ancient traditions, not the founder of a new religion. As he lived in the sixth and fifth centuries B. C. his works are of unique interest for the study of Ethology.

[See also Vols. XVI, XXVII, XXVIII, XXXIX, and XL.]

VOL. IV. The Zend-Avesta.

Translated by JAMES DARMESTETER. Part I. The Vendîdâd. *Second Edition.* 8vo, cloth, 14*s.*

The Zend-Avesta contains the relics of what was the religion of Cyrus, Darius, and Xerxes, and, but for the battle of Marathon,

might have become the religion of Europe. It forms to the present day the sacred book of the Parsis, the so-called fire-worshippers.

[See also Vols. XXIII and XXXI.]

Vol. V. Pahlavi Texts.
Translated by E. W. West. Part I. The Bundahis, Bahman Yast, and Shâyast lâ-shâyast. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

The Pahlavi Texts comprise the theological literature of the revival of Zoroaster's religion, beginning with the Sassanian dynasty. They are important for a study of Gnosticism.

[See also Vols. XVIII, XXIV, XXXVII, and XLVII.]

Vols. VI and IX. The Qur'ân.
Parts I and II. Translated by E. H. Palmer. 8vo, cloth, 21*s.*

This translation, carried out according to his own peculiar views of the origin of the Qur'ân, was the last great work of E. H. Palmer, before he was murdered in Egypt.

Vol. VII. The Institutes of Vishnu.
Translated by Julius Jolly. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

A collection of legal aphorisms, closely connected with one of the oldest Vedic schools, the Kathas, *but considerably added to in later time. Of importance for a critical study of the Laws of Manu.*

Vol. VIII. The Bhagavadgitâ, with The Sanatsugâtiya, and The Anugîtâ.
Translated by Kâshinâth Trimbak Telang. *Second Edition.* 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

The earliest philosophical and religious poem of India. It has been paraphrased in Arnold's 'Song Celestial.'

Vol. X. The Dhammapada,
Translated from Pâli by F. Max Müller; and
The Sutta-Nipâta,
Translated from Pâli by V. Fausböll; being Canonical Books of the Buddhists. *Second Edition.* 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Dhammapada contains the quintessence of Buddhist morality. The Sutta-Nipâta gives the authentic teaching of Buddha on some of the fundamental principles of religion.

VOL. XI. Buddhist Suttas.

Translated from Pâli by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS. 1. The Mahâ-parinibbâna Suttanta: 2. The Dhamma-*k*akka-ppavattana Sutta. 3. The Tevi*gg*a Suttanta; 4. The Âkaṅkheyya Sutta; 5. The *K*etokhila Sutta; 6. The Mahâ-sudassana Suttanta; 7. The Sabbâsava Sutta. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

A collection of the most important religious, moral, and philosophical discourses taken from the sacred canon of the Buddhists.

VOL. XII. The Satapatha-Brâhmā*n*a, according to the Text of the Mâdhyandina School.

Translated by JULIUS EGGELING. Part I. Books I and II. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

A minute account of the sacrificial ceremonies of the Vedic age. It contains the earliest account of the Deluge in India.

See also Vols. XXVI, XLI, XLIII, and XLIV.]

VOL. XIII. Vinaya Texts.

Translated from the Pâli by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS and HERMANN OLDENBERG. Part I. The Pâtimokkha. The Mahâvagga, I–IV. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Vinaya Texts give for the first time a translation of the moral code of the Buddhist religion as settled in the third century B.C.

See also Vols. XVII and XX.]

VOL. XIV. The Sacred Laws of the Âryas,

As taught in the Schools of Âpastamba, Gautama, Vâsish*th*a, and Baudhâyana. Translated by GEORG BÜHLER. Part II. Vâsish*th*a and Baudhâyana. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XV. The Upanishads.

Translated by F. MAX MÜLLER. Part II. The Ka*th*a-upanishad, The Mu*nd*aka-upanishad, The Taittirîyaka-upanishad, The Bṛ*h*adâra*n*yaka-upanishad, The Śvetâśvatara-upanishad, The Praśṇa-upanishad, and The Maitrâya*n*a-brâhma*n*a-upanishad. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

[*** Vol. XV can only be supplied as part of a complete set of the First Series.]

VOL. XVI. The Sacred Books of China.

The Texts of Confucianism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. Part II. The Yî King. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

[See also Vols. XXVII, XXVIII.]

VOL. XVII. Vinaya Texts.

Translated from the Pâli by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS and HERMANN OLDENBERG. Part II. The Mahâvagga, V–X. The *K*ullavagga, I–III. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XVIII. Pahlavi Texts.

Translated by E. W. WEST. Part II. The Dâdistân-î Dînîk and The Epistles of Mânûskîhar. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XIX. The Fo-sho-hing-tsan-king.

A Life of Buddha by Asvaghosha Bodhisattva, translated from Sanskrit into Chinese by Dharmaraksha, A.D. 420, and from Chinese into English by SAMUEL BEAL. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

This life of Buddha was translated from Sanskrit into Chinese, A.D. 420. It contains many legends, some of which show a certain similarity to the Evangelium infantiae, &c.

VOL. XX. Vinaya Texts.

Translated from the Pâli by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS and HERMANN OLDENBERG. Part III. The Kullavagga, IV–XII. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XXI. The Saddharma-pundarîka; or, The Lotus of the True Law.

Translated by H. KERN. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

'The Lotus of the True Law,' a canonical book of the Northern Buddhists, translated from Sanskrit. There is a Chinese translation of this book which was finished as early as the year 286 A.D.

VOL. XXII. Gaina-Sûtras.

Translated from Prâkrit by HERMANN JACOBI. Part I. The Âkârânga-Sûtra and The Kalpa-Sûtra. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

The religion of the Gainas was founded by a contemporary of Buddha. It still counts numerous adherents in India, while there are no Buddhists left in India proper.

[See Vol. XLV.]

VOL. XXIII. The Zend-Avesta.

Translated by JAMES DARMESTETER. Part II. The Sîrôzahs, Yasts, and Nyâyis. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XXIV. Pahlavi Texts.

Translated by E. W. WEST. Part III. Dînâ-î Maînôg-Khirad. Sikand-gûmânîk Vigâr, and Sad Dar. 8vo, cloth. 10*s.* 6*d.*

SECOND SERIES.

VOL. XXV. Manu.

Translated by GEORG BÜHLER. 8vo, cloth, 21*s.*

This translation is founded on that of Sir William Jones, which has been carefully revised and corrected with the help of seven native Commentaries. An Appendix contains all the quotations from Manu which are found in the Hindu Law-books, translated for the use of the Law Courts in India. Another Appendix gives a synopsis of parallel passages from the six Dharma-sûtras, the other Smritis, the Upanishads, the Mahâbhârata, &c.

VOL. XXVI. The Satapatha-Brâhmana.

Translated by JULIUS EGGELING. Part II. Books III and IV. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOLS. XXVII AND XXVIII. The Sacred Books of China.

The Texts of Confucianism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. Parts III and IV. The Lî Kî, or Collection of Treatises on the Rules of Propriety, or Ceremonial Usages. 8vo, cloth, 25*s.*

VOL. XXIX. The Grihya-Sûtras, Rules of Vedic Domestic Ceremonies.

Part I. Sânkhâyana, Âsvalâyana, Pâraskara, Khâdira. Translated by HERMANN OLDENBERG. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XXX. The Grihya-Sûtras, Rules of Vedic Domestic Ceremonies.

Part II. Gobhila, Hiranyakesin, Âpastamba. Translated by HERMANN OLDENBERG. Âpastamba, Yagña-paribhâshâ-sûtras. Translated by F. MAX MÜLLER. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

These rules of Domestic Ceremonies describe the home life of the ancient Âryas with a completeness and accuracy unmatched in any other literature. Some of these rules have been incorporated in the ancient Law-books.

VOL. XXXI. The Zend-Avesta.

Part III. The Yasna, Visparad, Âfrînagân, Gâhs, and Miscellaneous Fragments. Translated by L. H. MILLS. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XXXII. Vedic Hymns.

Translated by F. MAX MÜLLER. Part I. 8vo, cloth, 18*s.* 6*d.*

[See also Vol. XLVI.]

VOL. XXXIII. The Minor Law-books.

Translated by JULIUS JOLLY. Part I. Nârada, Brihaspati. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XXXIV. The Vedânta-Sûtras, with the Commentary by *Saṅkarâkârya*. Part I.
Translated by G. THIBAUT. 8vo. cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*
[See also Vol. XXXVIII.]

VOLS. XXXV AND XXXVI. The Questions of King Milinda.
Translated from the Pâli by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS. Part I. 8vo, cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.* Part II. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XXXVII. Pahlavi Texts.
Translated by E. W. WEST. Part IV. The Contents of the Nasks, as stated in the Eighth and Ninth Books of the Dînkard. 15*s.*

VOL. XXXVIII. The Vedânta-Sûtras. Part II. 8vo, cloth, with full Index to both Parts, 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOLS. XXXIX AND XL. The Sacred Books of China. The Texts of Tâoism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. 8vo, cloth, 21*s.*

VOL. XLI. The *Satapatha*-Brâhma*ṇa*. Part III.
Translated by JULIUS EGGELING. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XLII. Hymns of the Atharva-veda.
Translated by M. BLOOMFIELD. 8vo, cloth, 21*s.*

VOL. XLIII. The *Satapatha*-Brâhma*ṇa*.
Translated by JULIUS EGGELING. Part IV. Books VIII, IX, and X. 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XLIV. The *Satapatha*-Brâhma*ṇa*. Part V.
[*Nearly ready.*]

VOL. XLV. The *Gaina*-Sûtras.
Translated from Prak*ṛit*, by HERMANN JACOBI. Part II. The Uttarâdhyayana Sûtra, The Sûtrak*ṛit*âṅga Sûtra. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XLVI. Vedic Hymns. Part II. 8vo, cloth, 14*s.*

VOL. XLVII. Pahlavi Texts.
Translated by E. W. WEST. Part V. Marvels of Zoroastrianism. 8*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. XLVIII. The Vedânta-Sûtras, with Râmânuga's *Śrîbhâshya*.
Translated by G. THIBAUT. [*In the Press.*]

VOL. XLIX. Buddhist Mahâyâna Texts. Buddha-*k*arita, translated by E. B. COWELL. Sukhâvatî-vyûha, Vagra*kkhe*dikâ, &c., translated by F. MAX MÜLLER. Amitâyur-Dhyâna-Sûtra, translated by J. TAKAKUSU. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

Anecdota Oxoniensia.

ARYAN SERIES.

Buddhist Texts from Japan. I. Vagrakkhedikâ; *The Diamond-Cutter.*

Edited by F. Max Müller, M.A. Small 4to, 3*s.* 6*d.*

One of the most famous metaphysical treatises of the Mahâyâna Buddhists.

Buddhist Texts from Japan. II. Sukhâvatî-Vyûha: *Description of Sukhâvatî, the Land of Bliss.*

Edited by F. Max Müller, M.A., and Bunyiu Nanjio. With two Appendices: (1) Text and Translation of Saṅghavarman's Chinese Version of the Poetical Portions of the Sukhâvatî-Vyûha; (2) Sanskrit Text of the Smaller Sukhâvatî-Vyûha. Small 4to, 7*s.* 6*d.*

The *editio princeps* of the Sacred Book of one of the largest and most influential sects of Buddhism, numbering more than ten millions of followers in Japan alone.

Buddhist Texts from Japan. III. *The Ancient Palm-Leaves containing the* Prajñâ-Pâramitâ-Hridaya-Sûtra *and the* Ushnisha-Vigaya-Dhâranî.

Edited by F. Max Müller, M.A., and Bunyiu Nanjio, M.A. With an Appendix by G. Bühler, C.I.E. With many Plates. Small 4to, 10*s.*

Contains facsimiles of the oldest Sanskrit MS. at present known.

Dharma-Saṃgraha, *an Ancient Collection of Buddhist Technical Terms.*

Prepared for publication by Kenjiu Kasawara, a Buddhist Priest from Japan, and, after his death, edited by F. Max Müller and H. Wenzel. Small 4to, 7*s.* 6*d.*

Kâtyâyana's Sarvânukramaṇî of the *Rig*veda.

With Extracts from Shadguruśishya's Commentary entitled Vedârthadîpikâ. Edited by A. A. Macdonell, M.A., Ph.D. 16*s.*

The Buddha-Karita of Aśvaghosha.

Edited, from three MSS., by E. B. Cowell, M.A. 12*s.* 6*d.*

The Mantrapâṭha, or the Prayer Book of the Âpastambins.

Edited, together with the Commentary of Haradatta, and translated by M. Winternitz, Ph.D. *First Part.* Introduction, Sanskrit Text, Varietas Lectionis, and Appendices. Small quarto, 10*s.* 6*d.*

Oxford
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
LONDON: HENRY FROWDE
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.

BL
1135
B7S3
1882
pt.5

Satapathabrāhmana
The Satapathȧ-brâhmana

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY